BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 50

The History of Mehmed the Conqueror

Kritoboulos of Imbros

ΞΥΓΓΡΑΦΗ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΩΝ

The History of Mehmed the Conqueror

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

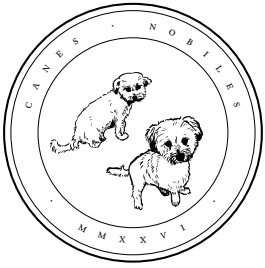


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 50 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows C. Müller,
Fragmenta Historicorum Graecorum V (Paris, 1870)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text is Müller's, with his capitals and punctuation; a few plain misprints are corrected. An asterisk after a word is his, where he marks a fault in the text. The margin gives his chapter and section where a paragraph begins.

CONTENTS

The Letter to the Sultan 7
I · The Fall of Constantinople 14
II · Ainos, Serbia, and the Islands 190
III · The Peloponnese 247
IV · Sinope, Trebizond, and Lesbos 319
V · The Venetian War and Albania 378

THE LETTER TO THE SULTAN

Kritoboulos of Imbros dedicates his history to Mehmed, whose deeds equal Alexander's and deserve record in Greek as well as in Persian and Arabic. He set them down from inquiry among those who knew, in five books covering seventeen years, and sends the work for the sultan's judgment, ready to yield to better writers.

Αὐτοκράτορι μεγίστῳ βασιλεῖ βασιλέων Μεχεμέτει, εὐτυχεῖ, 1
to-sovereign greatest king of-kings Mehmed fortunate
νικητῇ, τροπαιούχῳ, θριαμβευτῇ, ἀηττήτῳ, κυρίῳ γῆς καὶ
victor trophy-bearer triumpher unconquered lord of-earth and
θαλάσσης θεοῦ θελήματι, Κριτόβουλος δοῦλος εὐτελής.
of-sea by-God's will Kritoboulos slave humble
Πολλῶν καὶ μεγάλων ἔργων αὐτουργὸν ὄντα σε ὁρῶν, ὦ 2
many and great works doer being you seeing O
μέγιστε αὐτοκράτωρ, καὶ πολλῶν καὶ μεγάλων τῶν πάλαι
greatest sovereign and many and great the of-old
φημὶ στρατηγῶν τε καὶ βασιλέων κρατοῦντα, οὐ μόνον
I-say generals both and kings surpassing not only
Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων γενῶν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ Ῥωμαίων
of-Persians both and of-the other peoples but indeed also of-Romans
τε καὶ Ἑλλήνων, ἐπί τε δόξῃ καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ φρονήσει καὶ
both and of-Hellenes in both glory and courage and prudence and
στρατηγικῇ ἀρετῇ οὐδ' ὅσον ἐξεῖναι καὶ παραβάλλειν,
generalship virtue not-even so-much-as to-be-possible even to-compare
οὐ δίκαιον ᾠήθην ἐκείνους μὲν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνων ἔργα καὶ
not just I-thought those indeed and the their works and
πράξεις ἐξ ἐκείνου μέχρι καὶ νῦν τῇ διαδοχῇ τοῦ χρόνου
deeds from that(-time) until even now by-the succession of-the time
παραδοθέντα ταῖς Ἑλληνικαῖς ἱστορίαις καὶ ξυγγραφαῖς
handed-down by-the Hellenic histories and writings

ᾄδεσθαι καὶ θαυμάζεσθαι παρὰ πᾶσι καὶ μνήμης ἐς ἀΐδιον
to-be-sung and to-be-marveled-at among all and memory for everlasting
ἀπολαύειν, σὲ δὲ, τοιοῦτον ὄντα καὶ τηλικοῦτον, πάσης
to-enjoy you but such being and so-great all
τε σχεδὸν τῆς ὑφ' ἡλίου κρατοῦντα καὶ λαμπροῖς
both nearly the(-land) under sun ruling and with-brilliant
καὶ μεγάλοις σεμνυνόμενον ἔργοις, ἐς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον
and great being-exalted works for the after time
ἀμάρτυρον ἔχειν τὴν ἀρετὴν, καὶ τὰ πλεῖστα καὶ μέγιστα
unwitnessed to-have the virtue and the most and greatest
καὶ κάλλιστα τῶν ἔργων τῶν σῶν ὥσπερ τινὰ τῶν
and fairest of-the works the yours as some of-the
ἀφανῶν καὶ ἀδόξων μηδεμιᾶς γοῦν μνήμης ἢ ξυγγραφῆς
obscure and inglorious no at-any-rate memory or writing
Ἑλληνικῆς ἀξιῶσαι τοὺς νῦν, ἀλλ' ἐᾶσαι ταῦτα
Hellenic to-deem-worthy the(-men) now but to-let these(-things)
λήθης παραδοθῆναι βυθοῖς, καὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν ἄλλων ἔργα,
of-oblivion to-be-handed-over to-depths and the indeed of-the others works
σμικρά τε ὄντα καὶ κατ' οὐδὲν ἐπεοικότα τοῖς σοῖς,
small both being and in nothing resembling to-the yours
πολύ τοι ἐπιφανέστερα καὶ ἐπικυδέστερα ἐς ἀνθρώπους
much surely more-famous and more-glorious among men
ἕνεκά γε Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῆς Ἑλλήνων ἱστορίας γενέσθαι,
for-the-sake at-least of-Hellenes and of-the of-Hellenes history to-become
τὰς δὲ σὰς πράξεις, μεγίστας τε οὔσας καὶ κατ' οὐδὲν
the but your deeds greatest both being and in nothing
ἀπεοικυίας τῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ Μακεδόνος καὶ τῶν κατ'
falling-short of-the of-Alexander the Macedonian and of-the in
ἐκεῖνον στρατηγῶν τε καὶ βασιλέων, μὴ ἑλληνικῶς ἐς
that(-time) generals both and kings not in-Hellenic to
τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐκδοθῆναι μηδὲ τῷ μετὰ ταῦτα χρόνῳ,
the Hellenes to-be-published nor to-the after these(-things) time

παραδοθῆναι ἐς ἔπαινον μὲν ἀγήρω καὶ τιμὴν τοῦ
to-be-handed-down for praise indeed ageless and honor of-the(-one)
κατωρθωκότος, μίμημα δὲ καὶ μάθημα κάλλιστον τοῖς
having-achieved(-them) imitation but and lesson fairest for-the
σπουδαίοις· καίτοι σύ γε δὴ μόνος βασιλέων ἢ κομιδῇ
earnest and-yet you at-least indeed alone of-kings or altogether
ξὺν ὀλίγοις ἔργα ξυνῆψας καὶ λόγους καὶ φιλοσοφίαν καὶ
with few works joined and words and philosophy and
βασιλείαν, ὁ αὐτὸς ὢν "βασιλεύς τ' ἀγαθὸς κρατερός
kingship the same being emperor both good mighty
τε μαχητής". Διὸ δή μοι καὶ προσῆκόν τε ἅμα
and warrior wherefore indeed to-me also fitting both at-once
καὶ δίκαιον ἔδοξε τῇ σῇ ἀγαθῇ τύχῃ θαρρήσαντι
and just it-seemed with-the your good fortune having-taken-courage
τὸν παρόντα πόνον ἀναδέξασθαι, καὶ τὰς σὰς ἀριστείας
the present labor to-take-up and the your prowess
καὶ πράξεις, πολλῷ τῶν ἄλλων διαφερούσας κατά τε
and deeds by-much from-the others differing in both
πλῆθος καὶ μέγεθος, ὡς οἷόν τέ μοι, ἑλληνικῇ ξυγγραφῇ
multitude and greatness as possible — for-me to-Hellenic writing
παραδοῦναι. Ἴσως μὲν γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἐλλογίμων
to-hand-down perhaps indeed for also many of-the learned
Ἀράβων τε καὶ Περσῶν ἀκριβέστερον ἀναγράψουσι ταύτας
Arabs both and Persians more-exactly will-record these
καὶ τοῖς ἐφεξῆς παραδώσουσιν, ἐπιστάμενοί τε καλῶς
and to-the(-ones) after will-hand-down knowing both well
καὶ παρηκολουθηκότες τοῖς ἔργοις· οὐδὲν δὲ οἷον ἡ τῶν
and having-followed the works nothing but such-as the of-the
Ἑλλήνων φωνὴ, μέγιστον ἔχουσα παρὰ πᾶσι τὸ κλέος.
Hellenes tongue greatest having among all the renown
Κἀκεῖνα μὲν Πέρσαις καὶ Ἄραψιν ἔσται γνώριμα μόνοις καὶ
and-those indeed to-Persians and Arabs will-be known alone and

τοῖς ἐπαΐουσι τὴν ἐκείνων φωνήν· ταῦτα δὲ οὐχ Ἕλλησι
to-the(-ones) understanding the their tongue these but not to-Hellenes
μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἑσπερίοις ἅπασι τῶν γενῶν, καὶ δὴ
only but also to-the western all of-the peoples and indeed
καὶ τοῖς ἔξω Στηλῶν καὶ τοῖς τὰς Βρεττανικὰς
also to-the(-ones) beyond the-Pillars and to-the(-ones) the British
νήσους οἰκοῦσι καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις κοινή τις ἔσται
islands inhabiting and to-many others common some will-be
φιλοτιμία καὶ θαῦμα ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων γλῶτταν ἑρμηνευθέντα,
pride and wonder into the their tongue translated
φιλέλλησί τε οὖσι καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα σπουδαίοις. Ὃ
philhellenes both being and in-the such(-things) earnest which
δή με καὶ μᾶλλον ἐπῆρε πρὸς τοῦτο, πολλοὺς ἕξειν
indeed me also more stirred toward this many to-have
λογιζόμενον καὶ κριτὰς καὶ μάρτυρας τῆς ἐμῆς ξυγγραφῆς.
reckoning both judges and witnesses of-the my writing

4 Τοίνυν, ὦ μέγιστε αὐτοκράτωρ, πολλὰ μογήσας ἤδη,
therefore O greatest sovereign many having-toiled already
οὐδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸς τοῖς ἔργοις ἐπέστην, ἵνα δὴ καὶ τὸ
not-even for myself at-the works I-was-present so-that indeed also the
ἀκριβὲς τούτων εἰδείην, ἀλλ᾽ ἱστορῶν τε ἅμα καὶ
exactness of-these(-things) I-might-know but inquiring both at-once and
πυνθανόμενος τῶν εἰδότων καὶ ὡς ἐνῆν ἀκριβῶς
learning-by-asking from-the(-ones) knowing and as was-possible exactly
ἐξετάζων, ξυντέταχα τοῦτο τὸ βιβλίον ἐν πέντε τμήμασι
examining I-have-composed this the book into five sections
διελών, ἀρχὴν τῆς ξυγγραφῆς ποιησάμενος ἥνπερ καὶ
having-divided beginning of-the history having-made which also
αὐτὸς ἐποιήσω τῆς βασιλείας, ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐς τὴν
yourself you-made of-the kingship from — Asia into —
Εὐρώπην τὸ πρῶτον διαβάς, μεταστάντος σοι τοῦ
Europe the first having-crossed having-departed for-you the

πατρός. Περιέχει δὲ τόν τε πόλεμον τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ
father it-contains and the both war of-the Romans and
τὴν τῆς πόλεως ἅλωσιν, τά τε τῆς Αἴνου καὶ τῶν
the of-the city capture the both — of-Ainos and of-the
Φωκαιέων καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ὡς ἐπράχθη, καὶ
Phokaians and indeed also of-the Triballians how it-was-done and
τὴν ὅλην τούτων καταστροφὴν καὶ δουλείαν, ἔτι δὲ τὴν
the whole of-these subjugation and slavery further and the
ἐς Πελοπόννησον πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἐσβολήν, καὶ ὡς
into Peloponnese first and second invasion and how
ἐχειρώθη πᾶσα καὶ αἱ ἐν αὐτῇ πόλεις καὶ τὰ φρούρια, καὶ
was-subdued all and the in it cities and the fortresses and
κατέστη φόρου ὑποτελής· προσέτι δὲ τὰ κατὰ Σινώπην
it-was-made of-tribute subject moreover and the at Sinope
καὶ Τραπεζοῦντα, πόλεις λόγου ἀξίας καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν,
and Trebizond cities of-account worthy and of-the renowned
καὶ ὡς παρεχώρησαν αὗται ὁμολογίᾳ, καὶ πᾶσα ἡ τούτων
and how yielded these by-agreement and all the of-these
ἔξω χώρα (καὶ) κατήκοος γέγονε τῷ βασιλεῖ· ἔτι γε
outside land and subject has-become to-the emperor further at-least
μὴν τὴν ἐπανάστασιν Δράκουλι καὶ Γετῶν ἀποστασίαν καὶ
indeed the uprising of-Drakoulis and of-Getai revolt and
τὴν ἐς τὴν αὐτῶν ἐσβολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ καταστροφὴν
the into the their invasion of-the emperor and subjugation
καὶ δουλείαν σφῶν, καὶ ὡς κατέστη κύριος τούτων ὁ
and slavery of-them and how was-made lord of-these —
Ῥάδος παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀπελαθέντος Δράκουλι τοῦ
Radu by the emperor having-been-driven-out Drakoulis the
ἀδελφοῦ, τήν τε Μιτυλήνης καὶ Λέσβου ἅλωσιν πάσης,
brother the both of-Mytilene and of-Lesbos capture whole
νήσου μετά γε τὰς πρώτας μιᾶς δὴ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν
island after at-least the first one indeed of-the renowned

καὶ πάνυ γνωρίμων ἐπί τε δόξῃ καὶ μεγέθει καὶ δυναστείᾳ
and very well-known for both glory and greatness and power
καὶ πλούτῳ· ἔτι δὲ τὴν ἐς Δαλμάτας καὶ Βόστρους
and wealth further and the into Dalmatians and Bosnians
καὶ Παίονας πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἐσβολήν, καὶ ὡς
and Paionians first and second invasion and how
ἐχειρώθη πᾶσα ἡ τούτων καὶ κατεστράφη, πολίσματά τε
was-subdued all the of-these and was-subjugated towns both
ἑάλω καὶ φρούρια ὀλίγου δεῖν τριακόσια, καὶ οἱ τούτων
were-taken and fortresses little lacking three-hundred and the of-these
ἡγεμόνες ἐλήφθησαν· πρὸς δέ γε τὴν ἐς Ἰλλυριοὺς
leaders were-taken besides and indeed the into Illyrians
τοὺς ἐν τῷ Ἰονίῳ κόλπῳ πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἐσβολὴν
the(-ones) in — Ionian gulf first and second invasion
καὶ τὴν τούτων καταστροφήν· τόν τε πενταετῆ πόλεμον
and the of-these subjugation the both five-year war
Ἐνετῶν καὶ τὴν τούτων πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἥτταν ἐν
of-Venetians and the of-these first and second defeat in
Πελοποννήσῳ παρὰ τῶν σατραπῶν, καὶ ὡς ἐστόρεσε τὸ
Peloponnese by the satraps and how laid-low the
τούτων φρόνημα ὁ βασιλεύς· πρὸς δὲ τούτοις οἰκοδομάς
of-these pride the emperor besides and these(-things) buildings
τε λαμπρὰς ἐν τῇ πόλει, νεῶν τε καὶ νεωρίων καὶ
both brilliant in the city of-temples both and of-dockyards and
βασιλείων καὶ ἀγορῶν καὶ στοῶν καὶ λουτρῶν, καὶ δὴ
of-palaces and of-markets and of-stoas and of-baths and indeed
τειχισμούς τε καὶ ξυνοικήσεις φρουρίων καὶ πολισμάτων
fortifications both and settlings of-fortresses and of-towns
πάνυ χρησίμων καὶ ἀναγκαίων, τῶν γε κατὰ τὸν
very useful and necessary the(-ones) at-least on the
τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου καὶ Χερρονήσου πορθμὸν καὶ τὸν τοῦ
— of-Hellespont and of-Chersonese strait and the —

Βοσπόρου, καὶ ἕτερα οὐκ ὀλίγα τοιαῦτα, καὶ δὴ καὶ
of-Bosporus and other not few such(-things) and indeed also
δημηγορίας τῶν πάνυ σπουδαίων τοῦ βασιλέως.
public-speeches of-the very earnest of-the emperor
Χρόνου δὲ πλῆθος ἐν οἷς ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἔτη ἑπτὰ
of-time and length in which these(-things) happened years seven
πρὸς τοῖς δέκα. Ταῦτα δὴ πάντα ξυγγραψάμενός τε
besides the ten these(-things) indeed all having-written-up both
καὶ ἀφηγησάμενος ἐν τῷδε τῷ βιβλίῳ, πέμπω τοῦτο
and having-narrated in this the book I-send this
τῇ βασιλικῇ σου ἐπιστασίᾳ καὶ σοφίᾳ δοκιμασθησόμενόν
to-the royal your oversight and wisdom to-be-tested
τε καὶ κριθησόμενον. Κἂν μέν τι γενναῖον εὑρεθῇ
both and to-be-judged and-if indeed anything noble be-found
παρ᾽ αὐτῇ, τῇ τε ἀληθείᾳ ξυμβαῖνον καὶ τῶν σῶν ἔργων
by it the both truth agreeing-with and of-the your works
ἐφάμιλλον, τῇ τε βασιλικῇ κυρωθείη ψήφῳ, χάριν τε
rivaling by-the both royal may-it-be-ratified vote thanks both
ὁμολογήσομεν τῷ τε θεῷ καὶ σοί, βασιλεῦ, τοιαύτην ὕλην
we-will-acknowledge — both to-God and to-you O-emperor such material
ἡμῖν παρασχόντι ταῖς ἀρίσταις τῶν πράξεων εἰς ἐπίδειξιν
to-us having-provided by-the best of-the deeds for display
τῶν ἡμετέρων λόγων, καὶ ἅμα θαρροῦντες πρὸς ὅλον τὸν
of-the our words and at-once taking-courage for whole the
ἑξῆς ἀγῶνα ἀποδυσόμεθα, καὶ μετὰ χαρᾶς πρὸς τὰ λοιπὰ
next contest we-will-strip and with joy to the rest
τῶν ἔργων χωρήσομεν, ἃ ξὺν θεῷ σοι πεπράξεται,
of-the works we-will-go which with God by-you will-have-been-done
πυθόμενοι δὴ μόνον καὶ πολλὰ τῶν σφόδρα ἀναγκαίων
having-learned indeed only also many of-the very necessary
καὶ ἀγνοουμένων ἡμῖν. Εἰ δὲ φανῶσιν οἱ ἡμέτεροι λόγοι
and unknown to-us if but appear the our words

πολλῷ τῶν σῶν ἔργων ὄντες καταδεέστεροι καὶ πρὸς
by-much than-the your works being falling-short and to
τὸ μέγεθος τούτων οὐκ ἐξικνούμενοι, ὃ πᾶσα παθεῖν
the greatness of-these not reaching which all to-suffer
αὐτοὺς ἀνάγκη, τό τε βιβλίον ὡς ἀχρεῖον ἀποδοκιμασθῇ,
them necessity the and book as useless be-rejected
τηνικαῦτα δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς πόρρωθεν προσκυνήσας καὶ
then indeed also myself from-afar having-bowed and
σιωπὴν ἀσπασάμενος, ἑτέροις παραχωρήσω τῆς ἱστορίας,
silence having-embraced to-others I-will-yield the history
πολλῷ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐμοῦ βελτίοσιν.
by-much in-the such(-things) than-me better

I · THE FALL OF CONSTANTINOPLE

Mehmed succeeds Murad in 1451, reorders his realm, and walls a fortress on the Bosporus to command the strait. Over the Romans' protests he resolves on war, casts a great cannon, drags his ships overland into the Horn, and after fifty days of siege storms the city on 29 May 1453. Giustiniani is wounded and withdraws, Constantine falls fighting, and the city is sacked; Mehmed weeps over it and begins to resettle it.

Περιέχει ἥδε ἀρχὴν τῆς βασιλείας Μεχέμετι μεγίστου
it-contains this(-book) beginning of-the kingship of-Mehmed greatest
αὐτοκράτορος καὶ πάροδον ἐς αὐτήν, ἔργα καὶ πράξεις
sovereign and accession to it works and deeds
αὐτοῦ, τειχισμον τε τοῦ ἐν Βοσπόρῳ νέου φρουρίου,
his fortification both of-the on Bosporus new fortress
πόλεμόν τε τῆς Κωνσταντίνου πόλεως καὶ ἅλωσιν ταύτης.
war and of-the of-Constantine city and capture of-it
Χρόνου πλῆθος ἔτη [τρία].
of-time length years three

Κριτόβουλος ὁ νησιώτης, τὰ πρῶτα τῶν Ἰμβριωτῶν, τὴν 1.1
Kritoboulos the islander the first of-the Imbriots the
ξυγγραφὴν τήνδε ξυνέγραψε, δικαιώσας μὴ πράγματα
history this wrote having-deemed-right not affairs
οὕτω μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστὰ ἐφ' ἡμῶν γεγονότα μεῖναι
so great and marvelous in our(-time) having-happened to-remain
ἀνήκουστα, ἀλλὰ ξυγγραψάμενος παραδοῦναι ταῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς
unheard but having-written-them-up to-hand-down to-the after us
γενεαῖς, ὡς μήτε ἔργα γενναῖά τε καὶ ἀξιαφήγητα καὶ
generations so-that neither works noble both and worth-narrating and
τῶν παλαιῶν λειπόμενα μηδενὸς τῷ χρόνῳ καλυφθέντα
than-the ancient falling-short in-nothing by-the time covered
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφανισθείη, μήτε οἱ γεγονότες ἐς ὕστερον
from men be-blotted-out nor the(-ones) born in later(-times)
τὰ μέγιστα ζημιωθεῖεν, τοιαύτης ἀμοιρήσαντες ἱστορίας
in-the greatest-things be-harmed such having-had-no-share-in history
τε καὶ μαθήσεως, καὶ οἱ ταῦτα δὲ πράξαντες ἔχωσί
both and learning and the(-ones) these(-things) and having-done may-have
τι μνημεῖον κάλλιστον ἐς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον τῆς σφῶν
some memorial fairest for the hereafter time of-the their
αὐτῶν ἀνδρείας καὶ ἀρετῆς ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς ξυγγραφῆς καὶ
own courage and virtue from this the history and
τῆς τῶν ἔργων ἀποδείξεως. Ἐδόκει δέ μοι καὶ διὰ τόδε
the of-the works showing it-seemed and to-me also because-of this
οὐχ ἥκιστα ἀναγκαία εἶναι ἥδε ἡ νῦν ξυγγραφή· τὰ μὲν
not least necessary to-be this the present history the indeed
γὰρ παλαιὰ τῶν ἔργων, πρεσβύτατα ὄντα καὶ μέγιστα,
for ancient of-the works most-aged being and greatest
δυσπαράδεκτά πώς ἐστι καὶ ἐς ἀκοὴν ἔρχεται μόγις, τῷ
hard-to-accept somehow are and to hearing come scarcely by-the
χρόνῳ ὥσπερ γηράσκοντα καὶ διαπιστούμενα, ἢ τῷ γε
time as-if growing-old and disbelieved or by-the at-least

πολλῷ τῆς μνήμης ξυνεθισμῷ καὶ καταφρονεῖται· πᾶν γὰρ
much of-the memory habituation also are-despised all for
τὸ πλεονάζον ἐς κόρον ἥκει, κόρος δὲ ἀηδίαν φέρει· τὰ
the excessive to satiety comes satiety and distaste brings the
δὲ δὴ νῦν, καινά τε ὄντα καὶ προσεχῆ, καὶ ὡς γνώριμα
but indeed present new both being and close and as known
εὐπαράδεκτά τε ἔτι καὶ κατέχεται καὶ ὡς προσεχῆ μᾶλλον
easy-to-accept both still and are-retained and as close more
θαυμάζεται, καὶ τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον ὅσῳ καὶ μᾶλλον
are-marveled-at and by-so-much more by-as-much also more
διαφέροντα ᾖ καὶ τὴν πίστιν ἔχοντα τῷ σαφεῖ καὶ
differing they-be and the credence having by-the clear and
γνωρίμῳ, χαιρόντων τε τῶν ἀνθρώπων, ὡς τὰ πολλὰ,
known delighting both the men as the most
τοῖς καινοτέροις τῶν ἔργων καὶ τούτοις μᾶλλον ἐθελόντων
in-the newer of-the works and these more wishing
ἕπεσθαι. Διὰ ταῦτα δὴ καὶ ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ἀναγκαία
to-follow because-of these(-things) indeed and other such(-reasons) necessary
μοι κατεφάνη εἶναι ἥδε ἡ ξυγγραφή· ἔργα τε γὰρ δὴ
to-me appeared to-be this the history works both for indeed
μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστὰ ἐν τοῖς νῦν καιροῖς καὶ τάδε
great and marvelous in the present times also these
ἐπράχθη, οἷα τὸ παλαιὸν ἐν Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάροις,
were-done such-as the of-old among Hellenes and barbarians
προσέτι δὲ καὶ Ῥωμαίοις, μεγίστην ἀπόδειξιν παρεχόμενα
besides and also Romans greatest proof providing
ἀρετῆς καὶ ἀνδρίας τῶν ἐπιφανεστάτων ἀνδρῶν, ἀρχή
of-virtue and of-courage of-the most-illustrious men empire
τε κατελύθη μεγίστη δὴ καὶ πρεσβυτάτη ὧν
both was-destroyed greatest indeed and most-ancient of-those-which
ἴσμεν, οὐκ ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ καταπολεμηθεῖσα, ἡ τῶν
we-know not in much time warred-down the of-the

Ῥωμαίων, κίνησίς τε μεγίστη δὴ πάντων γέγονεν αὕτη,
Romans upheaval both greatest indeed of-all has-become this
καὶ μεταβολὴ πραγμάτων οὐ τῶν τυχόντων. Γράψω δὴ
and change of-affairs not of-the ordinary I-will-write indeed
[τὰ] καθέκαστα ὡς ἐγένετο ἀκριβῶς, τούς τε λόγους
the particulars as they-happened exactly the both speeches
ξυναρμόζων τοῖς ἔργοις, τά τε ἔργα μηδαμοῦ τῶν
fitting to-the works the both works nowhere from-the
καιρῶν ἀποδιστὰς, ἔν τε τοῖς προσώποις καὶ τοῖς καιροῖς
times separating in both the persons and the times
τὴν γιγνομένην τάξιν μετὰ τοῦ προσήκοντος σώζων καὶ
the occurring order with the fitting preserving and
διὰ πάντων τἀληθοῦς πλεῖστον λόγον ποιούμενος.
through all of-the-truth most account making
Τὰ μὲν οὖν πρὸ ἡμῶν καὶ ὅσα ἐς τοὺς ἄνω 2.1
the(-things) indeed then before us and as-many-as to the upper
χρόνους ἥκει τοῦδε τοῦ γένους, ἢ ὅσα οἱ ἐξ
times reach of-this the race or as-many-as the(-ones) from
ἐκείνων μέχρις ἡμῶν διαδοχῇ προσεχεῖ καταγόμενοι
those until us by-succession continuous descended
βασιλεῖς αὐτῶν κατὰ καιροὺς ἔπραξαν ἔργα γενναῖα
emperors of-them at times did works noble
καὶ θαυμαστὰ, καὶ πολέμους οὓς ἐπολέμησαν, καὶ νίκας
and marvelous and wars which they-warred and victories
ἃς ἐπεξῆλθον, δι' ὧν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων μεγάλην
which they-achieved through which the of-the Romans great
ἀρχὴν τοῦ χρόνου προϊόντος κατὰ μικρὸν ἐταπείνωσάν
empire of-the time advancing by little they-humbled
τε καὶ ἐς τόδε κατήγαγον, ἕως ἐχειρώσαντο πᾶσαν καὶ
both and to this(-state) brought-down until they-subdued all and
καθεῖλον τελείως, τὰ δὴ τοιαῦτα πολλοῖς τε εἴρηται
destroyed completely the indeed such(-things) by-many both have-been-told

πρὸ ἡμῶν, καὶ ἡμῖν ἐς τὸ παρὸν οὐ σκοπὸς περὶ τούτων
before us and to-us for the present not aim about these
διεξιέναι, οὐδὲ τῆς παρούσης ὕλη νῦν ξυγγραφῆς· ἀλλὰ
to-go-through nor of-the present material now history but
ταῦτα μὲν ἐς ὕστερον, θεοῦ διδόντος, ἐν ἄλλοις βιβλίοις
these(-things) indeed for later God granting in other books
ξυντάξομεν, ἰδίαν ξυστησάμενοι πραγματείαν, ἀκριβῶς
we-will-compose own having-organized treatise exactly
ἐπιμνησθέντες τῶν τε καιρῶν τῶν τε πραγμάτων τῶν τε
having-made-mention of-the both times of-the both affairs of-the both
καλῶς ἐπεξειργασμένων αὐτά. Εἰ γὰρ πολλοὶ περὶ τούτων
well having-worked-out them if for many about these
εἰρήκασι, ἀλλὰ οὐ κατὰ τάξιν οὐδὲ καλῶς τε καὶ
have-spoken yet not according-to order nor well both and
ὡς ἔδει τὴν ἱστορίαν ξυνέθεντο, ἀλλ' ὡς ἂν ἐπῆλθεν
as was-needed the history composed but as — occurred
αὐτοῖς ἢ κατὰ τὸ δοκοῦν τῆς γνώμης ἢ τὸ ξυμβαῖνον
to-them or according-to the seeming of-the judgment or the occurring
τῆς μνήμης ἢ τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων πείρας εἶχον, τῆς δ'
of-the memory or of-the of-the affairs experience they-had of-the but
ἀκριβείας ὀλίγον ἐφρόντισαν. Οὔκουν περὶ τούτων ὁ λόγος
exactness little they-cared not-then about these the account
ἡμῖν νῦν, ἀλλ' ὅπως τὰ τοῦ νῦν μεγάλου βασιλέως ἔργα
to-us now but how the of-the present great emperor works
Μεχεμέτεω, μέγιστά τε ὄντα καὶ μηδεμίαν ὑπερβολὴν
of-Mehmed greatest both being and no surpassing
τοῖς πρὸ αὐτῶν καταλείποντα, ἰδίᾳ ξυγγραφῇ τε καὶ
to-the(-ones) before them leaving in-own history both and
ἀφηγήσει τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς παραδῶμεν, μίμημά τε καὶ
narration to-the(-ones) after us we-may-hand-down imitation both and
σπούδασμα κάλλιστον τοῖς αἱρουμένοις τε καὶ ψυχῆς
pursuit fairest to-the(-ones) choosing both and of-soul

ἀνδρίαν ὑποφαίνουσι προθέντες αὐτά. Τοσοῦτον γὰρ οὗτος
courage showing having-set-before them so-much for this-man
οὐ μόνον τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς πρὸ αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ
not only of-the others the(-ones) before him but indeed also
τοὺς ἐκ γένους αὐτῷ βασιλεῖς κατά τε ἀρετήν (τε) καὶ
the of race to-him emperors in both virtue both and
ἀνδρίαν καὶ στρατηγίαν καὶ τύχην καὶ τὴν τῶν πολεμικῶν
courage and generalship and fortune and the of-the warlike
ἐμπειρίαν ὑπερεβάλλετο, ὅσον ἐκεῖναι τοὺς πρὸ αὐτῶν
experience surpassed as-much-as those(-deeds) the(-ones) before them
τε καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς γενομένους τούτοις ἀπέκρυψαν.
both and in their(-time) having-been by-these bid
Παραιτοῦμαι δὲ τούς τε νῦν τούς τε χρόνῳ ὕστερόν 3.1
I-beg and the(-ones) both now the(-ones) both in-time later
ποτε ξυνεσομένους τῇδε τῇ ξυγγραφῇ μηδεμίαν ἀβελτηρίαν
ever going-to-be-with this the history no stupidity
ἢ κακοήθειαν καταγνῶναι ἡμῶν, εἰ μήτε ξυναλγοῦντες
or malice to-condemn in-us if neither grieving-with
ταῖς ἡμετέραις κακοπραγίαις μήτε δὴ ταῖς τοῦ γένους
the our misfortunes nor indeed by-the of-the race
βαρούμενοι ξυμφοραῖς, προῃρήμεθα ἀναγράφειν τε καὶ
weighed-down calamities we-have-chosen to-record both and
φανερῶς ἐκπομπεύειν καὶ διασύρειν τὰ οἰκεῖα κακά,
openly to-parade and to-disparage the own evils
δέον ξυγκαλύπτειν μᾶλλον ἐς δύναμιν καὶ μηδαμοῦ
it-being-needed to-cover-up rather to power and nowhere
τοῖς πολλοῖς ἔκφορα καθιστᾶν. Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ οὐχ ὥστε
to-the many published to-make first indeed for not so-as
μέμψιν τινὰ περιάψαι τῷ γένει οὐδ᾽ ἐπὶ τῷ κακῶς εἰπεῖν
blame some to-fasten on-the race nor for the badly to-speak
τε καὶ διασῦραι τὰ ἡμέτερα ἐς τόδε προήχθημεν· πόρρω
both and to-disparage the our(-affairs) to this we-were-led far

γὰρ τοῦτο καὶ τῆς παρούσης πραγματείας καὶ τοῦ
for this both from-the present treatise and from-the
προκειμένου σκοποῦ, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τοῦ ἤθους ἡμῶν·
proposed aim but indeed also from-the character our
οὐχ οὕτω γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἀνάλγητοι καὶ πικροὶ τὴν γνώμην,
not so for we unfeeling and bitter in-the judgment
ὥστε πρὸς τοῖς οὖσι κακοῖς ἀντὶ τοῦ ξυναλγεῖν μᾶλλον
so-as besides the existing evils instead-of the to-grieve-with rather
καὶ κατηγορίαν προστρίβειν ἐθέλειν καὶ περιάπτειν τῷ
also accusation to-rub-on to-wish and to-fasten on-the
γένει· ἔπειτα οὐδ' οὕτως εὐήθεις ἢ διακρίσεως ἄμοιροι καὶ
race next nor so simple or of-discernment devoid and
τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων ὅλως ἐκτὸς, ὡς μήτε τὰς
of-the human affairs wholly outside as neither the
τούτων εἰδέναι τύχας τε καὶ μεταβολὰς, μήτε τὸ ἄστατον
of-these to-know fortunes both and changes nor the instability
καὶ ἀβέβαιον καὶ ἀνώμαλον, ἀλλ' ἐν τοσαύτῃ ξυγχύσει
and uncertainty and unevenness but in so-great confusion
καὶ ἀταξίᾳ πραγμάτων καὶ τοῖς κοινοῖς τῆς φύσεως
and disorder of-affairs and in-the common of-the nature
ἀρρωστήμασι παρὰ μόνου τοῦ ἡμετέρου γένους ζητεῖν τὸ
infirmities from only the our race to-seek the
ὑγιές τε καὶ στάσιμον καὶ ὅλως ἀκίνητον, ὡς ἂν ἔξω
sound both and stable and wholly unmoved as — outside
τούτων παντάπασιν ὄντος ἢ κρείττονός τινος φύσεως καὶ
these altogether being or of-better some nature and
μηδαμοῦ δυναμένου ξυμφέρεσθαί τε καὶ ξυμμεταβάλλειν
nowhere being-able to-be-carried-along both and to-change-with
τοῖς ἄλλοις. Τίς γὰρ οὐκ οἶδεν ὡς ἐξ ὅτου γεγόνασιν
with-the others who for not knows that from when have-come-to-be
ἄνθρωποι, τὰ τῆς βασιλείας καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς οὐδ'
men the(-things) of-the kingship and of-the rule not-even

ὅλως ἔμεινεν ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν, οὐδ' ἑνὶ γένει τε καὶ ἔθνει
wholly remained with the same nor in-one race both and nation
περιεκλείσθη, ἀλλ' ὡς πλανώμενά τε ἀεὶ καὶ ἐξ ἐθνῶν
was-enclosed but as wandering both always and from nations
ἔθνη καὶ τόπους ἐκ τόπων ἀμείβοντα πανταχοῦ μεταβέβηκέ
nations and places from places exchanging everywhere have-crossed
τε καὶ περιέστη, νῦν μὲν ἐς Ἀσσυρίους καὶ Μήδους καὶ
both and gone-round now indeed to Assyrians and Medes and
Πέρσας, νῦν δὲ ἐς Ἕλληνας καὶ Ῥωμαίους, κατὰ καιρούς
Persians now and to Hellenes and Romans by times
τε καὶ περιόδους ἐνιαυτῶν ἐπιχωριάσαντά τε καὶ οὐδέποτε
both and cycles of-years having-dwelt both and never
ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν βεβηκότα. Οὐδὲν τοίνυν θαυμαστὸν καὶ νῦν
on the same having-stood nothing therefore marvelous also now
τὰ ἑαυτῶν δρᾶσαί τε καὶ παθεῖν, καὶ Ῥωμαίους
the(-things) of-themselves to-have-done both and to-have-suffered and Romans
μὲν τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ τὴν τύχην ἀπολιπεῖν, πρὸς ἑτέρους
indeed the rule and the fortune to-have-left to others
δὲ διαβῆναί τε καὶ μεταχωρῆσαι, ὥσπερ ἐξ ἄλλων ἐς
and to-have-crossed both and to-have-moved as from others to
τούτους, πανταχοῦ τὴν ἰδίαν φύσιν τε καὶ τάξιν τηροῦντα.
these everywhere the own nature both and order keeping
Πῶς οὖν ἔνεστιν ἡμῖν δικαίως τοῦ γένους κατηγορεῖν,
how then is-it-possible for-us justly the race to-accuse
ὡς μὴ δυνηθέντος διὰ τέλους κατασχεῖν τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν
as not having-been-able to the-end to-hold-fast the prosperity
καὶ τηρῆσαι τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ τὴν τύχην ἀπαρασάλευτον; Εἰ
and to-keep the rule and the fortune unshaken if
δέ τινες ἐν καιροῖς ἰδίοις τῶν πραγμάτων ἐπιστατοῦντες,
but some in times own of-the affairs presiding
μοχθηρίᾳ φύσεως κακοὶ γεγόνασι περὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν, καὶ
by-wickedness of-nature bad have-become about the rule and

τοῖς πράγμασιν οὐκ ἐς δέον ἐχρήσαντο, οὐκ ἔστι τοῦτο
the affairs not as was-needed used not is this
τοῦ γένους ἁμάρτημα, ἀλλὰ τῶν κακῶς τε καὶ ὡς
of-the race fault but of-the(-ones) badly both and as
οὐκ ἔδει χρησαμένων τοῖς πράγμασιν· οὓς καὶ δίκαιον
not was-needed having-used the affairs whom also just
μόνους εὐθύνειν, ἀλλὰ μὴ τοῦ γένους κατηγορεῖν, ὥσπερ
alone to-call-to-account but not the race to-accuse just
δὴ καὶ τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἐπαινεῖν καὶ τὰ τούτων ἔργα ἐκ
indeed also the good to-praise and the of-these works by
παντὸς τρόπου θαυμάζειν τε καὶ κοσμεῖν, καὶ μὴ διὰ τὴν
every way to-marvel-at both and to-adorn and not because-of the
ἐνίων ῥᾳθυμίαν τε καὶ κακίαν ἀποστερεῖν ἐθέλειν τούτους
of-some slackness both and wickedness to-deprive to-wish them
τῶν ἐπαίνων καὶ τῶν ἄθλων τῆς ἀρετῆς· ἀλλ᾽ οὐ δίκαιον.
of-the praises and of-the prizes of-the virtue but not just
Τοῦτο τοίνυν καὶ Ἰώσηπος ὁ Ἑβραῖος εἰδὼς, φιλαλήθης
this therefore also Josephus the Hebrew knowing truth-loving
ὢν καὶ τοῖς πράγμασι καλῶς ἐφιστῶν, ἐπαινεῖ μὲν ἐν
being and to-the affairs well attending praises indeed in
τῷ τῆς ἁλώσεως βιβλίῳ τὴν Ῥωμαίων τύχην καὶ ἀρετὴν
the of-the capture book the of-Romans fortune and virtue
καὶ τῷ λόγῳ φιλαλήθως ἐπαιρεῖ, καθάπτεται δὲ τῶν ἐν
and by-the account truthfully exalts attacks but the in
τῷ γένει φανέντων κακῶν, τούς τε μηδὲν ἠδικηκότας
the race having-appeared evils the and nothing having-done-wrong
τῶν ὀνειδῶν ἀπαλλάττει· ὃ δὴ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐξ ἅπαντος
from-the reproaches releases which indeed also we by every
τρόπου ποιήσομεν, μηδὲν ὑποστειλάμενοι τὸ παράπαν,
way we-will-do nothing having-held-back at all

ἀλλ᾽ ἐν πᾶσι τό τε προσῆκον καὶ τὴν ἀλήθειαν σώζοντες.
but in all the both fitting and the truth preserving
Καὶ τούτων μὲν ἅλις, τῶν δὲ προκειμένων ἐχώμεθα.
and of-these indeed enough of-the but proposed(-things) let-us-hold
Ἔτος μὲν οὖν ἐνειστήκει τῶν ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς ἔννατον καὶ 4.1
year indeed then had-begun of-the(-years) from beginning ninth and
πεντηκοστὸν πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις, καὶ
fiftieth besides the nine-hundred both and six-thousand and
τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον Μωράτης ὁ βασιλεὺς, ζήσας τὰ πάντα
ends the life Murad the emperor having-lived the all
δύο καὶ πεντήκοντα ἔτη, ἄρξας δὲ ἓν καὶ τριάκοντα,
two and fifty years having-ruled and one and thirty
ἀνὴρ ἄριστος ἐν πᾶσι καὶ μεγαλόφρων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ
man best in all and great-minded but indeed also
στρατηγικώτατος καὶ πολλὰ παρὰ τὸν βίον ἐπιδεξάμενος
most-skilled-in-generalship and many in the life having-undertaken
ἔργα γενναῖα καὶ θαυμαστὰ, ὥσπερ δὴ μαρτυροῦσιν αἱ
works noble and marvelous as indeed bear-witness the
πράξεις αὐταὶ, τοῦ λαμπροτάτου γένους ὢν Ἀτουμάνων,
deeds themselves of-the most-brilliant race being of-Ottomans
ἕκτος αὐτὸς, εὐγενὴς ἐξ εὐγενῶν. Οὗτοι δὲ τοῦ παλαιτάτου
sixth he noble from nobles these and of-the most-ancient
γένους εἰσὶν Ἀχαιμενιδῶν τε καὶ Περσειδῶν, ἀφ᾽ ὧν δὴ
race are of-Achaemenids both and of-Perseids from which indeed
γενῶν οἱ τῶν Περσῶν βασιλεῖς πάντες κατήγοντο· ἦσαν
races the of-the Persians kings all descended there-were
μὲν γὰρ δὴ καὶ ἄλλα γένη Περσῶν, ὡς Ἡρόδοτος
indeed for indeed also other races of-Persians as Herodotus
(1, 126) ἱστορεῖ, ἀλλὰ δημοτικὰ καὶ κοινά, ταῦτα δὲ
1 126 relates but common and ordinary these but
μόνα ἐξαίρετα ἦσαν τῶν βασιλέων, τὸ ἀνέκαθεν ἀπὸ
alone select were of-the kings from-the beginning from

Ἀχαιμένου καὶ Περσέως ἔχοντα τὴν ἀρχήν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν
Achaemenes and Perseus having the origin these and were
Ἕλληνες ἀπὸ Δαναοῦ καταγόμενοι καὶ Λυγκέως, οἵτινες
Hellenes from Danaus descended and Lynkeus who
Αἰγύπτιοι ὄντες τὸ ἐξαρχῆς ἐκ πόλεως Χέμμιος τῆς ἐν
Egyptians being at-the start from city Chemmis the(-one) in
τῷ ἕλει κειμένης ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μετῳκίσθησαν· χρόνοις δὲ
the marsh lying to — Hellas migrated in-times and
ὕστερον οἱ τούτων ἀπόγονοι (Ἀχαιμενίδαι τε καὶ Περσεῖδαι)
later the of-these descendants Achaemenids both and Perseids
κατὰ ξυμφορὰς διαβάντες ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν, ἐν Περσίδι τὴν
through misfortunes having-crossed to — Asia in Persis the
ἀρχὴν κατεστήσαντο, καὶ τελευτήσαντες οὗτοι κατέλιπον
rule established and having-died these left
τό τε γένος καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τῷ τόπῳ. Τελευτήσαντος
the both race and the name to-the place having-died
δ', ἥπερ ἔφην, Μωράτεω, παραλαμβάνει τὴν βασιλείαν
and as I-said Murad takes-over the kingship
Μεχεμέτης ὁ τούτου υἱὸς, ἕβδομος αὐτὸς, εἰκοστὸν ἔτος
Mehmed the his son seventh he twentieth year
ἄγων ἤδη τῆς ἡλικίας, μετάπεμπτος ἐξ Ἀσίας γεγονώς·
leading already of-the age summoned from Asia having-become
ἐκεῖ γὰρ εἶχε τὴν ἀρχὴν, δόντος αὐτῷ τοῦ πατρός.
there for he-had the rule having-given to-him the father
Πολλὰ δ' εὐθὺς τότε καὶ παρὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς ὑπεσήμηνε τὸ
many and at-once then also against the custom signified the
θεῖον ἀήθη τέ τινα καὶ τερατώδη, ὥσπερ δὴ κἂν
divine unaccustomed both some and portentous as indeed both-in
τῇ τούτου γεννήσει, οὕτω δὴ κἂν τῇ εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν
the his birth so indeed also-in the into the kingship
παρόδῳ· σεισμοί τε γὰρ ἀήθεις καὶ ξένοι γεγόνασι, καὶ
accession earthquakes both for unaccustomed and strange have-happened and

βρασμοὶ γῆς καὶ τὰ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ, βρονταί τε καὶ
heavings of-earth and the(-things) from heaven thunders both and
ἀστραπαὶ καὶ σκηπτοὶ καὶ πρηστῆρες φρικώδεις καὶ σέλας
lightnings and thunderbolts and whirlwinds dreadful and blaze
ὁρώμενον καὶ οἷα πολλὰ πολλάκις προφοιβάζειν φιλεῖ
seen and such-as many often to-foretell is-wont
τὸ θεῖον ἐπὶ ταῖς μεγίσταις τῶν καθεστώτων καινοτομίαις
the divine at the greatest of-the established innovations
τε καὶ μεταβολαῖς· οἵ τε μάντεις τε καὶ θεοφορούμενοι
both and changes the and seers both and god-possessed
καὶ δὴ καὶ χρησμολόγοι καὶ θεοπρόποι πολλὰ ἐπεθείαζόν
and indeed also oracle-mongers and prophets many prophesied
τε καὶ εἶδον ἐπί (τε) τοῖς μέλλουσι γίνεσθαι καὶ
both and saw for both the(-things) about to-happen and
ἅμα παραδηλοῦντα τὴν τοῦ νέου βασιλέως ἐσομένην
at-once indicating the of-the new emperor going-to-be
περὶ πάντα τύχην καὶ ἀρετὴν, καὶ ὡς μέγιστον ἐν πᾶσιν
in all fortune and virtue and how greatest in all
ἔσται τὸ κράτος αὐτῷ, καὶ πάντας ὑπερβαλεῖται τοὺς
will-be the power for-him and all he-will-surpass the
πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέας πολλῷ τινι καὶ ἀπείρῳ τῷ μέσῳ
before him emperors by-much some and boundless the interval
ἐπί τε δόξῃ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δυναστείᾳ καὶ κατορθώμασι.
in both glory and wealth and power and successes
Καταστὰς δὲ κληρονόμος μεγάλης ἀρχῆς καὶ πολλῶν 5.1
having-been-established and heir of-great rule and of-much
μὲν χρημάτων, πολλῶν δὲ ὅπλων, πολλῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν
indeed money of-many and arms of-many and soldiers
τε καὶ καταλόγων γενόμενος κύριος, καὶ τί γὰρ [ἄλλο]
both and of-registers having-become lord and what for else
ἢ τὰ πλεῖστα καὶ κράτιστα τῆς Ἀσίας τε καὶ Εὐρώπης
than the most and strongest — of-Asia both and of-Europe

ἔχων ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν, οὐκ ἀποχρῆν ἐνόμισεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα,
having under himself not to-suffice he-thought for-him these(-things)
οὐδὲ τοῖς παροῦσιν ἠγάπησεν, ἀλλ᾽ εὐθὺς πᾶσαν ἐπέτρεχε
nor with-the present was-content but at-once all he-overran
τὴν οἰκουμένην τῷ λογισμῷ, καὶ τὴν ταύτης ἀρχὴν
the inhabited-world with-the reckoning and the of-it rule
εἶχεν ἐν νῷ, καὶ πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον ἑώρα καὶ Πομπηίους
had in mind and to Alexander looked and Pompeys
καὶ Καίσαρας καὶ τοὺς κατ᾽ ἐκείνους βασιλεῖς τε καὶ
and Caesars and the in their(-time) kings both and
στρατηγούς. Εἶχε μὲν γὰρ καὶ τὴν φύσιν ξυνεργοῦσαν
generals he-had indeed for also the nature cooperating
καλῶς, τό τε δραστήριον αὐτῆς καὶ ὀξὺ περὶ πάντα, καὶ
well the both energy of-it and keenness about all and
τὸ τῆς ψυχῆς ἄγαν ἀρχικὸν καὶ βασιλικόν· μάλιστα δὲ
the of-the soul exceedingly ruling and kingly most and
πρὸς τοῦτο ἐνῆγον αὐτὸν ἥ τε σοφία καὶ τὸ πάντα τὰ
toward this urged him the both wisdom and the all the(-things)
τῶν παλαιῶν εἰδέναι καλῶς· ἤσκητο γὰρ ἐς ἄκρον πᾶσαν
of-the ancients to-know well he-had-trained for to the-height all
τὴν Ἀράβων καὶ Περσῶν καὶ ὅση τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐς τὴν
the of-Arabs and of-Persians and as-much-as of-the Hellenes into the
Ἀράβων τε καὶ Περσῶν γλῶσσαν μεθηρμηνεύθη, λέγω δὴ
of-Arabs both and of-Persians tongue was-translated I-mean indeed
τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ Περιπάτου καὶ τῆς Στοᾶς, παιδευταῖς
of-the(-ones) from the Peripatos and the Stoa teachers
χρησάμενος Ἀράβων τε καὶ Περσῶν τοῖς σπουδαιοτάτοις
having-used of-Arabs both and of-Persians the most-earnest
τε καὶ σοφοῖς τὰ τοιαῦτα. Οὕτω δὲ γνώμης ἔχων καὶ
both and wise in-the such(-things) thus and of-mind being and
τοιούτοις χρώμενος λογισμοῖς, οὐδεμίαν ἀναβολὴν ἔτι
such using reckonings no delay any-longer

δίδωσι τῷ τε καιρῷ καὶ τοῖς πράγμασιν, ἀλλ' εὐθὺς ὅλος
gives to-the both occasion and to-the affairs but at-once wholly
γίνεται τούτων. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν σπένδεται Ῥωμαίοις καὶ
becomes of-these and first indeed makes-truce with-Romans and
βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντίνῳ· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ Καραμάνῳ τῷ
emperor Constantine after and this also with-Karaman the
τῆς ἄνω Φρυγίας τε καὶ Κιλικίας ἐπάρχοντι, ἔς γε τὸ
of-the upper Phrygia both and Cilicia governing for at-least the
παρὸν λυσιτελεῖν τοῦτο τοῖς αὐτοῦ πράγμασιν ἡγησάμενος.
present to-profit this the his affairs having-judged
Ἔπειτα ἐς ἐξέτασιν καθίσταται τῆς ὅλης ἀρχῆς, τάς τε
next into review sets-himself of-the whole rule the both
τῶν ὑπ' αὐτῷ γενῶν σατραπείας φιλονεικῶν, καὶ τοὺς
of-the under him races satrapies contending and the(-ones)
μὲν ἐκβάλλων, τοὺς δὲ ἀντεισάγων τῶν σατραπῶν,
indeed casting-out the(-ones) and bringing-in-instead of-the satraps
ὅσοι τούτῳ ἐδόκουν στρατηγίᾳ τε καὶ ξυνέσει
as-many-as to-him seemed in-generalship both and understanding
διαφέρειν τῶν ἄλλων καὶ μὴν καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ· ἐμέλησε
to-surpass the others and indeed also in-justice it-concerned
γὰρ καὶ τούτου πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων αὐτῷ, τοῦ ὡς ἄριστα καὶ
for also this before the others him the as best and
δικαιότατα τὴν ὑφ' αὐτῷ πᾶσαν ἀρχὴν διοικεῖσθαι. Ἔτι
most-justly the under him all rule to-be-administered further
δὲ τοὺς καταλόγους καὶ τὰς τάξεις τῶν στρατευμάτων
and the registers and the ranks of-the armies
ἐξήτασε, τό τε ἱππικὸν ἅμα καὶ ὁπλιτικὸν τούς τε ἐκ
he-examined the both cavalry at-once and infantry the both from
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ταμιείου τρεφομένους· καὶ μάλιστα δὴ
the royal treasury maintained and most indeed
τὴν βασίλειον αὐλὴν διὰ φροντίδος ἐποιεῖτο πολλῆς καὶ
the royal court through care he-made much and

ἐς ἐπίδοσιν ἦγε· λέγω δὴ τοὺς νεοδαμώδεις τούτους καὶ
to increase led I-mean indeed the newly-enrolled these and
πεζαιτέρους καὶ τὸ περὶ αὐτὸν ἄγημα, οὓς τῇ σφῶν
foot-soldiers and the about him guard whom in-the their
γλώττῃ γενητζάρους καλεῖν εἰώθασι, νέον ξύνταγμα τῆς
tongue janissaries to-call are-accustomed new corps the
φωνῆς σημαινούσης, εἰδὼς ταύτῃ τὸ κράτος προσὸν αὐτῷ
word signifying knowing in-this the power being-present to-him
καὶ τῇ τοῦ σώματος φυλακῇ καὶ τῇ τῆς ὅλης ἀρχῆς.
both in-the of-the body guard and in-the of-the whole rule
Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὅπλων τε καὶ βελῶν καὶ τῶν ἐς
besides and these of-arms both and of-missiles and of-the(-things) for
τὴν τοῦ πολέμου χρείαν τε καὶ παρασκευὴν ἀναγκαίων
the of-the war need both and preparation necessary
τε καὶ χρησίμων ξυλλογὴν ἐποιεῖτο. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
both and useful collection he-made after and these(-things)
τοὺς θησαυροὺς ἀνηρεύνα τοὺς πατρικοὺς, ἀνακρίνων ὅτι
the treasuries he-searched the paternal questioning as
μάλιστα τοὺς τούτων ταμίας, τούς τε τῶν ἐτησίων
most the of-these stewards the both of-the yearly
φόρων ἄρχοντας ἀκριβῶς ἐξήταζε, καὶ ἐς ἀνάγκην
tributes officials exactly he-examined and into necessity
ἦγε λογοθεσιῶν. Καὶ πολλὰ δὴ τῶν δημοσίων τε
brought of-accountings and many indeed of-the public both
καὶ βασιλικῶν χρημάτων εὗρε κακῶς δαπανώμενα καὶ
and royal moneys he-found badly being-spent and
ἐς οὐδὲν ἀναλισκόμενα δέον, τριτημόριόν που μάλιστα
on nothing being-used-up needful a-third-part about most
τῶν ἐπετείων φόρων, ἃ καὶ τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμιείῳ
of-the yearly tributes which also to-the royal treasury
ἐπανεσώσατο, ἔς τε τὸ ἑξῆς καλῶς διετήρησε τὴν τούτων
he-recovered for both the next well he-maintained the of-these

φυλακὴν, τούς τε ἐτησίους φόρους ἐς μεγίστην ἐπίδοσιν
guarding the both yearly tributes to greatest increase
ἤγαγε, πολλούς τε τῶν φορολόγων ἀρχόντων σωφρονίσας
he-led many both of-the tribute-collecting officials having-chastened
τῷ φόβῳ, καὶ πιστοὺς καὶ φρονίμους ἀντικαταστήσας
with-the fear and trustworthy and prudent having-appointed-instead
αὐτῶν ἐς τὴν τούτων ξυλλογήν τε καὶ φυλακήν· ὁ
of-them for the of-these collection both and guarding the
γάρ τοι πατὴρ αὐτοῦ ἁπλοώτερόν πως τοῖς πράγμασι
for surely father his more-simply somehow to-the affairs
προσεφέρετο, καὶ τῶν τοιούτων βραχὺν ἐποίει λόγον.
conducted-himself and of-the such(-things) small made account
Διατιθεμένῳ δὲ ταῦθ' οὕτως τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ
arranging and these(-things) thus to-the emperor and the(-affairs)
κατὰ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἄριστα καὶ κάλλιστα διοικοῦντι καὶ πρὸς
in the rule best and finest administering and for
μειζόνων ἔργων παρασκευὴν ἑτοιμάζοντι ἐξήκει τὸ
greater works preparation making-ready comes-to-its-end the
πεντηκοστὸν καὶ ἔννατον ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις καὶ
fiftieth and ninth year besides the nine-hundred and
ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις, πρῶτον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
six-thousand in-the total first and of-the rule for-the emperor
Ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ὅλος γίνεται τοῦ προκειμένου σκοποῦ. Ὁ δὲ 6.1
he and at-once wholly becomes of-the proposed aim which and
ἦν· φρούριον ἐρυμνὸν ἔγνω τειχίσαι ἐν τῷ Βοσπόρῳ ἀπὸ
was fortress strong he-resolved to-wall in — Bosporus on
τοῦ τῆς Εὐρώπης μέρους καταντικρὺ τοῦ πέραν φρουρίου
the — of-Europe side opposite the across fortress
τῆς Ἀσίας, ταύτῃ ᾗ στενότατόν τε καὶ ῥοωδέστατον, καὶ
— of-Asia there where narrowest both and most-rushing and
διαλαβεῖν τὸν πορθμὸν, καὶ ξυνάψαι τὰς ἠπείρους ἀμφοτέρας
to-cut-off the strait and to-join the continents both

Ἀσίαν τε καὶ Εὐρώπην, καὶ ἐφ᾽ αὐτῷ ποιήσασθαι τὴν
Asia both and Europe and in his(-power) to-make the
τούτων διάβασιν, ὅταν αὐτῷ βουλομένῳ ᾖ, καὶ μὴ ἐπ᾽
of-these crossing whenever for-him wishing it-be and not in
ἄλλοις εἶναι διαβῆναί τε καὶ μή, μηδὲ δισταμένων ἄρχειν
others to-be to-cross both and not nor being-divided to-rule
αὐτῶν. Ἤδει γὰρ καλῶς ὅσα καὶ οἷα πράγματα τὸ
them he-knew for well how-many and what-sort troubles the
τοιοῦτον παρέσχεν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῷ προτοῦ χρόνῳ ἐπί
such(-place) caused them in the former time in-the-time-of
τε τῶν πάππων καὶ τοῦ πατρὸς, καὶ ὅσην ἐναντίωσιν
both the grandfathers and the father and how-much opposition
ἤνεγκε τοῦτο τοῖς σφῶν πράγμασι, καὶ ὡς ὀλίγου ἐδέησε
brought this to-the their affairs and how by-little it-fell-short
πολλάκις τὴν ἑτέραν αὐτοὺς τῶν ἠπείρων ἀποβαλεῖν,
often the one them of-the continents to-lose
τοῦτο μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τῆς
this indeed the emperor of-the Romans in the-vantage of-the
πόλεως καθημένου καὶ ἐφεδρεύοντος ἀεὶ τοῖς καιροῖς
city sitting and lying-in-wait always for-the occasions
τε καὶ πράγμασι, τά τε πολλὰ θαλασσοκρατοῦντος καὶ
both and affairs the and most ruling-the-sea and
ἐπεξάγοντος αὐτοῖς ἔστιν ὅτε τοῦ σφῶν γένους ὃν
sending-out against-them it-is when of-the their race whomever
ἂν ἐθέλῃ, καὶ βλάπτοντος, τοῦτο δὲ καὶ τῶν Ἰταλῶν
— he-wishes and harming this and also the Italians
καὶ μάλιστα δὴ τῶν Ἐνετῶν ἐν ταῖς μεταξὺ σφῶν
and most indeed the Venetians in the between them
διαφοραῖς τριήρεσιν ἐπιπλεόντων μακραῖς πολλάκις τόν τε
quarrels with-triremes sailing-against long often — both
Βόσπορον καὶ Ἑλλήσποντον, καὶ κωλυόντων τὴν τούτων
Bosporus and Hellespont and hindering the of-these

διάβασιν. Οὐ ταῦτα δὲ μόνον ἐνῆγεν αὐτὸν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι καὶ
crossing not these(-things) and only urged him but that also
πρὸς τὸν προκείμενόν οἱ σκοπὸν καλῶς ἔχειν ἐδόκει τὸ
for the proposed to-him aim well to-be it-seemed the
φρούριον τειχισθὲν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν ὅσον οὐ καὶ μελετωμένην
fortress walled and for the all but also being-planned
πολιορκίαν τῆς πόλεως ἐπιτειχισμὸν ἐνόμιζεν ἰσχυρότατον,
siege of-the city fortification-against he-thought strongest
ἀποκλείων αὐτῷ οὐ μόνον τὰς ἠπείρους Ἀσίαν τε καὶ
shutting-off for-him not only the continents Asia both and
Εὐρώπην, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὰς θαλάσσας ἀμφοτέρας,
Europe but indeed also the seas both
ἄνω μὲν τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον διὰ τοῦ Βοσπόρου,
above indeed — Euxine sea through — Bosporus
κάτω δὲ τόν τε Αἰγαῖον καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν
below and — both Aegean and all — Hellenic
θάλασσαν διὰ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου. Οὕτω δὲ διανοηθεὶς,
sea through — Hellespont thus and having-resolved
χειμῶνος μὲν τὰ πρὸς τὴν οἰκοδομὴν πάντα κελεύει
in-winter indeed the(-things) for the building all he-orders
παρασκευάζεσθαι, λίθους τέ φημι καὶ ξύλα καὶ σίδηρον
to-be-prepared stones both I-mean and timbers and iron
καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα πρὸς τοῦτο χρήσιμα, ἄρχοντας ἐπιστήσας
and whatever other for this useful officials having-set-over
τοῖς ἔργοις τοὺς σπουδαιοτάτους τε καὶ ἐμπειροτάτους,
the works the most-earnest both and most-experienced
ἐντειλάμενος τὴν ταχίστην ἅπαντά οἱ εὐτρεπῆ θέσθαι,
having-commanded the quickest all for-him ready to-make
ὡς ἅμα ἦρι ἀψομένῳ τοῦ ἔργου. Καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτως.
as at-once with-spring about-to-take-up the work and he indeed thus

7.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ οἱ τῆς πόλεως
emperor and Constantine and the(-ones) of-the city
τοῦτο μαθόντες δεινὸν ἡγοῦντο τὸ πρᾶγμα καὶ μεγάλων
this having-learned terrible thought the affair and of-great
κακῶν ἀρχὴν καὶ δουλείας πρόδηλον ἀφορμὴν, νομίζοντες,
evils beginning and of-slavery manifest starting-point considering
ὅπερ ἦν ἀληθές, ἐπιτειχισμόν σφισί τε αὐτοῖς καὶ τῇ
which was true fortification-against for-them both themselves and for-the
πόλει κατασκευάζεσθαι τοῦτο, καὶ δυσφόρως ἔφερον.
city to-be-built this and grievously bore(-it)
Ἔδοξεν οὖν ὡς ἐκ τῶν παρόντων αὐτοῖς πρεσβείαν
it-seemed then as from the present for-them embassy
τε πέμπειν καὶ πειρᾶσθαι εἰ δύναιντο τρόπῳ παντὶ τῷ
both to-send and to-try if they-could by-way every the
δυνατῷ τὴν ἐπιχείρησιν ταύτην κωλύειν· καὶ πέμπουσι
possible the undertaking this to-hinder and they-send
δή (πρέσβεις). Οἱ δὲ ἀφικόμενοι λόγοις τε παντοίοις
indeed envoys they and having-arrived words both of-every-kind
ἐχρῶντο, τῶν τε ξυνθηκῶν καὶ τῶν ὡμολογημένων
used of-the both treaties and of-the(-things) agreed
ἀναμιμνήσκοντες, καὶ ὡς ἐν πάσαις ταῖς προγεγενημέναις
reminding and that in all the previously-made
τε καὶ ἀναγεγραμμέναις αὐτοῖς σπονδαῖς ἐπί τε τῶν
both and recorded by-them truces in-the-time-of both the
πάππων καὶ τοῦ πατρὸς, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ αὐτοῦ, παντάπασιν
grandfathers and the father but indeed also his(-own) altogether
ἀπείρητο μηδένα κτίζειν ἐν τῷδε τῷ χώρῳ μήτε
it-had-been-forbidden no-one to-build in this the place neither
φρούριον μήτε ἄλλο τι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν βουλόμενον
fortress nor other anything but also the(-one) wishing
ἢ ὅλως ἐπιχειρήσοντα καὶ ἀμφοτέρους κωλύειν τρόπῳ
or at-all going-to-attempt even both to-hinder by-way

παντί, καὶ διεσώθη τὸ ἐξ ἐκείνου μέχρι καὶ νῦν· "ὁ
every and was-preserved the from that(-time) until even now the
χῶρος ἐλεύθερος, διάβασις δὲ μόνον ἁπλῶς, ἔφασαν, τῶν
place free crossing but only simply they-said of-the
ὑμετέρων στρατευμάτων τῶν τε ἄλλων ἀποσκευῶν ἐξ
your armies of-the and other baggage from
ἠπείρου ἐς ἤπειρον." Καὶ ἅμα ἠξίουν μηδαμοῦ λύειν τὰς
continent to continent and at-once they-asked nowhere to-break the
σπονδὰς χθὲς δὴ καὶ πρώην γεγενημένας μικρῶν
truces yesterday indeed and the-day-before made of-small(-things)
ἕνεκα, μηδὲ ἀδικεῖν ἐθέλειν μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντας αὐτούς.
for-the-sake nor to-wrong to-wish in-nothing wronging them
Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἀποκρίνεται τούτοις· "Οὔτε ἀδικεῖν ὑμᾶς, 8.1
emperor and answers to-them neither to-wrong you
ἄνδρες Ῥωμαῖοι, ἡγοῦμαι, οὔτε παρὰ τὰ ξυγκείμενα
men Romans I-think nor against the(-things) agreed
πράττειν καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς ἐν τῷδε τῷ ἔργῳ, ἀσφαλίζεσθαι
to-act and the truces in this the work to-secure
δὲ μόνον τὰ ἑαυτοῦ, μὴ μετὰ βλάβης μέντοιγε
but only the(-things) of-himself not with harm however
ὑμετέρας· ἕκαστον δὲ τὰ ἴδια φυλάττειν καὶ βεβαιοῦν
your each and the own(-things) to-guard and to-make-firm
μηδαμοῦ τοὺς ἐνσπόνδους βλάπτοντα δίκαιόν τέ ἐστι
nowhere the treaty-partners harming just both is
καὶ ἀνεμέσητον, καὶ πᾶσιν ἐφεῖται. Ἐγὼ δὲ, ὡς ὁρᾶτε,
and blameless and to-all is-permitted I and as you-see
Ἀσίας τε καὶ Εὐρώπης ἄρχω ἠπείρων διισταμένων
of-Asia both and of-Europe rule continents standing-apart
ἀλλήλαις, καὶ πολλοὺς ἔχω τοὺς ἐναντιουμένους τε καὶ
from-one-another and many I-have the(-ones) opposing both and
ἀνθισταμένους τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ ἀρχῇ ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ τούτων, καὶ
resisting the our rule in each of-these and

δεῖ πανταχοῦ τε παρεῖναί με καὶ ἀμφοτέραις ἀρκεῖν,
it-is-needed everywhere both to-be-present me and both to-suffice-for
εἴ γε μὴ βουλοίμην ἐξίστασθαι τούτων ἑκὼν εἶναι τοῖς
if at-least not I-should-wish to-give-up these willingly at-all to-the
ἡμετέροις ἐχθροῖς. Ἴστε δὲ δήπου καλῶς ὅσα καὶ
our enemies you-know and surely well how-many and
οἷα πράγματα παρέσχον ἐπὶ τοῦ μου πατρὸς αἱ
what-sort troubles caused in-the-time-of the my father the
τριήρεις τῶν Ἰταλῶν βουλομένοις διαβῆναι κατὰ Παιόνων
triremes of-the Italians to-us-wishing to-cross against Paionians
ἐπελθόντων τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ, περιπλέουσαί τε τὴν ἡμετέραν
having-attacked the our(-land) sailing-around both the our
θάλασσαν καὶ κωλύουσαι διαβαίνειν ἡμᾶς. Δεῖ οὖν
sea and hindering to-cross us it-is-needed then
ἀποτειχίσαι τε τὴν ἐπιχείρησιν ταύτην αὐτοῖς, καὶ
to-wall-off both the attempt this for-them and
ἀσφαλίσασθαι τὴν ἡμετέραν, καὶ μὴ πρὸς τῷ βλαβερῷ καὶ
to-secure the our(-land) and not besides the harm also
πᾶσιν ὄφλειν αἰσχύνην ἡμᾶς ὡς μὴ δυναμένους φυλάξαι
to-all to-incur shame us as not being-able to-guard
τὴν ἡμετέραν θάλασσαν καὶ ἀρχήν. Ὁ δὲ χῶρος οὗτος, ἐν
the our sea and rule the and place this in
ᾧ τὸ φρούριον μέλλω τειχίζειν, ἡμέτερός τέ ἐστι καὶ
which the fortress I-am-about to-wall ours both is and
τῶν ἡμετέρων διάβασις ἄνωθεν, ἀπό τε Ἀσίας ἐς τὴν
of-the our(-people) crossing from-of-old from both Asia into —
Εὐρώπην καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἐς τὴν ἑτέραν, καὶ οὐ δεῖ
Europe and from this into the other and not it-is-needed
δήπου πολυπραγμονεῖν ὅλως ὑμᾶς, εἴ γε βούλοισθε τὴν
surely to-meddle at-all you if at-least you-should-wish the
εἰρήνην ἄγειν, εἰ μή που καὶ αὐτοὶ τῆς διαβάσεως
peace to-keep if not perhaps also yourselves from-the crossing

ταύτης εἴργειν ἡμᾶς βούλοισθε· τοῦτο γὰρ ἄλλος ἂν
this to-bar us you-should-wish this for other —
εἴη λόγος. Σπονδὰς δὲ οὔτε λύω οὔτε βουλήσομαι,
would-be account truces and neither I-break nor I-will-wish
μενόντων καὶ ὑμῶν κατὰ χώραν καὶ μηδαμοῦ τὰ ἡμέτερα
remaining also you in place and nowhere the our(-affairs)
πολυπραγμονούντων μηδὲ περιεργάζεσθαι βουλομένων."
meddling-in nor to-busy-yourselves wishing
Ταῦτα ἀποκρινάμενος ἀποπέμπει τοὺς πρέσβεις. Οἱ 9.1
these(-things) having-answered he-dismisses the envoys they
δὲ ἐπανήκοντες ἀπαγγέλλουσι πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ
and returning report all to-the emperor
Κωνσταντίνῳ καὶ τοῖς ἐν τέλει Ῥωμαίοις, τά τε ἄλλα
Constantine and to-the in office Romans the both other(-things)
καὶ δὴ καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἔνεστιν ὅλως διακωλῦσαι τὴν
and indeed also that not it-is-possible at-all to-prevent the
ἐπιχείρησιν ταύτην οὔτε λόγοις οὔτε πειθοῖ, βίᾳ
attempt this neither by-words nor by-persuasion by-force
μέντοιγε μόνῃ, εἰ δύναιντο. Οἱ δὲ, καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς
however alone if they-could they and indeed for it-seemed to-them
πρᾶγμα σφόδρα δεινὸν, ὥσπερ δῆτα καὶ ἦν, μὴ ἔχοντες
affair very terrible as indeed also it-was not having
μέντοιγε ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν, καὶ ἄκοντες ἡσυχίαν ἦγον.
however what thing also they-might-do and unwilling quiet kept
Μεχέμετις δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὡς ἔαρ ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, καὶ 10.1
Mehmed and the emperor when spring was-showing already and
πάντα οἱ ἦν εὐτρεπῆ, πληρώσας τριήρεις τριάκοντα καὶ
all for-him was ready having-manned triremes thirty and
καλῶς ὁπλίσας ὡς ἐς ναυμαχίαν, εἴ γε τούτου δεήσειεν
well having-armed as for sea-battle if at-least this it-should-need
εἴ ποτέ τις ἐναντίωσις εἴη, παρασκευάσας δὲ καὶ ἕτερα
if ever any opposition should-be having-prepared and also other

πλοῖα σκευαγωγὰ πλεῖστα, ἀπὸ Καλλιουπόλεως ἐξέπεμψεν
boats baggage-carrying very-many from Kallipolis sent-out
ἐπὶ Βόσπορον· αὐτὸς δὲ στρατῷ πολλῷ κατὰ γῆν
to Bosporus himself and with-army large by land
ἐπορεύετο. Καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸν πορθμὸν ἑβδομαῖος, καθίζει
marched having-reached and the strait on-the-seventh-day settles
τὴν στρατιάν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἀναλαβὼν τῶν ἐν τέλει τινὰς,
the army and himself having-taken of-the(-ones) in office some
ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ γερόντων ἐνίους, οὓς ἤδει τῶν τοιούτων
but indeed also of-elders certain whom he-knew of-the such(-things)
ἀκριβῆ πεῖραν ἔχοντας, παριππεύων κατεσκόπει τὸν χῶρον
exact experience having riding-alongside surveyed the place
τήν τε θέσιν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸ κομιδῇ στενὸν τοῦ πορθμοῦ καὶ
the both position of-it and the very narrow of-the strait and
σφόδρα συνεσταλμένον, τούς τε ἑλικοειδεῖς ἀγκῶνας καὶ τῶν
exceedingly contracted the both spiral elbows and of-the
πρωνῶν τὰς πυκνὰς ἐξοχάς τε καὶ ἐς τὰ ἔσω ξυννεύσεις
headlands the frequent projections both and into the inside convergings
τε καὶ καμπὰς, τοῦ τε ῥοῦ τὸν ὀξύτατον δρόμον καὶ
both and bends of-the both current the swiftest running and
τὰς ἐγγινομένας αὐτῷ διὰ τοὺς ἀγκῶνας ξυνεχεῖς δίνας
the arising in-it because-of the elbows continuous eddies
καὶ παλιρροίας καὶ ἰλίγγας, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα δυσεκπλότατόν
and back-flows and whirlpools and whatever other hardest-to-sail-out
τε καὶ δυσδιεξίτητον ποιεῖ τὸν πορθμόν· ἃ δὴ καὶ
both and hard-to-pass-through makes the strait which indeed also
οἱ παλαιοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατανοήσαντες Συμπληγάδας
the ancient of-the Hellenes having-observed Symplegades
τὸν χῶρον ὠνόμασαν, καὶ Ἡρακλέα τε πρῶτον ἔφασαν
the place named and Herakles both first they-said
διαβῆναι ταύτας, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον [ξὺν] τοῖς Ἀργοναύταις
to-have-crossed these and after him with the Argonauts

Ἰάσονα, ξὺν πόνῳ μέντοι γε πλείστῳ καὶ τούτους διά
Jason with toil however at-least very-great also these because-of
τε τὸ κατησφαλισμένον καὶ οἱονεὶ πεφραγμένον τε καὶ
both the secured and as-it-were fenced both and
ξυμπλῆττον τῇ τε στενότητι τοῦ χωρίου καὶ τοῦ πορθμοῦ
clashing by-the both narrowness of-the place and of-the strait
καὶ ταῖς πυκναῖς τῶν ἄκρων ἐσοχαῖς τε καὶ ἐξοχαῖς, ὡς
and by-the frequent of-the headlands recesses both and projections so-as
δοκεῖν κύκλωθεν ἤπειρον εἶναι τοῖς ἀναπλέουσί τε καὶ
to-seem all-around mainland to-be to-the(-ones) sailing-up both and
καταπλέουσι, αὐτοὺς δ' ἐν τῷ μέσῳ ἀπειλημμένους, ὥσπερ
sailing-down themselves and in the middle being-shut-off as
ἐν λίμνῃ βραχείᾳ, μηδαμοῦ διέξοδον ἔχειν, ἔτι τε τῷ
in lake small nowhere outlet to-have further both by-the
πολλῷ ῥοθίῳ καὶ τῇ σφοδρᾷ ῥύμῃ τῶν καταφερομένων
great roaring and by-the violent rush of-the down-borne
ὑδάτων, ἅτε ἀπὸ μεγίστου καὶ εὐρυτάτου πελάγους ἄνωθεν
waters as from greatest and broadest sea from-above
τοῦ Εὐξείνου πόντου κατερχομένων καὶ ἐς στενὸν κομιδῇ
— *of-Euxine sea coming-down and into narrow very*
τελευτώντων τε καὶ ξυγκλειομένων, τῷ τε ὠθισμῷ καὶ
ending both and being-shut-in by-the both thrusting and
τῇ βίᾳ τοῦ ῥοῦ καχλαζόντων τε καὶ ξυνελισσόντων ἅμα
by-the force of-the current splashing both and whirling-round at-once
καὶ ἐποκελλόντων τὰ σκάφη καὶ προσαρασσόντων ταῖς
and running-aground the vessels and dashing on-the
πέτραις καὶ καταγνύντων, εἰ μήπου πολλή τις ἐπιμέλεια
rocks and shattering unless perhaps much some care
εἴη τῶν ἐμπλεόντων καὶ ἐπιστήμη. Ἀναμετρῶν δὲ
should-be of-the(-ones) sailing-in and skill measuring and

καὶ τὸ μεταξὺ τοῦ πορθμοῦ, ἵναπερ τὸ στενότατον εἴη,
also the interval of-the strait where the narrowest might-be
εὕρισκε μάλιστά που σταδίους ἑπτά.
he-found most about stades seven

11.1 Ταῦτα οὖν ἅπαντα καλῶς ἀναθεωρήσας τε καὶ
these(-things) then all well having-viewed both and
κατασκεψάμενος τῷ τε λογισμῷ ἄριστα διαγνοὺς,
having-examined by-the both reckoning best having-discerned
ἐπεί οἱ κατεφαίνετο τὸ χωρίον ἐπικαιρότατον, ἐνταῦθα
since to-him appeared the place most-strategic there
τειχίζειν ἔγνω τὸ φρούριον· καὶ διαλαμβάνει δὴ σημείοις
to-wall he-resolved the fortress and marks-off indeed with-signs
τὸν χῶρον, ὃν ἔμελλε τειχίζειν. Σχεδιάσας δὲ τοῦ
the place which he-was-about to-wall having-sketched and of-the
φρουρίου τὴν θέσιν τε καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, τῶν τε πύργων
fortress the position both and the size of-the both towers
καὶ μεταπυργίων τὰς βάσεις καὶ ἀποστάσεις, ἔτι τε
and curtain-walls the bases and distances further both
προπύργια καὶ ἐπάλξεις καὶ πύλας καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα
outworks and battlements and gates and whatever other
καλῶς τε καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν, κατακερματίζει
well both and as was to-him in mind he-parcels-out
τοῖς ἐν τέλει, κελεύσας ὅτι τάχιστα ἀνύττειν τὸ
to-the(-ones) in office having-ordered as quickly-as-possible to-accomplish the
ἔργον· καὶ ἆθλα προὔθηκε κάλλιστα τοῖς ἄριστα καὶ
work and prizes he-set-forth fairest for-the(-ones) best and
τάχιστα τοῦτο ἐξειργασμένοις· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ παρὰ τὴν
fastest this having-worked-out and himself too the along the
θάλασσαν μέρος τοῦ φρουρίου λαμβάνει. Ἀρξάμενος δὲ
sea part of-the fortress takes having-begun and
τῆς οἰκοδομῆς μεσοῦντος ἔαρος ἤδη, χειρί τε πολλῇ καὶ
the building being-mid spring already with-hand both much and

δαπάνῃ καὶ σπουδῇ καὶ ἀντιφιλοτιμήσει πάντων πρὸς τὸ
expense and zeal and rivalry of-all for the
ἔργον κεχρημένων, πρὶν ὅλον τὸ θέρος ἐξήκειν τειχίζει τὸ
work having-used before whole the summer to-end he-walls the
φρούριον, ἐρυμνότατον πάντων καὶ ἀσφαλέστατον καὶ τῶν
fortress strongest of-all and safest and of-the
πώποτε φρουρίων ὀνομαστότατον, λίθοις τε μεγίστοις
ever fortresses most-renowned with-stones both greatest
λογάδην ξυντεθειμένοις ἐξειργασμένον, σιδήρῳ τε πολλῷ
picked-out put-together worked-out with-iron both much
καὶ μολυβδωτοῖς γόμφοις ἐνεσχημένοις καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις
and with-lead-covered bolts fastened-in and by-many others
κατωχυρωμένον τε καὶ κατησφαλισμένον, πύργων τε
fortified both and secured of-towers both
πυκνότητι καὶ μεγέθει καὶ ἀσφαλείᾳ ἐς ὕψος ἠρμένων,
by-density and size and safety to height raised
μεταπυργίων τε καὶ ἐπάλξεων καρτερότητι, ὕψει τε καὶ
of-curtain-walls both and of-battlements by-strength by-height both and
τείχους παχύτητι. Εὖρος τῷ τείχει, ᾗ εὐρύτατον, πήχεις
of-wall thickness width to-the wall where widest cubits
δύο καὶ δέκα, ὕψος δὲ τετραπλάσιον· καὶ μέγεθος δὲ οὐ
two and ten height and fourfold and size too not
κατὰ φρούριον, ἀλλὰ πολίχνῃ προσεοικός. Τρίγωνον δὲ
like fortress but to-small-town resembling triangular and
κατασκευάζει τοῦ φρουρίου τὸ σχῆμα, τὴν μὲν ὀρθὴν γωνίαν
he-constructs of-the fortress the shape the indeed right angle
ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ἄναντες ἔχον καὶ ἐν τῇ κορυφῇ (ἦν γὰρ ἠρέμα
above toward the uphill having and in the summit was for gently
πρόσαντες τὸ χωρίον), ὥσπερ τινὰ πρόβολον μετὰ πύργου
rising the place as some bulwark with tower
προβεβλημένην ἰσχυροτάτου τε καὶ μεγίστου, ξυνάπτουσάν
thrown-forward strongest both and greatest joining

τε τὰς δύο ἐγκαρσίας πλευρὰς καὶ φυλάττουσαν· τὰς δὲ
both the two transverse sides and guarding the and
δύο γωνίας τῆς βάσεως κάτω περὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἑκατέρωθεν
two angles of-the base below about the shore on-either-side
τῆς πλευρᾶς, ἣ τοῦτον ἐπέχει, καὶ αὐτὰς πύργοις
of-the side which this occupies and themselves with-towers
ἰσχυροτάτοις τε καὶ μεγίστοις ἠσφαλισμένας· καὶ αὐταὶ
strongest both and greatest secured and themselves
δὲ αἱ πλευραὶ πύργοις ἑτέροις πεπύκνωνται, ἐλάσσοσι μὲν
too the sides with-towers other are-packed smaller indeed
τῷ μεγέθει τῶν ἐν ταῖς γωνίαις, δυνάμει δὲ οὐδὲν
in-the size than-the(-ones) in the angles in-power but nothing
ἀποδέουσι. Τοῦτο δὲ τὸ σχῆμα καὶ ταύτην τὴν θέσιν
falling-short this and the shape and this the position
ἐμηχανήσατο τοῦ φρουρίου, τῇ μὲν ἵν' ὡς πλεῖστον
he-devised of-the fortress in-this indeed so-that as most
ἐπέχῃ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ, διὰ τὰς πετροβόλους μηχανὰς,
it-might-occupy of-the shore because-of the stone-throwing engines
αἷ πυκναὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ἔμελλον εἶναι τετραμμέναι πρὸς
which dense about it were-about to-be turned toward
θάλασσαν, ἵνα δὴ τὸν διέκπλουν κωλύωσι, καταγνῦσαι
sea so-that indeed the sailing-through they-might-hinder to-shatter
τὰ σκάφη, τῇ δὲ καὶ τὴν ἄκραν ἄνω κατέχον τε καὶ
the vessels in-that and also the headland above holding both and
φρουροῦν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους εἶργον ὡς πορρωτάτω,
guarding and the enemies keeping-off as farthest
ἵνα μὴ ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς οὗτοι βάλλοντες τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν
so-that not over head these shooting the(-ones) on the
ἐπάλξεων βλάπτωσιν, ἀλλὰ ἀνασοβῶνται πόρρωθεν.
battlements they-might-harm but be-scared-off from-afar

Τειχίσας δὲ τὸν εἰρημένον τρόπον, ἐπισκευάζει παντοίοις
having-walled and the said way he-equips with-all-kinds
ὅπλοις, βέλεσί τε καὶ τόξοις καὶ δόρασιν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
arms with-missiles both and bows and spears further and also
ἀσπίσι καὶ θυρεοῖς καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις τοιούτοις· πρὸς δὲ
shields and door-shields and many other such(-things) besides and
τούτοις πετροβόλοις μηχαναῖς μείζοσί τε καὶ μείοσι πάσας
these with-stone-throwing engines greater both and lesser all
τὰς ἐπάλξεις ὁπλίζει τῶν τε πύργων καὶ μεταπυργίων
the battlements he-arms of-the both towers and curtain-walls
καὶ προπυργίων, τὰς δὲ μεγίστας τῶν μηχανῶν τίθησι
and outworks the and greatest of-the engines he-sets
παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν ὑπὸ τὸ τεῖχος χαμαὶ πυκνώσας
along the sea under the wall on-the-ground having-packed-close
παρὰ ὅλην τὴν πλευρὰν τετραμμένας ἐς θάλασσαν, ᾗπερ
along whole the side turned toward sea as
ἔφην, οὐκ ἐπ᾽ εὐθείας ὁρώσας, ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τοῦ
I-said not on straight looking but here and there of-the
πελάγους, καὶ ἐπαμφοτεριζούσας, τὰς μὲν δεξιὰς ἐπὶ
sea and facing-both-ways the(-ones) indeed right to
τὰ ἀριστερὰ, τὰς δὲ ἀριστερὰς ἐπὶ τὰ δεξιὰ ὁρώσας
the left the(-ones) and left to the right looking
τε καὶ ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων βαλλούσας καὶ τὸν διέκπλουν, ᾗπερ
both and from above shooting and the sailing-through as
ἔφην, κωλυούσας· ἀφιεῖσαι γὰρ λίθους παμμεγέθεις τε καὶ
I-said hindering letting-fly for stones huge both and
στρογγύλους ἐν χρῷ θαλάσσης ὥσπερ νηχομένους, ἀπό
round in skin of-sea as-if swimming from
τε τοῦ φρουρίου τοῦδε μέχρι τοῦ πέραν, καὶ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνου
both the fortress this as-far-as the across(-one) and from that
πάλιν ἐπὶ τόδε τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἕτεραι μηχαναὶ, οὐκ ἐῶσι
again to this the same way other engines not allow

διεκπλεῦσαι μὴ ὅτι γε ὁλκάδα καὶ τριήρη ἢ ἄλλο τι
to-sail-through not that at-least merchantman and trireme or other anything
τῶν φορτηγῶν καὶ σκευαγωγῶν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τὸ σμικρότατον
of-the cargo-ships and baggage-carriers but not-even the smallest
ἀκάτιον τοῦ μὴ οὐ κατάξαι τε καὶ συντρῖψαι καὶ
skiff from-the not — to-break both and to-smash and
ὑποβρύχιον τῷ βυθῷ παραδοῦναι, οὕτω τοι νυκτὸς ὥσπερ
under-water to-the depth to-hand-over so surely by-night as
δὴ καὶ ἡμέρας, εἰ μή που κατὰ γνώμην εἴη γε τοῦ
indeed also by-day if not perhaps according-to wish it-were at-least of-the
φρουράρχου. Οὕτως αὐτῷ τὰ τοῦ φρουρίου ἐμελετήθη,
fortress-commander so by-him the(-things) of-the fortress were-planned
καὶ τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον τάς τε ἠπείρους συνῆψε καὶ τὴν
and this the way the both continents he-joined and the
διάβασιν ὑφ᾽ αὐτῷ πεποίηται. Ἐπισκευάσας τοίνυν αὐτὸ
crossing under himself has-made having-equipped therefore it
καλῶς καὶ ὁπλίσας καὶ τοῖς πᾶσιν ἀχείρωτον καταστήσας
well and having-armed and to-the all unconquerable having-made
ἢ, μᾶλλον εἰπεῖν, ὅλως ἀνεπιχείρητον, φρουράν τε ἱκανὴν
or rather to-say wholly unassailable garrison both sufficient
ἐγκαταλιπὼν καὶ φρούραρχον ἕνα τῶν πιστοτάτων αὐτῷ
having-left and fortress-commander one of-the most-trusted to-him
ἀποδείξας, ταῖς τε μηχαναῖς ἐπιστήσας τοὺς καλῶς τε
having-appointed the both engines having-set-over the(-ones) well both
καὶ ἐπιστημόνως χρησομένους, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ,
and skillfully going-to-use(-them) he-returns to the of-Hadrian(-city)
φθινοπώρου φθίνοντος ἤδη. Καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς
autumn waning already and sixtieth year besides the
ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
δεύτερον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
second and of-the rule for-the emperor

Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον οἰκοδομεῖ καὶ βασίλεια 12.1
at and the same time he-builds also palaces
λαμπρὰ περὶ τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, αὐτοῦ που περὶ τὸν Εὖρον
brilliant near the of-Hadrian(-city) there somewhere near — Hebros
ποταμὸν πέραν τοῦ ἄστεος, λίθοις τε λαμπροῖς καὶ
river across-from the town with-stones both brilliant and
μαρμάροις διαφανέσι κεκοσμημένα, χρυσῷ τε πολλῷ καὶ
marbles translucent adorned with-gold both much and
ἀργύρῳ καταστραπτόμενα ἔνδοθέν τε καὶ ἔξωθεν, ἔτι δὲ
silver flashing within both and without further and
γλυφικῇ καὶ γραφικῇ τέχνῃ πεποικιλμένα καὶ διαφόροις
by-carving and painting art embroidered and by-various
ἄλλαις πολυτελείαις φιλοτίμως ἐξειργασμένα καὶ ἠσκημένα·
other costly-works lavishly worked-out and decorated
παραδείσους τε φυτεύει περὶ αὐτὰ, φυτοῖς τε παντοίοις καὶ
gardens both he-plants about them with-plants both of-every-kind and
δένδροις ἡμέροις κομῶντας καὶ καρποῖς ὡραίοις βρίθοντας,
trees cultivated leafy and with-fruits seasonable laden
ζώων τε διάφορα γένη ἡμέρων τε καὶ ἀγρίων καὶ πτηνῶν
of-animals both various kinds tame both and wild and of-birds
ἀγέλας τούτοις ἐμβάλλει, καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις ἀγάλλει καλοῖς,
flocks into-these he-puts and with-many other adorns fine(-things)
ὅσα τέρψιν ἅμα καὶ κόσμον εἶδε φέρειν καὶ ἡδονήν·
whatever delight at-once and ornament he-saw to-bring and pleasure
Κατασκευάζει δὲ καὶ βασίλειον αὐλὴν φιλοτίμως ξύνεγγυς
he-constructs and also royal court lavishly close-to
τούτων, καὶ οἴκησιν ὅτι πλείστην ποιεῖται νέων καταλόγων
these and dwelling as largest he-makes for-new registers
καὶ πεζαιτέρων ἐν αὐτῇ τε καὶ περὶ αὐτὴν, πανταχόθεν
and foot-soldiers in it both and around it on-all-sides
ἀσφαλιζόμενος τὰ βασίλεια. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἐς τοσοῦτον.
securing the palaces and these(-things) indeed to so-far

13.1 Ὁ δὲ τὴν πάλαι οἱ μελετωμένην βουλὴν καὶ ὃν
he and the long-ago by-him planned counsel and which
ὤδινε λογισμὸν ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ καὶ πρὸς ὃν ἔφερεν
he-was-in-labor-with reckoning in the soul and to which he-directed
αὐτῷ πάντα σκοπὸν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐς πέρας ἄγειν ἤδη
for-him all aim from beginning to end to-bring now
διενοεῖτο καὶ μηκέτι μελλήσειν μηδ' ἐν ἀναβολαῖς εἶναι·
intended and no-longer to-delay nor in postponements to-be
ἡ δὲ ἦν πόλεμον ἐξενεγκεῖν Ῥωμαίοις καὶ βασιλεῖ
it and was war to-bring-against Romans and emperor
Κωνσταντίνῳ καὶ πολιορκίαν τῇ πόλει. Ἐνόμιζε γὰρ,
Constantine and siege on-the city he-thought for
ὅπερ καὶ ἦν, ὡς, εἰ ταύτην ἕλοι τρόπῳ παντὶ, καὶ
which also was(-so) that if this he-should-take by-way every and
τῶν ταύτης κύριος κατασταίη, μηδὲν εἶναι τὸ
of-the(-things) of-it lord he-should-become nothing to-be the(-thing)
κωλῦσον ἔτι ἐντὸς ὀλίγου χρόνου ὡς ἔκ τινος πάντων
going-to-hinder further within little time as from some of-all
κοινῆς ἀκροπόλεως ταύτης ὁρμώμενον τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα
common acropolis from-this setting-out the rest all
καταδραμεῖν καὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῷ ποιήσασθαι. Διά τοι τοῦτο
to-overrun and under himself to-make because-of surely this
οὐδαμοῦ καθεκτὸς ἦν ἔτι, οὐδ' ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν τοῦ
nowhere restrainable was any-longer nor in the same(-state) for-the
λοιποῦ μένειν ἠξίου καὶ εἰρήνην ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ πολεμητέα
rest to-remain deemed-fit and peace to-keep but must-make-war
οἱ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐν τάχει καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἐξαιρετέα. Ἐνῆγον
to-him it-seemed to-be in speed and the city must-be-taken urged
δὲ αὐτὸν μάλιστα πρὸς τοῦτο καὶ θεοσημεῖαί τινες,
and him most to this also divine-signs some
ἔτι δὲ μαντεῖαι καὶ οἰωνισμοὶ καὶ κληδόνες, καὶ ἄλλα
further and prophecies and omens and presages and other

ἄττα, οἷς τε προσεῖχε πάνυ, καὶ οἷς τὸ μέλλον οἱ
some to-which both he-attended very and by-which the future the
ἄνθρωποι θηρῶνται, ἅπαντα ἐς ταὐτὸν ἔφερε, καὶ χρηστάς
men hunt all to the-same pointed and good
οἱ ὑπετίθει ἐλπίδας ἁλώσιμον εἶναι τὴν πόλιν αὐτῷ.
for-him suggested hopes capturable to-be the city for-him
Ξυγκαλέσας οὖν τοὺς ἐν τέλει πάντας, σατράπας τέ
having-called-together then the(-ones) in office all satraps both
φημι καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ ταγματάρχας καὶ
I-mean and generals and squadron-leaders and battalion-commanders and
ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ξύλλογον ποιήσας ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
leaders of-the ranks and assembly having-made he-spoke such(-words)
“ Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας ἀρχῆς, ὅτι μὲν οἱ ἡμέτεροι 14.1
men friends and of-the our rule that indeed the our
πρόγονοι τὴν ἀρχὴν τήνδε ἣν ἔχομεν, μετὰ πολλῶν
forefathers the rule this which we-have with many
ἀγώνων τε καὶ κινδύνων τῶν μεγίστων ἐκτήσαντο καὶ ἐς
struggles both and dangers the greatest acquired and to
δεῦρο διαδοχῇ τῇ σφῶν αὐτῶν διασώσαντες, παῖς παρὰ
here by-succession the their own having-preserved son from
πατρὸς ἐκδεχόμενοι, παρέπεμψαν ἐς ἐμέ, πάντες ἴστε
father receiving handed-on to me all you-know
δήπου καλῶς, οἱ μὲν ὑμῶν καὶ κοινωνοὶ ἐνίων ἔργων
surely well the(-ones) indeed of-you also partners in-some works
ἐν μέρει γεγονότες ἐκείνοις, ὅσοιπερ ἐν τῇδε τῇ νῦν μάλιστα
in turn having-become with-them as-many-as in this the now most
καθεστηκυίᾳ ἡλικίᾳ τυγχάνετε πρεσβύτατοι ὄντες, οἱ δὲ
settled age happen eldest being the(-ones) and
καὶ παρὰ τῶν πατέρων ἀκοῇ παρειληφότες, ὅσοι νέοι
also from the fathers by-hearing having-received as-many-as young
ἐστέ· οὐδὲ γάρ εἰσι τῶν πάνυ παλαιῶν, οὐδ’ οἷα
you-are not for are(-they) of-the(-things) very ancient nor such-as

καὶ διὰ χρόνου πλῆθος λανθάνειν, ἀλλ᾽ ὄψις ταῦτα
also through time's length to-escape-notice but sight these(-things)
μαρτυρεῖ τῶν λεγόντων μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν ὁρώντων
attests of-the(-ones) speaking rather than of-the(-ones) seeing
ἀκοὴ βεβαιοῖ, χθὲς καὶ πρώην γεγενημένα. Πάρεστι
hearing confirms yesterday and the-day-before having-happened it-is-possible
γὰρ σαφῶς ἔτι καὶ νῦν ὁρᾶν πανταχοῦ τῆς ἡμετέρας
for clearly still also now to-see everywhere of-the our(-land)
σημεῖα τῶν ἐκείνων ἔργων δεικνύμενα ἐναργῆ, τείχη τε
signs of-the their works shown vivid walls both
φρουρίων καὶ πόλεων χθὲς καὶ πρώην κατεσκαμμένων,
of-fortresses and of-cities yesterday and the-day-before razed
γῆν τε τοῖς ἐκείνων αἵμασι σχεδὸν ἔτι φοινισσομένην καὶ
earth both with-the their bloods almost still reddened and
μεμιγμένην καὶ πολλὰ τοιαῦτα μνημεῖα, ἄττα κάλλιστα τῆς
mixed and many such memorials some fairest of-the
ἐκείνων ἀνδρίας καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ τῆς ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς εὐψυχίας
their courage and virtue and of-the in the dangers good-spirit
ἀείμνηστα μαρτύρια· τοσαύτῃ γὰρ ἀνδρίᾳ ψυχῆς καὶ
ever-remembered testimonies such for courage of-soul and
γνώμης στερεότητι καὶ φρονήματος μεγαλείῳ περὶ πάντα
of-judgment firmness and of-spirit greatness in all
ἐχρήσαντο, ὡς εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἐκ πάνυ μικρῶν ἀρχῶν
they-used so-that at-once from beginning from very small beginnings
τῆς δυνάμεως, εἰς νοῦν βαλέσθαι καθελεῖν τὴν Ῥωμαίων
of-the power into mind to-put to-destroy the of-Romans
ἡγεμονίαν καὶ πᾶσαν ἐλπίσαι τὴν τῆς Ἀσίας τε καὶ
hegemony and all to-hope-for the — of-Asia both and
Εὐρώπης ἀρχήν· καὶ μέντοιγε οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν· Ὁρμηθέντες
of-Europe rule and however not they-were-deceived having-set-out
γὰρ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀπὸ τῶν Κιλικίας καὶ Ταύρου ὀρῶν μετὰ
for the beginning from the of-Cilicia and of-Tauros mountains with

σμικρᾶς, ὅπερ ἔφην, ἰσχύος, μεγίστου μέντοιγε λογισμοῦ καὶ
small as I-said strength greatest however reckoning and
φρονήματος, κατατρέχουσι μὲν εὐθὺς Λυκίαν καὶ Παμφυλίαν
spirit they-overrun indeed at-once Lycia and Pamphylia
καὶ τὴν ἄνω Φρυγίαν, καταστρέφονται δὲ Λυδοὺς, Κᾶρας,
and the upper Phrygia subdue and Lydians Carians
Μυσοὺς, Φρύγας τοὺς κάτω, Ἴωνας, πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν
Mysians Phrygians the lower Ionians all the Hellenic
παραλίαν, ἔτι δὲ χειροῦνται Γαλάτας, Καππαδόκας,
coast further and they-subdue Galatians Cappadocians
Παφλαγόνας, Χάλυβας, Βιθυνοὺς, Ἑλλησποντίους, ἁπλῶς
Paphlagonians Chalybes Bithynians Hellespontines simply
εἰπεῖν πᾶσαν ἣν ὁ Ταῦρος ἐντὸς ὁρίζει, ἀπὸ Κιλικίας
to-say all which — Tauros within bounds from Cilicia
παρήκων μέχρι Σινώπης τῆς πρὸς τῷ Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ,
extending as-far-as Sinope the(-one) on — Euxine sea
ἣν δὴ Κάτω Ἀσίαν φασίν, ἐντὸς ὀλίγου χρόνου χειροῦνται
which indeed Lower Asia they-call within little time they-subdue
καὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτοῖς βεβαίως ποιοῦνται. Καταστάντες δὲ κύριοι
and under themselves firmly they-make having-become and lords
ταύτης ἁπάσης καὶ τῆς παραλίας αὐτῆς, καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
of-this all and of-the coast itself and of-the in it
πόλεων ἄρξαντες ἐγκρατῶς, βασίλειόν τε τὴν Προυσίαν
cities having-ruled mightily royal-seat both — Prousa
καταστησάμενοι διαβαίνουσι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον εὐαρίθμητοι
having-established they-cross — Hellespont easy-to-count
πάνυ, ἅτε οὐκ ἐπὶ πολέμῳ προφανεῖ, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ λῃστείᾳ
very as not for war open but for brigandage
προσκαίρῳ τε καὶ κλοπῇ διαβάντες καὶ ἅμα τῆς ταύτῃ
temporary both and theft having-crossed and at-once from-the there
θαλάσσης εἰργόμενοι, τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἔτι κρατούντων αὐτῆς.
sea being-barred the Romans still controlling it

Καταλαβόντες δὲ τὴν ἄκραν τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ πρὸ τοῦ
having-seized and the peak of-the mountain the(-one) before the
σήματος τῆς Ἕλλης καὶ [τοῦ] τῆς Χερσονήσου ἰσθμοῦ
tomb — of-Helle and the — of-Chersonese isthmus
κειμένου καὶ φρούριον ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς ἢ ἀπάτης λαβόντες
lying and fortress by onslaught or deceit having-taken
αὐτοῦ, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἐκεῖθεν ὁρμώμενοι λῃστείαις
there the indeed first thence setting-out brigandage
τε ἐχρῶντο καὶ καταδρομαῖς ἀφανέσι καὶ προνομαῖς,
both they-used and raids secret and foragings
ληιζόμενοι τοὺς ἐγγύς. Ὡς δὲ κατὰ μικρὸν προϊόντες καὶ
pillaging the(-ones) near when and by little advancing and
ἀεὶ πλείους γινόμενοι, καί τινα τῶν ξύνεγγυς φρουρίων,
always more becoming and some of-the nearby fortresses
τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ, τὰ δὲ ἀπάτῃ ἑλόντες
the(-ones) indeed by onslaught by-force the(-ones) and by-deceit having-taken
ἐκράτησαν, καὶ ἐς τὸ πεδίον κατέβησαν, ἐνταῦθα λοιπὸν
they-mastered and into the plain went-down there for-the-rest
οὐκέτι οὐδὲν ἦν αὐτοῖς ἐμποδὼν, ἀλλὰ πεδία τε εἴχετο
no-longer nothing was for-them in-the-way but plains both were-held
καὶ κῶμαι διηρπάζοντο καὶ πόλεις ἡλίσκοντο καὶ φρούρια
and villages were-plundered and cities were-taken and fortresses
κατεσκάπτετο καὶ στρατεύματα ἡττᾶτο καὶ γένη πολλὰ
were-razed and armies were-defeated and races many
καὶ μεγάλα ἐχειροῦτο, καὶ βραχεῖ λόγῳ κατατρέχουσι μὲν
and great were-subdued and in-short word they-overrun indeed
οὐκ ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ Θρᾴκην ἅπασαν καὶ Μακεδονίαν,
not in much time Thrace all and Macedonia
καταστρέφονται δὲ Μυσοὺς τούς τε ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ καὶ
subdue and Mysians the(-ones) both in the inland and
πρὸς τῷ Ἴστρῳ οἰκοῦντας, ἔτι δὲ Ἰλλυριοὺς, Τριβαλλοὺς,
by — Istros dwelling further and Illyrians Triballians

Ἕλληνας ἄλλα τε γένη πολλά, χειροῦνται δὲ φρούρια
Hellenes other both races many they-subdue and fortresses
ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πόλεις πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας, τὰς μὲν ἐν τῇ
strong and cities many and great the(-ones) indeed in the
μεσογείᾳ, τὰς δὲ ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ κειμένας. Καὶ τί δεῖ
inland the(-ones) and on the coast lying and why must-one
πόλεις καὶ ἔθνη καταλέγοντα διατρίβειν; πᾶσαν ἣν ὁ
cities and nations listing spend-time all which —
Ἴστρος ἐντὸς ὁρίζει, ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκβολῶν αὐτοῦ τῶν πρὸς
Istros within bounds from the mouths its the(-ones) toward
τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον ἀνιόντι μέχρι τῶν ἐσβολῶν Σάου
— Euxine sea for-one-going-up as-far-as the inflows of-Saos
τῶν ἐς αὐτὸν, κἀκεῖθεν διὰ τῆς μεσογείας ἰόντι
the(-ones) into it and-thence through the inland for-one-going
μεταξὺ Ἴστρων τε καὶ Δαλματῶν Παιόνων τε τῶν
between Istrians both and Dalmatians Paionians both the(-ones)
ἐντὸς Σάου καὶ Ἰλλυριῶν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν καὶ νότον
within Saos and Illyrians toward midday and south
ἄνεμον μέχρις Ἰωνίου κόλπου χειροῦνταί τε βεβαίως καὶ
wind as-far-as Ionian gulf they-subdue both firmly and
καταστρέφονται καὶ φόρου ποιοῦνται ὑποτελεῖς πάντας
subjugate and of-tribute make subject all
τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ τοὺς πέραν τοῦ Ἴστρου
the(-ones) in it with them and also the(-ones) beyond — Istros
Γέτας, οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν παραλίαν αὐτῆς,
Getai not only and but also all the coast of-it
πλήν γε δὴ Πελοποννήσου, ὑπὲρ τοὺς μυρίους σταδίους
except at-least indeed Peloponnese over the ten-thousand stades
περίπλουν ἔχουσαν. Ταῦτα δὲ οὐκ ἀμογητὶ μὲν, οὐδ' ὡς ἄν
circuit having these(-things) and not without-toil indeed nor as —
τις ἁπλῶς ἐπέλθοι τῷ λόγῳ, οὐδ' ἄνευ ἐναντιωμάτων
anyone simply might-go-over in-the word nor without oppositions

τε καὶ κωλυμάτων τῶν μεγίστων, οὐδ' ἀναιμωτὶ καὶ
both and hindrances the greatest nor bloodlessly and
κινδύνων χωρὶς ἔσχον τε τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ διεσώσαντο μέχρι
of-dangers without they-held both the rule and preserved until
νῦν, ἀλλὰ μετὰ πολλῶν αἱμάτων, πολλῶν δὲ τραυμάτων,
now but with much blood many and wounds
πολλῶν δὲ ἱδρώτων καὶ πόνων. Καὶ γὰρ καὶ γένη πολλὰ
much and sweat and toils and for also races many
καὶ μεγάλα ἔν τε Ἀσίᾳ καὶ Εὐρώπῃ ἐναντία τούτοις ὅπλα
and great in both Asia and Europe against these arms
ἤραντο καὶ λαμπρῶς ὑπὲρ ἐλευθερίας ἠγωνίσαντο μέχρι
raised and brilliantly for freedom contended until
θανάτου καὶ μετ' ἀρετῆς, καὶ πόλεις ἐν αὐτοῖς πολλαὶ
death and with virtue and cities among them many
καὶ μεγάλαι καὶ τείχεσι καὶ σώμασι καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ
and great both by-walls and bodies and arms and
πλούτῳ καὶ ἀρετῇ τῶν ἐνοικούντων καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις
wealth and virtue of-the inhabitants and many other(-things)
ὠχυρωμέναι πρὸς ἄμυναν διανίσταντο, καὶ φρούρια ἐρυμνὰ
fortified for defense rose-up and fortresses strong
καὶ δυσάλωτα καὶ τόποι δύσβατοι καὶ δυσχωρίαι πολλαὶ
and hard-to-take and places impassable and rough-grounds many
καὶ ποταμοὶ ξυνεχεῖς καὶ οὐ ῥᾳδίως διάβατοι καὶ πολλὰ
and rivers continuous and not easily crossable and many
τοιαῦτα εἶργον αὐτοὺς (τοῦ πρόσω), τὸ δὲ μέγιστον,
such(-things) barred them from-the forward(-way) the and greatest
αἱ τῶν Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεις κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν
the of-the Romans forces by both land and sea
ἀεὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον αὐτοῖς ἀνθιστάμεναι καὶ μαχόμεναι
always at face to-them resisting and fighting
καὶ πολλὴν ἐναντίωσίν τε καὶ ἀγωνίαν παρέχουσαι.
and much opposition both and anguish providing

Ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως οὐδὲν τούτων ἐπέσχεν αὐτοὺς τοῦ πρόσω,
but nevertheless nothing of-these checked them from-the forward(-way)
οὐδ᾽ ἐκώλυσε τὴν τούτων ὁρμήν τε καὶ ἀρετήν, ἕως ἅπαντα
nor hindered the of-these impulse both and virtue until all
καταστρεψάμενοί τε καὶ καθελόντες τελείως ἐκρατύναντο
having-subdued both and having-destroyed completely they-strengthened
τὴν ἀρχὴν βεβαίως, καὶ τοῖς πᾶσιν ἰσχυροτάτην ἀπέδειξαν,
the rule firmly and in-the all strongest showed(-it)
ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι διὰ τέλους καὶ μηδὲν τοῦ
men good having-become to the-end and nothing of-the
ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὅλως ὑφέντες λογισμοῦ καὶ φρονήματος.
from beginning at-all having-slackened reckoning and spirit
Κρατοῦντες μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἐπεξήρχοντο μέχρι
prevailing indeed for over-the enemies they-pursued until
πολλοῦ, νικώμενοι δὲ οὐκ ἀνέπιπτον, οὐδὲ τὰς χρηστὰς
far being-defeated and not they-fell-back nor the good
ἀφῄρουν ἐλπίδας, ἀλλὰ τῷ τε σφῶν αὐτῶν εὐψύχῳ
removed hopes but to-the both their own good-spirit
καὶ τῇ ἐλπίδι τοῦ μέλλοντος τὸ πᾶν ἐπιτρέποντες,
and to-the hope of-the future the all entrusting
ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῷ τῆς τύχης ἀδήλῳ, αὖθις εἶχοντο τῶν
further and also to-the of-the fortune uncertainty again they-held the
πραγμάτων ἐρρωμένως, τολμῶντες μὲν καὶ παρὰ δύναμιν,
affairs mightily daring indeed even beyond power
κινδυνεύοντες δὲ καὶ παρὰ γνώμην, ἐν δὲ τοῖς δεινοῖς
running-risks and even beyond judgment in and the terrors
ὄντες εὐέλπιδες, καὶ μὴν ἀνένδοτοι μὲν ἐν πόνοις, ἄοκνοι
being of-good-hope and truly unyielding indeed in toils unhesitating
δὲ πρὸς πᾶν τὸ δόξαν εὖ ἔχειν αὐτοῖς, πρὸς δὲ
and toward all the(-thing) having-seemed well to-be to-them toward and
μηδὲν τῶν καλῶν μελληταί, ὀξεῖς μὲν ἐπινοῆσαι τὸ δέον,
nothing of-the fine(-things) delayers keen indeed to-devise the needful

ταχεῖς δὲ τὸ νοηθὲν ἔργῳ τελέσαι· ἀποδημίαις τε
swift and the(-thing) devised in-deed to-accomplish in-journeys both
μακραῖς χαίροντες ἀεὶ πρὸς τὸ κτᾶσθαί τι τῶν
long rejoicing always for the to-acquire something of-the(-things)
οὐκ ὄντων, καὶ μηδέποτε μένοντες ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν, μηδὲ
not being and never remaining in the same(-state) nor
τοὺς ἄλλους ἐῶντες, τὸ μὲν παρὸν ἐς οὐδὲν λογιζόμενοι
the others allowing the indeed present as nothing reckoning
διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ τῶν ἀπόντων ἐφίεσθαι, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἤδη
because-of the always the(-things) absent to-desire the and not already
κτηθὲν, ἐπινοηθὲν δὲ, ὡς ὂν κατέχοντες, ἐλάχιστα μὲν
acquired devised but as being holding least indeed
ἀπολαύοντες τῶν ὑπαρχόντων διὰ τὴν τοῦ πλείονος
enjoying the possessions because-of the of-the more
ἔφεσιν, ἀεὶ δὲ μοχθοῦντες διὰ τὴν τῶν μὴ ὄντων
desire always and laboring because-of the of-the(-things) not being
κτῆσίν τε καὶ ἀπόλαυσιν, τοῖς μὲν σώμασιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίοις
acquisition both and enjoyment the indeed bodies as others'
χρώμενοι πρὸς τοὺς πόνους τε καὶ κινδύνους, μηδ' ὅλως
using for the toils both and dangers not-even at-all
τούτων φειδόμενοι καὶ σφαλλομένων πολλάκις, τὰς δὲ
them sparing and failing often the and
ψυχὰς ἀήττητοι διαμένοντες, καὶ οὕτως ὅλον τὸν ἴδιον
souls unconquered remaining and so whole the own
αἰῶνα μοχθοῦντες, ἐναγώνιον τε καὶ ἐπίπονον αὐτοῖς
lifetime laboring full-of-struggle both and toilsome for-themselves
καταστησάμενοι τὴν ζωήν, ἐς τοῦτο δόξης τε καὶ δυνάμεως
having-made the life to this of-glory both and of-power
ἦραν τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ σώμασι καὶ χρήμασι καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ
they-raised the rule and in-bodies and in-money and arms and
τριήρεσι καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι, μεγίστην τε ἀπέδειξαν
triremes and all the possessions greatest both showed(-it)

καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον καὶ εἰρήνην αὐταρκεστάτην, καὶ ἡμῖν
and for war and peace most-self-sufficient and to-us
παρέδοσαν· ἣν μὴ φανῶμεν προδιδόντες τό γε ἡμῶν
handed-down which not may-we-appear betraying the at-least our
μέρος, μηδὲ τὰς τῶν προγόνων ἀνδραγαθίας ἀφανίσωμεν,
part nor the of-the forefathers brave-deeds may-we-blot-out
μηδὲ τὴν ἡμετέραν αὐτῶν ἀναιρήσωμεν δόξαν, ἣν ἔσχομεν
nor the our own may-we-destroy glory which we-have-had
ἐκ πάνυ πολλοῦ, ὀνομαστοὶ παρὰ πᾶσιν ὄντες ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρίᾳ
from very long renowned among all being for courage
καὶ στρατηγίᾳ καὶ ἀρετῇ, καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστοι ἐς δεῦρο
and generalship and virtue and unconquerable to here
καὶ δοκοῦντες καὶ ὄντες, μιᾶς νῦν πόλεως ἡττημένοι, καὶ
both seeming and being by-one now city defeated and
ταύτης οὔτε τοῦ θαρρεῖν ἐχούσης ἔτι καιρὸν ὑπὲρ
this neither of-the to-be-confident having any-longer occasion for
ἑαυτῆς, ἀλλὰ κεκενωμένης διόλου τῶν οἰκητόρων σχεδὸν,
itself but emptied throughout of-the inhabitants almost
πάντα δὲ τὰ πρόσθεν καλὰ περικεκομμένης τε καὶ
all and the former fine(-things) cut-off both and
περιῃρημένης τελείως τῷ τε μακρῷ χρόνῳ καὶ ταῖς
taken-away completely by-the both long time and by-the
ξυνεχέσι καταδρομαῖς καὶ πολιορκίαις τῶν ἡμετέρων, καὶ
continuous raids and sieges of-the our(-people) and
μηδὲ πόλεως οὔσης ἔτι, ὄνομα δὲ μόνον σωζούσης·
not-even city being any-longer name but only preserving
τὰ δ᾽ ἄλλα γῆς ἀροσίμου καὶ φυτῶν καὶ ἀμπέλων
the(-parts) and other of-land arable and of-plants and vines
περίβολός ἐστιν, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, καὶ ματαίων οἰκοδομιῶν τε
circuit it-is as you-see and of-vain buildings both
καὶ τοίχων κενῶν καὶ τούτων ἐρειπίων τῶν πλείστων.
and walls empty and of-these ruins the most

Ὁρᾶτε γὰρ ὡς ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κειμένη τῆς ἡμετέρας ἀρχῆς,
you-see for how in the middle lying of-the our rule
ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τε γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης, ὅσα καὶ οἷα
in vantage both of-land and of-sea how-many and what-sort
πράγματα παρέσχεν ἡμῖν ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἀεὶ πολεμοῦσα, καὶ
troubles it-caused us from beginning always warring and
νῦν ἔτι παρέχει, τοῖς ἡμετέροις πράγμασιν ἐφεδρεύουσα
now still causes for-the our affairs lying-in-wait
καὶ ταῖς ἡμῶν ἀκαιρίαις ἀεὶ ἐπιφυομένη καὶ τὰ μέγιστα
and on-the our misfortunes always growing-upon and the greatest(-things)
βλάπτουσα. Τίς γὰρ οὐκ οἶδεν, ὡς ἐπὶ τοῦ ἡμετέρου
harming who for not knows that in-the-time-of the our
προγόνου Παϊαζήτου ἐκείνου πᾶσαν τὴν ἑσπέραν ἐκίνησε
forefather Bayezid that(-one) all the west stirred-up
καθ' ἡμῶν ὁ ταύτης βασιλεὺς, ἀπὸ μὲν ὠκεανοῦ καὶ
against us the of-it emperor from indeed ocean and
Μασσαλίας Γαλάτας τε τοὺς ἑσπερίους καὶ Πυρηναίους καὶ
Massalia Gauls both the western and Pyreneans and
Ἱσπανοὺς, ἀπὸ δὲ Ῥήνου ποταμοῦ καὶ τῶν προσαρκτίων
Spaniards from and Rhine river and the northern(-parts)
Κελτοὺς καὶ Κελτίβηράς τε καὶ Γερμανοὺς, τόν τε
Celts and Celtiberians both and Germans the and
Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν βασιλέα πολύ τι χρῆμα στρατιᾶς
of-Paionians both and Dacians king great some quantity of-army
ἄγοντα κατὰ γῆν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τριήρεις·
leading by land further and also through the river triremes
οἳ καὶ διαβάντες τὸν Ἴστρον καὶ παρὰ τὰς τούτου ὄχθας
who also having-crossed — Istros and along the of-it banks
ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ στρατοπεδεύσαντες, οὐδὲν ἐνενόουν μικρὸν,
in the our(-land) having-encamped nothing intended small
ἀλλὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμετέραν δύναμιν καὶ ἀρχὴν καθελεῖν καὶ
but all the our power and rule to-destroy and

τῆς Εὐρώπης τε καὶ Ἀσίας ἡμᾶς ἐκβαλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ἡ τοῦ
from-Europe both and from-Asia us to-throw-out if not the
Παϊαζήτου τότε στρατηγία καὶ ἐμπειρία καὶ τόλμη τοῦτο
of-Bayezid then generalship and experience and daring this
διεκώλυσε καὶ διέλυσε, κατὰ κράτος αὐτοὺς νικήσασά τε
had-prevented and broken-up by force them having-conquered both
καὶ καθελοῦσα, καὶ τοὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ κατακοπῆναι, τοὺς
and having-destroyed and the(-ones) indeed there to-be-cut-down the(-ones)
δ' ἐναποπνιγῆναι τῷ Ἴστρῳ πεποίηκεν, ἐκ πάνυ πολλῶν
and to-be-drowned — in-Istros has-made from very many
βραχεῖς τινας καὶ τούτους μόγις περισωθέντας. Καὶ
few some and these scarcely having-been-saved and
πάλιν μετὰ μικρὸν Τιμήριον τὸν Σκύθην ἀπὸ Βαβυλῶνος
again after a-little Timur the Scythian from Babylon
ἀναστήσασα καθ' ἡμῶν ἤγαγεν· ὑφ' οὗ πεπόνθαμεν
having-raised against us it-led by whom we-have-suffered
οἷα ἴστε, καὶ ὡς παρ' οὐδὲν ἤλθομεν τότε πάσης τῆς
what-sort you-know and how by nothing we-came then all the
ἡμετέρας ἀρχῆς καὶ δυνάμεως ἐκπεσεῖν. Καὶ τὸ ἐξ ἐκείνου
our rule and power to-fall-from and the from that(-time)
μέχρι νῦν οὐ διέλιπεν ἐπεξάγουσά τε καὶ ὁπλίζουσα κατ'
until now not it-ceased sending-out both and arming against
ἀλλήλων τοὺς ἡμετέρους καὶ ξυγκρούουσα καὶ ταράττουσα
one-another the our(-people) and making-clash and troubling
καὶ βλάπτουσα τὴν ἡμετέραν ἀρχήν, χθές τε καὶ πρὸ
and harming the our rule yesterday both and before
ὀλίγου τὸν Γέτην Ἰωάννην μετὰ Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν
a-little — Getan John with Paionians both and Dacians
κινήσασα καθ' ἡμῶν, ὃς δίς τε καὶ τρὶς τὸν Ἴστρον
having-stirred against us who twice both and thrice — Istros
διαβὰς ξὺν δυνάμει καὶ ἐς τὴν ἡμετέραν ἐσβαλὼν,
having-crossed with power and into the our(-land) having-invaded

πολλὰ κακὰ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα πεποίηκε. Καὶ παρίημι τὸ
many evils to-the my father has-done and I-pass-over the
τῶν αὐτομόλων πρᾶγμα τοσοῦτον καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τούτου
of-the deserters affair so-great and the from this
βλάβην τε καὶ ζημίαν καθ' ἡμέραν ἐγγινομένην ἡμῖν, οὐ
harm both and loss by day arising for-us not
μόνον δούλων, ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ ἐλευθέρων. Βραχὺς ὁ λόγος·
only of-slaves but already also of-free(-men) short the word
οὔθ' ἡσύχασεν οὔθ' ὅλως ἡσυχάσει ποτὲ ἀνθισταμένη καὶ
neither was-it-quiet nor at-all will-it-be-quiet ever resisting and
ἐναντιουμένη τοῖς ἡμετέροις, οὐδὲ στήσεται τοῦ καθ'
opposing to-the our(-affairs) nor will-it-cease from-the against
ἡμῶν πολέμου καὶ τῆς κινήσεως, ἕως ἂν μένειν ἐῶμεν
us war and the movement until — to-remain we-allow
αὐτὴν ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ πάντη ἐξέλωμεν ἢ ὑπὸ
it in the same(-state) and not wholly we-take-it-out or under
χεῖρα σφῶν ποιησώμεθα."
hand our we-make(-it)

15.1 "Ταύτης τοίνυν, ὦ φίλοι ἄνδρες, [καὶ] τοιαύτης πόλεως
this therefore O friends men and such city
ἀντικαθεστηκυίας ἡμῖν καὶ πάντα πραττούσης καθ' ἡμῶν
standing-opposed to-us and all doing against us
φανερῶς τε καὶ ἀφανῶς καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ἐπιβουλευούσης
openly both and secretly and the our plotting-against
ἀρχὴν, ἡμεῖς διαμέλλομεν καὶ λόγον οὐδένα ποιούμεθα,
rule we delay and account none make
οὐδὲ πρὶν ἢ κακῶς δρᾶσαι ἡμᾶς, σπεύδομεν αὐτὴν
nor before than badly to-do us we-hasten it
ἐξελεῖν, ἀλλὰ νομίζομεν ἐφ' ἡμῖν εἶναι ἀεὶ διατίθεσθαι
to-take-out but we-think in us to-be always to-arrange
τὸν πόλεμον ᾗ βουλοίμεθα; καὶ οὐκ οἴδαμεν ὡς τὰ τῶν
the war as we-might-wish and not we-know that the of-the

πολέμων καὶ τῶν καιρῶν ἔργα οὐ μενετά, καὶ τῷ
wars and of-the times works not abiding and in-the
χρόνῳ οὐδὲν ἀνέλπιστον, καὶ τὰ τῆς τύχης ἄδηλα
time nothing unhoped-for and the(-things) of-the fortune unclear
πανταχοῦ, καὶ τὸ τῶν πραγμάτων τέλος ἀστάθμητον καὶ
everywhere and the of-the affairs end unweighable and
ἀτέκμαρτον, καὶ δεῖ τὰ τοιαῦτα προλαμβάνειν τε
unpredictable and it-is-needed the such(-things) to-anticipate both
ἀεὶ τοὺς νοῦν ἔχοντας, καὶ καιρὸν ἔχοντας ἐπιτίθεσθαι
always the(-ones) mind having and opportunity having to-attack
τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, καὶ μὴ ἀναμένειν παθεῖν κακῶς καὶ τότε
the enemies and not to-wait to-suffer badly and then
ἀμύνασθαι, ἀλλὰ πρὸ τοῦ παθεῖν μᾶλλον αὐτοὺς δρᾶν
to-defend-ourselves but before the to-suffer rather themselves to-do(-harm)
καὶ προεπιβουλεύειν ἢ ἀντεπιβουλεύειν, καὶ τοῦτο νομίζειν
and to-plot-first than to-counterplot and this to-consider
κέρδος ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις ὅ τι ἂν προλάβοι τις
gain in the such(-things) what thing — might-seize-first one
ἐξαπατήσας ἢ βιασάμενος τὸν ἐχθρόν; τοιαῦτα γὰρ τὰ
having-deceived or having-forced the enemy such for the(-things)
τοῦ πολέμου· οὐκ εἰσὶν ἐπὶ ῥητοῖς, ἀλλ', ὡς τὰ πολλά,
of-the war not are on stated(-terms) but as the most
τοῦ δυναμένου καὶ βουλομένου λαθεῖν ἢ προλαβεῖν
of-the(-one) able and wishing to-escape-notice or to-seize-first
τι καὶ πλεονεκτῆσαι, οὕτω παρασχὸν, ἡ νίκη γίνεται."
something and to-get-the-better so having-allowed the victory comes-about
" Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὕτω γνώμης ἔχων, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ 16.1
I indeed then thus of-mind being O men and
τοιούτοις τισὶ λογισμοῖς καὶ αἰτίαις χρώμενος, προσέτι
such some reckonings and causes using besides
δὲ καὶ μεγίστοις ἐγκλήμασι κεκινημένος, ξυνήγαγον ἐνθάδε
and also by-greatest charges moved I-gathered here

ὑμᾶς, οὐκ ἔτι ἀνασχετὰ ἡγούμενος εἶναι· καὶ δικαιῶ
you not any-longer tolerable thinking to-be and I-deem-right
πάντας ἀναπειθομένους κοινωνεῖν τῆς γνώμης ἐμοί· καὶ
all being-persuaded to-share the judgment with-me and
ἐπιχειρητέα εἶναί φημι καὶ πολεμητέα ἐν τάχει, καὶ τὴν
must-attempt to-be I-say and must-make-war in speed and the
πόλιν ταύτην ἐξαιρητέα, πάσῃ προθυμίᾳ καὶ σπουδῇ τὸν
city this must-take with-all eagerness and zeal the
πόλεμον ἀραμένους, ἢ μηδὲ τῆς ἡμετέρας ἀρχῆς ἔτι
war having-taken-up or not-even the our rule any-longer
καὶ τῶν ταύτης καλῶν ὡς οἰκείων ἀντιποιεῖσθαι μηδὲ
and the of-it goods as own to-lay-claim-to nor
νομίζειν τοῦ λοιποῦ βέβαια εἶναι. Ἀδύνατον γὰρ ταύτην τε
to-think for-the future secure to-be impossible for this both
ἀτρεμεῖν καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα μὴ ἐν ἀμφιβόλοις εἶναι, μὴ τῆς
to-be-quiet and the our(-affairs) not in doubts to-be not the
πόλεως ταύτης ἢ ληφθείσης ἡμῖν ἢ γεγονυίας ἐκ
city this either having-been-taken by-us or having-been-removed from
μέσου. Ἁπλοῦς ὁ λόγος· αἱροῦμαι ἢ μετ᾽ αὐτῆς καὶ τὴν
the-midst simple the account I-choose either with it also the
ἡμετέραν ἔχειν ἀρχὴν, ἢ ταύτης χωρὶς καὶ ταύτην γε
our to-have rule or of-it without also this at-least
ξυναποβαλεῖν· μετ᾽ αὐτῆς γὰρ, εὖ ἴστε, καὶ τὰ ὄντα
to-lose-with with it for well know also the(-things) being
ἡμῖν βέβαια καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα κτητά, ἄνευ δὲ ταύτης ἢ
for-us secure and the(-things) not being acquirable without but this or
ἐχούσης ὡς ἔχει, τῶν τε ἡμετέρων οὐδὲν πιστὸν, τῶν τε
holding as it-holds of-the both ours nothing trustworthy of-the both
ἄλλων οὐδὲν ἐλπιστόν· εἴτε γὰρ ἔχοντες οὗτοι ταύτην καὶ
others nothing to-be-hoped-for whether for holding these it and
βιαζόμενοι παρ᾽ ἡμῶν, ξυμμαχίαν ἰσχυροτέραν ἐπάξωνται
being-forced by us alliance stronger they-bring-in

καὶ τῆς καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς θαλάσσης κρατήσωσιν, ἐν πολέμοις ἀεὶ
and of-the by us sea they-control in wars always
τὰ ἡμέτερα ἔσται καὶ κινδύνοις καὶ δαπάναις ἐπιζημίοις,
the our(-affairs) will-be and dangers and expenses ruinous
καὶ τὸ πέρας ἄδηλον τοῦ πολέμου· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ παρὰ
and the end unclear of-the war many(-things) for also against
λόγον πολλάκις, καὶ ὧν οὐκ ἄν τις προσεδόκησεν, ἐν τοῖς
reason often and which not — anyone expected in the
τοιούτοις ξυμβαίνειν φιλεῖ, ὅ τε πόλεμος μηκυνόμενος ἐς
such(-things) to-happen is-wont the both war being-prolonged into
τύχας τὰ πολλὰ περιίσταται· εἴτε πάλιν μὴ δυνάμενοι σώζειν
fortunes the most comes-round or again not being-able to-save
αὐτὴν, ἑτέροις ἰσχυροτέροις σφῶν ἐπιτρέψωσι, καὶ
it to-others stronger than-themselves they-entrust both
σώμασι καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τριήρεσι καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ τοῖς πᾶσιν
with-bodies and money and triremes and arms and in-the all
ἄριστα ἐξηρτυμένοις, οἱ δ᾽ ἐρρωμενέστερον ἀνθέξωνται
best equipped they and more-strongly cling-to
τῶν πραγμάτων καὶ ὡς οἰκείων ἤδη ἀντιποιήσαιντο,
the affairs and as own already should-lay-claim
σκοπεῖτε ἐν οἵοις τὰ ἡμέτερα ἔσται. Πόλιν οὕτω μεγάλην
consider in what(-state) the our(-affairs) will-be city so great
ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης κειμένην, ἐφορμοῦσάν
in vantage of-land and of-sea lying lying-at-anchor-against
τε τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἀεὶ καὶ τοῖς ἡμῶν ἐπιφυομένην σαθροῖς,
both the ours always and on-the our growing-upon weaknesses
δύναμίν τε κτησαμένην ἀντίρροπον ἀπὸ τοῦ ἴσου ἡμῖν
power both having-acquired counterbalancing from the equal us
πολεμεῖν ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ βούλομαι λέγειν οὐδὲν
to-fight I indeed think but not I-wish to-say anything
δυσχερὲς, τρέποιτο δ᾽ εἰς τὰς τῶν ἐχθρῶν κεφαλὰς τὸ
unpleasant may-it-be-turned and onto the of-the enemies heads the

βλάσφημον, πλὴν εἰ καὶ δεινόν τῳ ἀκοῦσαι, οὐ πρὸς
ill-omened except if also terrible to-anyone to-hear not for
ἡμῶν γε καὶ τοῦ ἡμετέρου καλοῦ τά γε τοιαῦτα.
us at-least and the our good the(-things) at-least such
Διὰ τοῦτο οὐ δεῖ μέλλειν ἡμᾶς ἔτι, οὐδὲ καιρὸν
because-of this not it-is-needed to-delay us any-longer nor opportunity
ἔχοντας ἀναδύεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἐπιτίθεσθαι ταύτῃ πάντας πάσῃ
having to-draw-back but to-attack it all with-all
καὶ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει καὶ μάλιστα ἕως ἂν καὶ τὰ
both hand and power and most while — also the(-things)
τοῦ δαιμονίου μεθ' ἡμῶν ᾖ, μηδενὸς φειδομένους τῶν
of-the divine with us be nothing sparing of-the(-things)
ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, μήτε σωμάτων μήτε χρημάτων μήτε
for the war neither bodies nor money nor
ὅπλων μήτε ἄλλου του τῶν τοιούτων οὐδενός, μηδ' ἄλλο
arms nor other any of-the such(-things) none nor other
τι προὔργου τῶν ἁπάντων τιθέναι, ἕως ἂν ἢ πάντη
anything advantageous of-the all to-set until — either wholly
ταύτην ἐξελόντες ἐκ μέσου θείημεν, ἢ ὑπὸ χεῖρα σφῶν
it taking-out from the-midst we-should-set or under hand our
ποιησαίμεθα. Νομίσει τε μηδεὶς ὑμῶν ἀδύνατα εἶναι ταύτην
we-should-make(-it) will-think both no-one of-you impossible to-be it
ἑλεῖν, λογιζόμενος τὸ τοῦ ἡμετέρου πάππου τε καὶ
to-take reckoning the(-case) of-the our grandfather both and
πατρός, καὶ ὡς οὗτοι ταύτην σχόντες τὴν γνώμην εὐθὺς ἐξ
father and how these this having the resolve at-once from
ἀρχῆς καὶ πόλεμον ἄσπονδον ἀράμενοι πρὸς αὐτὴν, χειρί
beginning and war truceless having-raised against it with-hand
τε πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει περισχόντες καὶ ὅπλοις, ἔτι τε
both much and power having-surrounded(-it) and arms further and
χρονίῳ πολιορκίᾳ καὶ λιμῷ πολλῷ πᾶσαν ἐκτετρυχότες
with-long siege and hunger much all having-worn-out

οὐκ ἠδυνήθησαν ὅμως ταύτης περιγενέσθαι. Εἰ μὲν
not were-able nevertheless it to-overcome if indeed
γὰρ αὕτη τότε ἰδίᾳ ῥώμῃ τε καὶ δυνάμει ἀντέσχε, καὶ
for this then by-own strength both and power had-held-out and
κρείττων ἐφάνη τῶν ἀντιπολεμούντων, ἅτε σώμασι
stronger had-appeared than-the(-ones) warring-against(-it) as with-bodies
καὶ χρήμασι καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσιν ἠσφαλισμένη
and money and arms and the other all secured
καλῶς, ἢ οὗτοι ταῖς οἰκείαις δυνάμεσι καὶ παρασκευαῖς
well or these by-the own forces and preparations
ἐλάττους ὄντες ὑστέρησαν, μηδαμοῦ δυνηθέντες ταύτην
less being had-fallen-short nowhere having-been-able it
ἑλεῖν, εἶχεν ἂν λόγον τὸ δέος καὶ οὗτος ὁ λογισμός·
to-take would-have-had — reason the fear and this the reckoning
νῦν δὲ τίς οὐκ οἶδεν ὡς τῶν μὲν τοῦ Παϊαζήτου χειρῶν
now but who not knows that from-the indeed — of-Bayezid hands
τύχη τίς ποθεν ἀδοκήτως ἐπιφανεῖσα παρὰ λόγον
fortune some from-somewhere unexpectedly having-appeared against reason
ἐξήρπασεν, ὁποῖα πολλὰ πολλάκις παρὰ τοῦ δαιμονίου
snatched(-it) such-as many often from the divine
τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ξυμβαίνει· ξυγκείμενον γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπὶ
to-the men happen it-having-been-agreed for for-them on
ῥηταῖς ἡμέραις ἐνδιδόναι τοὺς πολίτας τήν τε πόλιν καὶ
stated days to-surrender the citizens the both city and
ἑαυτοὺς, ἅτε πλέον μὴ δυναμένους ἀντέχειν λιμῷ τε καὶ
themselves as more not being-able to-hold-out by-hunger both and
πολιορκίᾳ μακρᾷ, αἴφνης ἐπιφανέντες ἐκ μὲν Εὐρώπης
by-siege long suddenly having-appeared from indeed Europe
Παιόνων καὶ Δακῶν βασιλεὺς πρότερον, ἐκ δὲ Ἀσίας
of-Paionians and Dacians king first from and Asia
μικρὸν ὕστερον Τεμήρτις ὁ Βαβυλώνιος ἀνέστησάν τε
a-little later Timur the Babylonian raised both

αὐτὸν τῆς πολιορκίας, καὶ τρέψαντες ἐς αὐτοὺς, οὕτω
him from-the siege and having-turned against themselves so
ξυνέβη ταύτην περιγενέσθαι ἀνελπίστῳ τύχῃ περισωθεῖσαν.
it-happened it to-survive by-unhoped-for fortune preserved
Ὁ δέ γε πατὴρ ὁ ἐμὸς, ἴστε μεθ' οἵας παρασκευῆς
the and at-least father the my you-know with what-sort preparation
καὶ δυνάμεως ἐστράτευσεν ἐπ' αὐτὴν, καὶ ὡς τοσοῦτον
and power he-campaigned against it and how so-much
τῇ πολιορκίᾳ ταύτης ἐκράτησεν, ὡς μηδ' αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος
by-the siege it he-mastered as not-even very the wall
ἔχειν ἐᾶσαι τοὺς προμαχομένους ἐλεύθερον, βαλλομένους
to-hold to-allow the front-fighters free being-shot
τοῖς τε τόξοις καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν λίθοις· οὕτως
with-the both bows and the from the engines stones so
εἶχεν αὐτὴν ἐν χεροῖν· κἂν εἷλε βίᾳ τοῖς
he-had it in hands and-would have-taken(-it) by-force with-the
ὅπλοις μαχόμενος, εἰ μὴ τοὺς σφόδρα οἰκείους καὶ οἷς
arms fighting if not the(-ones) very own and whom
μάλιστα ἐπίστευεν, ἀντιπράττοντας ἀφανῶς εἶχεν αὐτῷ
most he-trusted working-against secretly he-had for-him
καὶ τὸ πλέον τῆς γνώμης νέμοντας τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις
and the more of-the judgment allotting to-the besieged
ἰδίων ἕνεκα κερδῶν· οὗτοι τοίνυν τῆς τε πολιορκίας
of-own for-the-sake gains these therefore from-the both siege
αὐτὸν ἀνέστησαν καὶ ταύτην περιεσώσαντο.
him raised and it preserved
Εἰ δὲ καὶ ἰδίᾳ δυνάμει τότε περιγενέσθαι ταύτην ξυνέβη
if but even by-own power then to-survive it happened
(θῶμεν γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο), ἀλλ' οὐ τὰ αὐτὰ τῶν τότε
let-us-grant for also this yet not the same of-the then
καὶ νῦν καιρῶν ταύτῃ τε καὶ ἡμῖν· τότε μὲν γὰρ αὕτη
and now times for-it both and for-us then indeed for it

ξυνετωτέροις τε καὶ στρατηγικωτέροις, προσέτι δὲ καὶ
more-intelligent both and more-skilled-in-generalship besides and also
τῶν πραγμάτων ἐμπειροτέροις ἐκέχρητο τῷ τε βασιλεῖ
in-the affairs more-experienced had the both emperor
καὶ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν, οἰκήτορσί τε πλείοσιν ἐφρουρεῖτο, τῆς
and the rulers by-inhabitants both more was-guarded of-the
τε θαλάσσης ἐκ μέρους ἐκράτει τῆς κατ᾽ αὐτήν, τά τε
both sea in part it-was-master the by it the both
παρὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν, ἐπικουρίας τῆς μὲν ἐτύγχανεν ἤδη,
from the Italians help the(-one) indeed it-had already
τῆς δὲ ἐν ἐλπίσιν ἦν, καὶ ἄλλα δὲ πολλὰ εἶχε τὰ
the(-one) and in hopes was and other too many(-things) it-had the(-things)
βοηθοῦντα· τὰ δὲ δὴ νῦν ἀσθενέστερά τε αὐτῇ
helping the(-things) but indeed now weaker both for-it
καὶ τοῖς ὅλοις χείρω· τῶν τε γὰρ οἰκητόρων πλεῖστον
and in-the whole worse of-the both for inhabitants mostly
κεκένωται, τῆς τε θαλάσσης τελείως ἐστέρηται, ὅ τε
it-has-been-emptied of-the both sea completely it-has-been-deprived the both
βασιλεὺς αὐτῇ καὶ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν τοιοῦτοί εἰσιν οἵους
emperor for-it and the(-ones) about him such are as
ἄν τις εὔξαιτο ἀνταγωνιστὰς σχεῖν, τὰ δὲ παρὰ
— anyone would-pray opponents to-have the(-things) and from
τῶν Ἰταλῶν καὶ σφόδρα οὐδ᾽ ἐν ἐλπίσιν αὐτοῖς, μᾶλλον
the Italians also very not-even in hopes for-them rather
μὲν οὖν καὶ πάντη ἐχθρά, ἐκπεπολεμωμένων τῇ περὶ
indeed then also wholly hostile having-been-made-enemies over-the about
τὸ θεῖον δόξῃ, τά τε ἔνδον αὐτῇ στάσεως γέμει καὶ
the divine opinion the(-things) both within it of-faction is-full and
ταραχῆς διὰ ταύτην γε τὴν αἰτίαν· καὶ πολλὰ ἄν
of-turmoil because-of this at-least the cause and many —
τις εὕροι ἐλαττώματα ἄλλα σκοπῶν ἀκριβῶς. Ἡμῖν δὲ
anyone would-find deficiencies other examining exactly for-us and

καὶ τὰ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ μέγα ἦρται πολλῶν ἐπιδόσει·
also the(-things) of-the rule to great have-risen of-many(-things) by-increase
κατάλογοί τε γὰρ στρατευμάτων ἱππικοί τε καὶ πεζικοὶ
registers both for of-armies cavalry both and infantry
πλεῖστοι καὶ κάλλιστοι καὶ εὐοπλότατοι, μᾶλλον εἴπερ ποτὲ
very-many and finest and best-armed more if ever
καὶ νεότης εὐανδροῦσα πολλὴ, καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα αὐλὴ νῦν
and youth abounding-in-men much and the our court now
μέγιστον ἔχει τὸ κράτος, χρήματά τε ἡμῖν πλεῖστα ἔν τε
greatest has the power money both for-us very-much in both
θησαυροῖς καὶ φόροις ἐπετείοις, καὶ ὅπλων εὐπορία πολλὴ
treasuries and tributes yearly and of-arms abundance much
καὶ μηχανῶν καὶ παρασκευῶν τῶν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον,
and of-engines and of-preparations the(-ones) for the war
καὶ τριήρεις οὐκ ὀλίγαι καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ ἐπεγένετο,
and triremes not few and other many(-things) have-been-added
ἃ πάντα οὐ πρὸς μίαν ταύτην πόλιν, ἀλλὰ πολλαῖς
which all not against one this city but among-many
πόλεσιν ἀντιρρόποις αὐτῇ μερισθέντα ἤρκεσεν ἂν
cities counterbalancing to-it divided would-have-sufficed —
καταγωνίσασθαι πάσας. Ἔτι τε τῆς καθ' ἡμᾶς θαλάσσης
to-conquer all further both the by us sea
κρατοῦμεν καὶ τῆς κατ' αὐτὴν ἁπάσης, καὶ φρουρίοις
we-control and the by it all and with-fortresses
αὐτὴν ἄνω καὶ κάτω ἠσφαλισάμεθα διὰ τῶν πορθμῶν
it above and below we-have-secured through the straits
τῶν τε ἠπείρων ἀμφοτέρων, εἴργοντες αὐτὴν γῆς καὶ
from-the both continents both barring it of-land and
θαλάσσης ἁπάσης· ἄλλα τε πρόσεστιν ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀλίγα
of-sea all other both are-present for-us not few
πλεονεκτήματα, οἷς πᾶσι θαρρῶ καὶ πάνυ πιστεύω οὐκ
advantages in-which all I-trust and very I-believe not

ἀντισχήσειν ὅλως αὐτὴν, ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ ἡμᾶς
to-hold-out at-all it but either by onslaught by-force us
τοῖς ὅπλοις ἑλεῖν ἄν, ἢ οὐ μακρᾷ πολιορκίᾳ αἱρήσειν.
with-the arms to-take — or not long in-siege to-take(-it)
Μόνον μὴ μέλλωμεν, μηδὲ διδῶμεν αὐτῇ καιρὸν ἔτι
only not let-us-delay nor let-us-give to-it time any-longer
βουλεύεσθαι καθ᾽ ἡμῶν, ἀλλὰ φανῶμεν ὅτι τάχιστα
to-plot against us but let-us-appear as quickly-as-possible
ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ, καὶ δείξωμεν αὐτῇ τε καὶ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις,
men good and let-us-show to-it both and to-all men
ὡς οὐκ ἀνανδρίᾳ ἢ δειλίᾳ καὶ ἀσθενείᾳ, μελλήσει δὲ
that not by-unmanliness or cowardice and weakness by-delay but
μᾶλλον καὶ ῥᾳθυμίᾳ καὶ μαλακίᾳ ἡμῶν περιγέγονε μέχρι
rather and by-slackness and softness of-ours it-has-survived until
τοῦ νῦν, μηδὲ τὰς τῶν ἡμετέρων προγόνων ἀνδραγαθίας
the now nor the of-the our forefathers brave-deeds
καὶ ἀρετὰς καταισχύνωμεν, μηδ᾽ ἀνάξιοι φανῶμεν ἐκείνων,
and virtues let-us-shame nor unworthy let-us-appear of-them
ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ ἀρχῇ τηλικαύτῃ γε οὔσῃ μίαν
in middle the our rule so-great at-least being one
πόλιν ἐῶντες ὥσπερ τύραννον καθεστάναι, πάντα τρόπον
city allowing as tyrant to-be-established in-every way
ἐπιβουλεύουσαν ταύτῃ, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον δείξωμεν ἐξ ἐκείνων
plotting-against it but rather let-us-show from them
τε ὄντες καὶ τῇ ἐκείνων ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ ἀρετῇ κεχρημένοι.
both being and the their courage and virtue having-used
Ἐκεῖνοί τε γὰρ πᾶσαν Ἀσίαν τε καὶ Εὐρώπην ἐν
they both for all Asia both and Europe in
βραχεῖ χρόνῳ παραστησάμενοι ἰδίοις πόνοις τε καὶ
short time having-subdued by-own toils both and
κινδύνοις ἐκληρονόμησαν, καὶ πόλεις πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας
dangers inherited and cities many and great

ἐχειρώσαντο, καὶ φρούρια ἐρυμνὰ ἐξεῖλον, καὶ γενῶν
subdued and fortresses strong took-out and races
ἀπείρων ἐκράτησαν· ἡμεῖς τε ταύτην ἑλόντες, ὡς ἔκ τινος
boundless mastered we both it having-taken as from some
ἀκροπόλεως ὁρμώμενοι, ξὺν ὀλίγῳ πόνῳ τε καὶ καιρῷ
acropolis setting-out with little toil both and time
τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα καταδραμούμεθα, καὶ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἐπίσχει
the rest all we-will-overrun and nothing us checks
τοῦ πρόσω, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων οὐδὲ ἓν ἀντιστῆναι
from-the forward(-way) nor of-the others not-even one to-resist
δυνήσεται τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ δυνάμει τε καὶ ἀρχῇ, ἀλλ' ἐν βραχεῖ
will-be-able the our power both and rule but in short(-time)
κύριοι γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης ἐσόμεθα. Μὴ τοίνυν ἀναβολαῖς
lords of-land and of-sea we-will-be not therefore postponements
ἔτι κεχρώμεθα, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τάχος ἐσβάλλωμεν ἐς
any-longer let-us-use but with speed let-us-invade into
αὐτὴν πᾶσι τοῖς ὑπάρχουσιν, οὕτω γνώμης ἔχοντες,
it with-all the possessions so of-mind being
ἢ ταύτην ἑλεῖν τε καὶ ἐξελεῖν, ἢ μηδ' ὅλως ταύτης
either it to-take both and to-take-out or not-even at-all from-it
ἀπαναστῆναι, εἴ γε δὴ καὶ τεθνάναι δέοι, ἕως
to-rise-up if at-least indeed even to-die it-should-be-needed until
ἂν ταύτης γενώμεθα κύριοι. Ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος
— of-it we-become lords I and also myself first
παρέσομαι ὑμῖν καὶ τῶν πόνων προθύμως ξυμμετασχήσω,
will-be-present to-you and of-the toils eagerly will-share
καὶ πᾶσιν ἐπιστατήσω καλῶς, τιμήσω τε τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς
and all will-oversee well will-honor both the good
τοῖς ἀξίοις δώροις, ἕκαστον κατά τε ἀξίωσιν ἰδίαν
with-the worthy gifts each according-to both rank own

καὶ ἀρετὴν, καὶ ὅπως τις ἐπιφανὴς ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις
and virtue and as anyone illustrious in the dangers
γενήσεται, ἢ ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῃ τινὶ διαπρέψῃ ἀνδραγαθίᾳ."
will-become or in other some may-distinguish-himself brave-deed
Ὁ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπεψήφισεν ἤδη τὸν 17.1
he indeed indeed such(-things) having-said put-to-the-vote already the
πόλεμον, τῶν δὲ παρόντων πάντες σχεδὸν ἐπεκρότησαν
war of-the and present(-ones) all nearly applauded
πρὸς τὰ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ῥηθέντα, ἐπαινοῦντες
at the(-things) by the emperor spoken praising
μὲν αὐτὸν τῆς εὐβουλίας τε καὶ ξυνέσεως καὶ τῆς
indeed him for-the good-counsel both and understanding and the
ἄλλης ἀνδρίας καὶ ἀρετῆς, ξυναινοῦντες δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ
other courage and virtue assenting and also themselves
καὶ μᾶλλον παροξύνοντες ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, οἱ μὲν
and more urging-on to the war the(-ones) indeed
ἰδίας ἕνεκεν φιλοτιμίας καὶ κερδῶν, ἐλπίζοντες ἐκ τοῦδε
of-own for-the-sake ambition and gains hoping from this
πλέον ἕξειν καὶ τὰ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ μέγα χωρήσειν, οἱ δὲ
more to-have and the their(-affairs) to great to-advance the(-ones) and
χαριζόμενοί τε τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ ἅμα κερδαίνειν καὶ αὐτοὶ
gratifying both the emperor and at-once to-gain also themselves
ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἐθέλοντες, ἕτεροι δὲ ἀγνοίᾳ τῶν
from the such(-things) wishing others and from-ignorance of-the(-things)
τοῦ πολέμου, ὅσοι τε νέοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν τοιούτων
of-the war as-many-as both young were and of-the such(-things)
ἀπείρατοι· οἷς δὲ μὴ κατὰ γνώμην ἐδόκει τὸ πρᾶγμα
inexperienced to-whom but not according-to judgment seemed the affair
διά τέ τινας ἄλλας αἰτίας καὶ τὰς ἀναφυομένας δὴ
because-of both some other causes and the arising indeed
τῷ πολέμῳ δυσχερείας καὶ τύχας ὡς τὰ πολλὰ, οὗτοι
for-the war difficulties and fortunes as the most these

δὴ ἐβούλοντο μὲν εἰπεῖν τι πρὸς ἀποτροπὴν τοῦ
indeed wished indeed to-say something for averting of-the
πολέμου, ὁρῶντες δὲ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἔνστασιν καὶ
war seeing but the of-the emperor insistence and
καταδρομὴν τήν τε τῶν ἄλλων πάντων πρὸς τοῦτο
onslaught the both of-the others all to this
ὁρμὴν, δείσαντες, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, καὶ ἄκοντες παρεχώρησαν
impulse having-feared to-me to-seem also unwilling gave-way
καὶ ξυναπήχθησαν τοῖς πολλοῖς, καὶ κυροῦται δὴ οὕτως
and were-carried-along with-the many and is-ratified indeed thus
ἐξ ἁπάντων ὁ πόλεμος. Κελεύει τοίνυν αὐτίκα τὸν τῆς
by all the war he-orders therefore at-once the —
Εὐρώπης σατράπην στρατιὰν ἀγείραντα κατὰ τάχος, τήν
of-Europe satrap army having-gathered with speed the
τε πόλιν αὐτὴν καὶ τὰ πέριξ ταύτης καταδραμεῖν,
both city itself and the(-places) around it to-overrun
ὅσα τε ἄλλα ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίοις ἦν. Ὁ δὲ μηδὲν μελλήσας,
whatever and other(-places) under Romans were he and nothing having-delayed
εὐθὺς στρατιὰν ἀγείρας κατατρέχει μὲν τὰ περὶ
at-once army having-gathered overruns indeed the(-places) around
τὴν πόλιν ἅπαντα καὶ τὸ ἄστυ μέχρις αὐτῶν τῶν πυλῶν,
the city all and the town as-far-as very the gates
καὶ ληίζεται· κατατρέχει δὲ [καὶ] Σηλυβρίαν καὶ τὰ
and plunders overruns and also Selymbria and the(-places)
περὶ αὐτὴν, ἀφιστᾷ τε τὰ περὶ τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν,
around it detaches both the(-places) about the there sea
Πέρινθόν τε καὶ τὰ λοιπά, προσχωρεῖ δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ
Perinthos both and the rest goes-over and to-him also the
τῶν Ἐπιβατῶν φρούριον ὁμολογίᾳ, ξυναφιστᾷ δὲ καὶ
— of-Epibatai fortress by-agreement detaches-with(-them) and also
τὰ περὶ τὸν Μέλανα πόντον ὅσα Ῥωμαίοις ὑπήκοα
the(-places) around — Black sea as-many-as to-Romans subject

ἦν, χειροῦταί τε πρὸς τούτοις καὶ τὸ ἐν Μεσημβρίᾳ
were he-subdues both besides these also the in Mesembria
φρούριον, ὁμολογίᾳ καὶ αὐτὸ προσχωρῆσαν, τά τε ἄλλα
fortress by-agreement also itself having-gone-over the both other
πάντα ληίζεται καὶ πρὸς τὸ δοκοῦν διατίθησι.
all he-plunders and to the seeming arranges

Βασιλεὺς δὲ Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ οἱ τῆς πόλεως τῷ 18.1
emperor and Constantine and the(-ones) of-the city by-the
τε ἀθρόῳ τῆς μεταβολῆς τῷ τε παραλόγῳ τῆς ἐφόδου
both suddenness of-the change by-the both unexpectedness of-the attack
καταπλαγέντες καὶ πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον ἐπελθόντα σφίσι
struck-down and war undeclared having-come-upon them
θεασάμενοι παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα (καὶ γὰρ ἤδη πρὸ μικροῦ ἔτυχον
having-seen against hope and for already before little happened
γεγονυῖαι αὐτοῖς αἱ σπονδαί), διαπρεσβεύεσθαι μὲν
having-been-made for-them the truces to-negotiate indeed
τοῦ λοιποῦ περὶ τούτων καὶ ξυμβάσεων καὶ εἰρήνης
for-the future about these and agreements and peace
μεμνῆσθαι παντάπασιν ἀπέγνωσαν· ᾔδεσαν γὰρ ἀδύνατον
to-mention altogether they-gave-up they-knew for impossible
ὂν, πρός τε τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ὁρμὴν ἀφορῶντες καὶ
being to both the of-the emperor impulse looking and
τὰ γεγενημένα ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς, καὶ ὡς
the(-things) done by him at-once from beginning and how
πάντα ταῦτα ἐς οὐδὲν χρηστὸν ἔφερε, πολιορκίαν δὲ
all these to nothing good tended siege and
προσεδόκων ὅσον οὐκ ἤδη αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ πόλεμον
they-expected all but already for-them to-be and war
ἄσπονδον κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν, καὶ ὅσα πολέμου
truceless by land both and sea and whatever of-war
κακὰ, ἅλωσίν τε καὶ τὰ τῆς ἁλώσεως πάθη, φόνον
evils capture both and the of-the capture sufferings slaughter

τε τῶν ἐν ἡλικίᾳ καὶ διαρπαγὴν τῶν ὑπαρχόντων
both of-the(-ones) in age and plundering of-the possessions
καὶ σύλησιν ἱερῶν καὶ δουλείαν καὶ ὕβριν γυναικῶν
and despoiling of-sacred(-things) and slavery and outrage of-women
τε καὶ παίδων· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐπὶ μικρὸν ἂν ἀντισχήσειν
both and of-children not-even for for little — to-hold-out
ᾤοντο, ἐπιόντος αὐτοῖς τοσούτου πολέμου κατὰ γῆν τε
they-thought coming-upon them such war by land both
καὶ θάλασσαν· οὕτως ἠλλοίωντό τε τὰς γνώμας εὐθὺς
and sea so they-were-altered both in-the judgments at-once
ἐξ ἀρχῆς, καὶ παντάπασιν ἀπεγνώκεσαν, καὶ χρηστὸν
from beginning and altogether had-despaired and good
οὐδὲν ἐνενόουν περὶ αὐτῶν· πρὸς γὰρ τὸ ἀνέλπιστόν
nothing thought about themselves to for the unhoped-for
τε καὶ ἀδόκητον τοῖς λογισμοῖς τραπόμενοι, ἑτοίμως
both and unexpected in-the reckonings turned readily
προΐεντο σφᾶς αὐτοὺς, καὶ οὐδεμίαν εἶχον τοῦ λοιποῦ
they-gave-up them selves and no had for-the future
σωτηρίας ἐλπίδα· αἴτιον δὲ ἦν αὐτοῖς· ἐν μὲν γὰρ ταῖς
of-safety hope cause and was for-them in indeed for the
προλαβούσαις πολιορκίαις πολλὰ εἶχον τὰ βοηθοῦντα,
preceding sieges many they-had the(-things) helping
καὶ ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγίσταις ἦσαν ἀεὶ τοῦ περιγενέσθαι· τῆς
and in hopes greatest they-were always of-the to-prevail the
τε γὰρ κατ' αὐτοὺς θαλάσσης ἐκράτουν, καὶ κατὰ γῆν
both for by them sea they-controlled and by land
μόνον ὁ πόλεμος αὐτοῖς ἦν, ὃν εἶχον ἀναφέρειν ῥᾳδίως,
only the war for-them was which they-could bear easily
ἐν ἑνὶ μέρει τῷ κατὰ γῆν ἀντιτεταγμένοι τοῖς πολεμίοις,
in one part the by land drawn-up-against the enemies
τά τε τῆς θαλάσσης ἑκατέρας πλώιμα ἦν ὁλκάσι τε
the both of-the sea each navigable was by-merchantmen both

καὶ πλοίοις μακροῖς, ἥ τε ἐμπορία καθειστήκει πολλὴν
and by-ships long the both trade was-established much
παρέχουσα τῶν ἀναγκαίων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὴν ἀφθονίαν,
providing of-the necessities and of-the others the abundance
καὶ ἡ πόλις ξένων τε καὶ ἀστῶν ἔγεμε, χρήματά
and the city of-foreigners both and of-citizens was-full money
τε πολλὰ ἔν τε τοῖς κοινοῖς καὶ τοῖς ἰδίοις καὶ τοῖς
both much in both the public and the private and the
ἱεροῖς ἀποκείμενα ἦν, ὅπλα τε καὶ νῆες καὶ βέλη
sacred(-treasuries) stored-up was arms both and ships and missiles
τά τε ἄλλα πάντα καλῶς αὐτῇ παρεσκεύαστο, ὡς μηδὲ
the both other all well for-it had-been-prepared so-that not-even
πολιορκίαν εἶναι τότε τὸ πρᾶγμα δοκεῖν. Νῦν δὲ ταῦτα
siege to-be then the affair to-seem now but these
πάντα ἐς τοὐναντίον ἦν τε καὶ ἐδόκει· ἥ τε γὰρ θάλασσα
all to the-opposite were both and seemed the both for sea
φρουρίοις τὸν ἄνω καὶ κάτω πορθμὸν διείληπτο καὶ
by-fortresses the upper and lower strait had-been-cut-off and
ὅλως ἄπλωτος ἦν, αἵ τε ἤπειροι ἐξεπεπολέμωντο, στόλος
wholly unsailable was the both continents had-been-made-hostile fleet
τε μέγας προσεδοκᾶτο καὶ τοῖς κατὰ θάλασσαν τείχεσι
both great was-expected also the by sea walls
προσβαλεῖν, καὶ αὐτοῖς ἀδύνατα ὅλως εἶναι ἐδόκει τῷ
to-attack and to-them impossible wholly to-be it-seemed in-the
πολέμῳ πρὸς πάντα τὸν περίβολον ἐξαρκεῖν ὀλιγανθρωπίᾳ·
war for all the circuit to-suffice by-shortage-of-men
ἔνδειά τε παντελὴς χρημάτων καὶ κοινῶν καὶ ἰδίων
lack both complete of-money both public and private
ἐπῆν, ἥ τε πόλις τῶν ἀναγκαίων πάντων ἐσπάνιζεν,
was-upon-them the both city of-the necessities all lacked
ἐπικουρία τε αὐτοῖς οὐδεμία οὐδαμοῦ πανταχόθεν ἐφαίνετο.
help both for-them none nowhere from-any-side appeared

Οὐχ ἧττον δὲ αὐτοὺς ἔθραττε καὶ τὰ παρὰ λόγον
not less and them troubled also the(-things) against reason
τότε γινόμενα, ἅπερ εἰς θεοσημείαν ἐλάμβανον, σεισμοί
then happening which as divine-sign they-took earthquakes
τε ἀήθεις καὶ ξένοι καὶ βρασμοὶ γῆς τά τε ἐξ
both unaccustomed and strange and heavings of-earth the(-things) both from
οὐρανοῦ, βρονταί τε καὶ ἀστραπαὶ καταρρηγνύμεναι καὶ
heaven thunders both and lightnings breaking-out and
κεραυνοὶ φρικώδεις καὶ σέλας ὁρώμενον καὶ πνεύματα
thunderbolts dreadful and blaze seen and winds
βίαια καὶ λάβρων ὑετῶν ἐπικλύσεις τε καὶ καταφοραὶ,
violent and of-violent rains floodings both and downpours
ἔτι δὲ ἀστέρων ἀσυνήθων ἄτακτοι φάσεις καὶ δρόμοι
further and of-stars unaccustomed disorderly appearances and courses
πεπλανημένοι καὶ πάλιν ἀφανισμοὶ, ἕτεροι δ' αὖ
wandering and again disappearances others and in-turn
κατεστηριγμένοι τε καὶ πολὺν δὴ χρόνον καπνὸν
fixed both and for-much indeed time smoke
ὑποφαίνοντα· ἄλλα τε πολλὰ τοιαῦτα τερατώδη τε καὶ
showing other both many such portentous both and
παρὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς ὑπεσήμαινε τὸ θεῖον, τό τε μέλλον
against the custom signified the divine the both future
προφοιβάζοντα καὶ μεγίστην ὑποφαίνοντα καινοτομίαν τῶν
foretelling and greatest showing innovation of-the
καθεστώτων τε καὶ μεταβολήν· εἰκόνες τε γὰρ ἵδρουν ἐν
established both and change icons both for sweated in
ἱεροῖς καὶ στῆλαι καὶ ἀνδριάντες τῶν μακαρίων ἀνδρῶν,
sacred(-places) and pillars and statues of-the blessed men
κατοχαί τε καὶ ἐνθουσιασμοὶ ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ γυναικῶν παρὰ
possessions both and frenzies of-men both and of-women against
δόξαν ἐγίνοντο, οὐδὲν αἴσιον προμηνύουσαι, οἵ τε μάντεις
expectation happened nothing auspicious foreshowing the both seers

ἀπαίσια πολλὰ ἐπεθείαζον, λόγιά τε παλαιὰ ᾄδετο
inauspicious(-things) many prophesied oracles both ancient were-sung
καὶ χρησμοὶ ἀνηρευνῶντο, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις
and prophecies were-searched-out and whatever other in the such(-times)
ξυμβαίνειν φιλεῖ, πάντα ἐγίνετο, ἃ πάντα ἐς οὐδὲν
to-happen is-wont all happened which all to nothing
χρηστὸν φέροντα φόβον τε παρεῖχε πολὺν καὶ ἀγωνίαν
good tending fear both provided much and anguish
αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἑαυτῶν ὅλως ἐξίστα, καὶ περὶ τοῦ μέλλοντος
for-them and out-of-themselves wholly drove and about the future
οὐκ ἐδίδου θαρρεῖν. Πλήν γε δὴ ὡς ἐν κακοῖς
not allowed to-be-confident except at-least indeed as in evils
μικρὸν ἀναφέροντες, ἐκ τῶν ἐνόντων παρεσκευάζοντο,
a-little recovering from the available(-means) they-prepared
τάφρους τε καθαίροντες καὶ τὰ πεπονηκότα τοῦ τείχους
ditches both cleaning and the worn-out(-parts) of-the wall
ἀνορθοῦντες, τάς τε ἐπάλξεις ὁπλίζοντες πύργων τε καὶ
setting-upright the both battlements arming of-towers both and
μεταπυργίων, καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἅπαν ἐπισκευάζοντες κατὰ γῆν
curtain-walls and the wall all equipping by land
τε καὶ θάλασσαν· ἔτι δὲ ὅπλων τε καὶ βελῶν ξυλλογὴν
both and sea further and of-arms both and of-missiles collection
ἐποιοῦντο καὶ μηχανημάτων παντοίων, τά τε ἔξω τῶν
they-made and of-engines of-all-kinds the both outside of-the
φρουρίων ἐπεσκεύαζον, ὅπλα καὶ φυλακὰς ἐπιπέμποντες, τάς
fortresses they-equipped arms and guards sending-in the
τε νήσους ἠσφαλίζοντο, μετὰ δὲ τὸν μέγαν λιμένα καὶ τὸ
both islands they-secured after and the great harbor and —
Κέρας ἅπαν, ἀπό γε τῶν τοῦ Γαλατᾶ νεωρίων μέχρι τῶν
Horn all from at-least the — of-Galata dockyards as-far-as the
Εὐγενίου πυλῶν, ᾗπερ τὸ στενότατον ἦν, ἁλύσεσι μακραῖς
of-Eugenios gates where the narrowest was with-chains long

διελάμβανον· χρήματά τε ἀπό τε τῶν κοινῶν καὶ τῶν
they-cut-across money both from both the public and the
ἰδίων καὶ τῶν ἱερῶν ξυνέλεγον, σῖτόν τε καὶ τὰ
private and the sacred(-treasuries) they-collected grain both and the(-things)
ἐς διατροφὴν ἐσεκόμιζον, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσιν ὡς δυνατὸν
for nourishment they-brought-in with-the both other all as possible
ἐξηρτύοντο καὶ τοῖς ὅλοις ἐπεσκεύαζον τὴν πόλιν τε καὶ
they-fitted-out and in-the whole they-equipped the city both and
τὰ τείχη, ὡς κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν πολιορκηθησόμενοι.
the walls as by land and sea going-to-be-besieged

19.1 Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις πρεσβείας ἔπεμπον πανταχοῦ, ὅθεν
besides and these embassies they-sent everywhere from-where
ἦν αὐτοῖς ἐλπὶς ἐπικουρίαν ἔξειν τινά, τοῦτο μὲν ἐς
was for-them hope help to-have some this indeed to
Πελοπόννησον παρὰ τοὺς ταύτῃ δεσπότας, σῖτόν τε
Peloponnese to the there despots grain both
καὶ ἄνδρας εἰς ἐπικουρίαν αἰτοῦντες (ἐνόμιζον γὰρ
and men for help asking they-thought for
παρατεθήσεσθαι πολιορκίαν αὐτοῖς μέχρι πολλοῦ, καὶ μὴ
to-be-laid siege on-them until long and not
ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ ὅπλοις ἁλῶναι ἄν, ἧπερ ἑάλωσαν),
from onslaught by-force by-arms to-be-taken — as they-were-taken
τοῦτο δὲ παρὰ τὸν μέγαν ἀρχιερέα τῆς Ῥώμης, ᾧ
this and to the great high-priest — of-Rome in-whom
καὶ μᾶλλον εἶχον θαρρεῖν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ παρὰ τοὺς
also more they-could to-trust further and also to the
ἄλλους ἡγεμόνας τῆς Ἰταλίας καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἑσπερίων
other leaders — of-Italy and of-the other western
γενῶν, δεόμενοι ξυμμαχίας τε καὶ ἐπικουρίας τὴν ταχίστην
races begging alliance both and help the quickest

τυχεῖν, εἴ γε μὴ μέλλοιεν κινδυνεύσειν ἐν ἀκμῇ κινδύνων
to-obtain if at-least not they-were-to be-in-danger in peak of-dangers
ἤδη καθεστηκότες. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐν τούτοις ἦσαν.
already standing and they indeed in these(-things) were
Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις, ἐπειδὴ τὸν πόλεμον λαμπρῶς 20.1
emperor and Mehmed when the war brilliantly
ἐξήνεγκεν ἤδη, καὶ τῶν ἔξω τὰ μὲν κατέδραμε
he-brought-out already and of-the(-places) outside the(-ones) indeed he-overran
καὶ διήρπασε, τὰ δὲ ἀπέστησε, τὰ δὲ ἐχειρώσατο,
and plundered the(-ones) and he-detached the(-ones) and he-subdued
παρεσκευάζετο ἅμα ἦρι καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ πόλει κατὰ γῆν
he-prepared at-once with-spring also very the city by land
καὶ θάλασσαν προσβαλεῖν. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν ξυνῆγε τὰς
and sea to-attack and first indeed he-gathered the
δυνάμεις καὶ ξυνεκρότει, καὶ τὰ στρατεύματα πανταχόθεν
forces and drilled and the armies from-all-sides
ξυνήθροιζεν ἔκ τε Ἀσίας καὶ Εὐρώπης, ἱππικά τε καὶ
collected from both Asia and Europe cavalry both and
πεζικὰ, ἔτι δὲ ὁπλίτας τε καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας
infantry further and hoplites both and archers and slingers
κατέλεγε, καὶ ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην τάξιν
he-enrolled and javelin-men and every other rank
ἐξήταζεν, ὅπλα τε κατεσκεύαζεν ἐς ἀσφάλειαν τῶν
he-reviewed arms both he-made for safety of-the(-ones)
προμαχομένων, ἀσπίδας τε καὶ κράνη καὶ θώρακας καὶ
fighting-in-front shields both and helmets and breastplates and
θυρεοὺς ἔξωθεν καταφράκτους σιδήρῳ, πρὸς δὲ βέλη τε
door-shields outside covered with-iron besides and missiles both
καὶ ἀκόντια καὶ ξίφη καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα οἱ ἐς τειχομαχίαν
and javelins and swords and whatever other to-him for wall-fighting
ἐδόκει ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι πάντα μετὰ πολλῆς ἐποίει σπουδῆς·
seemed suitable to-be all with much he-made zeal

πρὸς δὲ τούτοις μηχανὰς κατεσκεύαζε τῷ τείχει παντοίας,
besides and these engines he-built for-the wall of-every-kind
τάς τε ἄλλας καὶ τὰς πετροβόλους δὴ ταύτας (καὶ)
the both others and the stone-throwing indeed these and
νεωτέρας, πρᾶγμα ξένον καὶ εἰς ἀκοὴν ἄπιστον, ὡς ἔδειξεν
newer affair strange and to hearing incredible as showed
ἡ πεῖρα, αἳ καὶ τὸ πᾶν ἐδυνήθησαν κατεργάσασθαι
the trial which also the all were-able to-accomplish

21.1 Πρὸ πάντων δὲ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ ἐπεμέλετο, τριήρεις
before all and the navy he-cared-for triremes
τὰς μὲν ἐκ νέου ναυπηγούμενος, τὰς δὲ τῷ
the(-ones) indeed from new building the(-ones) and by-the
χρόνῳ πεπονηκυίας ἀνορθῶν, τὰς δὲ διαβρόχους
time worn-out setting-right the(-ones) and waterlogged
οὔσας ἀνακεύων καὶ θεραπεύων· ἔτι δὲ πλοῖα μακρὰ
being caulking and tending further and ships long
κατεσκεύαζε, τὰ δὲ καὶ κατάφρακτα, καὶ ταχείας ναῦς
he-built the(-ones) and also decked and swift ships
τριακοντόρους τε καὶ πεντηκοντόρους, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην δὲ
thirty-oared both and fifty-oared and the other and
ἅπασαν τούτων ἐπισκευήν τε καὶ χρείαν ἑτοιμάζων τε ἦν
all of-these equipment both and use preparing both he-was
καὶ διορθούμενος ὅτι τάχιστα, μηδενὸς τῶν ἐς τοῦτο
and setting-right as quickly-as-possible nothing of-the(-things) to this
φερόντων φειδόμενος. Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ναυτικὸν ξυνέλεγεν
tending sparing besides and these navy he-collected
ἐκ πάσης τῆς αὐτοῦ παραλίας Ἀσιανῆς τε καὶ Εὐρωπαίας,
from all the his coast Asian both and European
ἐρέτας τε καὶ θρανίτας καὶ θαλαμίους καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν
rowers both and top-rowers and bottom-rowers and the(-ones) on the
καταστρωμάτων ἐπιλεγόμενος, ἔτι δὲ κυβερνήτας καὶ
decks choosing further and helmsmen and

κελευστὰς, τριηράρχους τε καὶ ναυάρχους καὶ στρατηγούς·
boatswains trierarchs both and admirals and generals
καὶ τὰ ἄλλα δὲ πληρώματα τῶν νεῶν μετὰ πολλῆς
and the other and crews of-the ships with much
ἐπιμελείας τε καὶ σπουδῆς ἐξεπλήρου· πλέον γὰρ ἰσχύσειν
care both and zeal he-filled-up more for to-be-strong
ἐς τὴν πολιορκίαν τε καὶ τὸν πόλεμον ἐδόκει τῷ κατὰ
for the siege both and the war it-seemed the by
θάλασσαν ναυτικῷ ἢ τῇ κατὰ γῆν στρατιᾷ, καὶ διὰ
sea navy than the by land army and because-of
τοῦτο τὸ πλέον ἔνεμε τῆς ἐπιμελείας αὐτῷ, καὶ πάσῃ
this the more he-allotted of-the care to-it and all
σπουδῇ καὶ προθυμίᾳ, προσέτι γε μὴν καὶ φιλοτιμίᾳ πρὸς
zeal and eagerness besides at-least indeed also ambition for
τὸ ἔργον ἐχρῆτο, προὔργου τι τοῦτο νομίζων εἶναι.
the work he-used advantageous something this thinking to-be
Ἐν τούτοις δ' ὄντος αὐτοῦ καὶ παρασκευαζομένου 22.1
in these(-things) and being him and preparing
χειμῶνος, καὶ τὸ ἔαρ ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, καὶ ὃς εὐθὺς τὰς
in-winter also the spring was-showing already and he at-once the
μὲν ναῦς παρεσκεύαζεν ἐς ἀναγωγὴν ἀπὸ Καλλιουπόλεως
indeed ships prepared for putting-out from Kallipolis
(ἐκεῖ γὰρ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ξυνηγμέναι), ἡγεμόνα καὶ
there for were for-him gathered leader and
στρατηγὸν ἐπιστήσας αὐταῖς Παλτόγλην τὸν σατράπην
general having-set-over them Baltoğlu the satrap
Καλλιουπόλεως. Ἦσαν δ' αἱ πᾶσαι τὸν ἀριθμὸν, ὡς
of-Kallipolis were and the all in-the number as
ἐλέγοντο, τριακόσιαι καὶ πεντήκοντα, ἄνευ μέντοι γε
were-said three-hundred and fifty without however at-least
τῶν σκευαγωγῶν καὶ τῶν κατ' ἄλλην τινὰ χρείαν ἢ
the baggage-carriers and the(-ones) for other some need or

ἐμπορίαν ἀφικνουμένων· αἱ δ᾽ ἀνήγοντο τάχει πολλῷ
trade arriving they and put-out with-speed much
ξὺν βοῇ καὶ θορύβῳ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ, εἰρεσίᾳ τε χρώμεναι
with shout and uproar and war-cry rowing both using
καὶ παρακελευσμῷ καὶ πατάγῳ καὶ ἀντιφιλοτιμήσει πρὸς
and exhortation and clatter and rivalry toward
ἀλλήλας, ὑπερηχοῦσαι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἔκπληξιν δὲ
one-another echoing-over — Hellespont astonishment and
καὶ φόβον ὅτι πλεῖστον παρέχουσαι τοῖς ὁρῶσι·
and fear as most providing to-the(-ones) seeing
διὰ πολλοῦ γὰρ χρόνου οὐδαμοῦ τοσοῦτος στόλος νεῶν
through much for time nowhere so-great fleet of-ships
καὶ παρασκευὴ τοσήδε κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐγεγόνει· ὃ
and preparation so-great by sea had-come-about which
δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον τοὺς ταλαιπώρους Ῥωμαίους ἐξέπληξε
indeed also more the wretched Romans astonished
παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα φανὲν, καὶ εἰς ἀπόγνωσιν καὶ ἀθυμίαν
against hope appearing and into despair and despondency
μεγίστην ἐνέβαλε, καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην ἐλπίδα χρηστὴν
greatest threw and every other hope good
αὐτῶν παρῄρητο. Πρότερον μὲν γὰρ ἡνίκα προσέβαλλον
of-them had-taken-away before indeed for when attacked
αὐτοῖς οἱ πολέμιοι, κατὰ γῆν ἐπολιορκοῦντο μόνον, τῆς δὲ
them the enemies by land they-were-besieged only the and
θαλάσσης ἐκράτουν, καὶ εἶχον τά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἄφθονα τῇ
sea they-controlled and had the both provisions abundant the
κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐμπορίᾳ χρώμενοι, τόν τε πόλεμον ῥᾳδίως
by sea trade using the both war easily
ἀνέφερον, καὶ τὰς προσβολὰς οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀπεκρούοντο
they-bore and the attacks not with-difficulty repelled
διὰ πολυχειρίαν, τῶν πολεμίων ἐνὶ μέρει καὶ μόνῳ τῷ
because-of numbers of-the enemies in-one part and only the

κατὰ γῆν μαχομένων· νῦν δὲ κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν
by land fighting now but by both land and sea
ἐπιόντα ὁρῶντες τὸν πόλεμον, εἰκότως ἐξεπλήττοντο καὶ
coming-on seeing the war naturally they-were-astonished and
εἰς ἀπορίαν μεγίστην καὶ φόβον δεινὸν ἐνέπιπτον. Καὶ ὁ
into perplexity greatest and fear terrible fell and the
μὲν κατὰ θάλασσαν στόλος τῷ βασιλεῖ οὕτως ἀνήγετο.
indeed by sea fleet for-the emperor thus put-out
Αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ 23.1
himself and having-set-out from the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the army
ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ διὰ τῆς μεσογείας ἐχώρει, ἅπαντα
cavalry both and infantry through the inland went all
ξυγκυκῶν τε καὶ ξυνταράττων καὶ φόβον καὶ ἀγωνίαν
stirring-up both and confounding and fear and anguish
καὶ φρίκην μεγίστην ἐμποιῶν καθ' οὓς ἂν γένοιτο,
and shuddering greatest instilling among whom — he-might-come
ξυνεπαγόμενος ἅμα οἱ καὶ τὰς μηχανάς· καὶ ἀφικνεῖται
bringing-along at-once with-him also the engines and arrives
δεκαταῖος ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον, καὶ στρατοπεδεύεται πρὸς
on-the-tenth-day at — Byzantium and encamps near
τῇ πόλει ἐγγύς που τοῦ τείχους, ὅσα ἀπὸ σταδίων
the city close somewhere to-the wall about from stades
τεσσάρων, πρὸς ταῖς καλουμέναις πύλαις τοῦ Ῥωμανοῦ.
four by the called gates — of-Romanos
Αἱ δὲ νῆες ὁρμίζονται ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τῆς ἠπείρου
the and ships anchor here and there of-the mainland
καταντικρὺ τῆς πόλεως, πληρώσασαι πᾶσαν τὴν ταύτῃ
opposite the city having-filled all the there
παραλίαν. Ὁ δὲ στρατὸς ἅπας ἦν, ὡς ἐλέγετο, ὑπὲρ
coast the and army whole was as was-said over

τὰς τριάκοντα μυριάδας τὸ μάχιμον, ἄνευ μέντοιγε τοῦ
the thirty myriads the fighting(-part) without however the
ἄλλου ὁμίλου, ὃς πολὺς εἵπετο.
other crowd which large followed

24.1 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ στρατὸν τοσοῦτον πεζόν τε καὶ ναυτικὸν καὶ
Romans and army so-great infantry both and naval and
παρασκευὴν τοσήνδε κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν ἐπιοῦσαν
preparation so-great by land and sea coming-on
ὁρῶντες ἐξεπλήττοντο μὲν τῷ τε παραλόγῳ τῆς θέας
seeing were-astonished indeed by-the both unexpectedness of-the sight
τῷ τε ἀθρόῳ τῆς ἐπιθέσεως, οὐ μὴν ἠμέλουν γε
by-the both suddenness of-the attack not indeed neglected at-least
καὶ αὐτοὶ τῶν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὴν ἐναντίαν
also themselves the(-things) for the war and the opposing
παρασκευήν, ἀλλὰ πάντα ἐποίουν, μηδὲν ὑφιέντες. Καὶ
preparation but all did nothing slackening and
πρῶτον μὲν ὁλκάδας μεγάλας περί τε τὴν ἄλυσιν καὶ
first indeed merchantmen great about both the chain and
τὸ στόμα τοῦ μεγάλου λιμένος ἀντιπρώρους βύζην
the mouth of-the great harbor prow-to-prow close-packed
ὥρμιζον, καὶ τριήρεις μακρὰς περὶ αὐτὰς, ὡς ταύτῃ
they-anchored and triremes long about them as there
τὸν ἔσπλουν τῶν πολεμίων κωλύσοντες. Ἔτυχον δὲ
the sailing-in of-the enemies going-to-hinder happened and
τότε παροῦσαι καὶ τριήρεις ἐξ Ἰταλίας ἓξ Ἐνετικαὶ,
then being-present also triremes from Italy six Venetian
οὐκ ἐπὶ πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ κατὰ χρείαν ἰδίαν, καὶ ὁλκάδες
not for war but for need own and merchantmen
μεγάλαι ἐκ Κρήτης ἀφιγμέναι κατ' ἐμπορίαν, ἃς ἀξιώσει
great from Crete having-arrived for trade which by-request
κατέσχον, πείσαντες παραμεῖναι τῷ πολέμῳ.
they-detained having-persuaded to-stay-on for-the war

Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις ἀφικνεῖται καί τις ἀνὴρ 25.1
in and the same days arrives also a-certain man
Ἰταλὸς, Ἰουστῖνος ὄνομα, δυνατός τε καὶ τῶν εὖ
Italian Giustiniani by-name powerful both and of-the(-ones) well
γεγονότων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὰ ἐς πόλεμον ἔμπειρος
born but indeed also in-the(-things) for war experienced
καὶ μάλα γενναῖος, ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ δύο τῶν μεγάλων
and very noble having with himself also two of-the great
ὁλκάδων, ἃς οἴκοθεν αὐτὸς ἐπισκευάσας καὶ ὁπλίσας
merchantmen which from-home himself having-equipped and having-armed
καλῶς ἀνδράσι τε καὶ ὅπλοις παντοίοις (εἶχε γὰρ
well with-men both and arms of-every-kind he-had for
ἐπάνω τῶν καταστρωμάτων τούτων ἄνδρας καταφράκτους
above the decks of-these men armored
τετρακοσίους) διέτριβε περί τε Χίον καὶ Ῥόδον
four-hundred he-was-spending-time about both Chios and Rhodes
καὶ τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν, λοχῶν τινας τῶν αὐτῷ
and the there sea lying-in-wait-for some of-the to-him
διαφόρων· ὃς προμαθὼν τόν τε πόλεμον Ῥωμαίων
hostile who having-learned-beforehand the both war of-Romans
καὶ τὴν ὅσον οὐ τῆς πόλεως ἐσομένην πολιορκίαν καὶ
and the all but of-the city going-to-be siege and
τὴν μεγάλην τοῦ βασιλέως Μεχέμετι παρασκευὴν κατ'
the great of-the emperor Mehmed preparation against
αὐτῆς, ἦκεν αὐτόκλητος ξὺν ταῖς ὁλκάσι βοηθήσων
it came self-called with the merchantmen going-to-help
Ῥωμαίοις καὶ βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντίνῳ· εἰσὶ δὲ οἱ καὶ
Romans and emperor Constantine there-are and those-who also
μετάκλητον αὐτὸν γενέσθαι φασὶ παρ' αὐτοῦ ὑπεσχημένου
summoned him to-have-been say by him having-promised
μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον μισθὸν τῆς βοηθείας τὴν Λῆμνον
after the war as-pay of-the help — Lemnos

αὐτῷ. Οὗτος ἐν ὀλίγῳ πεῖραν τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης τε καὶ
to-him this-man in little trial of-the his judgment both and
τῶν τρόπων ἀκριβῆ παρασχὼν, καὶ πίστεις δοὺς καὶ
of-the ways exact having-given and pledges having-given and
λαβὼν, δέχεται καὶ τιμᾶται παρά τε τοῦ βασιλέως
having-received is-received and is-honored by both the emperor
καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει καὶ τῆς πολιτείας λαμπρῶς, καὶ
and the(-ones) in office and the state brilliantly and
καθίσταται παρ᾽ αὐτῶν στρατηγὸς αὐτοκράτωρ καὶ κύριος
is-appointed by them general with-full-power and lord
τοῦ πολέμου παντὸς καὶ βουλῆς καὶ ῥητῶν καὶ
of-the war whole and of-counsel and of-things-spoken and
ἀπορρήτων καὶ ὅπλων καὶ πάσης τῆς τοῦ πολέμου
of-secrets and of-arms and all the of-the war
χρείας τε καὶ παρασκευῆς. Καταστὰς οὖν ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε,
need both and preparation established then in the such(-office)
παντοίως ἐπεσκεύαζε τὴν πόλιν, τό τε κατὰ γῆν τεῖχος
in-every-way he-equipped the city the both by land wall
ἅπαν ὁπλίζων καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις πετροβόλοις τε μηχαναῖς
all arming and the battlements with-stone-throwing both engines
καὶ παντοίοις ὅπλοις, τούς τε προμαχομένους τε καὶ
and with-every-kind arms the and front-fighters both and
προπολεμοῦντας τούτων ἐκτάττων καλῶς καὶ καθιστῶν
fore-combatants of-these drawing-up well and stationing
ἕνα ἕκαστον ᾗ δεῖ, καὶ παραγγέλλων, ὅπως χρὴ
one each where it-is-needed and instructing how it-is-necessary
τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἀμύνεσθαι καὶ φυλάττειν τὸ τεῖχος·
the(-ones) attacking to-ward-off and to-guard the wall
ἔτι δὲ τὸν λιμένα καλῶς ἠσφαλίσατο, ᾗπερ εἴρηται,
further and the harbor well he-secured as has-been-said
ὁλκάσι τε καὶ τριήρεσι καὶ μηχαναῖς παντοίαις, καὶ
with-merchantmen both and triremes and engines of-every-kind and

τὸ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἅπαν τεῖχος, ὥσπερ δὴ καὶ τὸ τῆς
the by sea whole wall as indeed also the of-the
ἠπείρου, ἀρκούντως ὥπλισεν· ἦν γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ πολέμων
mainland sufficiently he-armed was for the man of-wars
ἔμπειρος, ἥπερ ἔφην, καὶ τὰ ἐς τειχομαχίαν μάλιστα
experienced as I-said and in-the(-things) for wall-fighting most
ἱκανῶς ἤσκητο. Ἐγχειρίζεται δὲ καὶ τὸ καταντικρὺ τοῦ
adequately trained is-entrusted and also the opposite of-the
βασιλέως στρατοπέδου μέρος τοῦ τείχους, ὡς ἐπίμαχόν τε
emperor camp part of-the wall as assailable both
ὄν, ὅπη δὴ καὶ τὸ καθαρώτατον ἦν τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ
being where indeed also the purest was of-the army and
ἡ βασίλειος ἴλη τε καὶ αὐλὴ, καὶ οὗ τὰς μηχανὰς
the royal squadron both and court and where the engines
ἔδει τοὺς πολεμίους προσαγαγεῖν, ὥστε προπολεμεῖν
it-was-needed the enemies to-bring-up so-that to-fight-in-front
τε αὐτὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ προμάχεσθαι καὶ φυλάττειν μετά γε
both himself there and to-fight-before and to-guard with at-least
τῶν ξὺν αὐτῷ· εἶχε γὰρ ὑφ' αὑτὸν, ὡς ἔφθην εἰπών,
the(-ones) with him he-had for under himself as I-said-before saying
καταφράκτους ἄνδρας τετρακοσίους ἄνευ γε τῶν ἄλλων
armored men four-hundred without at-least the other
πληρωμάτων τῶν νεῶν. Γίνεται δὲ τότε καί τις ἐκδρομὴ
crews of-the ships happens and then also a-certain sally
βραχεῖα τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως πρός τινας τῶν ἀπὸ
brief of-the(-ones) from the city against some of-the(-ones) from
τῆς στρατιᾶς προκαταδραμόντας ἀτάκτως, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν
the army having-run-ahead in-disorder and they-killed
ἐνίους αὐτῶν, ὀλίγους δὲ καὶ ἔτρωσαν. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
some of-them a-few and also wounded after and these(-things)
ξυνελαθέντες ὑπὸ πολλῶν ἀντεκδραμόντων ἀπὸ τῆς
driven-together by many counter-sallying from the

στρατιᾶς, κατέφυγον ἐς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ κλείσαντες τὰς
army they-fled into the city and having-shut the
πύλας οὐκέτι ἐπεξέθεον, ἀλλ᾽ ἐφύλαττον μόνον τὴν πόλιν.
gates no-longer sallied but guarded only the city
26.1 Μεχέμετις δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς στρατόπεδον θέμενος αὐτοῦ
Mehmed and the emperor camp having-placed there
που περὶ τὸ καλούμενον Μεσοτείχιον καὶ τὸ Μυριάνδριον
somewhere near the called Mesoteichion and — Myriandrion
οὐ πόρρω τοῦ τείχους, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι ἐγγυτάτω καὶ ὅσον
not far from-the wall but as closest and so-far
μὴ ἔσω βελῶν εἶναι, πρῶτον μὲν δεῖν ἔγνω λόγοις
not within missiles to-be first indeed to-be-needful he-resolved words
χρήσασθαι πρὸς Ῥωμαίους, εἰ βούλοιντο παραδόντες
to-use toward Romans if they-would-wish having-handed-over
αὐτῷ τήν τε πόλιν καὶ ἑαυτοὺς μετὰ ξυμβάσεων καὶ
to-him the both city and themselves with agreements and
ὅρκων πιστῶν καθῆσθαι ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς
oaths trustworthy to-stay with wives and children and the
ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς, ἀπολαύοντες
possessions all safe and of-evils unharmed enjoying
τῶν ἰδίων εἰρηνικῶς· καὶ πέμπει δὴ τοὺς ταῦτα
the own(-things) peaceably and he-sends indeed the(-ones) these(-things)
ἐροῦντας, οἱ καὶ παραγενόμενοι ἀπήγγειλαν τὰ παρὰ
going-to-say who also having-arrived reported the(-things) from
τοῦ βασιλέως. Οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις, εἰπόντες
the emperor they but not accepted on these(-terms) having-said
ἄλλας σπονδὰς ἐθέλειν ποιεῖσθαι, τὴν πόλιν δὲ ἀδύνατα
other truces to-wish to-make the city but impossible
εἶναι παραδώσειν αὐτῷ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τούτων ἀκούσας,
to-be to-hand-over to-him emperor and these having-heard
εὐθὺς ἔκειρέ τε τὴν γῆν καὶ τὰ πέριξ πάντα τῆς
at-once ravaged both the land and the(-places) around all of-the

πόλεως ἐδῄωσε. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἀναλαβὼν τόν τε Ζάγανον
city laid-waste after and this having-taken — both Zaganos
καὶ Χαλίλην, ἄνδρας τῶν πρώτων παρ᾽ αὐτῷ, ξὺν αὐτοῖς
and Halil men of-the first with him with them
δὲ καὶ ἑτέρους τῶν σατραπῶν, περιῄει τὸ κατ᾽ ἤπειρον
and also others of-the satraps went-around the by mainland
μέρος τῆς πόλεως, κατασκοπῶν τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος, ᾗ τε
part of-the city surveying the there wall where both
ἐπιμαχώτατον εἴη ἐς προσβολήν, ᾗ τε ἀπόμαχον, καὶ
most-assailable it-might-be for attack where both unassailable and
ᾗ δεῖ προσάγειν τὰς μηχανὰς ὥστε κατασεῖσαι αὐτό.
where it-is-needed to-bring-up the engines so-as to-shake-down it
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐκτάσσει πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιάν, τούς τε 27.1
after and this he-draws-up all the army the both
σατράπας καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ ταγματάρχας καὶ ἡγεμόνας
satraps and squadron-leaders and battalion-commanders and leaders
τῶν τάξεων, διδοὺς ἑκάστῳ καὶ τάξιν καὶ τόπον, ᾗ
of-the ranks giving to-each both rank and place where
δεῖ φυλάττειν καὶ μάχεσθαι, καὶ παραγγέλλων ἃ
it-is-needed to-guard and to-fight and instructing what
δεῖ ποιεῖν. Διελὼν δὲ κατὰ μέρη τὴν πόλιν ἅπασαν
it-is-needed to-do having-divided and by parts the city all
καὶ τὸ τεῖχος κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν, Ζαγάνῳ μὲν καὶ
and the wall by land both and sea to-Zaganos indeed and
τοῖς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ξύν γε καὶ ἑτέροις τισὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν
to-the(-ones) under him with at-least also others some of-the captains
καταπιστεύει τήν τε πολιορκίαν τοῦ Γαλατᾶ καὶ τὸ κατ᾽
he-entrusts the both siege — of-Galata and the by
αὐτὸν μέρος ἅπαν ξύν γε τῷ Κέρατι καὶ λιμένι παντὶ
it part all with at-least — Horn and harbor all
ἀνιόντι μέχρι τῆς ὀνομαζομένης Ξυλίνης πύλης τῆς πόλεως,
going-up as-far-as the called Wooden gate of-the city

ἐνδοὺς αὐτῷ καὶ γεφυροῦν τὸν ταύτῃ πορθμὸν τοῦ
having-granted to-him also to-bridge the there strait —
Κέρατος ἀπό γε τῶν Κεραμικῶν μέχρι τοῦ πέραν καὶ
of-Horn from at-least — Keramika as-far-as the across and
καταντικρὺ τούτων ὄντος τείχους τῆς πόλεως· ἔγνωστο
opposite these being wall of-the city it-had-been-resolved
γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ ταύτῃ διαβιβάσαι ὁπλίτας τε καὶ τοξότας,
for by-him also there to-take-across hoplites both and archers
ὡς ἂν πανταχόθεν προσβάλλοι τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἀκριβῆ τὴν
so-that — from-all-sides he-might-attack the city and exact the
πολιορκίαν ποιοῖτο. Καρατζίᾳ δὲ τῷ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπάρχῳ
siege might-make to-Karaca and the — of-Europe governor
καὶ ἑτέροις τῶν σατραπῶν τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς Ξυλίνης πύλης
and to-others of-the satraps the(-part) from — Wooden gate
ἀνιόντι μέχρι τῶν βασιλείων τοῦ Πορφυρογεννήτου καὶ
going-up as-far-as the palaces — of-Porphyrogennetos and
φθάνοντι μέχρι τῆς ὀνομαζομένης πύλης τῆς Χαρισοῦς
reaching as-far-as the called gate — of-Charisios
ἐγχειρίζει, δοὺς αὐτῷ καί τινας τῶν μηχανῶν καὶ
he-entrusts having-given to-him also some of-the engines and
μηχανοποιοὺς παίειν τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος, ᾗ ἂν ἀσθενὲς καὶ
engine-makers to-strike the there wall where — weak and
ἐπίμαχον εἴη, καὶ κατασείειν αὐτό. Ἰσαάκῳ δὲ τῷ τῆς
assailable it-might-be and to-shake-down it to-Isaac and the —
Ἀσίας ἐπάρχοντι τότε καὶ Μαχουμούτει κόμητι ὄντι τὸ
of-Asia governing then and Mahmud count being the
τηνικαῦτα, ἀνδράσι γενναίοις τε καὶ τῇ κατὰ πόλεμον
at-that-time men noble both and for-the in war
ἐμπειρίᾳ καὶ τόλμῃ θαυμαζομένοις πολλῇ, τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ
experience and daring admired much the(-part) from —
Μυριανδρίου μέχρι τῶν τῆς Χρυσέας πυλῶν καὶ τῆς ταύτῃ
Myriandrion as-far-as the — of-Golden gates and of-the there

θαλάσσης μέρος ἐπιτρέπει. Αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ξύν γε
sea part he-entrusts himself and the emperor with at-least
τοῖς δυσὶ πασιάδαις τῷ τε Χαλίλῃ καὶ Σαρατζίᾳ τὸ μέσον
the two pashas — both Halil and Saruca the middle
ἐπέχει τῆς πόλεως καὶ τοῦ κατ᾽ ἤπειρον τείχους, καὶ ᾗ
holds of-the city and of-the by mainland wall and where
μάλιστα ἐνόμιζεν ἐπιμαχώτατον εἶναι, ἔχων μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ
most he-thought most-assailable to-be having with himself
τὴν βασιλικὴν αὐλὴν πᾶσαν, λέγω δὴ τοὺς πεζαιτέρους
the royal court all I-mean indeed the foot-soldiers
τε καὶ τοξότας καὶ ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τὴν ἄλλην περὶ
both and archers and shield-bearers and the other about
αὐτὸν ἴλην, ὃ δὴ τὸ καθαρώτατον ἦν τοῦ στρατοῦ.
him squadron which indeed the purest was of-the army
Ἐκτάξας δὲ οὕτω τὴν κατὰ γῆν στρατιὰν καὶ πανταχόθεν 28.1
having-drawn-up and thus the by land army and from-all-sides
τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος ἀσφαλισάμενός τε καὶ περιλαβὼν τῷ
the there wall having-secured both and having-surrounded with-the
στρατῷ, τὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν πόλεμον ἐγχειρίζει Παλτόγλη,
army the by sea war he-entrusts to-Baltoğlu
ἀνδρὶ γενναίῳ τε καὶ τῶν κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐμπείρῳ τε
man noble both and in-the(-things) by sea experienced both
καὶ στρατηγικῷ, ὃν ἡγεμόνα τοῦ ναυτικοῦ παντὸς εἵλετο,
and skilled-in-generalship whom leader of-the navy whole he-chose
καὶ τῆς παραλίας ἁπάσης, Ἀσιανῆς τε καὶ Εὐρωπαίας,
and of-the coast all Asian both and European
σατράπην ὄντα Καλλιουπόλεως· ὃς δὴ τὸ κατὰ θάλασσαν
satrap being of-Kallipolis who indeed the by sea
ἅπαν τεῖχος ταῖς ναυσὶ περιείληφε, ἀπό (τε) τῆς Χρυσέας
whole wall with-the ships surrounded from both — Golden
τοῦ ἄκρου μέχρι (δὴ καὶ) τῶν νεωρίων τοῦ Γαλατᾶ, στάδιά
of-the headland as-far-as indeed also the dockyards — of-Galata stades

που μάλιστα τρία καὶ τεσσαράκοντα, ξὺν γε τῇ ἁλύσει
about most three and forty with at-least the chain
καὶ ταῖς ἐφορμούσαις ταύτῃ ναυσὶ καὶ ὁλκάσιν· οὗ δὴ καὶ
and the lying-at-anchor there ships and merchantmen where indeed also
καθ' ἡμέραν προσβάλλων τὸν πόλεμον ἐποιεῖτο, βουλόμενος
by day attacking the war he-made wishing
τὸν ἔσπλουν βιάσασθαι τοῦ λιμένος, ὡς ἂν καὶ τὸ κατὰ τὸ
the sailing-in to-force of-the harbor so-that — also the by —
Κέρας ἅπαν τεῖχος ἀνοίξῃ πολέμῳ. Ἦν δὲ ὁ περίβολος
Horn whole wall he-might-open by-war was and the circuit
ἅπας τῆς πόλεως ὁ περιληφθεὶς τῷ στρατῷ κατὰ γῆν
whole of-the city the surrounded by-the army by land
τε καὶ θάλασσαν ἀκριβῶς λογιζομένῳ στάδιοί που μάλιστα
both and sea exactly for-one-reckoning stades about most
ἓξ καὶ εἴκοσι πρὸς τοῖς ἑκατόν· ἀπὸ τούτων ἦν ἀφύλακτον
six and twenty besides the hundred of these was unguarded
μόνον τὸ τοῦ Κέρατος τεῖχος τὸ ἐντὸς τῆς ἁλύσεως,
only the — of-Horn wall the(-part) inside the chain
στάδιοι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα, τὸ δὲ ἄλλο πᾶν ἐφυλάττετο.
stades five and thirty the and other all was-guarded

29.1 Πράξας δὲ οὕτω ταῦτα μετακαλεῖται τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς
having-done and thus these(-things) he-summons the engine-makers
καὶ κοινολογεῖται τούτοις περί τε τῶν μηχανῶν καὶ
and confers with-them about both the engines and
τοῦ τείχους, ὅπως ἂν ῥᾷστα καθαιρεθείη. Οἱ δὲ
the wall how — most-easily it-might-be-taken-down they and
ὑπισχνοῦνται αὐτῷ ῥᾳδίαν εἶναι τὴν τούτου καθαίρεσιν, εἴ
promise to-him easy to-be the of-it taking-down if
γε πρὸς ταῖς οὔσαις μηχαναῖς (ἦσαν γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἤδη
at-least besides the existing engines there-were for for-them already
καὶ ἕτεραι πρόσθεν πεποιημέναι) καὶ ἑτέραν ποιήσωσι,
also others before made also another they-should-make

τὴν δοκοῦσαν αὐτοῖς ἱκανὴν εἶναι κατασεῖσαι τὸ τεῖχος
the(-one) seeming to-them sufficient to-be to-shake-down the wall
καὶ καθελεῖν, πρὸς ἣν καὶ ἀναλωμάτων πολλῶν καὶ
and to-take-down for which also of-expenses many and
χαλκοῦ πλείστου καὶ ἑτέρων οὐκ ὀλίγων εἰδῶν ἔνεστι χρεία.
of-bronze very-much and of-other not few kinds is need
Καὶ ὃς εὐθὺς, θᾶττον ἢ λόγος, ἅπαντα δαψιλῶς αὐτοῖς
and he at-once quicker than word all lavishly to-them
παρέχει τὰ πρὸς τὴν χρείαν, οἱ δὲ κατασκευάζουσι τὴν
provides the(-things) for the need they and construct the
μηχανὴν, πρᾶγμα φοβερώτατον ἰδεῖν καὶ ἐς ἀκοὴν ὅλως
engine affair most-fearsome to-see and to hearing wholly
ἄπιστόν τε καὶ δυσπαράδεκτον. Λέξω δὲ τὴν κατασκευὴν
incredible both and hard-to-accept I-will-tell and the construction
αὐτῆς καὶ τὸ εἶδος καὶ τὴν ἐνέργειαν, ὡς ἐνόν. Πηλὸς
of-it and the form and the working as possible clay
ἐπαλλάσσετο πολλῶν ἡμερῶν, ὥστε κατεργασθῆναι, γῆς
was-worked of-many days so-as to-be-prepared of-earth
τῆς πιοτάτης τε καὶ καθαρωτάτης καὶ λεπτοτάτης τῇ
the richest both and purest and finest in-the
διαθέσει, λίνῳ τε καὶ κανάβῃ καὶ τοιούτοις τισὶν ἄλλοις
composition with-flax both and hemp and such some other
ξυνδετικοῖς τε καὶ ξυνεκτικοῖς κατακεκερματισμένοις ὅλος
binding both and cohesive chopped-up wholly
διόλου μεμιγμένος καὶ ξυμφυρόμενος, ὡς ἓν σῶμα γίνεσθαι
throughout mixed and kneaded-together so-as one body to-become
τούτοις ξυνεχές τε καὶ ἀδιάσπαστον. Τύπος δ' ἐκ τούτου
with-these continuous both and inseparable mold and from this
κατεσκευάζετο στρογγύλος, αὐλοειδὴς, ἐπιμήκης, οἷος ἐς
was-made round pipe-shaped elongated such-as for
ὀμφαλὸν εἶναι· μῆκος τούτῳ σπιθαμαὶ τετταράκοντα· οὗ
core to-be length to-it spans forty of-which

τὸ μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ἥμισυ, τὸ πρὸς ὑποδοχὴν τοῦ λίθου,
the indeed front half the(-part) for receiving of-the stone
σπιθαμῶν δυοκαίδεκα τὸν κύκλον καὶ τὴν περιφέρειαν εἶχε
of-spans twelve the circle and the circumference had
τοῦ πάχους, τὸ δ' ὄπισθεν ἥμισυ τῆς οὐρᾶς, τὸ πρὸς
of-the thickness the and rear half of-the tail the(-part) for
ὑποδοχὴν τῆς ὀνομαζομένης βοτάνης, σπιθαμῶν τεττάρων
receiving of-the called grass(-powder) of-spans four
ἢ καὶ μικρόν τι πρὸς εἶχε τὴν περιφέρειαν τοῦ πάχους,
or also little something more had the circumference of-the thickness
ὡς πρὸς τὴν ἀναλογίαν, οἶμαι, τοῦ ὅλου. Ἕτερος δὲ
as for the proportion I-think of-the whole another and
τύπος ἐκτὸς πρὸς ὑποδοχὴν τούτου κατεσκευάζετο, κοῖλος
mold outside for receiving of-this was-made hollow
ὅλος διόλου καὶ οἷον θήκη τις εἶναι, εὐρύτερος δὲ μόνον,
wholly throughout and as-it-were case some to-be wider but only
ὥστε δέξασθαι τοῦτον ὅλον αὐτὸς καὶ μετ' ἀποστάσεως·
so-as to-receive this whole itself and with spacing
ἀπόστασις δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ τοῖν τύποιν ἀμφοῖν ὅλοιν
spacing and was in the between the molds both wholly
διόλου ἐπίσης πάντοθεν ὅσον σπιθαμιαία ἢ καὶ μικρόν
throughout equally on-all-sides as-much-as a-span or also little
τι πρός, ἥτις ἔμελλε δέξασθαι τὸν χαλκὸν εἰσχεόμενον
something more which was-to receive the bronze being-poured-in
ἀπὸ τῆς χωνείας ἐς ἀπαρτισμὸν τοῦ εἴδους τῆς μηχανῆς.
from the furnace for completion of-the form of-the engine
Ὁ δὲ τύπος οὗτος, ὁ ἔξω, φημί, κατεσκευάζετο τῷ
the and mold this the outside I-mean was-made with-the
αὐτῷ πηλῷ· ἦν δὲ ὅλος διόλου διεζωσμένος τε καὶ
same clay was and wholly throughout girded both and
κατησφαλισμένος σιδήρῳ τε καὶ ξύλοις καὶ γῇ καὶ λίθοις
secured with-iron both and timbers and earth and stones

ἔξωθεν ἐπῳκοδομημένος καὶ βοηθούμενος, ἵνα μὴ τὸ
from-outside built-over and supported so-that not the
πολὺ βάρος ἐντὸς ἐμπεσὸν τοῦ χαλκοῦ διαρρήξῃ τοῦτον
great weight within having-fallen of-the bronze should-burst it
καὶ ἄπρακτον ἐργάσηται τὸ εἶδος τῆς μηχανῆς.
and useless should-make the form of-the engine
Ἰπνοὶ δὲ δύο σύνεγγυς τούτων ἀμφοτέρωθεν κατεσκευάζοντο
furnaces and two near these on-both-sides were-built
εἰς χωνείας, ἰσχυρότατοι μέντοι καὶ βεβαιότατοι, τὰ
for smelting strongest however and most-secure the(-parts)
μὲν ἔνδον ἐξ ὀπτῆς πλίνθου κατειργασμένοι καὶ πηλοῦ
indeed inside of baked brick worked and of-clay
καλῶς εἰργασμένου καὶ πιοτάτου, τὰ ἔξωθεν δὲ
well worked and richest the(-parts) outside and
ὅλοι διόλων λίθοις παμμεγέθεσι καὶ τιτάνῳ καὶ πᾶσιν
wholly throughout with-stones huge and with-lime and all
ἄλλοις ὠχυρωμένοι πρὸς τοῦτο χρησίμοις. Χαλκοῦ δὲ
others fortified for this useful(-things) of-bronze and
καὶ κασσιτέρου πολύ τι χρῆμα καὶ πολυτάλαντος ὁλκὴ
and of-tin great some quantity and many-talented weight
ἐνεβέβλητο χωνείαις, τάλαντά που μάλιστα χίλια καὶ
had-been-put-in in-the-furnaces talents about most thousand and
πεντακόσια, ὡς ἐλέγετο· ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀνθράκων τε πολύ τι
five-hundred as was-said on these of-charcoal both great some
πλῆθος καὶ κορμῶν ἐπετίθετο ταῖς χωνείαις ἔξωθεν, ὥσπερ
multitude and of-logs was-placed on-the furnaces from-outside as-if
ἐπῳκοδομημένα ἄνωθέν τε καὶ κάτωθεν καὶ πανταχόθεν
built-over from-above both and from-below and from-all-sides
ἐς βάθος τοὺς ἰπνοὺς ξυγκαλύπτοντα, ἄνευ μέντοι γε
to depth the furnaces covering without however at-least
τῶν στομίων. Φυσητῆρες δὲ περὶ αὐτοὺς ἐπιτεταμένως
the mouths bellows and around them intensely

φυσῶντες καὶ ἀδιακόπως τὴν ἐπικειμένην ὕλην ἐξάπτοντες
blowing and unceasingly the laid-on material kindling
ἐν τρισὶν ὅλαις ἡμέραις καὶ νυξὶν ἴσαις, ἕως ὁ χαλκὸς ὅλος
in three whole days and nights equal until the bronze wholly
διόλου τακεὶς καὶ διαλυθεὶς ὑδαρώδης καὶ ῥυτὸς γένηται.
throughout melted and dissolved watery and flowing become
Εἶτα τῶν στομίων ἀνοιγέντων, ἐσεχεῖτο ὁ χαλκὸς διὰ
then the mouths having-been-opened was-poured-in the bronze through
τῶν σωλήνων ἐν τοῖς τύποις, ἕως γεμισθῇ τελείως ἅπαν τὸ
the channels into the molds until be-filled completely all the
ἐσδεχόμενον, καὶ καλύψῃ καὶ τὸν ἐντὸς τύπον ὅλον διόλου
receiving(-space) and cover also the inside mold wholly throughout
καὶ ὑπερβλύσῃ τούτου πῆχυν ἕνα κατὰ τὸ ἄνω. Καὶ οὕτως
and overflow it cubit one at the top and so
ἤδη ἀπήρτιστο ἡ μηχανή. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ, ἀποζέσαντος
already was-completed the engine after this and having-cooled-down
τοῦ χαλκοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ γεγονότος, ἐκαθαίρετο τῶν ἐντὸς
the bronze and cold having-become it-was-cleared of-the inside
τύπων καὶ τῶν ἐκτὸς, καὶ ξυομένη καὶ γλυφομένη ξυστῆρσιν,
molds and of-the outside and scraped and carved with-scrapers
ἐλαμπρύνετο ὅλη διόλου. Καὶ τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ κατασκευὴ
was-polished whole throughout and such indeed the construction
καὶ τὸ εἶδος τῆς μηχανῆς· λέξω δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐνέργειαν.
and the form of-the engine I-will-tell and also the working
30.1 Ἐνεβέβλητο πρῶτον ἡ καλουμένη βοτάνη, πληροῦσα
had-been-put-in first the called grass(-powder) filling
ἰσχυρῶς τὴν ὄπισθεν ὅλην χωνείαν καὶ τὸν αὐλὸν τῆς
strongly the rear whole cavity and the pipe of-the
μηχανῆς ἕως τοῦ στομίου τοῦ δευτέρου αὐλοῦ τοῦ
engine up-to the mouth of-the second pipe the(-one)
δεξομένου τὸν λίθον. Ἔπειτα τῷ στόματι τούτῳ
going-to-receive the stone then into-the mouth this

πάσσαλος ἐνεβέβλητο μεγίστη ξύλου τοῦ ἰσχυροτάτου, ἣ
a-plug had-been-put very-large of-wood the strongest which
σιδηροῖς μοχλοῖς τυπτομένη βιαίως ὠθεῖτο, στενοχωρουμένη
with-iron bars being-struck violently was-pushed being-squeezed
ἐπὶ τὰ ἔνδον, ἀποκλείουσα καὶ ξυνέχουσα τὴν βοτάνην
toward the(-parts) inside shutting-in and holding-together the powder
οὕτω τοι ἰσχυρῶς, ὡς μηδ' ἂν εἴ τι καὶ γένοιτο,
so surely strongly as not-even — if anything also should-happen
δυνηθῆναι ταύτην ἄλλῳ τῳ τρόπῳ ἐκεῖθεν ἐξαιρεθῆναι,
to-be-able it by-other any way thence to-be-taken-out
μὴ τῆς βοτάνης ἀναφθείσης τῇ βίᾳ. Εἶτα τὸν λίθον
not the powder having-been-kindled by-the force then the stone
ἐπεφόρουν ὠθοῦντες ἐντὸς, ἕως ἐν χρῷ γένηται τῇ
they-brought-on pushing inside until in skin it-be to-the
πασσάλῳ, καὶ ξυνέσφιγγον τοῦτον κύκλωθεν. Μετὰ δὲ
plug and they-wedged-tight it all-around after and
τοῦτο τρέψαντες τὴν μηχανὴν πρὸς ὃ παίειν ἔμελλε, καὶ
this having-turned the engine toward what to-strike it-was-to and
σταθμήσαντες αὐτὴν μέτροις τισὶ τεχνικοῖς καὶ ἀναλογίαις
having-aimed it by-measures some technical and proportions
πρὸς τὸν σκοπὸν, ἐπεφόρουν ἔπειτα κεραίας μεγάλας ξύλων
toward the target they-brought-on then beams great of-timber
αὐτῇ κάτωθεν ὑποστρωννύοντες καὶ καλῶς ἐφαρμόζοντες,
to-it from-below spreading-under and well fitting
καὶ λίθους ἐπετίθουν παμμεγέθεις, βαρύνοντες αὐτὴν καὶ
and stones they-set-on huge weighting it and
κατασφαλίζοντες ἄνωθέν τε καὶ κάτωθεν καὶ ὄπισθεν καὶ
securing from-above both and from-below and from-behind and
πανταχόθεν, ἵνα μὴ τῇ βίᾳ τῆς ῥύμης καὶ τῷ σφοδρῷ
from-all-sides so-that not by-the force of-the rush and by-the violence
τῆς φορᾶς τῆς οἰκείας ἕδρας παρατραπεῖσα, πόρρω
of-the motion from-the own seat having-been-turned-aside far

ποι τοῦ σκοποῦ βάλῃ. Εἶτα πῦρ ἐπέβαλον αὐτῇ,
somewhere from-the target it-should-shoot then fire they-applied to-it
διὰ τῆς ὄπισθεν βραχείας τρυμαλιᾶς ἀνάψαντες τὴν
through the rear short hole having-kindled the
βοτάνην· καὶ ταύτης ἐξαφθείσης θᾶττον ἢ λόγος, πρῶτα
powder and it having-been-kindled quicker than word first
μὲν ἐγίνετο μυχηθμὸς φοβερὸς καὶ κλόνος τῆς ὑποκειμένης
indeed came bellowing fearful and shaking of-the underlying
γῆς καὶ τῆς πόρρω καὶ βρόμος οἷος οὐδείς, ἔπειτα
earth and of-the(-earth) far-off and roar such-as no(-other) then
μετὰ βροντῆς ἐξαισίας καὶ δούπου φρικώδους καὶ πυρὸς
with thunder extraordinary and crash dreadful and fire
τὰ πέριξ πάντα ξυμφλέγοντος καὶ μελαίνοντος ἔνδοθεν
the(-things) around all burning-up and blackening from-within
ὠθουμένη ἡ πάσσαλος πνεύματι ξηρῷ καὶ θερμῷ βιαίως
being-pushed the plug by-wind dry and hot violently
ἐκίνει τὸν λίθον ἐξερχομένη· ὁ δὲ φερόμενος μετὰ
moved the stone going-out it and borne with
βίας σφοδροτάτης καὶ ῥύμης προσέπιπτε τῷ τείχει, καὶ
force most-violent and rush fell-upon the wall and
εὐθὺς κατέσειέ τε αὐτὸ καὶ κατέβαλε καὶ ἐς πολλὰ
at-once shook both it and threw-down and into many(-pieces)
παρερρήγνυ καὶ διελίχμα, πανταχοῦ τε διασκεδάζων αὐτὰ
broke and shattered everywhere both scattering them
καὶ φόνον τῶν προστυχόντων ποιῶν· καὶ ποτὲ μὲν
and slaughter of-the(-ones) happening-by making and sometimes indeed
κατερρίπτει μέρος ὅλον, ποτὲ δὲ ἥμισυ, ποτὲ δὲ πλέον
it-hurled-down part whole sometimes and half sometimes and more
ἢ ἔλαττον πύργου ἢ μεταπυργίου ἢ καὶ ἐπάλξεως, καὶ
or less of-tower or of-curtain-wall or also of-battlement and
οὐδὲν ἦν οὕτως ἰσχυρὸν ἢ ἀντίτυπον ἢ πάχος ἐρυμνότατον
nothing was so strong or resistant or thickness most-solid

τείχους, ὡς ἀπαντῆσαι γοῦν δυνηθῆναι ἢ ἀντισχεῖν
of-wall as to-meet at-any-rate to-be-able or to-withstand
ὅλως τῇ τοσαύτῃ τοῦ λίθου βίᾳ τε καὶ φορᾷ.
at-all the so-great of-the stone force both and motion
Οὕτως ἄπιστόν τι χρῆμα καὶ παράλογον τὸ εἶδος
so incredible some thing and unexpected the form
τοῦτο τῆς μηχανῆς, ὅπερ οἱ παλαιοὶ μὲν βασιλεῖς
this of-the engine which the ancient indeed kings
τε καὶ στρατηγοὶ οὔτε εἶχον οὔτε ἐγίνωσκον· εἰ γὰρ
both and generals neither had nor knew if for
εἶχον, οὐδὲν ἂν εἶχον αὐτοῖς ἀντιβαῖνον ἔτι
they-had nothing — they-would-have-had for-them opposing any-longer
οὐδὲ προσιστάμενον ὅλως ἐν ταῖς πολιορκίαις, οὐδὲ
nor resisting at-all in the sieges nor
πολλῶν ἂν ἐδέοντο ἐς τὸ κατασεῖσαι τείχη τε
of-many(-things) — they-would-have-needed for the to-shake-down walls both
καὶ καταβαλεῖν καὶ τὰ ἐρυμνότατα, οὐδὲ πράγματ' ἂν
and to-throw-down even the strongest nor troubles —
εἶχον ἐπιτειχίζοντες καὶ ταφρεύοντες καὶ χώματα
they-would-have-had building-counter-forts and digging-trenches and mounds
αἴροντες καὶ ὑπορύσσοντες ἔστιν οὗ καὶ ἄλλα ἄττα
raising and undermining it-is where also other some
ποιοῦντες ὥστε παραστήσασθαι πόλεις καὶ χειρώσασθαι
doing so-as to-bring-to-terms cities and to-subdue
φρούρια, ἀλλὰ πάντ' ἂν εἶχεν αὐτοῖς θᾶττον ἢ λόγος
fortresses but all — would-have-had for-them quicker than word
καὶ προσεχώρει κατασειόμενά τε καὶ καταρριπτούμενα
and gone-over shaken-down both and hurled-down
ταῖς μηχαναῖς· ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν. Εὕρεμα δὲ τοῦτο νέον
by-the engines but not it-was invention and this new
ἐστὶ Γερμανῶν Κελτῶν, ἐτῶν που μάλιστα πεντήκοντα
is of-Germans of-Celts years about most fifty

καὶ ἑκατὸν ἢ καὶ ὀλίγῳ πλειόνων, σοφώτατον πάνυ
and hundred or also by-little more most-clever very
καὶ περινενοημένον· καὶ μάλιστα δὴ ἡ τῆς βοτάνης
and well-devised and most indeed the of-the grass(-powder)
ξυμβολή τε καὶ σκευασία ἐξ εἰδῶν ξυγκειμένη θερμοτάτων
combination both and preparation of kinds composed hottest
καὶ ξηροτάτων, νίτρου καὶ θείου καὶ καρβούνου καὶ
and driest of-saltpeter and sulfur and charcoal and
βοτανῶν ξηρὸν καὶ θερμὸν πνεῦμα ἀποτελούντων, ὅπερ
herbs dry and hot wind producing which
ἐναποκλειόμενον στεγανῷ καὶ ἰσχυρῷ καὶ ξυμπεπιλημένῳ
shut-in in-close and strong and compressed
σώματι τοῦ χαλκοῦ, καὶ μηδαμῇ μηδαμοῦ διέξοδον ἔχον
body of-the bronze and nowhere anywhere outlet having
ἄλλοθί πη ἢ ταύτῃ, τῷ ἔνδοθεν ὠθισμῷ καὶ τῇ
elsewhere in-any-way than this by-the from-within thrust and by-the
βίᾳ κινούμενον, τὴν τοσαύτην καὶ τηλικαύτην βίαν τε
force moved the so-great and such force both
καὶ φορὰν τοῦ λίθου, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ῥῆξιν τοῦ χαλκοῦ
and motion of-the stone but indeed also breakage of-the bronze
πολλάκις ἐργάζεται. Ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ὄνομα παλαιὸν εὑρίσκεται
often works but not-even name ancient is-found
ταύτῃ τῇ μηχανῇ, εἰ μή πού τις αὐτὴν ἑλέπολιν εἴποι
for-this the engine if not perhaps someone it city-taker should-call
ἢ ἀφετήριον, κοινῷ δ' ὀνόματι ταύτην καλοῦσι πάντες
or launcher by-common but name it call all
οἱ νῦν ὄντες σκευήν. Καὶ τὰ μὲν τῆς μηχανῆς
the(-ones) now being gear and the(-things) indeed of-the engine
τοιαῦτα ὡς ἐνὸν ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ἀπαγγείλασι.
such as possible for-us and from the possible(-means) having-reported

Μεχέμετις δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπειδή οἱ τὰ τῶν μηχανῶν 31.1
Mehmed and the emperor since for-him the(-things) of-the engines
ἀπήρτιστο καλῶς, προσάγειν ἤδη ταύτας τοῖς τείχεσι κελεύει
were-completed well to-bring-up now them to-the walls orders
τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς, καὶ κατὰ μὲν τὸ μεσοτείχιον, οὗ τὸ
the engine-makers and at indeed the middle-wall where the
στρατόπεδον εἶχεν, ἵνα δὴ καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἦν αὐτῷ, τρεῖς
camp he-had where indeed also the tent was for-him three
ἀπολεξαμένους τὰς μεγίστας τε καὶ ἰσχυροτάτας ἐπιθεῖναι
having-picked-out the greatest both and strongest to-set-up
παίειν τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος καὶ κατασείειν, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας ἄλλῃ
to-strike the there wall and to-shake-down the and others here
καὶ ἄλλῃ τοῦ τείχους προσάγειν ἐκέλευτεν ἐπιλεξαμένους
and there of-the wall to-bring-up he-ordered having-picked
τὰ ἐπιμαχώτατα καὶ ἀσθενέστατα τοῦ τείχους ἔγνωστο
the most-assailable and weakest(-parts) of-the wall it-had-been-resolved
γὰρ αὐτῷ πολλοῖς μέρεσι καταβάλλειν τὸ τεῖχος, ὡς ἂν
for by-him in-many parts to-throw-down the wall so-that —
πολλαχῇ προσβαλόντι τῷ πολέμῳ εὐχείρωτος αὐτῷ καὶ
in-many-places attacking with-the war easy-to-subdue for-him and
ῥᾳδία ἡ τούτου αἵρεσις γένηται· ὥσπερ δὴ καὶ γέγονε.
easy the of-it taking might-become as indeed also it-became
Καὶ αἱ μὲν μηχαναὶ προσαχθεῖσαι τῷ τείχει κατέσειόν
and the indeed engines having-been-brought-up to-the wall shook
τε αὐτὸ καὶ κατερρίπτουν, δρῶσαι τὸ ἑαυτῶν.
both it and hurled-down doing the(-work) of-themselves
Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν κατὰ τὰς μηχανὰς τάφρον ἐχώννυε,
emperor and the by the engines ditch filled-up
λίθους ἐπιφορῶν καὶ ξύλα καὶ χοῦν καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην
stones bringing-on and timbers and soil and every other
ὕλην ξυλλέγων, ὡς ἂν, κατασεισθέντος τοῦ τείχους καὶ
material collecting so-that — having-been-shaken-down the wall and

πεπτωκότος ἤδη, ῥᾳδία τοῖς ὁπλίταις ἡ διάβασις εἴη
having-fallen already easy for-the hoplites the crossing might-be
καὶ ἡ ἐς αὐτὸ πάροδός τε καὶ προσβολή. Ἔτι δὲ τοὺς
and the to it approach both and attack further and the
γεωρύχους ὑπορύττειν τὸ τεῖχος ἐκέλευε, καὶ ὑπονόμους
miners to-dig-under the wall he-ordered and tunnels
ὑπογείους πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ποιεῖν, ὡς ἂν διὰ τούτων
underground toward the city to-make so-that — through these
νυκτὸς λάθωσιν ἐσελθόντες ὁπλῖται. Καὶ ἠνύετο
by-night they-might-escape-notice having-entered hoplites and was-accomplished
τὸ ἔργον· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν ὕστερον περιττὸν ἔδοξε καὶ
the work but this indeed later superfluous seemed and
ματαία δαπάνη, τῶν μηχανῶν τὸ πᾶν κατεργασαμένων.
vain expense the engines the all having-accomplished
32.1 Ἐν ὅσῳ δὲ ταῦτα ἐγίνετο, ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναλαβὼν
in as-long and these(-things) were-happening the emperor having-taken
τινας τῶν τάξεων καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν ἴλην πᾶσαν, ᾔει
some of-the ranks and the royal squadron all went
ἐπὶ τὸ τοῦ Θεραπείου φρούριον, ἐρυμνότατον πάνυ, καὶ
against the — of-Therapeion fortress strongest very and
ἐπιστήσας μηχανὰς κατέσεισέ τε καὶ κατέρριψε τούτου τὸ
having-set-up engines shook both and hurled-down of-it the
πλέον· καὶ τῶν ἐντὸς πολλοὶ ἀπέθανον τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν
most and of-the(-ones) inside many died by-the from the
μηχανῶν λίθοις, οἱ δὲ περιλειφθέντες τῶν φρουρῶν
engines stones the(-ones) and left of-the guards
οὐ δυνάμενοι ἀντέχειν ἔτι, προσεχώρησαν ὁμολογίᾳ
not being-able to-hold-out any-longer surrendered by-agreement
χρήσασθαι αὐτοῖς ὅ τι βούλοιτο· ὁ δὲ ἀνεσκολόπισε
to-use them what thing he-might-wish he and impaled
τούτους τεσσαράκοντα ὄντας. Κἀκεῖθεν ἐφ' ἕτερον ᾔει
them forty being and-thence against another went

φρούριον Στουδίου καλούμενον, καὶ αὐτὸ κατασείσας
fortress of-Stoudios called and it having-shaken-down
ταῖς μηχαναῖς καὶ καταβαλὼν αὐθημερὸν παρεστήσατο,
with-the engines and having-thrown-down the-same-day brought-to-terms
καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀνεσκολόπισεν, ἀγαγὼν παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος
and the men impaled having-led by the wall
τῆς πόλεως, ἵνα δὴ καταφανεῖς εἶεν.
of-the city so-that indeed visible they-might-be
Κατὰ δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς ἡμέρας καὶ Παλτόγλης ὁ τοῦ στόλου 33.1
in and the same days also Baltoğlu the of-the fleet
ἡγεμὼν τὰς μὲν πλείους τῶν νεῶν αὐτοῦ κατέλιπεν
leader the indeed most of-the ships his left
ἐφορμεῖν τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος καὶ τῇ ἁλύσει,
to-lie-at-anchor at-the mouth of-the harbor and at-the chain
τοῦ μή τι ἐσπλέειν ἢ ἐκπλέειν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν
of-the not anything to-sail-in or to-sail-out himself and having-taken
τὰς λοιπὰς, κελεύσαντος βασιλέως, ἐπιπλεῖ τῇ Πριγκίπῳ
the rest having-ordered emperor sails-against — Prinkipos
νήσῳ· ἦν δ' ἐκεῖ φρούριον ἀσφαλέστατον, φυλακὴν
island there-was and there fortress most-secure guard
ἔχον ἐντὸς ἄνδρας καταφράκτους τριάκοντα, ἄνευ μέντοιγε
having within men armored thirty without however
τῶν οἰκητόρων. Περισταυρώσας οὖν αὐτὸ καὶ μηχανὰς
the inhabitants having-palisaded then it and engines
προσαγαγὼν τῷ τείχει κατέσεισε μέν τι μέρος τούτου
having-brought-up to-the wall he-shook-down indeed some part of-it
καὶ κατέρριψε, προσβαλὼν δὲ καὶ πειράσας τρόπῳ
and hurled-down having-attacked and and having-tried by-way
παντὶ οὐκ ἠδυνήθη ὅμως ἑλεῖν· τέλος ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ πῦρ
every not was-able nevertheless to-take finally it-seemed to-him fire
ἐπαφεῖναι τῷ φρουρίῳ καὶ πειρᾶσαι εἰ δύναιτο, πνεύματος
to-let-loose on-the fortress and to-try if he-could wind

ἐπιφόρου ἐπιγενομένου, καταφλέξαι αὐτό. Κελεύει τοίνυν
favorable having-come-on to-burn-down it he-orders therefore
φακέλους ὕλης παντοδαπῆς καλάμων καὶ κληματίδων
bundles of-material of-every-kind of-reeds and of-brushwood
καὶ χόρτων καὶ ἄλλων εὐπρήστων ὅτι πλείστους τὴν
and of-fodder and of-other combustibles as most the
ταχίστην νήσαντας ἐπιφορεῖν καὶ παραβάλλειν τῷ τείχει.
quickest having-heaped to-bring-on and to-throw-against the wall
Καὶ τούτου τάχιστα γεγονότος διὰ πολυχειρίαν καὶ τῆς
and this most-quickly having-happened because-of numbers and the
ὕλης ἐς ὕψος ἀρθείσης, πῦρ ἐπιβάλλουσι ταύτῃ ξὺν θείῳ
material to height having-been-raised fire they-throw-on it with sulfur
καὶ πίσσῃ ἀνάψαντες. Ἡ δ' εὐθὺς δραξαμένη τε τοῦ πυρὸς,
and pitch having-kindled it and at-once having-grasped both the fire
καὶ πνεύματος ἐπιφόρου τυχοῦσα τοσαύτην ἐποίησε φλόγα
and wind favorable having-met such made flame
καὶ τοσοῦτον ἤρθη μετέωρος, ὡς καὶ τῶν ἐπάλξεων
and so-much was-raised aloft as also the battlements
αὐτῶν ὑπεραναβῆναι καὶ ἐς τὰ ἔσω τοῦ φρουρίου
themselves to-overtop and into the(-parts) inside of-the fortress
χεθῆναι, καὶ καταφλέξαι πολλοὺς τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ, μᾶλλον
to-be-poured and to-burn-down many of-the(-ones) in it rather
δὲ ὀλίγου ἐδέησε πάντας διαφθεῖραι τοὺς ἔνδον. Ὅμως
and by-little it-fell-short all to-destroy the(-ones) within nevertheless
γε μὴν οἱ περιλειφθέντες, μόλις καὶ μετὰ κινδύνου
at-least indeed the(-ones) left scarcely and with danger
πολλοῦ διαδράντες τὸ πῦρ, προσεχώρησαν αὐτῷ καὶ ἄνευ
much having-escaped the fire surrendered to-him even without
ὁμολογίας· οὓς καὶ λαβὼν αἰχμαλώτους πάντας, τοὺς
agreement whom also having-taken captives all the

μὲν οἰκήτορας ἀπέδοτο, τοὺς δὲ περιλειφθέντας τῶν
indeed inhabitants he-sold the and remaining of-the
φρουρῶν ἀπέκτεινε. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ταύτῃ.
guards he-killed and these(-things) indeed thus
Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ καὶ Ἰουστῖνος, τὸ τεῖχος ὁρῶντες οὕτως 34.1
Romans and and Giustiniani the wall seeing so
ἰσχυρῶς ὑπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν κατασειόμενον καὶ ῥιπτούμενον,
strongly by the engines being-shaken and hurled-down
τό τε ἐντὸς τό τε ἐκτὸς, πρῶτον μὲν δοκοὺς
the(-part) both inside the(-part) both outside first indeed beams
μεγάλας ἐξάπτοντες ἄνωθεν τοῦ τείχους, καὶ βρόχους
great fastening from-above the wall and nooses
ἐξαρτῶντες καὶ σάκτας μεστὰς ἐρίων καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα
hanging and sacks full of-wool and other such(-things)
περιβάλλοντες ἀνέκλων ὡς δυνατὸν τὴν φορὰν τῶν λίθων
throwing-around they-broke as possible the motion of-the stones
καὶ ἐξεκαύλιζον. Ὡς δὲ ταῦτα βραχὺ καὶ οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ
and cut-them-short when but these little and nothing what thing also
λόγου ἄξιον ἤνυεν, ἀλλὰ πάντα διελίχμα καὶ διεσκέδαζεν ἡ
of-account worth achieved but all shattered and scattered the
μηχανὴ, καὶ τὸ τεῖχος κατέρριπτεν (ἤδη γὰρ πολύ τι
engine and the wall hurled-down already for much something
κατέπεσε τοῦ μικροῦ τείχους, ἀλλὰ δὲ καὶ τοῦ μεγάλου δύο
fell of-the small wall but and also of-the great two
πύργοι καὶ μεταπύργιον), ἄλλο τι ἐπινοοῦσι· κεραίας
towers and curtain-wall other something they-devise beams
μεγάλας ἐπαγαγόντες ἀπεσταύρουν κατὰ τὰ παρερρηγμένα
great bringing-on they-staked-off at the broken(-parts)
τοῦ τείχους, λέγω δὲ τοῦ ἐκτὸς, ξυνδέοντες αὐτὰς
of-the wall I-mean and of-the(-one) outside binding them
ἰσχυρῶς· καὶ ὕλην ταύταις ἐπεφόρουν παντοίαν λίθων καὶ
strongly and material on-these they-brought of-every-kind of-stones and

ξύλων, φακέλους τε χόρτων παντοδαπῶν καὶ κληματίδων
of-timbers bundles both of-fodder of-all-kinds and of-brushwood
καὶ καλάμων καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν μετὰ πηλοῦ μεμιγμένων
and of-reeds and of-others many with clay mixed
φορμηδὸν ξυντιθέντες, καὶ τὸ σταύρωμα ἐς ὕψος αἴροντες.
basket-wise putting-together and the stockade to height raising
Προκαλύμματα δ' ἦσαν τῇ τε ὕλῃ καὶ τῷ σταυρώματι
coverings and were for-the both material and for-the stockade
δέρρεις καὶ διφθέραι, τοῦ μὴ πυρφόροις ὀϊστοῖς βλάπτεσθαι.
hides and skins so-as not by-fire-bearing arrows to-be-harmed
Ἔτι δὲ χῶμα μέγα ἔχουν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντὸς ἀντίπαλον
further and mound great they-heaped from the(-parts) inside counter
τούτοις προσεχῶς βοήθειάν τε τῷ σταυρώματι καὶ ἀντὶ
to-these close support both for-the stockade and instead-of
τείχους εἶναι, ἅμα δὲ, ἵνα καὶ ὁ λίθος μετὰ βίας φερόμενος
wall to-be at-once and so-that also the stone with force borne
καταχωννύηται μαλθακῇ καὶ εὐείκτῳ προσπίπτων τῇ γῇ καὶ
might-be-buried on-soft and yielding falling the earth and
μὴ ἀντιτύποις καὶ σκληροῖς προσπελάζων ῥῆξιν ἐργάζηται.
not on-resistant and hard(-things) approaching breakage might-work
Ἐπάνω δὲ τοῦ τε σταυρώματος καὶ τοῦ χώματος
above and the both stockade and the mound
ἀμφορέας μεγάλους ξυλίνους πλήρεις γῆς στιχηδὸν
jars great wooden full of-earth in-rows
ἐπετίθουν, ἀντὶ ἐπάλξεων εἶναι τοῖς προμαχομένοις καὶ
they-set instead-of battlements to-be for-the front-fighters and
προβολὴν, ὥστε μὴ βάλλεσθαι τοῖς ὀϊστοῖς.
screen so-as not to-be-hit by-the arrows

35.1 Μεχέμετι δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν φρουρίων ἐπανελθόντι
to-Mehmed and the emperor from-the fortresses having-returned
ἔδοξε μετ' οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἀποπειράσασθαι τῆς
it-seemed-good after not many days to-make-trial of-the

πόλεως κατὰ τὰ παρερρηγμένα τοῦ τείχους, καὶ ἀναλαβόντι
city at the broken(-parts) of-the wall and having-taken
τούς τε ὁπλίτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ πᾶσαν
the both hoplites and archers and javelin-men and all
τὴν περὶ αὐτὸν ἴλην τῶν πεζαιτέρων προσβάλλειν τῷ
the about him squadron of-the foot-soldiers to-attack the
τείχει ἰσχυρῶς· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ἡ τάφρος αὐτῷ πλήρης ἦν.
wall strongly already for also the ditch for-him full was
Καὶ οἱ πεζαίτεροι εὐθὺς ξὺν βοῇ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ διαβάντες
and the foot-soldiers at-once with shout and war-cry having-crossed
τὴν τάφρον προσέμιξαν τῷ τείχει. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν πῦρ
the ditch engaged the wall and first indeed fire
ἐπιβάλλειν ἐπεχείρουν τῇ ὕλῃ, ἵνα τό τε σταύρωμα
to-throw-on tried on-the material so-that the both stockade
ἐμπρήσωσι, καὶ ἐς τὰ ἄλλα ξύγχυσιν ἐργάσωνται
they-might-set-ablaze and in the other(-things) confusion might-work
καὶ κατάπληξιν τῷ πολέμῳ· ὡς δ' οὐ προὐχώρει τοῦτο
and panic in-the war when but not proceeded this
αὐτοῖς κατὰ νοῦν, τῶν ἄνωθεν τοῦ σταυρώματος
for-them according-to mind the(-ones) from-above the stockade
προτεταγμένων μαχομένων τε καλῶς καὶ σβεννύντων τὸ
posted-in-front fighting both well and quenching the
πῦρ, ἐπ' ἄλλο τι χωροῦσι. Τοῖς ἄκροις τῶν δορατίων
fire to other something they-go on-the tips of-the spears
ἀγκύρας ἐμπήξαντες, ἄνωθεν κατέσπων τοὺς ἀμφορέας,
hooks having-fixed from-above they-dragged-down the jars
ἀπογυμνοῦντες τοὺς προμαχομένους τῆς προβολῆς· οἵδε
stripping the front-fighters of-the screen these
γὰρ ἀντὶ τείχους τε καὶ ἐπάλξεων ἦσαν αὐτοῖς· καὶ οἱ
for instead-of wall both and battlements were for-them and the
τοξόται καὶ σφενδονῆται καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ ῥᾳδίως ἔβαλον
archers and slingers and javelin-men easily shot

ἐπὶ τὰ γυμνά, ἄλλοι δὲ κλίμακας φέροντες προσῆγον
at the bare(-parts) others and ladders carrying brought-up
τῷ σταυρώματι καὶ ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειρῶντο τούτου· καὶ
to-the stockade and to-climb tried it and
αἱ μηχαναὶ δὲ λίθους συχνοὺς ἀφιεῖσαι κατὰ τῶν
the engines and stones many letting-fly against the
προμαχομένων, οὐ μικρῶς ἔβλαπτον. Καὶ οἱ μὲν οὕτως.
front-fighters not slightly harmed and they indeed thus
36.1 Ἰουστῖνος δὲ καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτῷ (οὗτοι γὰρ ἐτετάχατο
Giustiniani and and the(-ones) with him these for had-been-posted
κατὰ τὰ παρερρηγμένα τοῦ τείχους), ἀλλὰ δὲ καὶ
at the broken(-parts) of-the wall but and also
Ῥωμαίων πολλοὶ ξὺν αὐτοῖς, κατάφρακτοι ὄντες, οὐδεμίαν
of-Romans many with them armored being no
ἐδέχοντο βλάβην παρά τε τῶν βελῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων,
received harm from both the missiles and the other(-things)
ἀλλ' εὐρώστως ἠγωνίζοντο μαχόμενοί τε γενναίως καὶ
but stoutly contended fighting both nobly and
ἀντιμηχανώμενοι πρὸς τὰ παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ ἄπρακτα
counter-devising against the(-things) from them and useless
δεικνύντες. Τέλος ὑπερισχύσαντες οἵ τε Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ
showing(-them) finally having-prevailed the both Romans and
Ἰουστῖνος ἀπεκρούσαντό τε τούτους οὐ χαλεπῶς καὶ τοῦ
Giustiniani repelled both them not with-difficulty and from-the
τείχους ἐξέωσαν, πολλοὺς αὐτῶν τραυματίσαντες· οὐκ ὀλίγοι
wall thrust many of-them having-wounded not few
δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον. Καὶ ἄλλαι δὲ προσβολαὶ καθ' ἡμέραν
and also died and other too attacks by day
ἐγίνοντο ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τοῦ τείχους, καὶ μάλιστα κατὰ τὰ
happened here and there of-the wall and most at the

παρερρηγμένα, ἐν αἷς οὐδὲν ἔλαττον οἱ τῆς πόλεως
broken(-parts) in which nothing less the(-ones) of-the city
εἶχον, ἀλλ᾽ ἰσχυρῶς τε ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἀντεῖχον γενναίως.
had but strongly both fought and held-out nobly
Παλτόγλης δὲ τὸ φρούριον ἐξελὼν, αὖθις ἐπιπλεῖ τῷ 37.1
Baltoğlu and the fortress having-taken again sails-against the
λιμένι, οὗπερ αἱ ἄλλαι τριήρεις ἐφώρμουν, καὶ μετὰ δευτέραν
harbor where the other triremes lay-at-anchor and after second
ἢ τρίτην ἡμέραν δέχεται ξύνθημα παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως,
or third day receives signal from the emperor
ὅπως καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος καὶ ξυντεταγμέναις ταῖς
that well having-prepared and with-drawn-up the
ναυσὶ διαναυμαχήσῃ πρός τε τὰς ὁλκάδας καὶ τὰς
ships he-should-fight-it-out against both the merchantmen and the
τριήρεις τὰς ἐφορμούσας τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος καὶ
triremes the(-ones) lying-at-anchor at-the mouth of-the harbor and
τῇ ἁλύσει, εἴ πως δυνηθείη τὸν ἔσπλουν βιάσασθαι.
at-the chain if somehow he-could the sailing-in to-force
Ἔγνωστο γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐξ ἅπαντος τρόπου τόν τε λιμένα
it-had-been-resolved for by-him by every way the both harbor
καὶ τὸ Κέρας ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτῷ ποιήσασθαι, ὡς ἂν πανταχόθεν
and — Horn under himself to-make so-that — from-all-sides
κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν προσβάλοι τῇ πόλει· ἐνομίζετο
by both land and sea he-might-attack the city it-was-thought
γὰρ, ὅπερ καὶ ἦν, ὡς εἰ καὶ τὸ ταύτῃ τεῖχος ἀνοίξει
for which also was(-so) that if also the there wall he-will-open
πολέμῳ, ῥᾳδίαν ἂν αὐτῷ τὴν τῆς πόλεως αἵρεσιν γενέσθαι,
by-war easy — for-him the of-the city taking would-become
οὐκ ἐξαρκούντων τῶν προμαχομένων πρὸς πάντα τὸν
not sufficing the front-fighters for all the
περίβολον ὀλιγανθρωπίᾳ, μέγιστον ὄντα. Παλτόγλης δὲ
circuit by-shortage-of-men greatest being Baltoğlu and

τάς τε ναῦς ἁπάσας καὶ τοὺς ἐπ᾽ αὐταῖς μαχίμους ἄνδρας
the both ships all and the on them fighting men
ἐκτάξας τε καὶ ὁπλίσας καλῶς, ἐπιπλεῖ ταῖς ὁλκάσι
having-drawn-up both and having-armed well sails-against the merchantmen
καὶ τῇ ἁλύσει ξὺν ὁρμῇ πολλῇ καὶ θυμῷ καὶ ῥύμῃ,
and the chain with rush much and spirit and impetus
ἔτι δὲ βοῇ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν μικρὸν
further and shout and war-cry and first indeed a-little
ἀνακωχεύσαντες τὰς ναῦς, ὅσον ἐντὸς βέλους εἶναι,
having-held-back the ships so-far-as within missile to-be
ἀκροβολισμοῖς ἐχρήσαντο πόρρωθεν καὶ πείραις, βάλλοντες
skirmishes they-used from-afar and trials hitting
καὶ βαλλόμενοι τοξεύμασί τε καὶ λίθοις τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν
and being-hit with-arrows both and stones the(-ones) from the
μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένοις, ἔπειτα πολλῇ τῇ ῥύμῃ μέσαις
engines let-fly then with-much the impetus into-the-midst
ἐμβάλλει ταῖς ὁλκάσι· καὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν καταστρωμάτων
he-strikes the merchantmen and the on the decks
ὁπλῖται εὐθὺς οἱ μὲν πῦρ ἐπέφερον ταῖς χερσὶν,
hoplites at-once the(-ones) indeed fire brought with-the hands
ἀνάπτειν διανοούμενοι ταύτας, οἱ δὲ πυρφόροις
to-kindle intending them the(-ones) and with-fire-bearing
ὀϊστοῖς ἔβαλλον, ἄλλοι δὲ τὰς σχοίνους τῶν ἀγκυρῶν
arrows shot others and the ropes of-the anchors
ὑποτέμνειν ἐπειρῶντο, οἱ δὲ ἀναρριχώμενοι ἀγκύραις
to-cut tried the(-ones) and climbing by-hooks
καὶ κλίμαξιν ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειρῶντο τῶν νεῶν, οἱ δὲ
and ladders to-board tried the ships the(-ones) and
ξυστοῖς καὶ παλτοῖς καὶ δόρασι μακροῖς κατηκόντιζον
with-pikes and darts and spears long hurled-at
τοὺς προμαχομένους, ὁρμή τε ἦν αὐτοῖς οὐ μικρὰ περὶ
the front-fighters impulse both was for-them not small about

τὸ ἔργον καὶ προθυμία. Οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁλκάδων (ἦσαν
the work and eagerness the(-ones) but on the merchantmen were
γὰρ ἤδη παρεσκευασμένοι πρὸς τοῦτο ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγάλου
for already prepared for this by the great
δουκὸς, ὃς ἦν ἐπὶ τούτοις τεταγμένος καὶ τῆς θαλάσσης
duke who was over these appointed and of-the sea
εἶχε τὴν φυλακήν), ἅτε ἀφ' ὑψηλοῦ μαχόμενοι καὶ ἄνωθεν
had the guard as from high fighting and from-above
βάλλοντες λίθοις τε καὶ παλτοῖς καὶ δόρασι καὶ ἀκοντίοις
hitting with-stones both and darts and spears and javelins
καὶ μάλιστα ἀφ' ὑψηλοτάτου, τῆς τῶν ἱστίων στεφάνης,
and most from highest the of-the sails crow's-nest
τραυματίας τε τοὺς πολλοὺς εἰργάζοντο καὶ ἀνῄρουν
wounded both the many made and killed
οὐκ ὀλίγους, ἔτι δὲ ἀμφορέας μεγάλους πλήρεις ὑδάτων
not few further and jars great full of-waters
ἐκκρεμαμένους καὶ λίθους βαρεῖς, σχοινίοις ἐκδεδεμένους
hung-out and stones heavy by-ropes tied-on
ἄνωθεν, ἀπολύοντες μεγίστην εἰργάζοντο βλάβην· φιλοτιμία
from-above letting-go greatest worked harm rivalry
τε ἦν ἀμφοτέροις μεγίστη καὶ σπουδὴ, τῶν μὲν
both was for-both greatest and zeal of-the(-ones) indeed
ὑπερτερῆσαι βουλομένων καὶ τὸν ἔσπλουν βιάσασθαι,
to-prevail wishing and the sailing-in to-force
τῶν δὲ καλῶς τε ἀγωνίσασθαι καὶ φυλάξαι τόν τε
of-the(-ones) and well both to-contend and to-guard the both
λιμένα καὶ τὰς ναῦς καὶ ἀπεώσασθαι τούτους· τέλος οἱ
harbor and the ships and to-thrust-back these finally the(-ones)
ἐπὶ τῶν ὁλκάδων εὐρώστως μαχόμενοι ἔτρεψάν τε τούτους
on the merchantmen stoutly fighting routed both them
καὶ ἀπεώσαντο, ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι διὰ τέλους.
and thrust-back men good having-become to the-end

38.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις, ἐπειδὴ ταύτης τῆς προσβολῆς
emperor and Mehmed since from-this the attack
ἀπεκρούσθη, πρὸς ἕτερον μηχανῆς εἶδος χωρεῖ, καὶ
he-was-repelled to another of-engine kind goes and
ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς, εἴρετο, εἴ γε δυνατὸν
having-called-together the engine-makers asked if at-least possible
τὰς ἐφορμούσας τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος ὁλκάδας τοῖς
the lying-at-anchor at-the mouth of-the harbor merchantmen with-the
ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένοις λίθοις αὐτοῦ που συντρῖψαι
from the engines let-fly stones there somewhere to-smash
καὶ καταδῦσαι. Οἱ δὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἀδυνάτως ἔχειν ἔφασαν,
and to-sink they and to this impossibly to-be said
ἐπιπροσθοῦντος ὅτι μάλιστα πάντοθεν τοῦ περιβόλου τοῦ
blocking as most on-all-sides the circuit —
Γαλατᾶ. Ὁ δὲ τρόπον ἕτερον ἐσηγεῖται τούτοις καὶ
of-Galata he and way another proposes to-them and
μηχανῆς εἶδος καινότερον. Ἔφη γὰρ, εἴ γε βούλοιντο,
of-engine kind newer he-said for if at-least they-should-wish
δυνατὸν εἶναι μηχανῆς ἕτερον εἶδος κατασκευάσαι μικρὸν
possible to-be of-engine another kind to-construct a-little
παραλλάξασι τὸ σχῆμα, δυνάμενον ἀφεῖναι τὸν λίθον ἐς
for-those-altering the shape able to-shoot the stone to
ὕψος, τὸν δὲ κατερχόμενον ἐμβάλλειν κατὰ μέσας τὰς
height it and coming-down to-strike in middle the
ναῦς καὶ καταδύειν, μέτροις τισὶ καὶ σταθμοῖς πρότερον
ships and to-sink with-measures some and weights first
καὶ ἀναλογίαις ἀπευθύνουσί τε καὶ διευθετοῦσιν αὐτοῖς
and proportions for-those-directing both and adjusting to-them
πρὸς τὰς ὁλκάδας τὴν μηχανήν· καὶ τὸ σχῆμα ἐξηγεῖται.
toward the merchantmen the engine and the shape he-explains
Οἱ δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα μαθόντες τῷ λογισμῷ εὕρισκον εἶναι
they and the affair having-learned by-the reckoning found to-be

τῶν δυνατῶν, καὶ κατασκευάζουσι μηχανῆς εἶδος τοιοῦτον,
of-the possible(-things) and construct of-engine kind such
ὁποῖον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπεσχεδίασε. Κατασκοπήσαντες δὲ καὶ
as the emperor had-sketched having-surveyed and also
τὸν χῶρον τιθέασι ταύτην μικρὸν ἀπωτέρω τῆς ἄκρας
the place they-set it a-little farther from-the headland
τοῦ Γαλατᾶ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὀλίγον ἀνέχοντος λόφου καταντικρὺ
— *of-Galata on the slightly rising hill opposite*
τῶν ὁλκάδων· ἐπισκευάσαντες δὲ αὐτὴν καλῶς καὶ
the merchantmen having-prepared and it well and
σταθμήσαντες μέτροις ἰδίοις, ἀνάπτουσι πῦρ ἐπιβαλόντες,
having-aimed by-measures own they-kindle fire having-applied
ἡ δὲ ἀφίησι τὸν λίθον ἐς ὕψος μέγα, ὁ δὲ κατελθὼν τὸ
it and shoots the stone to height great it and having-come-down the
μὲν πρῶτον ἀπέτυχε τῶν ὁλκάδων, ἐγγύς που τούτων
indeed first missed the merchantmen near somewhere them
καταπεσὼν ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ· ἐπισκευάσαντες δὲ αὖθις αὐτὴν
having-fallen in the sea having-prepared and again it
καὶ μικρὸν παρεκκλίναντες ἀφιᾶσιν· ὁ δὲ λίθος ἐς ὕψος
and a-little having-turned-aside they-shoot the and stone to height
ἄπειρον ἀρθεὶς κάτεισι μετὰ πατάγου σφοδροτάτου
boundless having-been-raised comes-down with crash most-violent
καὶ ῥύμης καὶ κατὰ μέσην ἐμβάλλει τὴν ὁλκάδα καὶ
and rush and in middle strikes the merchantman and
ξυντρίβει πᾶσαν εὐθὺς καὶ καταδύει ἐς βυθὸν, καὶ τῶν
smashes all at-once and sinks to depth and of-the
ἐπιβατῶν τοὺς μὲν ἀναιρεῖ, τοὺς δὲ καταδύει· ὅσοι
passengers the(-ones) indeed it-kills the(-ones) and it-sinks as-many-as
δὲ μὴ ἀπέθανον, ὀλίγοι πάνυ, ἀπενήξαντο μόλις πρὸς τὰς
but not died few very swam-away scarcely to the
ἑτέρας ὁλκάδας καὶ τὰς τριήρεις ξύνεγγυς οὔσας. Τοῦτο
other merchantmen and the triremes near being this

παρὰ δόξαν γεγονὸς ἐθορύβησε πάντας τοὺς ἐν τῇ
against expectation having-happened disturbed all the(-ones) in the
πόλει, καὶ ἐς μέγιστον φόβον καὶ ἀγωνίαν ἐνέβαλεν· ὅμως
city and into greatest fear and anguish threw nevertheless
γε μὴν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν μικρὸν παρεκκλίναντες τὰς
at-least indeed from the possible(-means) a-little having-moved-aside the
ἑτέρας τῶν ὁλκάδων καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ καταγαγόντες
other of-the merchantmen and the triremes and having-brought-down
ἐπὶ τὸ ἀσφαλέστερον καὶ φυλακὴν ἔχοντες, οὐδεμίαν τοῦ
to the safer(-place) and guard keeping no for-the
λοιποῦ βλάβην ἐδέχοντο παρὰ τῶν λίθων, ἀλλ' ἐφύλαττον
rest harm received from the stones but guarded
ἰσχυρῶς τόν τε λιμένα καὶ τὸ Κέρας.
strongly the both harbor and — Horn

39.1 Ἐν τούτοις δ' ὄντων αὐτῶν, οὔπω τριῶν ἢ τεττάρων
in these(-things) and being them not-yet three or four
παρελθουσῶν ἡμερῶν, ἀναφαίνονται τρεῖς τῶν μεγάλων
having-passed days appear three of-the great
ὁλκάδων ἐν τῷ πελάγει μετέωροι πλέουσαι, ἃς ἐξ
merchantmen in the open-sea far-out sailing which from
Ἰταλίας ἔπεμψεν ὁ τῆς Ῥώμης ἀρχιερεὺς, ἐπισιτισμὸν
Italy sent the — of-Rome high-priest provisions
ἐχούσας καὶ βοήθειαν τῇ πόλει· ἤδη γὰρ ἦν μεμαθηκὼς
having and help for-the city already for he-was having-learned
τόν τε πόλεμον καὶ τὴν ὅσον οὐ ταύτης ἐσομένην
the both war and the all but of-it going-to-be
πολιορκίαν, καὶ προαπέστειλεν αὐτὰς βοηθοὺς, ἕως ἂν
siege and sent-ahead them as-helpers until —
καὶ τὸν ἄλλον ἐξαρτίσηται στόλον· παρεσκεύαζε γὰρ ἐξ
also the other he-might-fit-out fleet he-was-preparing for from
Ἰταλίας τριάκοντα* καὶ ὁλκάδας κατόπιν τούτων βοηθοὺς
Italy thirty and merchantmen behind these as-helpers

ἀποστεῖλαι Ῥωμαίοις καὶ βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντίνῳ, αἱ
to-send to-Romans and emperor Constantine which
καὶ ὑστέρησαν. Κατιδόντες οὖν τὰς ὁλκάδας μετεώρους
also came-too-late having-seen then the merchantmen far-out
πλεούσας ἀπαγγέλλουσι βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὃς εὐθὺς Παλτόγλην
sailing they-report to-emperor and he at-once Baltoğlu
τὸν ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου μεταστειλάμενος ἐξοπλίσαι κελεύει
the leader of-the fleet having-summoned to-arm orders
τὴν ταχίστην πάντα τὸν στόλον, καὶ τοὺς ἐν ταῖς ναυσὶ
the quickest all the fleet and the(-ones) in the ships
πάντας ἐρέτας τε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπιβάτας καὶ τοὺς
all rowers both and the other marines and the
ἐπὶ τῶν καταστρωμάτων μαχίμους ἐκτάξαι καλῶς καὶ
on the decks fighters to-draw-up well and
καταφράκτους ποιῆσαι παντοίοις ὅπλοις· ἐπιβιβάζει δὲ καὶ
armored to-make with-all-kinds arms he-puts-aboard and also
ἄλλα ὅπλα πολλὰ ἐς τὰς ναῦς, ἀσπίδας τε καὶ θυρεοὺς
other arms many into the ships shields both and door-shields
καὶ κράνη καὶ θώρακας, ἔτι δὲ βέλη τε καὶ ἀκόντια
and helmets and breastplates further and missiles both and javelins
καὶ δόρατα μακρὰ καὶ κοπίδας καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἐς τὸν
and spears long and cleavers and whatever other for the
τῇδε πόλεμον χρήσιμα· πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὁπλίτας τε καὶ
here war useful besides and these hoplites both and
τοξότας ὅτι πλείστους ἐπιβιβάζει, καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς
archers as most he-puts-aboard and of-the(-ones) from the
ἰδίας αὐλῆς τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους ἅμα καὶ εὐθαρσεστάτους
own court the most-warlike at-once and boldest
ἐς τοὺς ἀγῶνας καὶ δὴ καὶ εὐοπλοτάτους. Ἐπισκευάσας
for the contests and indeed also best-armed having-equipped
δὲ καὶ ὁπλίσας τὸν στόλον καλῶς ἀνδράσι τε καὶ
and and having-armed the fleet well with-men both and

παντοίοις ὅπλοις, ἐκπέμπει, κελεύσας ἢ τὰς ὁλκάδας
all-kinds arms he-sends-out having-ordered either the merchantmen
λαβόντας ἀγαγεῖν ὡς αὐτὸν ἢ μηδὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπανήκειν σῶς.
having-taken to-bring to him or not-even themselves to-return safe
40.1 Παλτόγλης δὲ πάντα τὸν στόλον παραλαβὼν, ἄρας
Baltoğlu and all the fleet having-taken having-set-out
εὐθὺς ἐπιπλεῖ ταῖς ὁλκάσι ῥώμῃ τε πολλῇ καὶ
at-once sails-against the merchantmen with-strength both much and
προθυμίᾳ, ἔτι γε μὴν φιλοτιμίᾳ τε καὶ ἐλπίδι τοῦ
eagerness further at-least indeed with-ambition both and with-hope of-the
κατορθῶσαι· μόνον οὐ γὰρ ἐν χεροῖν ἐνόμιζεν ἔχειν αὐτάς.
to-succeed only not for in hands he-thought to-have them
Ὡς δὲ ἔσω βελῶν ἐγένοντο, πρῶτον μὲν ἀνακωχεύσαντες
when and within missiles they-came first indeed having-held-back
μικρὸν, ἀκροβολισμοῖς ἰσχυροτάτοις ἐχρήσαντο, τοξεύμασί
a-little skirmishes most-violent they-used with-arrows
τε καὶ λίθοις τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένοις, ἔτι
both and with-stones the(-ones) from the engines let-fly further
δὲ καὶ πυρφόροις ὀϊστοῖς βάλλοντες τά τε ἱστία καὶ τὰς
and also with-fire-bearing arrows shooting the both sails and the
ὁλκάδας, ἀνάψαι διανοούμενοι ταύτας. Οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν
merchantmen to-kindle intending them the(-ones) and on the
ὁλκάδων ἐμάχοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ γενναίως, ἅτε ἀφ' ὑψηλοῦ
merchantmen fought also themselves nobly as from high
τὸν πόλεμον ποιούμενοι καὶ μάλιστα ἀπό τε τῶν ἱστίων
the war making and most from both the sails
καὶ τῶν ξυλίνων πύργων ἄνωθεν βάλλοντες ὀϊστοῖς καὶ
and the wooden towers from-above shooting with-arrows and
δορατίοις καὶ λίθοις σφοδρῶς, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπιτυγχάνοντες,
darts and stones violently and most hitting(-the-mark)
κραυγή τε πολλὴ καὶ τραύματα καὶ φόνος παρ' ἀμφοτέρων
shouting both much and wounds and slaughter from both

ἐγίνετο. Ὡς δὲ τούτων ἄλις εἶχον, Παλτόγλης εὐθὺς μέγα
came-about when and of-these enough they-had Baltoğlu at-once loudly
βοήσας καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐγκελευσάμενος οὕτω ποιεῖν,
having-shouted and to-the others having-urged so to-do
πολλῇ τῇ ῥύμῃ καὶ τῷ ῥοθίῳ κατὰ μέσας ἐμβάλλει τὰς
with-much the impetus and the roaring into middle strikes the
ὁλκάδας, καὶ οὕτως ἤδη ἐκ χειρῶν ἡ μάχη ἐγίνετο,
merchantmen and so already at hands the battle came-about
ἀγχεμάχοις ὅπλοις πᾶντων ξυνεμβαλλόντων αὐτῷ, καὶ
with-close-fighting arms all charging-in-with him and
πάντα ἦν ὁμοῦ τὰ δεινά· οἱ μὲν πῦρ ἐπέφερον
all were together the terrors the(-ones) indeed fire brought
ἀνάπτοντες κάτωθεν τὰς ὁλκάδας, οἱ δὲ παλτοῖς
kindling from-below the merchantmen the(-ones) and with-darts
καὶ κοπίσιν ἔκαινον, ἀναρρηγνύναι τοὺς τυίχους τούτων
and cleavers killed to-break-open the walls of-these
βουλόμενοι· ἄλλοι δόρασί τε μακροῖς καὶ ἀκοντίοις
wishing others with-spears both long and javelins
ἐτίτρωσκον κάτωθεν τοὺς προμαχομένους· οἱ δὲ
wounded from-below the front-fighters the(-ones) and
βέλεσί τε καὶ λίθοις ἔβαλλον· ἕτεροι δὲ ἀναρριχώμενοι
with-missiles both and stones shot others and climbing
καὶ ἀγκύραις καὶ σχοινίοις ἐκκρεμαννύμενοι, ἐπιβαίνειν τῶν
and by-hooks and ropes hanging to-board the
νεῶν ἐπειρῶντο, καὶ ἄλλοι ἄλλως ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἔκοπτον καὶ
ships tried and others otherwise fought and cut and
ἐκόπτοντο ξὺν ὁρμῇ καὶ θυμῷ. Οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁλκάδων
were-cut with impulse and spirit the(-ones) but on the merchantmen
κατάφρακτοι ὄντες καὶ ἄνωθεν ἀπὸ τούτων εὐρώστως
armored being and from-above from these stoutly
μαχόμενοι, τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἠμύνοντο ἰσχυρῶς. Καὶ πρῶτα
fighting the(-ones) attacking warded-off strongly and first

μὲν ἀμφορέας μεγάλους πλήρεις ὑδάτων ἐκκρεμαμένους
indeed jars great full of-waters hung-out
καὶ λίθους βαρεῖς σχοινίοις ἐκδεδεμένους ἄνωθεν ἀπολύοντες
and stones heavy by-ropes tied-on from-above letting-go
ἐσβέννυόν τε τὸ πῦρ καὶ πολλοὺς ἀνῄρουν· μετὰ βάρους
they-quenched both the fire and many killed with weight
γὰρ καὶ βίας οὗτοι καταφερόμενοι τοὺς προστυγχάνοντας
for and force these borne-down the(-ones) happening-upon(-them)
κάτωθεν πάντας τοὺς μὲν κατέδυον, τοὺς δὲ διέφθειρον.
below all the(-ones) indeed they-sank the(-ones) and they-destroyed
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν δόρασι καὶ ἀκοντίοις
after and this the(-ones) indeed of-them with-spears and javelins
καὶ ξυστοῖς τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἠκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ λίθοις
and pikes the(-ones) attacking hurled-at the(-ones) and with-stones
ἔβαλλον ἄνωθεν, ἄλλοι κοπίσι τὰς χεῖρας τῶν
shot from-above others with-cleavers the hands of-the(-ones)
ἐπιβαίνειν πειρωμένων ἀπέκοπτον, ἕτεροι κορώναις τε
to-board trying cut-off others with-hooks both
καὶ ῥοπάλοις ἄνωθεν καταφερομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς τούτων
and clubs from-above brought-down the heads of-these
παίοντες ξυνέθλων· καὶ βοὴ πολλὴ καὶ θροῦς ἦν ἐξ
striking crushed and shout much and din was from
ἁπάντων ἐγειρόμενος, βαλλόντων, βαλλομένων, κτεινόντων,
all rising shooting being-shot killing
κτεινομένων, ὠθούντων, ὠθουμένων, βλασφημούντων,
being-killed pushing being-pushed blaspheming
ὑβριζόντων, ἀπειλούντων, στενόντων, πάντα δεινὰ
insulting threatening groaning all terrible(-things)
ποιούντων. Ὅμως γε μὴν καὶ οὕτως εὐρώστως
doing nevertheless at-least indeed also so stoutly
ἀγωνιζομένων τῶν ἐν ταῖς ὁλκάσι, καθυπερτέρουν
contending the(-ones) in the merchantmen prevailed

οἱ τοῦ στόλου, διὰ πολυχειρίαν μάλιστα καὶ
the(-ones) of-the fleet because-of numbers most and
ἀμοιβαδὸν ἐκ διαδοχῆς ἀγωνιζόμενοι, καὶ τῶν
in-turn by succession contending and of-the(-ones)
τετρωμένων ἢ καὶ ἀποθνησκόντων τοὺς τόπους τε καὶ
wounded or even dying the places both and
τὰς τάξεις ἄλλων ἀναπληρούντων. Κἂν ἀπεῖπον οἱ
the ranks others filling-up and-would have-given-out the(-ones)
ἐν ταῖς ὁλκάσι μαχόμενοι καὶ προπολεμοῦντες τῇ
in the merchantmen fighting and fighting-in-front by-the
παρατάσει τοῦ πολέμου, εἰ μὴ ἄνεμος αἴφνης νότος
extension of-the war if not wind suddenly south
πνεύσας σφοδρὸς ὦσε κατὰ μέσων τῶν ἱστίων, καὶ
having-blown violent pushed against middle the sails and
μετὰ βίας βρύσας ἐκίνησέ τε τὰς ὁλκάδας ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ
with force swelling moved both the merchantmen strongly and
οὕτω κατὰ μικρὸν ἀπολελειμμένων τῶν τριήρεων, τῷ
so by little being-left-behind the triremes by-the
μὴ δύνασθαι ταῖς ὁλκάσιν ἕπεσθαι, καὶ τοῦ πολέμου
not to-be-able the merchantmen to-follow and the war
λωφῶντος ἤδη, διεσώθησαν πρὸς τὰς ἄλλας ὁλκάδας
abating already they-came-safe to the other merchantmen
πρὸς τὸ στόμα τοῦ λιμένος, καὶ τὸν κίνδυνον παρὰ
at the mouth of-the harbor and the danger against
δόξαν διέφυγον. Παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον κινδύνου.
expectation escaped by so-much they-came of-danger
Βασιλεὺς δὲ παρὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἑστὼς ἔφιππος ἑώρα 41.1
emperor and along the shore standing on-horseback saw
τὰ δρώμενα, θάρσος τε ἐμποιῶν τοῖς αὐτοῦ φαινόμενος
the(-things) being-done courage both instilling in-the his(-men) appearing
καὶ ἅμα τοῦ πολέμου τὸ τέλος ἀποσκοπῶν· ἐνόμιζε
and at-once of-the war the end watching he-thought

γὰρ ἐξ ἅπαντος τρόπου τὸν αὐτοῦ στόλον τῶν ὁλκάδων
for by every way the his fleet the merchantmen
περιγενήσεσθαι, καὶ κρατήσαντας αἰχμαλώτους ἄξειν αὐτὰς
to-overcome and having-prevailed as-captives to-bring them
ὡς αὐτόν· καὶ περιχαρ�ὴς ἦν. Ὡς δὲ ἑώρα σφοδρῶς τε
to him and overjoyed he-was when but he-saw violently both
τὸν ἄνεμον πνεύσαντα καὶ τὰς ὁλκάδας περιγεγενημένας,
the wind having-blown and the merchantmen having-prevailed
μεταβαλὼν εὐθὺς ἠνιᾶτο ὑπερβαλλόντως, καὶ πλήξας
changing at-once was-grieved exceedingly and having-struck
τὸν ἵππον ἀνεχώρησε σιωπῶν. Ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν
the horse withdrew in-silence died and of-the(-ones) indeed
ἐν ταῖς ὁλκάσιν ἄνδρες, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, οἱ πάντες δύο καὶ
in the merchantmen men as were-said the all two and
εἴκοσι, τραυματίαι μέντοι γεγόνασιν ὑπὲρ τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν
twenty wounded however have-become over the half of-the
πληρωμάτων, τῶν δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ στόλου ὀλίγῳ πλείους
crews of-the(-ones) and from the fleet a-little more
τῶν ἑκατὸν, τραυματίαι μέντοι γεγόνασιν ὑπὲρ τοὺς
than-the hundred wounded however have-become over the
τριακοσίους. Βάλλεται δὲ καὶ Παλτόγλης ὁ τοῦ στόλου
three-hundred is-hit and also Baltoğlu the of-the fleet
ἡγεμὼν τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν λίθῳ, καὶ ξυνήνεγκε τοῦτο ταῖς μὲν
leader in-the eye by-stone and brought this for-the indeed
ὁλκάσι σωτηρίαν, αὐτῷ δὲ Παλτόγλῃ μὴ ἀποθανεῖν
merchantmen safety for-himself and Baltoğlu not to-die
ὑπὸ βασιλέως, ὃς δεινὸν ὅτι μάλιστα ἐποιήσατο τὴν
at-the-hands-of emperor who terrible as most made the
ἀποφυγὴν τῶν ὁλκάδων, καὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα βαρέως ἤνεγκε,
escape of-the merchantmen and the affair heavily bore
δειλίαν τε καὶ ἀνανδρίαν καταγνοὺς τοῦ Παλτόγλου,
cowardice both and unmanliness having-charged-against — Baltoğlu

μᾶλλον δὲ ἀμέλειαν καὶ ῥᾳθυμίαν τούτου τὸ ὅλον νομίσας
rather and neglect and slackness of-him the whole having-thought
εἶναι, καὶ προδοσίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ πραγμάτων. Οὐ καλὸν γάρ
to-be and betrayal of-the his affairs not good for
οἱ οἰωνὸν ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι ἔς γε τὸ προκείμενον ἔργον
to-him omen he-thought to-be for at-least the proposed work
τὴν τῶν ὁλκάδων ἀποτυχίαν. Παραλύει μέντοι γε τοῦτον
the of-the merchantmen failure he-removes however at-least him
εὐθὺς τῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ παραδίδωσι τόν τε στόλον καὶ τὴν
at-once from-the command and hands-over the both fleet and the
σατραπείαν Καλλιουπόλεως Χαμουζᾷ τῶν ἑταίρων τινὶ καὶ
satrapy of-Kallipolis to-Hamza of-the companions one and
ᾧ μάλιστα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐπίστευε. Ῥωμαίοις μέντοι γε
to-whom most the such(-things) he-entrusted to-Romans however at-least
τοῦτο παρ᾽ ἐλπίδας γεγονὸς ἀναψυχήν τινα τότε καὶ
this against hopes having-happened relief some then and
παραμυθίαν ἤνεγκεν οὐ μετρίαν, καὶ χρηστοτέρων ἐλπίδων
consolation brought not moderate and of-better hopes
ἐνέπλησεν, οὐ μόνον τοῖς παροῦσιν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ταῖς
filled not only with-the present(-things) but indeed also with-the
χρησταῖς τῶν ἀγγελιῶν, ἕως ἔδει τούτους πράξειν
good of-the tidings until it-was-needed them to-fare
καλῶς καὶ οὔπω παρῆν τὰ δεινά· οὐ γὰρ ἐς μακρὰν
well and not-yet were-present the terrors not for for long
χαιρήσειν ἔμελλον, ἁλόντες καὶ πᾶσι κακοῖς ἐκλυθέντες,
to-rejoice were-going having-been-taken and with-all evils undone
αἰχμαλωσίᾳ καὶ δουλείᾳ καὶ φόνῳ καὶ διαρπαγῇ καὶ
with-captivity and slavery and slaughter and plunder and
ὕβρει γυναικῶν τε καὶ παίδων. Καὶ οἱ μὲν οὕτως.
outrage of-women both and of-children and they indeed thus

42.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις προὔργου τι νομίζων εἶναί
emperor and Mehmed advantageous something thinking to-be
οἱ ἐς τὸ προκείμενον τόν τε λιμένα ἑλεῖν καὶ τὸ
for-him for the proposed(-aim) the both harbor to-take and —
Κέρας ἀνοῖξαι ταῖς ἰδίαις ναυσὶν ἐφορμεῖν, ἐπειδὴ πᾶσαν
Horn to-open for-the own ships to-lie-at-anchor since every
πεῖραν καὶ μηχανὴν προσαγαγὼν οὐκ ἠδυνήθη τὸν ἔσπλουν
trial and engine having-brought-up not he-was-able the sailing-in
βιάσασθαι, βουλὴν βουλεύεται ξυνετὴν καὶ μόνης τῆς αὐτοῦ
to-force plan plans intelligent and only of-the his
διανοίας καὶ ἰσχύος ἀξίαν, ἣ καὶ πρὸς τὸ προκείμενόν
mind and strength worthy which also for the proposed(-aim)
οἱ καλῶς ἤρκεσε καὶ τοῖς πᾶσι πέρας ἐπέθηκε. Κελεύει
for-him well sufficed and to-the all(-things) end set he-orders
τοίνυν τοὺς ἐπὶ ταῖς ναυσὶ τεταγμένους ὅτι τάχιστα
therefore the(-ones) over the ships appointed as quickly-as-possible
ποιεῖν ὁλκούς, φέροντας ἀπὸ τῆς ἔξω θαλάσσης πρὸς τὴν
to-make slipways leading from the outer sea to the
ἔσω θάλασσαν τοῦ τε λιμένος, φημὶ, καὶ τοῦ Κέρατος,
inner sea of-the both harbor I-mean and — of-Horn
κατά γε τὸ τοῦ Διπλοῦ χίονος ὀνομαζόμενον, καὶ
at at-least the — of-Double Column named(-place) and
ὑποστρωννύειν τούτοις δοκούς. Ὁ δὲ χῶρος οὗτός ἐστι μὲν
to-spread-under these beams the and place this is indeed
ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς θάλασσαν μετροῦντι στάδιοι μάλιστα*
from sea to sea for-one-measuring stades about
ὀκτώ· ἔστι δὲ σφόδρα ἀνάντης ὑπερήμισυ τούτων, ἕως ἂν
eight it-is and very uphill over-half of-these until —
ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου καὶ τῆς κορυφῆς γένηται, κακεῖθεν πάλιν
on the hill and the summit it-come and-thence again
διὰ τοῦ κατάντους φέρεται πρὸς τὴν ἔσω θάλασσαν τοῦ
through the downhill it-runs to the inner sea —

Κέρατος. Τῶν δὲ ὅλκων γεγονότων θᾶττον ἢ λόγος
of-Horn of-the and slipways having-been-made quicker than word
διὰ πολυχειρίαν, ἐπάγει τὰς ναῦς· καὶ τρόπεις μεγάλας
through numbers he-brings-up the ships and keels great
ὑποθεὶς αὐταῖς καὶ κεραίας ἑκατέρωθεν τῶν πλευρῶν,
having-placed-under them and beams on-either-side of-the sides
ὥστε ἀνέχειν αὐτὰς, καὶ σχοινίοις διαζώσας καλῶς,
so-as to-hold-up them and with-ropes having-girded well
ἐξάπτει προτόνους μακροὺς τῶν ἀγκώνων ἐκδήσας, καὶ
he-fastens forestays long from-the elbows having-tied and
παραδίδωσιν ἕλκειν τῇ στρατιᾷ, τοῖς μὲν αὐτοχειρίᾳ,
hands-over to-drag to-the army to-the(-ones) indeed by-hand
τοῖς δὲ καὶ διὰ μηχανῶν τινων καὶ μαγγάνων.
to-the(-ones) and also through engines some and windlasses
Αἱ μὲν οὖν νῆες εἵλκοντο θᾶττον, οἱ δὲ ἐπιβάται
the indeed then ships were-dragged quicker the and marines
τούτων, ὥσπερ ἐπεντρυφῶντες τοῖς γινομένοις τε καὶ
of-them as-if reveling in-the happenings both and
ἐπεγγελῶντες, πληροῦντες αὐτὰς ἐπὶ τῆς χέρσου ὥσπερ ἐπὶ
laughing filling them on the dry-land as on
θαλάσσης, οἱ μὲν ἀνεπετάννυον ξὺν κραυγῇ τὰ ἱστία,
sea the(-ones) indeed spread-out with shouting the sails
ὡς δῆθεν ἀναγόμενοι, τὰ δὲ πνεῦμά τε ἐδέχετο καὶ
as forsooth putting-to-sea the(-sails) and wind both received and
ἐκυρτοῦτο, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς εἰρεσίας καθήμενοι κατεῖχον
swelled the(-ones) and on the rowing sitting held
τὰς κώπας ἐν χεροῖν τετροπημένας ὥσπερ ἐρέττοντες,
the oars in hands turned as-if rowing
καὶ οἱ κελευσταὶ διαθέοντες ἐπὶ τῆς ἱστοδόκης, συριγμοῖς
and the boatswains running-about on the mast-crutch with-whistles
τε καὶ κραυγῇ καὶ φραγελλίοις παίοντες τοὺς ἐπὶ τῆς
both and shouting and with-whips striking the(-ones) on the

εἰρεσίας ἐρέττειν διεκελεύοντο, αἱ δὲ νῆες ἐπὶ τῆς χέρσου
rowing to-row urged the and ships on the dry-land
φερόμεναι ὥσπερ ἐπὶ πελάγους, αἱ μὲν ἀνήγοντο
borne as on open-sea the(-ones) indeed were-borne-up
διὰ τοῦ ἀνάντους ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἄνω, αἱ δὲ πάλιν
through the uphill onto the hill above the(-ones) and again
κατήγοντο διὰ τοῦ κατάντους ἐς τὸν λιμένα, χαλῶσαι
were-brought-down through the downhill into the harbor slackening
τὰ ἱστία ξὺν βοῇ καὶ πατάγῳ πολλῷ. Καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν
the sails with shout and clatter much and it-was-possible to-see
θέαμα ξένον καὶ ἀκοαῖς ἄπιστον πλὴν τῶν τεθεαμένων,
sight strange and to-hearings incredible except the(-ones) having-seen(-it)
ναῦς ἐπὶ τῆς μεσογείας φερομένας, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ θαλάσσης
ships over the inland borne as on sea
πλεούσας μετά γε τῶν πληρωμάτων αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν
sailing with at-least the crews of-them and the
ἱστίων καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀποσκευῆς. Ἐγὼ δὲ νομίζω καὶ
sails and the other gear I and think also
τῆς Ξέρξου Ἄθω διορυγῆς μεῖζον εἶναι τοῦτο πολλῷ, καὶ
than-the of-Xerxes Athos canal greater to-be this by-much and
παραδοξότερον καὶ ἰδεῖν καὶ ἀκοῦσαι· μᾶλλον δὲ τοῦτο
more-incredible both to-see and to-hear rather and this
χθὲς καὶ πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν ἡμετέρων γεγονὸς βεβαίαν
yesterday and before eyes our having-happened firm
κἀκείνῳ τὴν πίστιν παρέχει τοῦ γενέσθαι, ὡς ἄνευ
also-to-that the credence provides of-the to-have-happened as without
γε τούτου μῦθος ἂν ἦν ἐκεῖνο καὶ ἐδόκει μάτην
at-least this myth — would-have-been that and seemed in-vain
λεγόμενον. Κατάγονται τοίνυν ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ τῶν Ψυχρῶν
being-told are-brought-down therefore in the gulf — of-Cold

ὑδάτων καλουμένῳ, μικρὸν ἀπωτέρω τοῦ Γαλατᾶ, στόλος
waters called a-little farther — from-Galata fleet
οὐ μικρὸς, νῆες ἑπτὰ καὶ ἑξήκοντα, καὶ ὁρμίζονται αὐτοῦ.
not small ships seven and sixty and they-anchor there
Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ πρᾶγμα τοσοῦτον παρὰ δόξαν γεγονὸς 43.1
Romans and affair so-great against expectation having-happened
θεασάμενοι, καὶ τῷ Κέρατι ναῦς πολεμίας ἐφορμοῦντας,
having-seen and — in-Horn ships hostile lying-at-anchor
ὅπερ οὐκ ἄν ποτε προσεδόκησαν, ἐξεπλάγησάν τε τῷ
which not — ever they-expected were-astonished both at-the
παραλόγῳ τῆς θέας καὶ ἐς ἀμηχανίαν τε καὶ ἀπορίαν
unexpectedness of-the sight and into helplessness both and perplexity
μεγίστην ἐνέπεσον, μὴ ἔχοντες τοῦ λοιποῦ ὅτι καὶ
greatest fell not having for-the rest what also
δράσαιεν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἀπόγνωσιν· καὶ γὰρ ἀφύλακτον
they-might-do but indeed also despair and for unguarded
ἔχοντες πρότερον τὸ τοῦ Κέρατος τεῖχος, σταδίους ἐγγύς
having before the — of-Horn wall stades near
που τριάκοντα, οὐδὲ οὕτως εἶχον ἀρκούντως τοῖς
somewhere thirty not-even so they-had sufficiently for-the
ἄλλοις τείχεσιν ἔς γε προφυλακήν τε καὶ μάχην οὔτε
other walls for at-least guard both and battle neither
οἱ ἀστοὶ οὔτε οἱ ξένοι, ἀλλ' ἐπάλξεις δύο καὶ τρεῖς εἶχον
the citizens nor the foreigners but battlements two and three had
ἕνα προπολεμοῦντα· νῦν δὲ καὶ τοῦτο τὸ τεῖχος ἀνοιγὲν
one fighting-in-front now but also this the wall opened
τῷ πολέμῳ φυλάττειν ἀνάγκην ἔχοντες, ἠναγκάζοντο
to-the war to-guard necessity having they-were-compelled
τὰς ἄλλας ἐπάλξεις ἀπογυμνοῦν καὶ μετακομίζειν ἐνταῦθα
the other battlements to-strip and to-transfer there
τοὺς ἄνδρας· ὅπερ ἦν κίνδυνος προφανὴς, κενουμένου
the men which was danger manifest being-emptied

τῶν προμαχομένων τοῦ ἄλλου τείχους, καὶ μὴ ἀρκούντων
of-the front-fighters the other wall and not sufficing
τῶν ἐγκαταλελειμμένων, ὀλίγων ὄντων, φυλάττειν αὐτό.
the(-ones) left-behind few being to-guard it
Οὐ τοῦτο δὲ μόνον ἦν τὸ δεινὸν, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ ἡ γέφυρα
not this and only was the terrible(-thing) but that also the bridge
τέλος λαβοῦσα ὁπλίτας ἐδέχετο καὶ τοξότας διαβαίνοντας
completion having-taken hoplites received and archers crossing
ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος, καὶ ἔδει φυλάττειν κἀκεῖ· καὶ αἱ πρὸς
to the wall and it-was-needed to-guard also-there and the at
τῷ στόματι δὲ τοῦ λιμένος καὶ τῇ ἁλύσει ὁλκάδες τε καὶ
the mouth and of-the harbor and the chain merchantmen both and
τριήρεις καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι νῆες ἐν τῷ λιμένι φυλακῆς ἤδη μᾶλλον
triremes and the other ships in the harbor of-guard already more
ἐδέοντο πλείονος, ἔνδοθέν τε καὶ ἔξωθεν πολεμούμεναι.
needed greater from-within both and from-without being-warred-against
Πολλαχόθεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἄπορα ἦν τε καὶ ἐδόκει, πλήν
from-many-sides then for-them hopeless were both and seemed except
γε δὴ οὐκ ἠμέλουν ἐκ τῶν ἐνόντων τῶν δυνατῶν.
at-least indeed not they-neglected from the available the possible(-things)
44.1 Ἰουστῖνος γὰρ, ἄρας μίαν τῶν ὁλκάδων αὐτοῦ ἀπὸ
Giustiniani for having-taken one of-the merchantmen his from
τοῦ στόματος τοῦ λιμένος καὶ τῶν Ἰταλικῶν τριήρεων
the mouth of-the harbor and of-the Italian triremes
τρεῖς, ἐπάγει κατὰ τὸ στόμα τοῦ κόλπου, οὗ ἐφώρμουν
three brings-up to the mouth of-the gulf where lay-at-anchor
αἱ νῆες τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ ὁρμίζει αὐτοῦ, ἵν' ἀπ' αὐτῶν
the ships of-the emperor and anchors there so-that from them
ποιοῖτο τὸν πόλεμον, καὶ κατείργῃ τὰς πολεμίας ναῦς ἐν
he-might-make the war and might-shut-in the hostile ships in
τῷ κόλπῳ, μηδαμοῦ διεκθεούσας ἢ βλάπτειν δυναμένας τόν
the gulf nowhere running-out or to-harm being-able the

τε λιμένα καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῷ σκάφη. Καὶ ἔδοξε τοῦτο ἀρίστη
both harbor and the in it vessels and seemed this best
βουλὴ καὶ ἀντιτέχνησις, πρὸς καιρὸν μέντοι. Μεχέμετις γὰρ
counsel and counter-contrivance for a-time however Mehmed for
ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦτο γνοὺς ἀντιτεχνᾶται τοιόνδε. Κελεύει
the emperor this having-learned counter-contrives such(-a-thing) he-orders
τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς νυκτὸς ἀπαγαγόντας λάθρα τὰς μηχανὰς
the engine-makers by-night having-led-away secretly the engines
θεῖναι παρὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἀντικρὺ οὗ ἐφώρμουν αἱ νῆες
to-set along the shore opposite where lay-at-anchor the ships
καὶ ἡ ὁλκὰς, καὶ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς λίθους κατ᾽ αὐτῶν. Οἱ
and the merchantman and to-let-fly the stones against them they
δὲ θᾶσσον τοῦτο ποιήσαντες, βάλλουσι μίαν τῶν τριήρεων
and quicker this having-done hit one of-the triremes
κατὰ μέσον καὶ καταδύουσιν αὔτανδρον πλὴν ὀλίγων
in middle and sink(-it) with-its-crew except few
πάνυ ἀπονηξαμένων ἐς τὰς ἄλλας τριήρεις, καὶ οἱ ἐν
very having-swum-away to the other triremes and the(-ones) in
αὐταῖς ὄντες εὐθὺς ἀπάγουσί τε αὐτὰς ὡς πορρωτάτω καὶ
them being at-once lead-away both them as farthest and
ὁρμίζουσιν· εἰ γὰρ μὴ τοῦτο τάχος ἐγεγόνει, κατεδύοντ᾽
anchor if for not this quickly had-happened would-have-been-sunk
ἂν αἱ τριήρεις αὔτανδροι καὶ ἡ ὁλκὰς, μηδ᾽ αἴσθησιν
— the triremes with-their-crews and the merchantman not-even perception
γοῦν ἡντινοῦν τοῦ κακοῦ σχοῦσαι· οὕτως ἦσαν ἐγγὺς
at-any-rate any of-the evil having-had so they-were near
τοῦ διαφθαρῆναι, τῶν μηχανῶν ἑτοίμων οὐσῶν ἀφεῖναι
to-the to-be-destroyed the engines ready being to-let-fly
τοὺς λίθους κατ᾽ αὐτῶν. Ῥωμαῖοι μέντοι καὶ τούτου
the stones against them Romans however also of-this
διαμαρτόντες οὐκ εἶχον ὅ τι γε ἕτερον διαπράξονται,
having-failed not had what thing at-least other they-will-accomplish

μηχαναῖς δὲ μόνον πετροβόλοις ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους καὶ
with-engines and only stone-throwing from the wall and
βέλεσιν ἔβαλλον τὰς ναῦς καὶ ἀνεῖργον ὅποι παρήκοι
with-missiles they-hit the ships and held-back wherever it-reached
διεκθεούσας. Ἐπεξέθεον δὲ καὶ τριήρεις τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ
running-out sallied and also triremes of-the(-ones) from the
στόματος τοῦ λιμένος, καθ' ἡμέραν διώκουσαί τε αὐτὰς
mouth of-the harbor by day pursuing both them
καὶ ἀνείργουσαι τοῦ μή τι βλάπτειν ἐν τῷ λιμένι,
and holding-back from-the not anything to-harm in the harbor
πολλάκις δὲ καὶ μέχρι πρὸς τὴν γῆν ἐποκέλλουσαι πρὸς
often and also as-far-as to the land running-aground toward
τοὺς ἑαυτῶν, αἱ δὲ πάλιν ὑπέστρεφον, ἀναστρεφουσῶν
the(-men) of-themselves they and again turned-back turning-round
τῶν τριήρεων, καὶ παρὰ πόδας ἠκολούθουν, βάλλουσαι
the triremes and at feet followed shooting
καὶ βαλλόμεναι· καὶ οὕτω ἠκροβολίζοντο καθ' ἡμέραν.
and being-shot and so skirmished by day
45.1 Κατὰ δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς ἡμέρας ξυνηνέχθη καὶ τάδε, ἅπερ
in and the same days happened also these(-things) which
θεοσημεῖαί τινες ἦσαν καὶ προφοιβασμοὶ τῶν ἐσομένων
divine-signs some were and foretellings of-the going-to-be
ὅσον οὐ τῇ πόλει δεινῶν. Πρὸ γὰρ τριῶν ἢ τεττάρων
all but for-the city terrors before for three or four
ἡμερῶν τοῦ πολέμου θεοκλητούντων πάντων τῶν ἐν τῇ
days of-the war calling-on-God all the in the
πόλει ἀνδρῶν ὁμοῦ τε καὶ γυναικῶν, καὶ περιερχομένων
city men together both and women and going-around
αὐτὴν μετὰ τῆς εἰκόνος τῆς θεομήτορος, αὖτη τῶν χειρῶν
it with the icon of-the mother-of-God it from-the hands
αἴφνης ἐκπεσοῦσα τῶν κατεχόντων, μηδεμιᾶς ἡστινοσοῦν
suddenly having-fallen of-the(-ones) holding(-it) no whatever

ἀνάγκης ἢ βίας ἡγησαμένης, πρηνὴς ἔπεσεν ἐπ᾽ ἔδαφος.
necessity or force having-led prone fell on ground
Πάντων οὖν ἀναβοησάντων εὐθὺς καὶ ξυνδεδραμηκότων
all then having-cried-out at-once and having-run-together
ἐς ἀνάστασιν τῆς εἰκόνος, αὖτη μᾶλλον ἐβρίθη κάτω
for raising of-the icon it more was-weighed down
μολύβδου δίκην βαρυνομένη, ὥσπερ ἐνισχημένη τῷ ἐδάφει,
of-lead like being-heavy as-if held-fast to-the ground
καὶ ὅλως δυσαπόσπαστος ἦν. Καὶ τοῦτο ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὴν ὥραν
and wholly hard-to-tear-away was and this for sufficient hour
ἐγίνετο, ἕως οὗ μετὰ βίας πολλῆς καὶ κραυγῆς μεγάλης
went-on until which with force much and shouting great
καὶ δεήσεως πάντων οἵ τε ἱερεῖς καὶ βαστάζοντες μόλις
and entreaty of-all the both priests and bearers scarcely
ἀνέστησάν τε αὐτὴν καὶ τοῖς τῶν φερόντων ὤμοις
raised both it and on-the of-the(-ones) carrying shoulders
ἐπέθεσαν. Τοῦτο παρὰ δόξαν γεγονὸς φρίκην τε πολλὴν
placed this against expectation having-happened shuddering both much
καὶ ἀγωνίαν μεγίστην καὶ φόβον πᾶσιν ἐνέβαλεν· ἐνόμιζον
and anguish greatest and fear into-all threw they-thought
γὰρ, ὥσπερ δὴ καὶ ἦν, ἐπ᾽ οὐδενὶ ξυμβόλῳ χρηστῷ
for as indeed also was(-so) on no omen good
τὴν πτῶσιν ταύτην γενέσθαι. Ἔπειτα δὲ οὐκ ἔφθησαν
the fall this to-have-happened then and not they-forestalled
μικρὸν προβάντες, καὶ εὐθὺς μετὰ τοῦτο, μεσημβρίας οὔσης
a-little having-advanced and at-once after this midday being
σταθερᾶς, βρονταὶ πολλαὶ καὶ ἀστραπαὶ κατερράγησαν
steady thunders many and lightnings broke-out
μετὰ νέφους, καὶ ὗσέ γε λάβρον ὑετὸν μετὰ χαλάζης
with cloud and it-rained at-least violent rain with hail
σφοδροτάτης, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι ἀντέχειν ἢ προβαίνειν
most-violent so-as not to-be-able to-hold-out or to-advance

ἔτι τούς τε ἱερεῖς καὶ φέροντας τὴν εἰκόνα καὶ τὸ πλῆθος
any-longer the both priests and bearers the icon and the crowd
τῶν ἀκολούθων, τῇ φορᾷ τῶν καταφερομένων ὑδάτων καὶ
of-the followers by-the rush of-the down-pouring waters and
τῇ βίᾳ τῆς χαλάζης βαρυνομένους τε καὶ κωλυομένους.
by-the force of-the hail weighed-down both and hindered
Πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τῶν ἑπομένων παιδαρίων ἐκινδύνευσε
many and also of-the following little-children were-in-danger
παρασυρῆναί τε καὶ ἀποπνιγῆναι, τῇ σφοδρᾷ καὶ βιαίᾳ
to-be-swept-away both and to-be-drowned by-the violent and forceful
ῥύμῃ τῶν ὑδάτων παραφερόμενα, εἰ μὴ ἄνδρες εὐθὺς
rush of-the waters carried-along if not men at-once
δραττόμενοι μόγις αὐτὰ τῆς φορᾶς τούτων ἐξήρπαζον·
grasping(-them) scarcely them from-the rush of-these snatched
οὕτω παράλογόν τι καὶ ἄηθες ἦν τὸ χρῆμα τοῦ
so unexpected something and unaccustomed was the matter of-the
ὑετοῦ καὶ τῆς χαλάζης ἐκείνης, ὅπερ ἐδήλου πάντως τὴν
rain and of-the hail that which showed wholly the
ταχίστην τῶν ὅλων ἀπώλειαν, καὶ ὅτι χειμάρρου δίκην καὶ
quickest of-the whole destruction and that of-torrent like and
σφοδροτάτων ὑδάτων ἅπαντα οἰχήσεται καὶ παρασυρήσεται.
of-most-violent waters all will-be-gone and will-be-swept-away

46.1 Καὶ τῇ μὲν προτέρᾳ ταῦτα ἐγένετο, τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ
and on-the indeed former(-day) these(-things) happened on-the and next(-day)
ἕωθεν νέφος βαθὺ τὴν πόλιν πᾶσαν περιεκάλυψεν ἀπὸ
at-dawn cloud deep the city whole covered from
πρωίας βαθείας ἕως ἑσπέρας. Τοῦτο πάντως ἐδήλου τὴν
morning deep until evening this wholly showed the
ἀποδημίαν τοῦ θείου καὶ ἀναχώρησιν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἢ τὴν
departure of-the divine and withdrawal from the city or the
τελείαν ταύτης ἐγκατάλειψιν καὶ ἀποστροφήν· νέφει γὰρ τὸ
complete of-it abandonment and turning-away by-cloud for the

θεῖον κρυπτόμενον καὶ παραγίνεται καὶ πάλιν ἀπέρχεται. Καὶ
divine hidden both comes and again departs and
ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω. Καὶ ἀπιστείτω μηδείς· πλεῖστοι γὰρ οἱ
these(-things) indeed thus and let-disbelieve no-one very-many for the
τούτων μάρτυρές τε καὶ θεαταὶ τῶν τε ξένων καὶ ἀστῶν.
of-these witnesses both and spectators of-the both foreigners and citizens
Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις, ἐπειδή οἱ πάντα ἦν εὐτρεπῆ καὶ 47.1
emperor and Mehmed since for-him all was ready and
οὐδὲν ἐμποδὼν ἔτι (τό τε γὰρ τεῖχος τό τε ἐντὸς
nothing in-the-way any-longer the both for wall the(-one) both inside
τό τε ἐκτὸς ταῖς μηχαναῖς κατήρριπτο μέχρις ἐδάφους,
the(-one) both outside by-the engines had-been-hurled-down to ground
ἥ τε τάφρος ἐχώσθη πᾶσα, τό τε Κέρας καὶ τὸ κατ᾽ αὐτὸ
the both ditch was-filled all — both Horn and the along it
τεῖχος ἅπαν λαμπρῶς ἠνοίγη τῷ πολέμῳ, καὶ ἀκριβὴς ἦν
wall all brilliantly was-opened to-the war and exact was
ἡ πολιορκία πανταχόθεν τῇ πόλει, αἵ τε κλίμακες καὶ οἱ
the siege from-all-sides on-the city the both ladders and the
ξύλινοι πύργοι καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πάντα καλῶς ἡτοίμαστο, ὅ τε
wooden towers and the other all(-things) well had-been-prepared the both
χρόνος τῆς πολιορκίας ἱκανὸς ἦν· ἡμέραι γὰρ δὴ παρεῖλκον
time of-the siege sufficient was days for indeed dragged-on
αὐτῇ ἐγγύς που πεντήκοντα, καὶ δέος ἦν μή πού τι
for-it near somewhere fifty and fear was lest somehow something
καὶ νεοχμώσῃ ἢ καὶ βοήθειά τίς ποθεν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
also might-bring-new or also help some from-somewhere from sea
φανείη· ἤδη γὰρ ἐπυνθάνετο καὶ τὸν ἐν Χίῳ ἀπόστολον
might-appear already for he-learned also the in Chios expedition
τῶν Ἰταλικῶν νεῶν), δεῖν ἔγνω μηκέτι διαμέλλειν, μηδὲ
of-the Italian ships to-be-needful he-resolved no-longer to-delay nor
τοῦ λοιποῦ μενετέα οἱ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ πολεμητέα ἐν τάχει,
for-the rest must-wait for-him to-be but must-make-war in speed

καὶ ἐπιχειρητέα τῇ πόλει πάσῃ σπουδῇ καὶ δυνάμει κατά τε
and must-attempt the city with-all zeal and power by both
γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν προσβάλλοντι, καὶ πεῖραν ταύτην αὐτῇ
land and sea attacking and trial this on-it
μεγίστην τε καὶ τελευταίαν προσενεγκεῖν. Ξυγκαλέσας
greatest both and last to-bring-against having-called-together
οὖν πάντας τοὺς ἐν τέλει τε καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν, σατράπας
then all the(-ones) in office both and about him satraps
τέ φημι καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ ταγματάρχας
both I-mean and generals and squadron-leaders and battalion-commanders
καὶ ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων, ἔτι δὲ χιλιάρχους τε
and leaders of-the ranks further and commanders-of-thousands both
καὶ ἑκατοντάρχους καὶ πεντηκοντάρχους τό τε ἄγημα
and centurions and commanders-of-fifty the both guard
τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ τὴν περὶ αὐτὸν πᾶσαν ἴλην καὶ πρὸς
of-the army and the about him all squadron and besides
τούτοις ναυάρχους τε καὶ τριηράρχους καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα
these admirals both and trierarchs and the leader
τοῦ στόλου παντὸς, καὶ ξύλλογον ποιήσας ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
of-the fleet whole and assembly having-made be-spoke such(-words)

48.1 “Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ τοῦ παρόντος ἀγῶνος ἐμοὶ
men friends and of-the present contest with-me
κοινωνοί, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ἐνθάδε ξυνεκάλεσα οὐ ῥᾳθυμίαν τινὰ
partners I you here called-together not slackness any
καταγνοὺς ὑμῶν ἢ ἀμέλειαν ἐς τόδε τὸ ἔργον, οὐδ’
having-charged-against you or neglect for this the work nor
ἵνα προθυμοτέρους ἐς τὸν παρόντα ἀγῶνα ποιήσω·
so-that more-eager for the present contest I-might-make
πάλαι γὰρ ὁρῶ τοὺς μὲν ὑμῶν τοσαύτῃ προθυμίᾳ καὶ
long-since for I-see the(-ones) indeed of-you such eagerness and
σπουδῇ περὶ τὸ ἔργον κεχρημένους, ὡς πᾶν ὁτιοῦν
zeal about the work having-used as everything whatever

ἂν μᾶλλον ἑλομένους παθεῖν ἢ ἀπράκτους τῶν
— rather having-chosen to-suffer than unsuccessful from-the(-things)
ὧδε ἀναχωρῆσαι, τοὺς δὲ οὐ μόνον αὐτοὺς, ἀλλὰ καὶ
here to-withdraw the(-ones) and not only themselves but also
τοὺς ἄλλους παροξύνοντας, πάσῃ δυνάμει πρὸς τὸ ἔργον
the others urging-on with-all power to the work
χωρεῖν· οὐ τοίνυν διὰ τοῦτο ὑμᾶς ξυνεκάλεσα, ἀλλ᾽
to-go not therefore because-of this you I-called-together but
ὥστε μόνον ἀναμνῆσαι, πρῶτον μὲν ὡς καὶ τὰ παρόντα
so-as only to-remind first indeed that also the present
ἀγαθὰ, ἃ ἔχετε, οὐ ῥαθυμοῦντες καὶ ἀμελοῦντες, ἀλλὰ
goods which you-have not being-slack and neglecting but
καὶ σφόδρα πονοῦντες καὶ μετὰ μεγάλων ἀγώνων τε καὶ
also exceedingly toiling and with great contests both and
κινδύνων μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν ἐκτήσασθε καὶ ἄθλα τῆς ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
dangers with us you-acquired and prizes of-the your own
ἀρετῆς καὶ ἀνδρίας ἔχετε μᾶλλον ἢ τύχης δῶρα· ἔπειτα
virtue and courage you-have rather than of-fortune gifts then
δὲ, ὡς καὶ τὰ νῦν τά τε προκείμενα ἄθλα διδάξαι
and that also the(-prizes) now the both proposed prizes to-teach
ὑμᾶς ὅσα καὶ οἷά ἐστι, καὶ τὴν δόξαν ὁπόσην ἔχει
you how-many and what-sort are and the glory how-much it-has
μετὰ τοῦ κέρδους καὶ τιμὴν, καὶ ἅμα ἵνα γνῶτε
with the gain and honor and at-once so-that you-may-know
καλῶς ἐπὶ μεγίστοις ποιούμενον τὸν ἀγῶνα. Πρῶτον
well for greatest(-things) being-made the contest first
μὲν γὰρ πλοῦτός τέ ἐστι πολὺς καὶ παντοδαπὸς ἐν τῇδε
indeed for wealth both is much and of-every-kind in this
τῇ πόλει, ὁ μὲν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις, ὁ δὲ
the city the(-wealth) indeed in the palaces the(-wealth) and
ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις τῶν δυνατῶν, ὁ δὲ ἐν τοῖς τῶν
in the houses of-the powerful the(-wealth) and in the(-houses) of-the

ἰδιωτῶν, ὁ δὲ καλλίων καὶ μείζων ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς
private-men the(-wealth) and finer and greater in the sacred(-places)
ἀποκείμενος ἀναθημάτων καὶ κειμηλίων παντοίων ἐκ
stored-up of-offerings and of-treasures of-all-kinds of
χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου κατεσκευασμένων, λίθων τε τιμίων
gold and silver made of-stones both precious
καὶ μαργάρων πολυτελῶν, ἐπίπλων τε ἄπειρόν τι χρῆμα
and of-pearls costly of-furnishings both boundless some quantity
λαμπρῶν, ἄνευ δὴ τῆς ἄλλης κατ᾽ οἶκον κατασκευῆς
brilliant without indeed the other in house equipment
καὶ περιουσίας· ὧν ἁπάντων ὑμεῖς ἔσεσθε κύριοι· ἔπειτα
and abundance of-which all you will-be lords then
ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ πλεῖστοί τε καὶ τῶν εὖ γεγονότων, ὧν
men good very-many both and of-the well born of-whom
οἱ μὲν δουλεύσουσιν ὑμῖν, οἱ δὲ ἐς ἀπόδοσιν
the(-ones) indeed will-serve you the(-ones) and for ransom
ἔσονται, γυναῖκές τε πλεῖσται καὶ κάλλισται, νέαι καὶ
will-be women both very-many and most-beautiful young and
ἀγαθαὶ τὰς ὄψεις, καὶ παρθένοι πρὸς γάμον ὡραῖαι
good in-the looks and maidens for marriage ripe
εὐγενεῖς τε καὶ ἐξ εὐγενῶν, καὶ ἀρρένων ὀφθαλμοῖς ἔτι
noble both and from nobles and of-males to-eyes still
καὶ νῦν ἄβατοι ἔνιαι τούτων καὶ πρὸς γάμους ὁρῶσαι
even now untrodden some of-these and to marriages looking
ἐπιφανῶν καὶ μεγάλων ἀνδρῶν, ὧν αἱ μὲν ἔσονται
of-illustrious and great men of-whom the(-ones) indeed will-be
ὑμῖν ἐς γυναῖκας, αἱ δὲ πρὸς θεραπείαν ἀρκέσουσιν,
for-you as wives the(-ones) and for service will-suffice
αἱ δὲ πρὸς ἀπόδοσιν, καὶ κερδανεῖτε κατὰ πολλὰ ἔς
the(-ones) and for ransom and you-will-gain in many(-ways) for
τε ἀπόλαυσιν ὁμοῦ καὶ θεραπείαν καὶ πλοῦτον· καὶ παῖδες
both enjoyment together and service and wealth and children

ὁμοίως πλεῖστοι καὶ κάλλιστοι καὶ τῶν εὖ γεγονότων,
likewise very-many and most-beautiful and of-the well born
ἔτι δὲ νεῶν τε κάλλη καὶ δημοσίων οἰκοδομημάτων,
further and of-temples both beauties and of-public buildings
καὶ οἰκίαι λαμπραὶ καὶ παράδεισοι καὶ τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἔς
and houses brilliant and gardens and such many(-things) for
τε θέαν ὁμοῦ καὶ τέρψιν καὶ ἡδονὴν καὶ ἀπόλαυσιν ἱκανά.
both sight together and delight and pleasure and enjoyment sufficient
Καὶ τί δεῖ ταῦτα πάντα καταλέγοντα διατρίβειν;
and why must-one these(-things) all listing spend-time
πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ πολυάνθρωπον, βασίλειόν τε τῶν πάλαι
city great and populous royal-seat both of-the ancient
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ἐς ἄκρον εὐδαιμονίας καὶ τύχης καὶ δόξης
Romans and to height of-prosperity and fortune and glory
ἐλάσασαν, κεφαλήν τε γεγενημένην τῆς οἰκουμένης ἁπάσης
having-driven head both having-become of-the inhabited-world whole
δίδωμι νῦν ὑμῖν ἐς διαρπαγήν τε καὶ λείαν, πλοῦτον
I-give now to-you for plunder both and booty wealth
ἄφθονον, ἄνδρας, γυναῖκας, παῖδας, πάντα τὸν ἄλλον αὐτῆς
abundant men women children all the other its
κόσμον καὶ τὴν κατασκευήν· ὧν ἁπάντων ἐμφορηθήσεσθε
adornment and the equipment with-which all you-will-be-filled
ὥσπερ ἐν εὐωχίᾳ λαμπρᾷ, καὶ ἐνευδαιμονήσετε τούτοις ὑμεῖς
as at feast brilliant and you-will-prosper in-these you
τε, καὶ τοῖς ὑμετέροις παισὶ πλοῦτον πολὺν καταλείψετε,
both and to-the your children wealth much you-will-leave
καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ὅτι πόλιν τοιαύτην αἱρήσετε, ἧς τὸ
and the greatest that city such you-will-take of-which the
κλέος πᾶσαν ἐπῆλθε τὴν οἰκουμένην· καὶ δῆλον ὅτι ἐς
fame all has-gone-over the inhabited-world and clear that to
ὅσον ἔδραμεν ἡ ταύτης ἡγεμονία καὶ δόξα, ἐς τοσοῦτον
as-much ran the of-it hegemony and glory to so-much

καὶ τὸ ὑμῶν κλέος ἀφίξεται τῆς ἀνδρίας καὶ ἀρετῆς, πόλιν
also the your fame will-reach of-the courage and virtue city
τοιαύτην ἑλόντων ἐκ προσβολῆς. Καὶ σκοπεῖτε τίς εὐπραξία
such having-taken by assault and consider what good-fortune
λαμπροτέρα ἢ τίς ἡδονὴ μείζων ἢ τίς πλούτου περιουσία
more-brilliant or what pleasure greater or what of-wealth abundance
καλλίων ἢ ἡ μετὰ τιμῆς καὶ δόξης προσέσται ἡμῖν;
finer than the(-one) with honor and glory will-be-present to-us
Τὸ δὲ δὴ μεῖζον πάντων, ὅτι πόλιν ἐχθρῶς ἔχουσαν ἡμῖν
the and indeed greater of-all that city hostilely disposed to-us
ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ἀεὶ ἐπιφυομένην τοῖς ἡμετέροις κακοῖς
from beginning and always growing-upon the our evils
καὶ πάντα τρόπον ἐπιβουλεύουσαν τὴν ἡμετέραν ἀρχὴν
and in-every way plotting-against the our rule
καθαιρήσομεν, καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ αὐτοί τε βέβαια ἕξομεν
we-will-destroy and for-the future ourselves both securely will-have
τὰ παρόντα ἀγαθὰ, καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ βαθείᾳ καὶ ἀσφαλείᾳ
the present goods and in peace deep and safety
διάξομεν, ἀπαλλαγέντες ἐχθροῦ γειτονήματος, καὶ πρὸς τὰ
will-live having-been-freed from-hostile neighborhood and to the
λοιπὰ θύραν ἀνοίξομεν. Καὶ μήτοι νομίσητε ταῦτα μὲν
rest door will-open and do-not think these(-things) indeed
οὕτως ἔχειν, ἀπόμαχον δὲ εἶναι τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὸ ταύτης
so to-be unassailable but to-be the city and the of-it
τεῖχος δυσπρόσοδόν τε καὶ δύσβατον καὶ κίνδυνον οὐ μικρὸν
wall hard-to-approach both and hard-to-climb and danger not small
ἔχον τοῖς ἐπιοῦσιν, ὡς οὐ ῥᾳδίως ὂν ἁλωτόν· ἀλλ'
having for-the(-ones) attacking as not easily being capturable but
ἰδοὺ γὰρ, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, ἡ μὲν τάφρος πᾶσα ἐχώσθη, τὸ δὲ
behold for as you-see the indeed ditch all was-filled the and
κατὰ γῆν τεῖχος ἐν τρισὶ μέρεσιν οὕτω τοι κατήρριπται,
by land wall in three parts so surely has-been-hurled-down

ὡς μὴ μόνον ὁπλίταις τε καὶ εὐζώνοις ἀνδράσιν, ὥσπερ
as not only for-hoplites both and light-armed men like
ὑμεῖς, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἵπποις αὐτοῖς καὶ ἱππόταις ὡπλισμένοις
you but also for-horses themselves and riders armed
καλῶς ῥᾳδίως εἶναι διαβατόν. Οὕτως οὐ τεῖχος ἀπόμαχον
well easily to-be crossable so not wall unassailable
ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ πεδίον ἱππάσιμον δίδωμι διαβῆναι ξὺν ὅπλοις."
to-you but plain fit-for-riding I-give to-cross with arms
"Τὰ δὲ τῶν ἀντιτεταγμένων ἡμῖν τί χρὴ καὶ 49.1
the(-things) and of-the(-ones) drawn-up-against us what must-one also
λέγειν; ἄνδρες γάρ εἰσι πάνυ τε ὀλίγοι καὶ οἱ πλείους
to-say men for are very both few and the most
ἄοπλοι καὶ πολέμων ἄπειροι· ὡς γὰρ ἔχω πυνθάνεσθαι
unarmed and of-wars inexperienced as for I-am-able to-learn
τῶν αὐτομόλων, μόλις φασὶ δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἄνδρας εἶναι
from-the deserters scarcely they-say two or three men to-be
τοὺς ἐν τῷ πύργῳ προμαχομένους καὶ ἑτέρους τοσούτους
the(-ones) in the tower fighting-in-front and others as-many
ἐν τῷ μεταπυργίῳ, ὥστε ξυμβαίνειν ἕνα ἄνδρα προπολεμεῖν
in the curtain-wall so-as to-happen one man to-fight-in-front
τε καὶ προμάχεσθαι τριῶν ἢ τεττάρων ἐπάλξεων, καὶ
both and to-fight-before three or four battlements and
τοῦτον ἢ ἄοπλον πάντη ἢ κακῶς ὡπλισμένον. Πῶς
this-man either unarmed wholly or badly armed how
οὖν ἐς τοσοῦτον πλῆθος ἡμῶν ἀρκέσουσιν οὗτοι; καὶ
then against so-great multitude of-us will-suffice these and
μάλιστα ἡμῶν μὲν ἐκ διαδοχῆς ἀγωνιζομένων καὶ ἀεὶ
most of-us indeed by succession contending and always
νεαρῶν ἐπιόντων ἐς τὸ ἔργον, καὶ καιρὸν ἐχόντων καὶ
fresh(-men) coming-on to the work and time having both
ὕπνον αἱρεῖσθαι καὶ σῖτα καὶ ἀναπαύειν αὐτούς, αὐτῶν
sleep to-take and food and to-rest themselves they

δὲ ἀδιακόπως τε καὶ ἐπιτεταμένως μαχομένων ἀεὶ καὶ
but unceasingly both and intensely fighting always and
μηδένα καιρὸν ἐχόντων ἢ ὕπνου ἢ σιτίου ἢ ποτοῦ
no time having either of-sleep or of-food or of-drink
ἢ ἀναπαύλης ἢ ἄλλου του τῶν τοιούτων μεταλαχεῖν,
or of-rest or of-other any of-the such(-things) to-partake
ἡμῶν ἐπικειμένων τε τῷ πολέμῳ καὶ βιαζόντων. Οὐδὲ
us pressing-on both in-the war and forcing not-even
γὰρ ἀκροβολισμοῖς ἔτι χρησόμεθα καὶ ἐπεκδρομαῖς
for in-skirmishes any-longer we-will-use and sallies
καὶ προσβολαῖς καὶ πείραις μόναις, ὥσπερ πρόσθεν,
and attacks and trials alone as before
καθὰ νομίζουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀρξαμένων πολεμεῖν ὁ πόλεμος
as they-think but having-begun to-fight the war
ξυνεχὴς ἔσται καὶ ἀδιάκοπος νύκτωρ καὶ μεθ' ἡμέραν,
continuous will-be and unceasing by-night and by day
μηδεμίαν ἔχων ἀνακωχὴν ἢ ἐκεχειρίαν, ἕως ἂν πέρας
no having truce or armistice until — end
λάβῃ τὰ κατ' αὐτόν· ὥστε νομίζω τούτους τῷ τε
it-take the(-things) concerning it so-that I-think these by-the both
ξυνεχεῖ πολέμῳ καὶ τῷ πόνῳ καὶ τῷ λιμῷ καὶ τῇ
continuous war and by-the toil and by-the hunger and by-the
ἀγρυπνίᾳ καταπιεσθέντας ῥᾳδίως ἐνδώσειν ἡμῖν. Οἱ δὲ
sleeplessness crushed easily will-yield to-us the(-ones) and
ἐπὶ τοῦ κατερριμμένου τείχους τῶν Ἰταλῶν τεταγμένοι,
on the thrown-down wall of-the Italians posted
εἰ καί τῳ δοκοῦσιν ἀπόμαχοι εἶναι καὶ ἱκανοὶ τοὺς
if also to-anyone they-seem unassailable to-be and able the(-ones)
ἐπιόντας ἀμύνεσθαι, ὡς καλῶς τε ὡπλισμένοι καὶ πολέμων
attacking to-ward-off as well both armed and of-wars
ἔμπειροι, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν ἐν τοῖς φρουρίοις, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ
experienced and most of-the(-wars) in the fortresses yet to-me

καὶ τὰ τούτων ἄπιστα δοκεῖ πάντη καὶ σφαλερά.
also the(-things) of-these untrustworthy seem wholly and precarious
Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἐθελήσουσι νοῦν ἔχοντες ὑπὲρ
first indeed for not they-will-wish mind having for
ἀλλοτρίων ἀγαθῶν μάχεσθαι καὶ πονεῖν καὶ ἐς προῦπτον
others' goods to-fight and to-toil and into manifest
κίνδυνον ἐμβάλλειν αὑτοὺς, μηδὲν κερδαίνοντες αὐτοί·
danger to-throw themselves nothing gaining themselves
ἔπειτα ξύγκλυδές τέ εἰσι καὶ ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν ξυνεληλυθότες,
then a-rabble both are and others from-elsewhere having-come-together
ἐπὶ τὸ λαβεῖν βλέποντες μόνον καὶ ἀπελθεῖν σῶς, οὐκ ἐπὶ
to the to-take looking only and to-depart safe not to
τὸ μαχόμενοι ἀποθανεῖν· ὥστε νῦν μὲν ἀντέχονται πάντως
the fighting to-die so-that now indeed they-hold-out wholly
καὶ μένουσιν, ἐκ διαλειμμάτων ἀκροβολιζομένων καὶ
and remain at intervals skirmishing and
μαχομένων ἡμῶν, ὥσπερ ἐν παιδιᾷ, νομίζοντες τοιούτων
fighting us as in play thinking such
ἡμῶν πειρᾶσθαι καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ· ὅταν δὲ ἴδωσι τὸν
us to-make-trial-of also for-the rest when but they-see the
πόλεμον περιρρέοντα καὶ πανταχόθεν λαμπρῶς ἐπικείμενον
war flowing-round and from-all-sides brilliantly pressing
καὶ φοβοῦντα καὶ τὸν θάνατον πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπαγόμενον,
and terrifying and the death before eyes brought-on
τότε, εὖ οἶδα, μηδὲν μελλήσαντες ὅλως, ῥίψαντες τὰ
then well I-know nothing having-delayed wholly having-thrown-down the
ὅπλα καὶ νῶτα δόντες ἀποδράσουσιν ἀμεταστρεπτί, καὶ
arms and backs having-given they-will-run-away without-turning and
οὐδὲν ἔσται τὸ κωλῦσον αὐτοὺς ἔτι ἢ ἐπισχῆσον
nothing will-be the(-thing) going-to-hinder them any-longer or going-to-check
ὅλως. Εἰ δὲ καὶ παραμένουσι καὶ ὁπωσοῦν (ἔστω γάρ),
at-all if and also they-stay-on and however let-it-be for

ἀλλ᾽ ἡμεῖς αὐτοὺς ῥᾳδίως τρεψόμεθα ῥώμῃ τε καὶ
yet we them easily we-will-rout with-strength both and
ἐμπειρίᾳ καὶ τόλμῃ, ὥστε οὐδὲ τούτων ἡγοῦμαι πάνυ
experience and daring so-that not-even these I-think very
τι ἡμῖν εἶναι πρὸς λόγου ἢ φροντίδος ἄξιον ὅλως.”
at-all to-us to-be of account or of-thought worthy at-all
50.1 “Δείκνυται τοίνυν ἐξ ἁπάντων μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν νίκην
it-is-shown therefore from all with us to-be the victory
καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἡμῖν ἁλωτήν. Πᾶσα γὰρ, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, καθάπερ
and the city for-us capturable all for as you-see as
ἐν σαγήνῃ τινὶ κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν ἀποκέκλεισται,
in net some by both land and sea has-been-shut-off
καὶ οὐχ ἔνεστιν αὐτῇ τοῦ λοιποῦ τὰ ἡμέτερα ὅπλα καὶ
and not it-is-possible for-it for-the rest the our arms and
τὰς χεῖρας διαφυγεῖν. Γίνεσθε οὖν ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ αὐτοί
the hands to-escape be then men good yourselves
τε ὑμεῖς, καὶ τοὺς μεθ᾽ ὑμῶν πάντας παρακελεύεσθε
both you and the(-ones) with you all urge
ἀκολουθεῖν τε γενναίως ὑμῖν καὶ πάσῃ προθυμίᾳ καὶ σπουδῇ
to-follow both nobly you and all eagerness and zeal
ἐς τὸ ἔργον κεχρῆσθαι, νομίζοντας τοῦ καλῶς πολεμεῖν
for the work to-use considering of-the well to-make-war
τρία εἶναι αἴτια, τό τε ἐθέλειν καὶ τὸ αἰσχύνεσθαι καὶ τὸ
three to-be causes the both to-be-willing and the to-feel-shame and the
τοῖς ἄρχουσι πείθεσθαι· τοῦτο δ᾽ ἐστὶ τὴν ἰδίαν ἕκαστον
the rulers to-obey this and is the own each
τάξιν καλῶς τηρεῖν καὶ μετὰ σιγῆς καὶ κόσμου ἐς τὸ
rank well to-keep and with silence and order to the
ἔργον ἰέναι, ὥστε καὶ τῶν παραγγελλομένων ὀξέως τε
work to-go so-as also the(-things) being-commanded keenly both
ἀκούειν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐς τοὺς ἄλλους ταῦτα διαπορθμεύειν
to-hear himself and to the others these(-things) to-pass-on

ὁμοίως, καὶ ὅτε σιγῶντας ἐπιέναι δέοι, σιγᾶν, καὶ
likewise and when in-silence to-advance it-should-be-needed to-be-silent and
ὁπότε δὲ ἐμβοῆσαι καλὸν καὶ ἐπαλαλάξαι μετὰ κραυγῆς
whenever too to-shout fine and to-raise-the-war-cry with shouting
φοβερωτάτης, τοῦτο ποιεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ κἀν τοῖς
most-fearsome this to-do and for as the most also-in the
ἄλλοις τῶν πολέμων τοῦτο ξυμφέρει, οὐχ ἥκιστα δὲ ἐς
other(-parts) of-the wars this is-profitable not least and for
τειχομαχίαν· τά τε ἄλλα παραγγέλλετε πᾶσι καλῶς καὶ
wall-fighting the both other(-things) command to-all well and
ἐν κόσμῳ καὶ τάξει πάντα ποιεῖν. Ἀγωνίσασθε οὖν καλῶς
in order and rank all(-things) to-do contend then well
καὶ ἀξίως ὑμῶν τε αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν προειργασμένων
and worthily of-you both yourselves and of-the(-deeds) done-before
ὑμῖν, καὶ μήτε ὑμεῖς μαλακισθῆτε, ὁρῶντες περὶ ὅσων
by-you and neither you be-soft seeing for how-great(-things)
ὑμῖν ἐστιν ὁ ἀγών, μήτε τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐνδῶτε τοῖς μεθ'
for-you is the contest nor to-the others give-way to-the(-ones) with
ὑμῶν. Κἀγὼ δὲ αὐτὸς πρῶτος παρέσομαι τῷ ἔργῳ, μεθ'
you I-too and myself first will-be-present at-the work with
ὑμῶν τε ἀγωνιζόμενος καὶ τῶν ἑκάστῳ δρωμένων
you both contending and of-the(-things) by-each being-done
θεατής. Καὶ νῦν μὲν ἄπιτε παρὰ τὴν ἰδίαν τάξιν ἕκαστος
spectator and now indeed go-away to the own rank each
καὶ σκηνὴν, καὶ δειπνοποιεῖσθε καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε καὶ
and tent and take-supper and rest and
παραγγέλλετε ταῦτα καὶ τοῖς ὑφ' ὑμῖν· ἕωθεν δὲ
command these(-things) also to-the(-ones) under you at-dawn and
ἀναστάντες ἐκτάττετε ἕκαστος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν καλῶς
having-risen draw-up each the of-himself rank well
τε καὶ ξὺν κόσμῳ, μηδενὸς αἰσθανομένου τῶν ἔξω ἢ
both and with order no-one perceiving of-the(-ones) outside or

κατακούοντος ὅλως· ταξάμενοι δὲ μένετε σιωπῇ· ἐπὰν
overhearing at-all having-been-drawn-up and remain in-silence when
δὲ ἀκούσητε τῶν πολεμικῶν ᾀδόντων καὶ τὸ ξύνθημα
and you-hear the war-trumpets sounding and the signal
ἴδητε, ἐνταῦθα τὸ ἔργον ὑμέτερον."
you-see then the work yours

51.1 "Καὶ σὺ μὲν, ὦ Χαμουζᾶ, περιπλέων ταῖς ναυσὶ τὸ κατὰ
and you indeed O Hamza sailing-around with-the ships the by
θάλασσαν τεῖχος, ταῖς μὲν τῶν νεῶν ἀνακωχεύων
sea wall with-the(-ones) indeed of-the ships holding-back
εἴσω βελῶν, κέλευε τούς τε τοξότας καὶ τοὺς τὰς
within missiles order the both archers and the(-ones) the
μηχανὰς ἔχοντας ἐν χεροῖν καὶ τοὺς τούφακας βάλλειν
engines having in hands and the muskets to-shoot
ἀπὸ τῶν καταστρωμάτων τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν ἐπάλξεων οὕτω
from the decks the(-ones) on the battlements so
τοι πυκνῶς, ὡς μηδαμοῦ τούτους προκύπτειν ἐᾶν ἐς τὰ
surely densely as nowhere them to-peer-out to-allow to the
ἔξω ἢ ὅλως ἔχειν κεχρῆσθαι ἑαυτοῖς τῷ πολέμῳ, τὰς
outside or at-all to-be-able to-use themselves in-the war the(-ships)
δὲ ἐποκέλλων εἴ ποι παρείκοι τοῦ τείχους, προσάγειν
and running-aground if somewhere it-should-allow of-the wall to-bring-up
τούτῳ τὰς κλίμακας τοὺς ἐπὶ τούτῳ τεταγμένους, ὥστε
to-it the ladders the(-ones) over this appointed so-as
ἐπιβαίνειν διὰ τούτων πειρᾶσθαι τοὺς ὁπλίτας τοῦ τείχους.
to-climb through these to-try the hoplites the wall
Καὶ οὕτω ἀγωνίζου καλῶς καὶ πειρῶ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι.
and so contend well and try man good to-be
Αὐτὸς δὲ, ὦ Ζάγανε, σὺ διαβὰς τὴν γέφυραν ταχέως
yourself and O Zaganos you having-crossed the bridge quickly
πρόσβαλε τῷ τοῦ Κέρατος τείχει μάλα εὐρώστως, ἔχων
attack the — of-Horn wall very stoutly having

μετὰ σεαυτοῦ καὶ τὰς ἐν τῷ λιμένι ναῦς ξυνεφαπτομένας
with yourself also the in the harbor ships taking-part-with
σοι τοῦ ἔργου, καὶ γίνου ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός. Καὶ σὺ δὲ ὁμοίως,
you in-the work and be man good and you too likewise
ὦ Καρατζία, ἔχων τοὺς μετὰ σεαυτοῦ καὶ διαβὰς
O Karaca having the(-ones) with yourself and having-crossed
τὴν τάφρον, πρόσμιγε τῷ κατά σε παρερρηγμένῳ τοῦ
the ditch engage the by you broken(-part) of-the
τείχους, καὶ βιασάμενος τοὺς προμαχομένους ῥωμαλέως
wall and having-forced the front-fighters mightily
πειρῶ ἐπιβαίνειν τούτου, ἀγωνιζόμενος γενναίως ὡς ἀνὴρ
try to-climb it contending nobly as man
ἀγαθός. Καὶ αὐτοὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς, Ἰσαάκ τε καὶ Μαχουμούτα,
good and yourselves too you Isaac both and Mahmud
ἔχοντες τὰς ἰδίας τάξεις διαβαίνετε τὴν τάφρον ἀσφαλῶς
having the own ranks cross the ditch safely
καὶ πειρᾶσθε διὰ τῶν κλιμάκων ἐπιβαίνειν τοῦ τείχους,
and try through the ladders to-climb the wall
οἱ δὲ τοξόται καὶ οἱ τὰς μηχανὰς ἔχοντες καὶ τοὺς
the and archers and the(-ones) the engines having and the
τούφακας, βαλλέτωσαν ἰσχυρῶς τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν ἐπάλξεων,
muskets let-them-shoot strongly the(-ones) on the battlements
ὡς ἂν ἧττον ἀπείργωσιν ὑμᾶς τῆς διαβάσεως. Καὶ
so-that — less they-may-bar you from-the crossing and
ὑμεῖς δὲ, ὦ Χαλίλη καὶ Σαρατζία, ἑκατέρωθεν ἐμοῦ τὰς
you too O Halil and Saruca on-either-side of-me the
τάξεις ἔχοντες καὶ μαχόμενοι, ὅταν ἐμὲ ἴδητε ἀγωνιζόμενον
ranks having and fighting when me you-see contending
καὶ πειρώμενον ἐπιβαίνειν κατὰ τὰ παρερρηγμένα τοῦ
and trying to-climb at the broken(-parts) of-the
τείχους, βιαζόμενόν τε τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς καὶ τοῖς μετ᾽
wall forcing both the Italians and for-the(-ones) with

ἐμοῦ πάροδον ἀνοίγοντα ἐς τὴν πόλιν, πειρᾶσθε τρόπῳ
me passage opening into the city try by-way
παντὶ ἑκατέρωθεν ἀπείργειν τοὺς κατὰ πρόσωπον ὑμῖν
every on-either-side to-bar the(-ones) in face you
ἀντιτεταγμένους, προσβάλλοντες ἰσχυρῶς, ὡς ἂν μὴ
drawn-up-against attacking strongly so-that — not
σχολὴν ἄγοντες ἀφ' ὑμῶν, ἧττον προσέχωσιν ἡμῖν καὶ
leisure having from you less they-may-attend to-us and
μηδαμοῦ προσβοηθῶσι τοῖς ὑφ' ἡμῶν βιαζομένοις. Καὶ
nowhere may-help the(-ones) by us being-forced and
τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τῶν λοιπῶν ἔμοιγε πάντων μελήσει.
the from this(-point) of-the rest to-me all will-be-a-care
Ἀλλ' ἄπιτε πρὸς τὰς σκηνὰς καὶ τὰς τάξεις ὑμῶν ἀγαθῇ
but go-away to the tents and the ranks your with-good
τύχῃ, καὶ δειπνοποιησάμενοι ἀναπαύεσθε."
fortune and having-supped rest

52.1 Τοσαῦτα εἰπὼν διέλυσε τὸν ξύλλογον, καὶ ἀπῆλθον
so-much having-said he-dissolved the assembly and departed
ἕκαστος ἐς τὰς ἑαυτῶν τάξεις τε καὶ σκηνὰς, καὶ αὐτὸς
each to the of-themselves ranks both and tents and himself
δὲ δειπνοποιησάμενος ἀνεπαύετο. Ἕωθεν δὲ ἀναστὰς
too having-supped rested at-dawn and having-risen
καλεῖ πρῶτον τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς καὶ κελεύει τὰς μηχανὰς
he-calls first the engine-makers and orders the engines
ἑτοιμάσαντας τρέψαι κατὰ τὰ παρερρηγμένα τοῦ τείχους,
having-readied to-turn against the broken(-parts) of-the wall
ἵνα, ὅταν ᾖ καιρὸς, κατὰ τῶν ταύτῃ προμαχομένων
so-that when it-be time against the(-ones) there fighting-in-front
ἀφῶσιν αὐτάς. Ἔπειτα ξυγκαλέσας τὰς περὶ αὐτὸν
they-may-let-fly them then having-called-together the about him
ἴλας καὶ τάξεις, ὁπλίτας τέ φημι καὶ ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ
squadrons and ranks hoplites both I-mean and shield-bearers and

τοξότας καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν πᾶσαν αὐλὴν, ἐκτάττει καλῶς
archers and the royal whole court he-draws-up well
κατὰ ξυμμορίας τε καὶ ξυσσιτίας καὶ ξυνωμοσίας καὶ
by companies both and messes and sworn-bands and
τάξεις, ἀνὰ χιλίους ἢ καὶ πλείους τὸν ἀριθμὸν, καὶ κελεύει
ranks by-the thousand or also more in-the number and orders
τούτους ἐκ διαδοχῆς ἀγωνίζεσθαι, ὅταν ἐς τοῦτο καταστῶσι,
these by succession to-contend when to this they-come
καὶ τοὺς μὲν πολεμεῖν τε καὶ μάχεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ ὕπνον
and the(-ones) indeed to-make-war both and to-fight the(-ones) and sleep
αἱρεῖσθαι καὶ σιτία καὶ ἀναπαύειν αὐτούς, ἵν' ὦσι
to-take and food and to-rest themselves so-that they-may-be
νεαροὶ πάλιν πρὸς τὸν ἀγῶνα, καὶ τούτους πάλιν ἑτέρους
fresh again for the contest and these again others
διαδέχεσθαι, καὶ οὕτω τάξεως τάξιν διαδεχομένης ἀεὶ
to-relieve and so rank rank relieving always
καὶ ἀναπαυούσης, ἀδιάκοπόν τε καὶ ξυνεχῆ γίνεσθαι τὸν
and resting unceasing both and continuous to-become the
πόλεμον, ὡς ἂν μηδεμία ἀνακωχή τις ἢ ἐκεχειρία ᾖ τῷ
war so-that — no truce any or armistice be in-the
πολέμῳ τοῖς ἀντιτεταγμένοις. Ἀποτάττει δὲ καὶ τόπον
war for-the(-ones) drawn-up-against be-assigns and also place
ἑκάστῳ καὶ καιρὸν καὶ τάξιν, καὶ παραγγέλλει πῶς δεῖ
to-each and time and rank and instructs how it-is-needed
καὶ ποῦ καὶ πότε ἀγωνίζεσθαι καλόν. Ἔπειτα παριππεύων
and where and when to-contend fine then riding-alongside
περιήει τὰς ἄλλας τάξεις ἁπάσας, ἀποσκοπῶν τε αὐτὰς
he-went-around the other ranks all surveying both them
καὶ παρακελευόμενος καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἑκάστῳ
and exhorting both in-common to-all and privately to-each
καὶ παραθαρρύνων καὶ παροτρύνων πρὸς τὸν ἀγῶνα, καὶ
and encouraging and urging-on to the contest and

μάλιστα δὴ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων, ἐξ ὀνόματος
most indeed the leaders of-the ranks by name
πάντας καλῶν. Περιελθὼν οὖν πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ
all calling having-gone-around then all the army and
τὸ τεῖχος ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς θάλασσαν καὶ παραγγείλας
the wall from sea to sea and having-instructed
ἃ δεῖ καὶ παρακαλέσας καὶ παροξύνας ἅπαντας ἐς τὸ
what is-needed and having-exhorted and having-urged-on all to the
πολεμεῖν καὶ παρακελευσάμενος ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς γενέσθαι,
to-make-war and having-urged men good to-become
κελεύει ἑστιαθέντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, ἕως ἂν ᾄσῃ τὸ πολεμικὸν
he-orders having-feasted to-rest until — sound the war-trumpet
καὶ τὸ ξύνθημα ἴδωσι. Δράσας δὲ ταῦτα ἀνεχώρησεν
and the signal they-see having-done and these(-things) he-withdrew
ἐς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν, καὶ ἑστιαθεὶς ἀνεπαύετο.
to the of-himself tent and having-feasted rested

53.1 Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ σιωπὴν τοσαύτην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ ἠρεμίαν
Romans and silence so-great in the army and quiet
ὁρῶντες παρὰ τὸ ξύνηθες ἐθαύμαζόν τε τὸ πρᾶγμα καὶ
seeing against the custom marveled-at both the affair and
ἐς διαφόρους λογισμοὺς καὶ ἐννοίας ἐνέπιπτον, οἱ μὲν
into various reckonings and thoughts fell the(-ones) indeed
νομίζοντες ἑτοιμασίαν εἶναι ἐς ἀναχώρησιν, οὐχ ὀρθῶς
thinking preparation to-be for withdrawal not rightly
δοκοῦντες, οἱ δὲ, ὅπερ καὶ ἦν, παρασκευὴν ἐς τὸν
thinking the(-ones) and which also was(-so) preparation for the
πόλεμον καὶ ἑτοιμασίαν, ὂν ὅσον οὐ προσεδόκων, καὶ
war and readiness being all but they-expected and
διεβοῶντο καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἡσυχῇ, καὶ πρὸς
called-out also themselves to one-another quietly and to

τὰς ἑαυτῶν τάξεις ἐχώρουν ἕκαστος, τά τε ἄλλα
the of-themselves ranks went each the both other(-things)
παρεσκευάζοντο.
prepared

Βασιλεὺς δὲ, ἐπεὶ ὥρα τε ἦν ἤδη κλινούσης ἡμέρας, ἐγγύς 54.1
emperor and when hour both was already declining of-day near
που περὶ δείλην, καὶ ὁ ἥλιος κατὰ νῶτόν τε αὐτῶν
somewhere about late-afternoon and the sun at back both their
ἐγένετο καὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις κατὰ πρόσωπον ὅπερ ἐβούλετο,
came and for-the opponents at face which he-wished
ἐνταῦθα δὴ κελεύει πρῶτον ᾄσαι τάς τε σάλπιγγας τὸ
then indeed he-orders first to-sound the both trumpets the
πολεμικὸν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὄργανα τούς τε αὐλοὺς καὶ τὰς
war-call and the other instruments the both pipes and the
σύριγγας καὶ τὰ κύμβαλα πάνυ ἰσχυρῶς ὡς οἷόν τε. Καὶ
flutes and the cymbals very strongly as possible — and
οὕτως αἵ τε σάλπιγγες πᾶσαι τῶν ἄλλων τάξεων καὶ τὰ
so the both trumpets all of-the other ranks and the
ὄργανα ἐκ διαδοχῆς ἤχησαν μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν ὁμοῦ πάντα,
instruments in succession sounded great and fearful together all
καὶ τὸ πᾶν ἐσείσθη καὶ διεδονήθη τῇ περιηχήσει τούτων.
and the whole was-shaken and shuddered with-the resounding of-these
Ἔπειτα ἤρθη τὰ σημεῖα· καὶ οἱ τοξόται πρῶτοι καὶ
then were-raised the standards and the archers first and
σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τὰς μηχανὰς καὶ τοὺς τούφακας
slingers and the(-ones) the engines and the muskets
ἔχοντες (οὕτω γὰρ ἐτέτακτο αὐτοῖς) κατέβαινον ἐπὶ
having so for it-had-been-ordered to-them went-down to
τὸ τεῖχος σχολῇ καὶ βάδην· ὡς δ' ἔσω βέλους ἐγένοντο,
the wall slowly and at-a-walk when and within missile they-came
καταστάντες ἐμάχοντο. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν ἀκροβολισμοῖς
having-halted they-fought and first indeed skirmishes

ἰσχυροῖς ἐχρήσαντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἑκάτεροι, τοῖς τε ἀπὸ
strong they-used toward one-another each-side with-the both from
τῶν τοξοτῶν βέλεσι τοῖς τε ἀπὸ τῶν σφενδονητῶν λίθοις
the archers missiles with-the both from the slingers stones
καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν καὶ τουφάκων ἀφιεμένοις
and with-the from the engines and muskets let-fly
σιδηροῖς καὶ μολυβδίνοις βόλοις, ἔτι δὲ παλτοῖς καὶ
iron and lead balls further and with-darts and
δορατίοις, ὡς μᾶλλον ἐπλησίαζον, βάλλοντες ἀλλήλους
spears as more they-drew-near shooting one-another
καὶ βαλλόμενοι ἀνοικτὶ ξὺν ὀργῇ καὶ θυμῷ πολλῷ· καὶ
and being-shot openly with anger and spirit much and
κραυγὴ ἦν παρ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων ἰσχυρὰ καὶ βλασφημία καὶ
shouting was from both strong and blasphemy and
ὕβρις· καὶ πολλοὶ μὲν ἐτιτρώσκοντο, ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους,
insult and many indeed were-wounded from each side
οὐκ ὀλίγοι δὲ καὶ ἀπέθνησκον. Καὶ τοῦτο ἐγίνετο μέχρις
not few and also died and this went-on until
ἡλίου δυσμῶν δύο ἢ τριῶν που ὡρῶν διάστημα.
of-sun setting two or three about hours' interval

55.1 Ἔπειτα μέγα βοήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς καλεῖ τούς τε
then loudly having-shouted the emperor calls the both
ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ ὁπλίτας καὶ τὸ ἄλλο ἄγημα, εἰπών·
shield-bearers and hoplites and the other guard having-said
"Ἴτε, φίλοι καὶ παῖδες ἐμοί· καιρός ἐστιν ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς
go friends and children to-me time it-is men good
ὑμᾶς φανῆναι." Οἱ δ᾽ εὐθὺς ξὺν βοῇ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ
you to-appear they and at-once with shout and war-cry
φρικαλέῳ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον προσέμιξαν τῷ ἔξω τείχει·
dreadful having-crossed the ditch engaged the outer wall
τὸ δὲ ὅλον κατέρριπτο ταῖς μηχαναῖς· σταυρώματα
the and whole had-been-hurled-down by-the engines stockades

δὲ μόνον ἦσαν ἀντὶ τείχους αὐτοῦ μεγάλων δοκῶν
and only were instead-of wall itself of-great beams
καὶ φάκελοι κλημάτων καὶ ἄλλης ὕλης καὶ ἀμφορεῖς
and bundles of-vine-branches and other material and jars
μεστοὶ γῆς. Ἐνταῦθα ξυνίσταται μάχη καρτερὰ ἐκ χειρῶν
full of-earth there arises battle fierce at hands
ἀγχεμάχοις ὅπλοις, τῶν μὲν ὁπλιτῶν καὶ ὑπασπιστῶν
with-close-fighting arms the indeed hoplites and shield-bearers
ἀγωνιζομένων βιάσασθαί τε τοὺς προμαχομένους καὶ
contending to-force both the front-fighters and
ἐπιβῆναι τοῦ σταυρώματος, τῶν δὲ Ῥωμαίων καὶ Ἰταλῶν
to-mount the stockade the and Romans and Italians
ἀπώσασθαί τε τούτους καὶ φυλάξαι τὸ σταύρωμα. Καί
to-thrust-back both them and to-guard the stockade and
ποτε μὲν ἐπέβαινον τοῦ τείχους καὶ τοῦ σταυρώματος
sometimes indeed mounted the wall and the stockade
οἱ ὁπλῖται θρασέως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ λογισμῷ βιαζόμενοι·
the hoplites boldly both and with no reckoning forcing
ποτὲ δὲ ἀπεκρούοντο ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἐλαύνοντο· καὶ ὁ
sometimes and were-repelled strongly and were-driven and the
βασιλεὺς εἵπετο αὐτοῖς ἀγωνιζόμενός τε γενναίως καὶ
emperor followed them contending both nobly and
παροξύνων αὐτούς. Ἐνταῦθα κελεύει καὶ τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς
urging-on them then he-orders also the engine-makers
πῦρ ἐπιβαλεῖν ταῖς μηχαναῖς· αἱ δὲ ἀναφθεῖσαι ἀφῆκαν
fire to-apply to-the engines they and kindled let-fly
τοὺς λίθους κατὰ τῶν προμαχομένων καὶ φόνον οὐχ
the stones against the front-fighters and slaughter not
ὀλίγον ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους τῶν προστυχόντων
small from each side of-the(-ones) happening-by
εἰργάσαντο. Οὕτως οὖν εὐρώστως τε καὶ γενναίως
worked so then stoutly both and nobly

ἀγωνιζομένων ἀμφοτέρων καὶ μαχομένων, τὸ πλέον τῆς
contending both-sides and fighting the most of-the
νυκτὸς παρελήλυθε· καὶ ἐκράτουν καὶ ἴσχυον οὐ μικρῶς οἱ
night has-passed and prevailed and were-strong not slightly the
Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ Ἰουστῖνος μετὰ τῶν ξὺν αὐτῷ, κατέχοντές
Romans and Giustiniani with the(-ones) with him holding
τε ἀσφαλῶς τὸ σταύρωμα καὶ φυλάσσοντες, καὶ ἀμυνόμενοι
both securely the stockade and guarding and warding-off
τοὺς ἐπιόντας γενναίως. Καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν οὕτως.
the(-ones) attacking nobly and there indeed thus
56.1 Οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ σατράπαι μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων
the and other generals and satraps with the own
τάξεων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ὁ τῶν νεῶν ἡγεμὼν, προσβάλλοντες
ranks but indeed also the of-the ships leader attacking
καὶ αὐτοὶ τῷ τείχει κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν ταῖς
also themselves the wall by land both and sea with-the
ναυσὶ ἐμάχοντο ἰσχυρῶς, οἱ μὲν τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν
ships fought strongly the(-ones) indeed with-the from the
τοξοτῶν βέλεσι καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένοις,
archers missiles and with-the(-ones) from the engines let-fly
οἱ δὲ κλίμακας προσάγοντες τῷ τείχει καὶ γεφύρας
the(-ones) and ladders bringing-up to-the wall and bridges
καὶ πύργους ξυλίνους καὶ μηχανὰς παντοίας. Καί τινες
and towers wooden and engines of-every-kind and some
αὐτῶν που ξὺν βίᾳ καὶ ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειρῶντο τοῦ
of-them somewhere with force also to-climb tried the
τείχους, καὶ μάλιστα δὴ ᾗ ὁ Ζάγανος ἐπετέτακτο
wall and most indeed where — Zaganos had-been-posted
καὶ ὁ Καρατζίας. Ὁ μὲν γὰρ, ὁ Ζάγανος, διαβὰς τὴν
and — Karaca he indeed for — Zaganos having-crossed the
γέφυραν ἀσφαλῶς καὶ κλίμακας ἐπαγαγὼν τῷ τείχει καὶ
bridge safely and ladders having-brought-up to-the wall and

γεφύρας ἀναβιβάζειν ἐπειρᾶτο τοὺς ὁπλίτας ξὺν βίᾳ, ἔχων
bridges to-send-up tried the hoplites with force having
καὶ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντὸς τοῦ λιμένος νεῶν τοξότας τε καὶ
also the from the inside the harbor ships archers both and
τουφακοφόρους βάλλοντας ἀπὸ τῶν καταστρωμάτων ἐξ
musketeers shooting from the decks from
ὑπερδεξίων τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν ἐπάλξεων ἰσχυρῶς, περιπλεουσῶν
above the(-ones) on the battlements strongly sailing-around
τῶν νεῶν. Καρατζίας δὲ διαβὰς τὴν τάφρον καὶ γενναίως
the ships Karaca and having-crossed the ditch and nobly
ἀγωνιζόμενος, ἔσω τοῦ παρερρηγμένου τείχους ἐβιάζετο
contending inside the broken wall forced
παρελθεῖν. Οἱ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ τούτους ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεκρούοντο
to-pass the and Romans also these strongly repelled
καὶ ἀπεωθοῦντο λαμπρῶς, ἀμυνόμενοί τε γενναίως καὶ
and thrust-back brilliantly warding-off both nobly and
τῷ πολέμῳ καθυπερτεροῦντες καὶ ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γινόμενοι·
in-the war prevailing and men good becoming
οὐδὲν γὰρ ὅλως αὐτοὺς ἠδυνήθη παρατρέψαι τῶν
nothing for at-all them was-able to-turn-aside of-the(-things)
γινομένων, οὐ λιμὸς ἐπικείμενος, οὐκ ἀγρυπνία, οὐ πόλεμος
happening not hunger pressing not sleeplessness not war
ξυνεχής τε καὶ ἀδιάκοπος, οὐ τραύματα καὶ σφαγαὶ
continuous both and unceasing not wounds and slaughters
καὶ θάνατοι τῶν οἰκείων πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν ὁρώμενοι, οὐκ
and deaths of-the own(-people) before eyes seen not
ἄλλο τῶν φοβερῶν οὐδὲ ἕν, ὥστε ἐνδοῦναί τι καὶ
other of-the fearful(-things) not-even one so-as to-yield anything and
καθυφεῖναι τῆς πρόσθεν ὁρμῆς τε καὶ γνώμης, ἀλλ’
to-slacken of-the former impulse both and resolve but

ἐτήρησαν γενναίως τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἔνστασιν διὰ πάντων,
they-kept nobly the from beginning stand through all
ἕως ἡ πονηρὰ καὶ ἀγνώμων τύχη προΐδωκε τούτους.
until the wicked and unfeeling fortune betrayed them

57.1 Μεχέμετις γὰρ ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπειδὴ τὰς προβεβλημένας οἱ
Mehmed for the emperor since the posted-in-front his
τάξεις ἑώρα σφόδρα τῷ πολέμῳ πεπονηκυίας, καὶ μηδὲν
ranks he-saw exceedingly by-the war worn-out and nothing
περαινούσας ὅ τι καὶ λόγου ἄξιον, καὶ τοὺς Ῥωμαίους
accomplishing what thing also of-account worth and the Romans
καὶ Ἰταλοὺς εὐρώστως τε ἀγωνιζομένους καὶ τῷ πολέμῳ
and Italians stoutly both contending and in-the war
πλεονεκτοῦντας, ἐνταῦθα δὴ σφόδρα ἀγανακτήσας καὶ
gaining-the-advantage then indeed exceedingly having-been-vexed and
οὐκέτι ἀνασχετὰ ἡγησάμενος εἶναι, αὐτίκα πάσας ἐπάγει
no-longer tolerable having-thought to-be at-once all brings-up
τὰς τάξεις, ἃς ἐς ὕστερον ἐταμιεύετο, ἄνδρας εὐοπλοτάτους
the ranks which for later he-was-reserving men best-armed
τε καὶ εὐτολμοτάτους καὶ εὐθαρσεστάτους ἅμα καὶ
both and boldest and most-courageous at-once and
τῶν ἄλλων ἐμπειρίᾳ καὶ ῥώμῃ πολλῷ προέχοντας· οἱ
than-the others in-experience and strength by-much excelling these
δὲ ἦσαν τὸ καθαρώτατον τοῦ στρατοῦ, ὁπλῖται καὶ
and were the purest of-the army hoplites and
τοξόται καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ καὶ ἡ περὶ αὐτὸν τάξις τῶν
archers and javelin-men and the about him rank of-the
τε ἄλλων καὶ τῶν καλουμένων δὴ γενητζάρων· οἷς
both others and of-the called indeed janissaries to-whom
μέγα βοήσας καὶ παρακελευσάμενος ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς
loudly having-shouted and having-urged men good
νῦν ἤδη φανῆναι, ἡγεῖτο τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος πρῶτος
now already to-appear he-led the(-way) to the wall first

αὐτὸς μέχρι τῆς τάφρου. Κἀνταῦθα δὴ τοὺς μὲν
himself as-far-as the ditch and-there indeed the indeed
τοξότας τε καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοὺς τούφακας ἔχοντας
archers both and slingers and the(-ones) muskets having
πόρρωθεν ἱσταμένους ἐκέλευσε βάλλειν ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων
from-afar standing he-ordered to-shoot from above
τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ σταυρώματος καὶ τοῦ παρερρηγμένου
the(-ones) on the stockade and the broken
τείχους προμαχομένους οὕτω πυκνῶς ὥστε μηκέτι ἑαυτοῖς
wall fighting-in-front so densely as no-longer themselves
τῷ πολέμῳ ἔχειν κεχρῆσθαι, μηδὲ ἐς τὰ ἔξω προκύπτειν
in-the war to-be-able to-use nor to the outside to-peer-out
δύνασθαι τῷ πλήθει τῶν ἀφιεμένων βελῶν καὶ τῶν
to-be-able by-the multitude of-the let-fly missiles and the
ἄλλων, νιφάδων δίκην, πιπτόντων· τοῖς δὲ ἄλλοις ὁπλίταις
others of-snowflakes like falling to-the and other hoplites
τε καὶ ὑπασπισταῖς ἐσήμηνε διαβάντας τὴν τάφρον
both and shield-bearers he-signaled having-crossed the ditch
σπουδῇ προσμῖξαι τῷ σταυρώματι. Οἱ δὲ ἀλαλάξαντες
with-zeal to-engage the stockade they and having-raised-the-war-cry
μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν ξὺν ὀργῇ καὶ θυμῷ, μαινομένων
great and fearful with anger and spirit of-raging(-men)
δίκην, ἐπίασιν· ἅτε γὰρ νεαροὶ ὄντες καὶ ῥωμαλέοι καὶ
like they-attack as for fresh being and mighty and
θράσους μεστοὶ καὶ ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ βασιλέως μαχόμενοι
of-boldness full and before the emperor fighting
οὐδὲν ἠφίεσαν ὁρμῆς, ἀλλὰ προσμίξαντες τῷ σταυρώματι
nothing they-slackened of-impulse but having-engaged the stockade
θρασέως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ λογισμῷ καὶ κόσμῳ ἐμάχοντο,
boldly both and with no reckoning and order they-fought
κατασπῶντές τε τοὺς προβεβλημένους ἀμφορέας, τάς
dragging-down both the placed-in-front jars the

τε κεραίας ξυγχλῶντες καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ξυμπεφορημένην
both yards breaking and the other heaped-together
ὕλην σκεδαννύντες καὶ βιαζόμενοι τρέψασθαί τε τοὺς
material scattering and forcing to-rout both the
προμαχομένους καὶ εἴσω τοῦ σταυρώματος παρελθεῖν.
front-fighters and inside the stockade to-pass
58.1 Ἰουστῖνος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ξὺν αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ ταύτῃ ὄντες
Giustiniani and with the(-ones) with him and the(-ones) there being
Ῥωμαῖοι εὐρώστως ἀγωνιζόμενοι ξυστοῖς καὶ παλτοῖς καὶ
Romans stoutly contending with-pikes and darts and
ἀκοντίοις καὶ δόρασι μακροῖς καὶ τοιούτοις τισὶ ἀγχεμάχοις
javelins and spears long and such some close-fighting
ὅπλοις (ἐν χεροῖν γὰρ ἦν ἡ μάχη), κατεῖχόν τε
arms in hands for was the battle held-back both
αὐτοὺς τῆς ὁρμῆς, καὶ ἀνεῖργον εἴσω τοῦ σταυρώματος
them from-the impulse and barred inside the stockade
παρελθεῖν. Ἦν οὖν παρ' ἀμφοτέρων κραυγὴ πολλὴ καὶ
to-pass there-was then from both shouting much and
βία ξυμμιγὴς βλασφημούντων, ὑβριζόντων, ἀπειλούντων,
force mingled blaspheming insulting threatening
ὠθούντων, ὠθουμένων, βαλλόντων, βαλλομένων, κτεινόντων,
pushing being-pushed shooting being-shot killing
κτεινομένων, παντὰ δεινὰ ποιούντων μετὰ θυμοῦ
being-killed all terrible(-things) doing with spirit
καὶ ὀργῆς· καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν ἐνταῦθα μάχην κρατερὰν
and anger and it-was-possible to-see there battle fierce
ξυνισταμένην τε καὶ ξυσταδὸν γινομένην μετὰ φρονήματος
arising both and hand-to-hand becoming with spirit
μεγίστου καὶ ὑπὲρ μεγίστων ἄθλων μαχομένων γενναίως
greatest and for greatest prizes fighting nobly
ἀνδρῶν, τῶν μὲν φιλονεικούντων πάσῃ δυνάμει βιάσασθαί
men the(-ones) indeed contending with-all power to-force

τε τοὺς ἀνθισταμένους καὶ κατασχεῖν τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἔσω
both the(-ones) resisting and to-seize the wall and inside
τῆς πόλεως παρελθεῖν ἐπὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ
the city to-pass against children and wives and the
τιμιώτατα, τῶν δὲ ἀγωνιζομένων καλῶς ἀπώσασθαί
most-precious(-things) the(-ones) and contending well to-thrust-back
τε τούτους καὶ φυλάξαι τὰ ὄντα ἀγαθὰ, εἰ καὶ μὴ διὰ
both them and to-guard the existing goods if even not to
τέλους ἴσχυσαν ὑπερσχεῖν καὶ ταῦτα φυλάξαι. Ἀλλ'
the-end they-had-strength to-prevail and these(-things) to-guard but
ἔδει ποτὲ καὶ τοὺς ταλαιπώρους Ῥωμαίους τῷ τῆς
it-was-needed once also the wretched Romans to-the of-the
δουλείας ὑπαχθῆναι ζυγῷ καὶ τῶν ταύτης πειραθῆναι
slavery to-be-brought-under yoke and of-the of-it to-experience
δυσκόλων· ἤδη γὰρ μαχομένων γενναίως καὶ προθυμίας
hardships already for fighting nobly and of-eagerness
καὶ τόλμης οὐδὲν ἐλλειπόντων ἐς τὸν ἀγῶνα, βάλλεται
and of-daring nothing falling-short for the contest is-hit
μὲν Ἰουστῖνος καιρίαν βέλει τῶν ἀπὸ μηχανῆς κατὰ
indeed Giustiniani mortally by-missile of-the(-ones) from engine in
τοῦ στέρνου διὰ τοῦ θώρακος διαμπὰξ, καὶ βληθεὶς
the chest through the breastplate right-through and having-been-hit
πίπτει αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀποκομίζεται ἐς τὴν ἰδίαν σκηνὴν κακῶς
falls there and is-carried-off to the own tent badly
ἔχων. Ἐκλύονται δὲ οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ πάντες ἀπειρηκότες
faring are-undone and the(-ones) with him all having-given-up
τῷ πάθει, καὶ καταλείψαντες τό τε σταύρωμα καὶ τὸ
at-the misfortune and having-abandoned the both stockade and the
τεῖχος ἵνα ἐμάχοντο, πρὸς ἓν μόνον ἑώρων, ἀποκομίσαι
wall where they-fought to one only they-looked to-carry-off
τε τοῦτον ἐν ταῖς ὁλκάσι καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀποκομισθῆναι σῶς,
both him in the merchantmen and themselves to-be-carried-off safe

καίτοι τοῦ βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου πολλὰ παρακαλοῦντος
although the emperor Constantine much begging
αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑπεσχημένου μικρὸν παραμεῖναι, ἕως ἂν ὁ
them and having-promised a-little to-stay-on until — the
πόλεμος λωφήσῃ· οἱ δ' οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἀναλαβόντες
war should-abate they but not accepted but having-taken-up
τὸν ἡγεμόνα σφῶν, ὡπλισμένοι ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τὰς ὁλκάδας
the leader of-them armed went to the merchantmen
σπουδῇ καὶ δρόμῳ, μηδενὸς ἐπιστρεφόμενοι τῶν ἄλλων.
with-haste and running no-one turning-toward the others

59.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Κωνσταντῖνος ἀπαγορεύσας τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ
emperor and Constantine having-given-up on-the arms and
μηδ' ὅλως ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειεν (οὐδὲ γὰρ εἶχεν
not-even at-all having what thing also he-might-do not-even for he-had
ἄνδρας ἑτέρους ἀναπληρῶσαι τοὺς ἀπολειφθέντας τόπους
men others to-fill-up the left-empty places
καὶ τὰς τάξεις τῶν ἀπελθόντων εὐθὺς, ἐπικειμένου τε
and the ranks of-the(-ones) departed at-once pressing both
τοῦ πολέμου σφοδρῶς καὶ πάντων ἐς τὰς ἰδίας τάξεις τε
the war violently and all to the own ranks both
καὶ τοὺς τόπους δρώντων τε καὶ ἀγωνιζομένων), ὅμως
and the places acting both and contending nevertheless
γε μὴν μετὰ τῶν ἀπολειφθέντων Ῥωμαίων αὐτοῦ καὶ
at-least indeed with the remaining Romans there and
τῶν μετ' αὐτοῦ, εὐαριθμήτων πάνυ, στὰς πρὸ τοῦ
the(-ones) with him easy-to-count very having-stood before the
σταυρώματος ἀπεμάχετο γενναίως.
stockade fought-back nobly

60.1 Μεχέμετις δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς κατανοήσας τό τε σταύρωμα
Mehmed and the emperor having-observed the both stockade
καὶ τὸ ἄλλο κατερριμμένον τοῦ τείχους κενὸν ἀνδρῶν καὶ
and the other thrown-down(-part) of-the wall empty of-men and

τῶν προμαχομένων ἔρημον (ἐγγὺς γάρ που ἐτύγχανεν
of-the front-fighters deserted near for somewhere he-happened
ὢν ἀγωνιζόμενος), τούς τε ἄνδρας ὑπεξιόντας λαθραίως,
being contending the both men slipping-away secretly
τούς τε μένοντας ἀσθενῶς δι' ὀλιγότητα μαχομένους, καὶ
the both remaining weakly through fewness fighting and
γνοὺς ἐκ τούτων τόν τε δρασμὸν τῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ
having-recognized from these the both flight of-the men and
τὴν τοῦ τείχους ἀπόλειψιν, μέγα βοήσας εὐθύς· "Ἔχομεν,
the of-the wall abandonment loudly having-shouted at-once we-have
εἶπεν, ὦ φίλοι, τὴν πόλιν, ἔχομεν ἤδη· φεύγουσιν οἱ
he-said O friends the city we-have(-it) already flee the
ἄνδρες ἡμᾶς· οὐκέτι παραμένειν ἀνέχονται· γυμνὸν τῶν
men us no-longer to-stay-on they-endure bare of-the
προμαχομένων τὸ τεῖχος· ὀλίγου πόνου τὸ ἔργον καὶ ἡ
front-fighters the wall of-little toil the work and the
πόλις ἑάλω· μὴ μαλακισθῆτε οὖν, ἀλλὰ χωρεῖτε πρὸς
city is-taken not be-soft then but go to
τὸ ἔργον εὐψύχως, καὶ γίνεσθε ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ, κἀγὼ μεθ'
the work bravely and be men good and-I with
ὑμῶν." Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἡγεῖτο πρῶτος αὐτός. Οἱ δὲ
you these(-things) having-said led first himself they and
ἀλαλάξαντες δρόμῳ καὶ βοῇ φρικαλέῳ προλαβόντες
having-raised-the-war-cry with-running and shout dreadful having-outrun
τὸν βασιλέα χωροῦσιν ἐπὶ τὸ σταύρωμα, καὶ μάχης
the emperor go against the stockade and battle
ἰσχυρᾶς γενομένης ἐφ' ἱκανὸν, τρέπονται τοὺς ταύτῃ
strong having-arisen for sufficient(-time) they-rout the there
Ῥωμαίους καὶ βιαίως ἐπιβαίνουσι τοῦ σταυρώματος, καὶ
Romans and forcibly mount the stockade and
οὕτω τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ῥίπτουσι κατὰ τοῦ χάρακος τοῦ
so the(-ones) indeed of-them they-throw into the trench the(-one)

μεταξὺ τοῦ μεγάλου τείχους καὶ τοῦ σταυρώματος, βαθέος
between the great wall and the stockade deep
ὄντος καὶ δυσδιεξιτήτου, καὶ κατασφάττουσι πάντας αὐτοῦ,
being and hard-to-pass-through and slaughter all there
τοὺς δὲ ὠθοῦσι διὰ τῆς πυλίδος Ἰουστίνου, ἣν οὗτος
the(-ones) and they-push through the postern of-Giustiniani which this-man
ἀνέῳξεν ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ τείχει, ἵνα προχείρως ἔχῃ
opened in the great wall so-that readily he-might-be-able
διαβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ σταύρωμα. Καὶ γίνεται ὠθισμὸς ἐνταῦθα
to-cross to the stockade and comes-about pushing there
καὶ φόνος τῶν προστυχόντων πολὺς παρὰ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν,
and slaughter of-the(-ones) happening-by much from the hoplites
ἅτε ξυνδεδραμηκότων καὶ ἑτέρων οὐκ ὀλίγων ἀτάκτως πρὸς
as having-run-together also others not few in-disorder to
τὴν βοὴν πολλαχόθεν· οὗ δὴ καὶ βασιλεὺς Κωνσταντῖνος
the shout from-many-sides where indeed also emperor Constantine
πίπτει μαχόμενος μετὰ τῶν ξὺν αὐτῷ γενναίως.
falls fighting with the(-ones) with him nobly

61.1 Οἱ δὲ ὁπλῖται ἐσεχέοντο ἤδη διὰ τῆς πυλίδος ἐπὶ τὴν
the and hoplites poured-in already through the postern into the
πόλιν, οἱ δὲ καὶ διὰ τοῦ κατερριμμένου μεγάλου
city the(-ones) and also through the thrown-down great
τείχους ἐσέπιπτον· τὸ δὲ ἄλλο στράτευμα πᾶν ἑπόμενον
wall fell-in the and other army all following
ὠθισμῷ καὶ βίᾳ ἐσεχεῖτο λαμπρῶς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν
with-pushing and force poured-in brilliantly through all the city
σκεδαννύμενον. Βασιλεὺς δ' ἑστὼς πρὸ τοῦ μεγάλου τείχους,
scattering emperor and standing before the great wall
ἵνα καὶ ἡ μεγάλη σημαία ἦν καὶ τὸ ξύνθημα, ἀπεσκόπει
where also the great standard was and the signal watched
τὰ δρώμενα· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινεν. Ἔνθα δὴ
the(-things) being-done already for also day was-showing there indeed

φόνος πολὺς τῶν προστυγχανόντων ἐγίνετο, τῶν
slaughter much of-the(-ones) happening-by came-about of-the(-ones)
μὲν κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν (ἤδη γὰρ ἐξήεσάν τινες τῶν οἰκιῶν
indeed along the road already for came-out some from-the houses
θέοντες πρὸς τὴν βοὴν, καὶ τοῖς ξίφεσι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
running to the shout and on-the swords of-the soldiers
ἀπροόπτως ἐνέπιπτον), τῶν δὲ ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις αὐταῖς,
unforeseen fell of-the(-ones) and in the houses themselves
ἐπεσπιπτόντων βίᾳ τῶν γενητζάρων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
falling-in by-force the janissaries and the other
στρατιωτῶν ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ καὶ λογισμῷ, τῶν δὲ
soldiers with no order and reckoning of-the(-ones) and
καὶ ἐς ἀλκὴν τρεπομένων, τῶν δὲ καὶ πρὸς ἱεροῖς
also to resistance turning of-the(-ones) and also to sacred(-places)
καταπεφευγότων τε καὶ ἱκετευόντων, ἀνδρῶν, γυναικῶν,
having-fled both and supplicating men women
παίδων, πάντων ἁπλῶς, μηδεμιᾶς οὔσης φειδοῦς· ὀργῇ γὰρ
children all simply no being sparing in-anger for
καὶ θυμῷ πολλῷ ἐχώρουν ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς οἱ στρατιῶται, τοῦτο
and spirit much went against them the soldiers this
μὲν ἀχθόμενοι τῇ τριβῇ τῆς πολιορκίας, τοῦτο δ᾽ ὅτι καὶ
indeed vexed at-the length of-the siege this and that also
ἀπὸ τῶν ἐπάλξεων σκώμμασί τε καὶ ὕβρεσιν οὐκ ὀλίγοις
from the battlements with-mockeries both and insults not few
ἔβαλλον αὐτοὺς ἔνιοι τῶν ἀνοήτων παρ᾽ ὅλον τὸν πόλεμον,
pelted them some of-the foolish through whole the war
τὸ δ᾽ ὅλον ὅπως ἂν θροήσωσι τὸ πᾶν καὶ φοβήσωσι
the and whole so-that — they-might-terrify the all and frighten
καὶ δουλώσωνται ταῖς σφαγαῖς. Ὡς δὲ ἅλις εἶχον τοῦ
and enslave with-the slaughters when and enough they-had of-the
φόνου καὶ ἡ πόλις ἤδη δεδούλωτο, τρέπονται οἱ
slaughter and the city already had-been-enslaved turn the(-ones)

μὲν ἐν ταῖς τῶν δυνατῶν οἰκίαις κατὰ ξυμμορίας τε καὶ
indeed into the of-the powerful houses by companies both and
ξυνωμοσίας καὶ τάξεις ἐπὶ διαρπαγῇ καὶ σκυλμῷ, οἱ
sworn-bands and ranks for plunder and spoiling the(-ones)
δὲ πρὸς σύλησιν τῶν ἱερῶν, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς κοινάς
and to despoiling of-the sacred(-places) the(-ones) and to the public
τε καὶ τῶν ἰδιωτῶν οἰκίας ἐσκεδασμένοι, διαρπάζοντες,
both and of-the private-men houses scattered plundering
σκυλεύοντες, ληιζόμενοι, φονεύοντες, ὑβρίζοντες, ἀπάγοντες
stripping pillaging murdering outraging leading-away
αἰχμαλώτους ἄνδρας, γυναῖκας, παῖδας, πρεσβύτας, νέους,
captives men women children old-men young
ἱερεῖς, μοναχοὺς, πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν καὶ τάξιν ἁπλῶς. Καὶ
priests monks every age and rank simply and
ἦν ἰδεῖν θέαμα δεινὸν καὶ ἐλεεινὸν καὶ πέρα
it-was-possible to-see sight terrible and pitiable and beyond
τραγῳδίας ἁπάσης, γυναῖκας νέας καὶ σώφρονας, εὐγενεῖς
tragedy all women young and chaste noble
τε καὶ τῶν εὖ γεγονότων, τὰ πολλὰ οἰκουρούσας καὶ
both and of-the well born the most keeping-at-home and
οὐδὲ τὴν αὔλιον προελθούσας ποτὲ, καὶ παρθένους
not-even the courtyard having-gone-out ever and maidens
εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ ὡραίας λαμπράς τε καὶ λαμπρῶν οἰκιῶν
comely and ripe brilliant both and of-brilliant houses
καὶ μέχρι τότε ἀρρένων ὀφθαλμοῖς ὅλως ἀψαύστους, τὰς
and until then of-males to-eyes wholly untouched the(-ones)
μὲν βίᾳ τῶν θαλάμων ἐξελκομένας ἀπηνῶς τε ἅμα
indeed by-force from-the chambers dragged-out harshly both at-once
καὶ ἀναιδῶς ἁρπαζομένας, τὰς δὲ — κακὸν αὐταῖς ἔτι
and shamelessly being-seized the(-ones) and evil to-them still
κοιμωμέναις ἐφιστάμενοι ὄναρ ἄνδρες ξιφήρεις, ἡμαγμένοι
sleeping standing-over dream men sword-bearing bloodied

τὰς χεῖρας τῷ φόνῳ, θυμοῦ πνέοντες, φονικὸν βλέποντες,
in-the hands with-the slaughter fury breathing murder looking
ἄσημα φθεγγόμενοι, ἀπηρυθριασμένοι πρὸς πάντα τὰ
inarticulate(-things) uttering having-cast-off-shame for all the
χείριστα, ἅτε πλῆθος ξύμμικτον ὄντες, ἐκ παντὸς ἔθνους
worst(-things) as multitude mixed being from every nation
καὶ γένους καὶ τύχης ξυνειλεγμένοι, ὥσπερ θῆρες ἄγριοι καὶ
and race and fortune gathered-together as beasts wild and
ἀνήμεροι ἐσπηδῶντες ἐς τὰς οἰκίας καὶ σύροντες ὠμῶς,
untamed leaping into the houses and dragging cruelly
ἕλκοντες, σπαράσσοντες, βιαζόμενοι, ἀπάγοντες αἰσχρῶς,
hauling tearing forcing leading-away shamefully
ἐπὶ τῶν τριόδων ὑβρίζοντες καὶ τί δεινὸν οὐχὶ
at the crossroads outraging and what terrible(-thing) not
ποιοῦντες· φασί γέ τοι πολλὰς αὐτῶν καὶ πρὸς μόνην
doing they-say indeed surely many of-them also at only
ἀήθη τὴν θέαν τε καὶ ἀκοὴν τούτων καταπλαγείσας
unaccustomed the sight both and hearing of-these stricken
ἐγγὺς ἐλθεῖν ἀφεῖναι καὶ τὴν ψυχήν· ἔτι δὲ γέροντας
near to-come to-give-up also the soul further and old-men
ἐντίμους ἑλκομένους τῆς πολιᾶς, τοὺς δὲ καὶ τυπτομένους
honored dragged by-the gray-hair the(-ones) and also beaten
ἀνηλεῶς· παρθένους μοναζούσας σεμνάς τε καὶ ἀπροίτους
pitilessly maidens living-as-nuns august both and never-going-out
τὸ ὅλον καὶ τῷ θεῷ μόνῳ προσανεχούσας καὶ ζώσας,
the whole and — to-God alone devoted and living
ᾧ καθιέρωσαν ἑαυτὰς, τὰς μὲν τῶν δοματίων
for-whom they-consecrated themselves the(-ones) indeed from-the cells
βιαίως ἐξαγομένας καὶ συρομένας, τὰς δὲ τῶν ἱερῶν
forcibly led-out and dragged the(-ones) and from-the sacred(-places)
ἀποσπωμένας, ἐν οἷς κατέφευγον, καὶ ἀπαγομένας ξὺν
torn-away in which they-fled and led-away with

ὕβρει καὶ ἀτιμίᾳ, ξαινομένας τε τὰς παρειὰς ξὺν οἰμωγῇ
outrage and dishonor scratching both the cheeks with wailing
καὶ ὀλολυγῇ καὶ κοπτομένας πικρῶς· παῖδας ἁπαλοὺς
and lamentation and beating(-their-breasts) bitterly children tender
ὠμῶς ἀποσπωμένους μητέρων, κόρας ἐλεεινῶς χωριζομένας
cruelly torn-away from-mothers brides pitiably separated
τῶν νεογάμων ἀνδρῶν· ἄλλα μυρία εἰργασμένα δεινά.
from-the newly-married husbands other countless worked terrible(-things)

62.1 Τὴν δὲ τῶν ἱερῶν ὕβριν καὶ σύλησιν καὶ διαρπαγὴν πῶς
the and of-the sacred(-places) outrage and despoiling and plunder how
ἄν τις ἐξείποι τῷ λόγῳ; Κατεβάλλοντο μὲν ἀτίμως
— anyone might-tell-fully in-the word were-thrown-down indeed dishonorably
ἐς γῆν εἰκόνες καὶ ἀφιδρύματα καὶ τἆλλα τῶν ἱερῶν,
to ground icons and statues and the-rest of-the sacred(-things)
ἀπεσπᾶτο δὲ κόσμος ὁ τούτων, ἐδίδοτο δὲ τὰ μὲν
was-torn-off and adornment the of-these were-given and the(-ones) indeed
αὐτῶν τῷ πυρὶ, τὰ δὲ ἐς λεπτὰ τεμνόμενά τε καὶ
of-them to-the fire the(-ones) and into small(-pieces) being-cut both and
ξυντριβόμενα ἐπὶ τῶν τριόδων ἐρριπτεῖτο, ἠνοίγοντο δὲ
being-smashed in the crossroads were-thrown were-opened and
θῆκαι τῶν παλαιῶν καὶ μακαρίων ἀνδρῶν καὶ τὰ τούτων
tombs of-the ancient and blessed men and the of-these
ἐξήγετο λείψανα καὶ ἀτίμως λεπτυνόμενα καὶ λυόμενα ἐς
were-brought-out remains and dishonorably ground-small and dissolved into
ἀέρα ἐλικμᾶτο, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀμφόδων ἐρριπτεῖτο,
air were-winnowed the(-ones) and also in the streets were-thrown
κρατῆρές τε καὶ φιάλαι, καὶ ἃ τὴν παναγεστάτην
mixing-bowls both and cups and which(-vessels) the all-holiest
θυσίαν ἐδέχετο, αἱ μὲν ἐς προπόσεις καὶ μέθην
sacrifice received the(-ones) indeed for toasts and drunkenness
ἦσαν αὐτοῖς, οἱ δὲ ξυντριβόμενοί τε καὶ χωνευόμενοι
were for-them the(-ones) and smashed both and melted

ἀπεδίδοντο, ἱερὰ δὲ σκεύη καὶ πέπλα τίμια πολυτελῆ τε καὶ
were-sold sacred and vessels and robes precious costly both and
πολλῷ χρυσίῳ ἐνυφασμένα, τὰ δὲ καὶ λίθοις διαφανέσι
with-much gold interwoven the(-ones) and also with-stones translucent
καὶ μαργάροις καταστραπτόμενα, τὰ μὲν ἀπεδίδοντο
and pearls flashing the(-ones) indeed were-sold
πονηροτάτοις ἀνδράσιν εἰς ἀπόχρησιν οὐ καλὴν, τὰ δὲ
to-most-wicked men for use not fine the(-ones) and
πυρὶ παρεδίδοντο, χωνευόμενα διὰ τὸν χρυσόν· βίβλοι
to-fire were-handed-over melted because-of the gold books
τε ἱεραὶ καὶ θεῖαι, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῶν ἔξω μαθημάτων
both sacred and divine but indeed also of-the outer learnings
καὶ φιλοσόφων αἱ πλεῖσται, αἱ μὲν πυρὶ παρεδίδοντο,
and of-philosophers the most the(-ones) indeed to-fire were-handed-over
αἱ δὲ ἀτίμως κατεπατοῦντο, αἱ πλείους δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ
the(-ones) and dishonorably were-trampled the more and of-them not
πρὸς ἀπόδοσιν μᾶλλον ἢ ὕβριν δύο ἢ τριῶν νομισμάτων,
for selling rather than outrage for-two or three coins
ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ ὀβολῶν ἀπεδίδοντο· τράπεζαι δὲ ἱεραὶ
it-is and when also for-obols were-sold tables and sacred
ἐκ βάθρων αὐτῶν ἀνεσπῶντο καὶ ἀνετρέποντο, τοῖχοί τε
from bases their were-torn-up and were-overturned walls both
τῶν ἀβάτων καὶ ἀψαύστων τόπων ἀνηρευνῶντο καὶ τὰ
of-the untrodden and untouched places were-searched and the
τῶν τεμενῶν ἱερὰ ἕδη ἀνωρύττετό τε καὶ κατεσκάπτετο
of-the precincts sacred seats were-dug-up both and razed
ἐπὶ ζητήσει χρυσοῦ, ἄλλα τε πολλὰ τοιαῦτα ἐτολμᾶτο.
for search of-gold other both many such(-things) were-dared
Οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου τείχους τεταγμένοι τε καὶ 63.1
the(-ones) and on the other wall posted both and
μαχόμενοι κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν δυστυχεῖς Ῥωμαῖοι
fighting by land both and sea unfortunate Romans

νομίζοντες σῶν εἶναι τὴν πόλιν καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθῆ καὶ
thinking safe to-be the city and of-evils unharmed and
παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας ἐλευθέρους (οὐδὲ γὰρ ᾔδεσάν πω
children and wives free not-even for they-knew yet
τὰ γινόμενα), εὐρώστως τε ἠγωνίζοντο καὶ μετὰ
the(-things) happening stoutly both contended and with
ῥώμης ἠμύνοντο τοὺς ἐπιόντας καὶ ἀπεωθοῦντο, λαμπρῶς
strength warded-off the(-ones) attacking and thrust-back brilliantly
τοὺς ἐπιβαίνειν πειρωμένους τοῦ τείχους. Ὡς δὲ κατὰ
the(-ones) to-climb trying the wall when and at
νώτου τε εἶδον τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ βάλλοντας ἀπὸ τῶν
back both they-saw the enemies and shooting from the(-places)
ἔνδον καὶ τῆς πόλεως αὐτοὺς, καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας
inside and of-the city themselves and children and wives
ἠνδραποδισμένους ἑώρων καὶ ἀπαγομένους αἰσχρῶς, οἱ
enslaved they-saw and led-away shamefully the(-ones)
μὲν αὐτῶν ἀθυμίᾳ ληφθέντες ἐρρίπτουν σφᾶς αὐτοὺς
indeed of-them by-despondency seized threw them selves
μετὰ τῶν ὅπλων ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους καὶ ἀπέθνησκον, οἱ
with the arms from the wall and died the(-ones)
δὲ ἀπογνόντες τοῖς ὅλοις καὶ τὰ ὅπλα τῶν χειρῶν
and having-despaired of-the whole and the arms the hands
ἐκλυομένων ἤδη ἀπολύοντες, παρεδίδουν αὑτοὺς τοῖς
being-undone already letting-go handed-over themselves to-the
ἐχθροῖς ἀμαχὶ χρήσασθαι ὅ τι καὶ βούλοιντο.
enemies without-fighting to-use what thing also they-might-wish

64.1 Ἔτυχε δ' ἐκεῖσε τότε παρὼν καὶ μαχόμενος ἐπὶ τοῦ
happened and there then being-present and fighting on the
τείχους ξὺν αὐτοῖς καὶ Ὀρχάνης ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως θεῖος, τοῦ
wall with them also Orhan the of-the emperor uncle of-the
Ἀτουμάνων γένους, ὃν εἶχε βασιλεὺς Κωνσταντῖνος ἐν τῇ
of-Ottomans race whom had emperor Constantine in the

πόλει, ἐν πολλῇ ἄγων θεραπείᾳ τε καὶ τιμῇ δι᾽ ἐλπίδας,
city in much keeping attendance both and honor for hopes
φυγάδα πρὸ πολλοῦ ὄντα διὰ τὸν φόβον τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ·
fugitive before long being because-of the fear of-the brother
ἐζήτει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἀνελεῖν· ὃς ἰδὼν τὴν τῆς πόλεως
he-sought for him to-kill who having-seen the of-the city
ἅλωσιν καὶ θέλων ἑαυτὸν ἐκσῶσαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐβουλήθη
capture and wishing himself to-save first indeed wished
λαθὼν διαδρᾶναι, ὡς εἷς τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς τῇ
escaping-notice to-run-away as one of-the(-ones) from the army by-the
τε σκευῇ καὶ τῇ τῆς φωνῆς ὁμοιότητι· ὡς δὲ εἶδε [ὅτι]
both dress and by-the of-the voice likeness when but he-saw that
γνωσθείς τε καὶ διωκόμενος (ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ ἀναγνόντες
recognized both and pursued there-were for the(-ones) having-recognized
αὐτόν), ῥίπτει ἑαυτὸν εὐθὺς κατὰ τοῦ τείχους καὶ
him throws himself at-once from the wall and
ἀποθνήσκει. Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται δραμόντες αἴρουσιν αὐτοῦ
dies the and soldiers having-run take his
τὴν κεφαλὴν ἀποταμόντες καὶ ἀπήγαγον τῷ βασιλεῖ· καὶ
the head having-cut-off and brought-off to-the emperor and
γὰρ ἐζήτει αὐτὸν διὰ σπουδῆς ἢ ζῶντα ἢ τεθνεῶτα ἰδεῖν.
for he-sought him with zeal either living or dead to-see
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Χαμουζᾶς ὁ τῶν νεῶν ἡγεμών, ὡς εἶδε 65.1
in this and also Hamza the of-the ships leader when he-saw
τὴν πόλιν ἐχομένην ἤδη καὶ τοὺς ὁπλίτας ληιζομένους
the city held already and the hoplites plundering
αὐτὴν, εὐθὺς ἐπιπλεῖ τῇ ἁλύσει καὶ διαρρήξας αὐτὴν εἴσω
it at-once sails-against the chain and having-broken it inside
γίνεται τοῦ λιμένος· καὶ ὅσας εὗρε τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν
comes the harbor and as-many-as he-found of-the Roman
νεῶν (αἱ γὰρ τῶν Ἰταλῶν τριήρεις τε καὶ ὁλκάδες εὐθὺς
ships the for of-the Italians triremes both and merchantmen at-once

βιασάμεναι ταύτας ἀνήχθησαν ἐς τὸ πέλαγος), τὰς
having-forced these(-ones) put-out to the open-sea the(-ones)
μὲν κατέδυσεν αὐτοῦ, τὰς δὲ αὐτάνδρους ἔλαβε· καὶ
indeed he-sank there the(-ones) and with-their-crews he-took and
ἐποκείλας τὰς ναῦς ταῖς βασιλικαῖς καλουμέναις πύλαις, ἔτι
having-beached the ships at-the royal called gates still
κεκλεισμένας εὑρὼν διαρρήσσει τε τὰ τούτων κλεῖθρα καὶ
shut having-found breaks both the of-these bars and
τοὺς μοχλοὺς καὶ καταβάλλει ταύτας, καὶ ἐσελθὼν μετὰ τῆς
the bolts and throws-down them and having-entered with the
στρατιᾶς ἐν τῇ πόλει, εὑρίσκει πολλοὺς ἐκεῖσε τῶν Ῥωμαίων
army into the city finds many there of-the Romans
ξυνισταμένους καὶ ἐς ἀλκὴν τραπομένους (οὔπω γὰρ ἐφθάκει
gathering and to resistance turned not-yet for had-arrived
πρὸς τοῦτο τὸ μέρος ἡ κατὰ γῆν στρατιὰ ληιζομένη τὴν
at this the part the by land army plundering the
ἄλλην πόλιν), καὶ ξυμβαλὼν αὐτοῖς τρέπεται καὶ φονεύει
other city and having-engaged them routs and slaughters
πάντας αὐτοῦ, ὥστε διὰ τῶν πυλῶν αἷμα ῥυῆναι πολύ.
all there so-that through the gates blood to-flow much
66.1 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ ἡ ἄλλη στρατιὰ ἐφθάκει, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
in this and also the other army had-arrived likewise and also
διὰ τῶν ἄλλων παραλίων πυλῶν ἐσεχέοντο λαμπρῶς,
through the other seaside gates poured-in brilliantly
ταύτας ξυγχλῶντες καὶ καταβάλλοντες, καὶ οὕτως ἅπαν
them breaking and throwing-down and so all
τὸ στράτευμα τῶν νεῶν ἤδη σκεδασθὲν ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν
the force of-the ships already scattered through all the
πόλιν τρέπεται ἐς διαρπαγὴν, ληϊζόμενον πάντα τὰ ἐν
city turns to plunder pillaging all the(-things) at
ποσὶ καὶ δίκην ἐμπίπτον πυρὸς ἢ σκηπτοῦ καὶ ἐμπιπρῶν
feet and like falling-upon of-fire or of-thunderbolt and burning

πάντα καὶ ἀφανίζον, ἢ χειμάρρου δίκην ἅπαντα παρασῦρον
all and blotting-out or of-torrent like all sweeping-away
καὶ διαφθεῖρον· καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι πάντα διηρευνήσαντο
and destroying and for these all searched
ἀκριβέστερον ἢ Δᾶτις, φασὶ, τὴν Ἐρετρικὴν, ναοὺς,
more-exactly than Datis they-say the Eretrian(-land) temples
ἱερὰ, θήκας τε παλαιὰς καὶ τάφους ἀναρρηγνύντες,
sacred(-places) tombs both ancient and graves breaking-open
στοάς τε ὑπογείους καὶ καταδύσεις καὶ χρησφύγετα
galleries both underground and recesses and hiding-places
καὶ ἄντρα καὶ χηραμοὺς καὶ ἄλλο πᾶν κεκρυμμένον
and caves and holes and other all hidden
ἀνερευνῶντες καὶ εἴ πού τις ἤ τι ἦν κεκρυμμένον, ἐς
searching and if somewhere anyone or anything was hidden to
φῶς ἐξάγοντες. Ἐς δὲ τὸν μέγιστον ἐσελθόντες τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ
light bringing-out into and the greatest having-entered of-the — of-God
Σοφίας νεὼν, εὗρον ἐκεῖ πολύ τι πλῆθος ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ
Wisdom temple they-found there great some multitude of-men both and
γυναικῶν καὶ παίδων καταφυγόντας τε καὶ θεοκλητοῦντας·
women and children having-fled both and calling-on-God
οὓς καὶ δίκην σαγήνης ξυγκλείσαντες παρεστήσαντο
whom also like of-net having-shut-in they-brought-to-terms
πάντας ὁμολογίᾳ, καὶ ἀπήγαγον αἰχμαλώτους, τοὺς μὲν
all by-agreement and led-away captives the(-ones) indeed
ἐς τὰς τριήρεις, τοὺς δὲ ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
to the triremes the(-ones) and to the camp
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ Γαλατᾷ, ὡς εἶδον τὴν πόλιν 67.1
in this and also the(-ones) in — Galata when they-saw the city
ἐχομένην ἤδη καὶ διαρπαζομένην, εὐθὺς προσεχώρησαν
held already and plundered at-once surrendered
ὁμολογίᾳ τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπὶ τῷ μηδέν τι κακὸν παθεῖν,
by-agreement to-the emperor on the(-terms) nothing any evil to-suffer

καὶ ἀνοίξαντες τὰς πύλας ἐσεδέχοντο τὸν Ζάγανον μετὰ τῆς
and having-opened the gates received — Zaganos with the
στρατιᾶς, καὶ αὐτοὶ οὐδὲν ὅλως ἠδίκηντο. Ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ
army and themselves nothing at-all were-wronged the and army
πᾶσα, ἥ τε κατὰ γῆν ἥ τε κατὰ θάλασσαν, ἐσχυθεῖσα ἐς
all the both by land the both by sea having-poured into
τὴν πόλιν ἀπὸ πρωίας βαθείας καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ περιόρθρου
the city from morning deep and very the dawn
μέχρι δείλης ὀψίας ἐληίζετο καὶ διηρπάζετο ταύτην,
until late-afternoon late pillaged and plundered it
ἐκφοροῦσα πᾶσαν τὴν λείαν ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον, τήν δὲ
carrying-out all the booty to the camp the(-booty) and
καὶ ἐς τὰς ναῦς· ἔστιν ἃ δὲ ταύτης καὶ διαρπάζοντες
also to the ships it-is which and of-it also plundering
ἔνιοι ὥσπερ φῶρες καὶ λαθραίως ἐξιόντες τῶν πυλῶν
some as thieves and secretly going-out of-the gates
ἀπήεσαν ἐς τὰ οἴκοι. Οὕτω δὲ πᾶσαν ταύτην ἐκένωσε
departed to the(-places) at-home so and all it it-emptied
καὶ ἠρήμωσε καὶ πυρὸς δίκην ἠφάνισε καὶ ἡμαύρωσεν ὥσθ'
and desolated and of-fire like blotted-out and darkened so-that
ὅλως ἀπιστηθῆναι εἰ καὶ ἦν ἐν αὐτῇ ποτε ἢ ἀνθρώπων
wholly to-be-disbelieved if also there-was in it ever either of-men
οἴκησις ἢ πλοῦτος ἢ περιουσία πόλεως ἢ ἄλλη τις κατ'
dwelling or wealth or abundance of-city or other any in
οἶκον κατασκευή τε καὶ περιφάνεια, καὶ ταῦτα οὕτω
house equipment both and splendor and these(-things) so
λαμπρᾶς καὶ μεγάλης ὑπαρχούσης πόλεως· οἶκοι δὲ μόνον
brilliant and great being city houses and only
ἐναπελείφθησαν ἔρημοι καὶ φόβον παρέχοντες τοῖς ὁρῶσι
were-left-behind deserted and fear providing to-the(-ones) seeing
διὰ τὴν ἐρημίαν πολύν. Ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν Ῥωμαίων
because-of the desolation much died and of-the indeed Romans

καὶ τῶν ξένων, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, παρ᾽ ὅλον τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἐν
and of-the foreigners as were-said through whole the war and in
αὐτῇ δὴ τῇ ἁλώσει ξύμπαντες, ἄνδρες, φημὶ, καὶ γυναῖκες
very indeed the capture all-together men I-mean and women
καὶ παῖδες, ἐγγύς που τετρακισχίλιοι· ἐλήφθησαν δὲ
and children near somewhere four-thousand were-taken and
καὶ αἰχμάλωτοι ὀλίγῳ πλείους πεντάκις μυρίων, τῆς
also captives a-little more five-times than-ten-thousand of-the
δὲ στρατιᾶς ἁπάσης ἀμφὶ τοὺς πεντακοσίους.
and army whole about the five-hundred
Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μετὰ ταῦτα ἐσελθὼν ἐς τὴν πόλιν, 68.1
the and emperor after these(-things) having-entered into the city
κατεθεᾶτο τό τε μέγεθος καὶ τὴν θέσιν αὐτῆς, τήν τε
viewed the both size and the position of-it the both
λαμπρότητα καὶ καλλονὴν, τό τε πλῆθος καὶ μέγεθος καὶ
brilliance and beauty the both multitude and size and
κάλλος τῶν τε ναῶν καὶ τῶν δημοσίων οἰκοδομημάτων,
beauty of-the both temples and of-the public buildings
τῶν τε ἰδιωτικῶν οἰκιῶν καὶ κοινῶν καὶ τῶν ἐν
of-the both private houses and public and of-the(-ones) in
δυνάμει ὄντων τὴν πολυτέλειαν, ἔτι δὲ τήν τε τοῦ
power being the costliness further and the both of-the
λιμένος θέσιν καὶ τῶν νεωρίων καὶ τὸ πρὸς πάντα
harbor position and of-the dockyards and the for all
ἐπιτηδείως ἔχειν τὴν πόλιν καὶ εὐφυῶς, καὶ ἁπλῶς πᾶσαν
suitably to-be the city and naturally and simply all
αὐτῆς τὴν κατασκευὴν καὶ τὸν κόσμον. Ἑώρα δὲ καὶ
of-it the construction and the ornament he-saw and also
τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἀπολλυμένων καὶ τὴν ἐρήμωσιν τῶν
the multitude of-the(-ones) perishing and the desolation of-the
οἰκιῶν καὶ τὴν παντελῆ φθορὰν αὐτῆς καὶ τὸν ὄλεθρον·
houses and the complete destruction of-it and the ruin

καὶ οἶκτος αὐτὸν εὐθὺς ἐσήει καὶ μετάμελος οὐ μικρὸς
and pity him at-once came-upon and regret not small
τῆς ἀπωλείας τε καὶ διαρπαγῆς, καὶ δάκρυον ἀφῆκε τῶν
of-the destruction both and plunder and tear he-let-fall from-the
ὀφθαλμῶν, καὶ μέγα στενάξας τε καὶ περιπαθές, "οἷαν,
eyes and greatly having-groaned both and with-deep-feeling what-a
ἔφη, πόλιν ἐς διαρπαγὴν καὶ ἐρήμωσιν ἐκδεδώκαμεν·"
he-said city to plunder and desolation we-have-given-up
οὕτως ἔπαθε τὴν ψυχήν. Καὶ γὰρ ὄντως πάθος μέγα
so he-suffered in-the soul and for truly suffering great
τοῦτο γέγονεν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐν μιᾷ δὴ ταύτῃ πόλει οἷον ἐν
this has-become in our(-time) in one indeed this city such-as in
οὐδεμιᾷ τῶν πάλαι μνημονευομένων τε καὶ ἱστορουμένων
none of-the anciently remembered both and recorded
μεγάλων πόλεων μεγέθει τε τῆς ἁλούσης πόλεως καὶ
great cities by-size both of-the captured city and
ὀξύτητι καὶ ἀποτομίᾳ τοῦ ἔργου· οὐχ ἥκιστα δὲ πάντας
by-sharpness and by-severity of-the work not least and all
ἐξέπληξε τούς τε ἄλλους καὶ αὐτοὺς δὴ τοὺς δράσαντας
it-astonished the both others and very indeed the(-ones) having-done
καὶ παθόντας τῷ τε παραλόγῳ καὶ ἀήθει τοῦ γεγονότος
and having-suffered by-the both unexpectedness and strangeness of-the having-happened
καὶ τῷ ὑπερβάλλοντι καὶ ξενίζοντι τοῦ δεινοῦ. Ἑάλω
and by-the excess and outlandishness of-the terror was-taken
Τροία, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων καὶ δέκα ἔτη πολεμουμένη,
Troy but by Hellenes and ten years being-warred-upon
ὥστε εἰ καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν τε ἀπολλυμένων τῶν τε
so-that if also in-the multitude of-the both perishing of-the both
ἑαλωκότων οὐ μείων ἦν ἡ ξυμφορὰ, εἰ μὴ καὶ μείζων
captured not less was the calamity if not even greater
εἰπεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄμφω ταῦτα ἔφερέ τινα κουφισμὸν καὶ
to-say yet also both these(-things) brought some lightening and

παραμυθίαν αὐτῇ· οἵ τε γὰρ Ἕλληνες φιλανθρωπότερον
consolation to-it the both for Hellenes more-humanely
τοῖς ἑαλωκόσι προσεφέροντο, τὰς κοινὰς αἰδούμενοι τύχας,
to-the captured behaved the common revering fortunes
ὅ τε συνεχὴς πόλεμος καὶ μακρὸς καὶ τὸ καθ' ἡμέραν
the both continuous war and long and the by day
τὴν ἅλωσιν προσδοκᾶν παρήρηται τὴν ἀκριβῆ τούτων
the capture to-expect has-taken-away the exact of-these
αἴσθησιν τῶν δεινῶν· τὸ δὲ παρὸν ἀπαραμύθητον ὅλως.
perception of-the terrors the but present without-consolation altogether
Ἑάλω Βαβυλὼν ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἐς τὰ καίρια
was-taken Babylon by Cyrus but in-nothing in the vital(-parts)
παραβλαβεῖσα, οὐδ' αἰχμαλωσίᾳ δουλεύσασα, οὐδ' ὕβρει
harmed nor by-captivity enslaved nor to-outrage
γυναικῶν ἐκδοθεῖσα καὶ παίδων, ἀλλ' ἢ μόνον δεσπότην
of-women given-over and of-children but — only master
ἀλλάξασα, καὶ τοῦτον χρηστὸν ἀντὶ πονηροῦ.
having-exchanged and this(-one) good instead-of wicked
Ἑάλω Καρχηδὼν ὑπὸ Σκηπίωνος δίς, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν
was-taken Carthage by Scipio twice but the indeed
πρῶτον ὁμήρους δοῦσα καὶ τὰς δαπάνας τοῦ πολέμου
first hostages having-given and the expenses of-the war
παρασχομένη, ἐς χρήματα (καὶ) μόνα τὴν ζημίαν ἐδέξατο,
having-provided in money and alone the loss received
τὸ δὲ δεύτερον μικρὸν ἀπωτέρω μετοικισθεῖσα ξὺν γυναιξὶ
the and second a-little farther having-been-resettled with wives
καὶ παισὶ καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι καὶ τοὺς οἰκήτορας
and children and the possessions all and the inhabitants
ἔχουσα σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς οὐδὲν τοσοῦτον ὑπέστη
having safe and of-evils unharmed nothing so-great underwent
δεινόν. Ἑάλω Ῥώμη, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ὑπὸ Κελτῶν
terrible(-thing) was-taken Rome the indeed first by Celts

τε καὶ Γαλατῶν, ὑπὸ Γότθων τὸ δεύτερον· ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲν
both and Gauls by Goths the second but nothing
τοσοῦτον παθοῦσα δεινὸν, ἀλλ᾽ ἢ μόνον τυραννηθεῖσα
so-great having-suffered terrible but — only having-been-tyrannized
μικρὸν καὶ χρήμασι ζημιωθεῖσα καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δημεύσει
a-little and in-money having-been-penalized and in-wealth and confiscation
τῶν πρώτων οἰκιῶν καὶ ὑπερορίᾳ τῶν ἐνδόξων ἀνδρῶν,
of-the first houses and banishment of-the illustrious men
καὶ πάλιν μικρὸν ὕστερον ἑαυτὴν ἀνακτησαμένη, ἐπὶ μέγα
and again a-little later itself having-recovered to great
δόξης ἤρθη καὶ πλούτου καὶ δυναστείας καὶ τύχης. Ἑάλω
of-glory was-raised and of-wealth and of-power and of-fortune was-taken
Ἱεροσόλυμα τρίς, ὑπ᾽ Ἀσσυρίων τὸ πρῶτον, ὑπ᾽ Ἀντιόχου
Jerusalem thrice by Assyrians the first by Antiochus
τὸ δεύτερον, ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων τὸ τρίτον· ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον
the second by Romans the third but the indeed first
μετοικίαν μόνην ὑπέστη ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς
resettlement only underwent with wives and children and the
ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσιν ἐς Βαβυλῶνα· ὑπ᾽ Ἀντιόχου δὲ μικρὸν
possessions all to Babylon by Antiochus and a-little
τυραννηθέντες πάλιν εἶχον τὴν πόλιν· ὑπὸ δὲ Ῥωμαίων εἰ
having-been-tyrannized again they-had the city by and Romans if
καὶ τὰ πάθη τῆς ἁλώσεως ἦσαν οὐ φορητὰ, ἀλλὰ στάσεις
also the sufferings of-the capture were not bearable yet factions
τε ἦσαν ἐν αὐτῇ πολλαὶ καὶ δειναὶ καὶ ἐμφύλια καὶ
both were in it many and terrible and civil(-wars) and
διαρπαγαὶ καὶ σφαγαὶ καὶ φόνοι τῶν ἐνοικούντων τε καὶ
plunderings and slaughters and murders of-the inhabitants both and
τῶν οἰκειοτάτων ἀνόσιοι καὶ πρὸ τοῦ πολέμου καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ
of-the nearest unholy both before the war and in very
τῷ πολέμῳ, ὥστε καὶ ἐν εὐχαῖς ἦν αὐτοῖς πολλάκις τὸ
the war so-that even in prayers was for-them often the

τὴν πόλιν ἁλῶναι, ἀπαλλαγὴν ἐκ τούτου τῶν μεγίστων
the city to-be-taken release from this from-the greatest
κακῶν οἰομένοις εὑρέσθαι ἢ τῷ θανάτῳ ἢ τῇ δουλείᾳ.
evils thinking to-find either by-the death or by-the slavery
Οὕτως οὐδὲν τὰ τῶν πόλεων ἐκείνων πτώματα πρὸς τὸ
so nothing the of-the cities those falls to the(-fall)
ταύτης εἰσὶν οἷα καὶ παραβάλλεσθαι. Καὶ ἄλλαι δὲ πόλεις
of-this are such-as even to-be-compared and other too cities
πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι ἔν τε Ἀσίᾳ καὶ Εὐρώπῃ ἑάλωσαν, καὶ
many and great in both Asia and Europe were-taken both
πλούτῳ καὶ δόξῃ καὶ σοφίᾳ καὶ ἀρετῇ τῶν ἐνοικούντων
in-wealth and glory and wisdom and virtue of-the inhabitants
καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθοῦσαι τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τὰ
and many other flourishing the goods but not-even the
τούτων πτώματα λόγον ἔχει πρὸς τὰ παρόντα δεινά.
of-these falls account has toward the present terrors
Ἑάλω καὶ ἡ δυστυχὴς αὕτη πόλις πρώην παρὰ τῶν 69.1
was-taken also the unfortunate this city formerly by the
ἑσπερίων γενῶν, ἑξήκοντα ἔτη τυραννουμένη, καὶ πλοῦτον
western races sixty years being-tyrannized and of-wealth
ἀφηρέθη πολὺν καὶ ἀναθήματα τῶν ἱερῶν πλεῖστα καὶ
was-deprived much and offerings of-the sacred(-places) very-many and
κάλλιστα καὶ πολυτελῆ, καὶ τὰ λαμπρὰ καὶ σεμνὰ καὶ
finest and costly and the brilliant and august and
περιμάχητα ταύτης θεάματα καὶ ἀκούσματα τὰ μὲν ἐς
fought-over of-it sights and hearings the(-ones) indeed to
ἑσπέραν μετεκομίσθη, τὰ δ᾽ ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ πόλει πυρὸς
west were-carried-off the(-ones) and in very the city of-fire
γέγονε παρανάλωμα· ἀλλὰ μέχρι τούτων ἦν αὐτῇ ἡ ζημία
became consumption but as-far-as these was for-it the loss
καὶ τὸ δεινόν· εἰ μὴ δὲ ταῦτα μικρὰ, τῶν οἰκητόρων
and the terror if not and these small(-things) of-the inhabitants

δὲ οὐδένα ἀποβεβλήκει, οὐδ' ἐς παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας
but none it-had-lost nor in children and wives
καὶ τὰ τιμιώτατα παρεβλάβη, ἀλλ' εἶχε πάντας τοὺς
and the most-precious(-things) was-harmed but it-had all the
ἐνοικοῦντας ἀσινεῖς ὅλως καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς· καὶ πάλιν
dwellers unharmed wholly and of-evils untouched and again
ἀπωσαμένη τὴν τυραννίδα καὶ ἑαυτὴν ἀνακτησαμένη ἐς τὴν
having-thrust-off the tyranny and itself having-recovered to the
προτέραν ἦκε κατάστασιν, καὶ βασίλειον ἦν καὶ γενῶν ἦρχε
former came state and royal-seat was and races ruled
πολλῶν ἔν τε Ἀσίᾳ καὶ Εὐρώπῃ καὶ νήσων οὐκ ὀλίγων,
many in both Asia and Europe and islands not few
καὶ ἐν περιφανείᾳ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δόξῃ καὶ λαμπρότητι
and in splendor and wealth and glory and brilliance
ἦν, καὶ τῶν καλῶν ἁπάντων ἡγεμὼν καὶ παράδειγμα,
was and of-the fine(-things) all leader and pattern
καὶ λόγων ἦν ἑστία καὶ παιδείας ἁπάσης καὶ σοφίας
and of-letters was hearth and of-learning all and of-wisdom
καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ πάντων τῶν καλλίστων ὁμοῦ. Νῦν δ'
and of-virtue and of-all the finest(-things) together now but
ὄντως ἐξήκει τὰ κατ' αὐτὴν, καὶ τὰ καλὰ
truly has-come-to-an-end the(-things) concerning it and the fine(-things)
ξυλλήβδην ἔρρει, καὶ ἀφήρηται πάντων, πλούτου,
all-together are-gone and it-has-been-deprived of-all of-wealth
δόξης, ἀρχῆς, περιφανείας, τιμῆς, γένους λαμπρότητος,
glory rule splendor honor race brilliance
ἀρετῆς, παιδείας, σοφίας, ἱερωσύνης, βασιλείας, πάντων
virtue learning wisdom priesthood kingship all
ἁπλῶς· καὶ ὅσον ἐς ἄκρον εὐδαιμονίας καὶ τύχης
simply and as-far-as to height of-prosperity and fortune
ἤλασε, τοσοῦτον ἐς πυθμένα δυστυχίας καὶ κακοδαιμονίας
it-drove so-far to bottom of-misfortune and wretchedness

κατήχθη· καὶ μακαρισθεῖσα πρώην ὑπὸ πολλῶν,
it-was-brought-down and having-been-called-blessed formerly by many
νῦν ὑπὸ πάντων δυστυχὴς καὶ βαρυδαίμων ἀκούει· καὶ
now by all unfortunate and ill-fated is-called and
μέχρι τερμάτων τῆς οἰκουμένης προελθοῦσα τῇ δόξῃ,
to ends of-the inhabited-world having-gone-forth in-the glory
νῦν πᾶσαν ὁμοῦ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν μεστὴν πεποίηκε
now all together land both and sea full has-made
τῶν ἑαυτῆς ξυμφορῶν καὶ τῆς ἰδίας ἀδοξίας ἐνέπλησε,
of-the its-own calamities and of-the own disgrace filled
πανταχοῦ τῆς αὐτῆς κακοδαιμονίας ὑπομνήματα φέρουσα
everywhere of-the same wretchedness reminders bearing
τοὺς οἰκήτορας, ἄνδρας ὁμοῦ καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας
the inhabitants men together and women and children
διασπαρέντας αἰσχρῶς ἐπ᾽ αἰχμαλωσίᾳ καὶ δουλείᾳ καὶ
scattered shamefully in captivity and slavery and
ὕβρει· καὶ ἡ πολλῶν γενῶν ἐπάρξασα πρότερον μετὰ
outrage and the(-city) of-many races having-ruled before with
τιμῆς καὶ δόξης καὶ πλούτου καὶ περιφανείας λαμπρᾶς,
honor and glory and wealth and splendor brilliant
νῦν ὑφ᾽ ἑτέρων ἄρχεται μετὰ πενίας καὶ ἀδοξίας καὶ
now by others is-ruled with poverty and disgrace and
ἀτιμίας καὶ δουλείας αἰσχίστης· καὶ παράδειγμα πάντων
dishonor and slavery most-shameful and pattern of-all
οὖσα καλῶν καὶ λαμπρᾶς εὐδαιμονίας εἰκὼν, νῦν εἰκών
being fine(-things) and of-brilliant prosperity image now image
ἐστι δυστυχίας καὶ μεγίστων ξυμφορῶν ὑπόμνημα καὶ
is of-misfortune and of-greatest calamities reminder and
στήλη κακοδαιμονίας καὶ μῦθος τῷ βίῳ. Οὕτως οὐδὲν
pillar of-wretchedness and myth for-the life so nothing
τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πιστὸν οὐδὲ βέβαιον, ἀλλὰ πάντα δίκην
of-the human(-things) trustworthy nor firm but all like

εὐρίπου ἄνω καὶ κάτω στροβεῖται καὶ περιφέρεται ταῖς
of-a-euripus up and down is-whirled and is-carried-around by-the
ἀγχιστρόφοις τοῦ βίου μεταβολαῖς, παίζοντα καὶ παιζόμενα
quick-turning of-the life changes playing and being-played
παρὰ μέρος, καὶ οὐδέποτε στήσεται τῆς ἀτάκτου ταύτης
in turn and never will-stand-still from-the disorderly this
καὶ ῥοώδους φορᾶς καὶ κινήσεως καὶ τῆς ἀλλοπροσάλλου
and rushing motion and movement and the this-way-and-that
παλιρροίας τε καὶ μεταβολῆς, ἕως ἂν ἐν τοῖς οὖσι
back-flow both and change until — in the things-that-are
τὸ εἶναι ᾖ. Ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο παντὸς μᾶλλον θαυμάσας
the being be I and also this than-all more having-marveled-at
ἔχω, τήν τε γενομένην ξυγκύρησιν τῶν ὀνομάτων καὶ
hold the both having-happened coincidence of-the names and
τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων ἐναντιότητα ἐπὶ τοσαύτης περιόδου
the of-the affairs contrariety over so-great a-cycle
ξυνδραμοῦσαν ἐγγύς που διακοσίων μάλιστα καὶ χιλίων
having-run-together near somewhere of-two-hundred about and a-thousand
ἐτῶν. Κωνσταντῖνος γὰρ εὐτυχὴς βασιλεὺς, Ἑλένης υἱὸς,
years Constantine for fortunate emperor of-Helena son
ἀνέστησέ τε ταύτην καὶ ἐς ἄκρον εὐδαιμονίας καὶ τύχης
raised both it and to height of-prosperity and fortune
ἐπῆρε, καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Κωνσταντίνου, δυστυχοῦς
lifted and again in-the-time-of Constantine unfortunate
βασιλέως, Ἑλένης υἱοῦ, ἑάλω τε καὶ ἐς ἐσχάτην δουλείαν
emperor of-Helena son it-was-taken both and into utmost slavery
τε καὶ κακοδαιμονίαν κατήχθη. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
both and wretchedness was-brought-down and these(-things) indeed thus
70.1 Αἱ δὲ τριάκοντα τριήρεις, ἃς ὁ τῆς Ῥώμης ἀρχιερεὺς
the and thirty triremes which the — of-Rome high-priest
ἔπεμπε βοηθοὺς τῇ τε πόλει καὶ βασιλεῖ Κωνσταντίνῳ,
sent as-helpers for-the both city and emperor Constantine

καταχθεῖσαι ἐς Χίον κἀκεῖσε πνεύμασιν ἐναντίοις χρησάμεναι,
brought-in to Chios and-there winds contrary having-met
αὐτοῦ περιέμενον, καιρὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἀναμένουσαι· ὡς δὲ
there waited-around time suitable awaiting when but
μετὰ μικρὸν ἐπύθοντο τὴν τῆς πόλεως ἅλωσιν, ὑστερήσασαι
after a-little they-learned the of-the city capture having-come-too-late
τῆς βοηθείας πάλιν ἀπέπλευσαν οἴκοι, μηδὲν ὑπὲρ ὧν
for-the help again sailed-away home nothing of what
ἦκον διαπραξάμεναι. Ἔδει δὲ ἄρα πάντως τὴν δυστυχῆ
they-came having-accomplished it-was-needed and then wholly the unfortunate
ταύτην πόλιν ἁλῶναί τε καὶ κακῶς παθεῖν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
this city to-be-taken both and badly to-suffer and because-of this
πάσης ἐπικουρίας πάντοθεν φαινομένης καὶ δυναμένης αὐτῇ
all help from-every-side appearing and being-able for-it
βοηθεῖν, παντάπασιν ἀπεστέρητο· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ πάντα
to-help altogether it-had-been-deprived-of but indeed also all
ξυνδεδραμήκει πρὸς τοῦτο, οὕτω τοῦ θείου ἐνδόντος.
had-run-together to this so the divine having-given-way
Ἑάλω τοίνυν ἐπὶ Κωνσταντίνου βασιλέως, ἑβδόμου 71.1
it-was-taken therefore in-the-time-of Constantine emperor seventh
Παλαιολόγων, ἐννάτῃ καὶ εἰκοστῇ φθίνοντος Μαΐου
of-Palaiologoi on-the-ninth and twentieth of-waning May
παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις, ἑξήκοντος ἔτους τῶν ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς
among Romans ending year of-the(-years) from beginning
ἑνός τε καὶ ἑξηκοστοῦ παρὰ τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ
one both and sixtieth besides the nine-hundred both and
ἑξακισχιλίοις, ἀπὸ δὲ κτίσεώς τε καὶ ξυνοικήσεως ταύτης
six-thousand from and founding both and settling of-it
ἔτεσι τέτταρσι καὶ εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν πρὸς τοῖς χιλίοις.
in-years four and twenty and hundred besides the thousand

72.1 Θνήσκει δὲ καὶ βασιλεὺς Κωνσταντῖνος αὐτὸς ἥπερ ἔφην
dies and also emperor Constantine himself as I-said
μαχόμενος, σώφρων μὲν καὶ μέτριος ἐν τῷ καθ' ἑαυτὸν
fighting temperate indeed and moderate in the by himself
βίῳ γενόμενος, φρονήσεως δὲ καὶ ἀρετῆς ἐς ἄκρον
life having-been of-prudence and also of-virtue to height
ἐπιμεμελημένος, ξυνετός τε καὶ τῶν ἄγαν πεπαιδευμένων,
having-taken-care intelligent both and of-the exceedingly educated
κἀν τοῖς πολιτικοῖς δὲ πράγμασι καὶ τοῖς ἐν
also-in the political and affairs and the(-things) in
ἀρχῇ οὐδενὶ τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέων τῶν πρωτείων
rule to-none of-the before him emperors of-the first-prizes
παραχωρῶν, ὀξὺς μὲν ξυνιδεῖν τὸ δέον παντὸς μᾶλλον,
yielding keen indeed to-perceive the needful than-all more
ὀξύτερος δὲ ἑλέσθαι, δεινὸς εἰπεῖν, δεινὸς δὲ νοῆσαι,
keener and to-choose clever to-speak clever and to-think
δεινότερος δὲ πράγμασιν ὁμιλῆσαι, τῶν μὲν παρόντων
cleverer and with-affairs to-deal of-the indeed present
ἀκριβὴς γνώμων, ἥπερ ἔφη τις ὑπὲρ Περικλέους, τῶν δὲ
exact judge as said someone of Pericles of-the and
μελλόντων ὡς ἐπὶ πλεῖστον τοῦ εἰκότος ἄριστος εἰκαστής,
future as for most of-the likely best guesser
ὑπέρ τε τῆς πατρίδος καὶ τῶν ἀρχομένων πάντα καὶ
for both the fatherland and the subjects all both
ποιεῖν καὶ πάσχειν αἱρούμενος, ὅς γε καὶ τὸν ἐπικείμενον
to-do and to-suffer choosing who at-least also the impending
τῇ πόλει προφανῆ κίνδυνον ὁρῶν αὐτοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς
on-the city manifest danger seeing with-his-own eyes
καὶ δυνάμενος αὑτὸν ἐκσῶσαι καὶ πολλοὺς ἔχων τοὺς
and being-able himself to-save and many having the(-ones)
πρὸς τοῦτο παρακαλοῦντας, οὐχ ἠθέλησεν, ἀλλ' εἷλε τὸ
to this urging not he-wished but he-chose the

ξυναποθανεῖν τῇ πατρίδι τε καὶ τοῖς ἀρχομένοις, μᾶλλον
to-die-with the fatherland both and the subjects rather
δὲ καὶ προαποθανεῖν αὐτὸς, ὅπως μὴ ταύτην τε ἁλοῦσαν
and also to-die-before himself so-that not it both captured
ἐπίδοι, καὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων τοὺς μὲν σφαττομένους
he-might-see and of-the inhabitants the(-ones) indeed being-slaughtered
ὠμῶς, τοὺς δὲ δορυαλώτους ἀπαγομένους αἰσχρῶς.
cruelly the(-ones) and spear-won led-away shamefully
Ἐπειδὴ γὰρ εἶδε τοὺς πολεμίους βιαζομένους τε αὐτὸν
since for he-saw the enemies forcing both him
καὶ διὰ τοῦ κατερριμμένου τείχους ἐσερχομένους ἐπὶ τὴν
and through the thrown-down wall entering into the
πόλιν λαμπρῶς, εἰπεῖν λέγεται μέγα βοήσας ὑστάτην
city brilliantly to-have-said he-is-said loudly having-shouted last
ταύτην φωνήν· "ἡ πόλις ἁλίσκεται κἀμοὶ ζῆν ἔτι
this cry the city is-being-taken and-for-me to-live still
περίεστιν;" καὶ οὕτως ἐς μέσους τοὺς πολεμίους ὦσαί
remains and so into middle the enemies to-have-thrust
τε ἑαυτὸν καὶ κατακοπῆναι. Οὕτως ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἦν καὶ
both himself and to-have-been-cut-down so man good he-was and
τοῦ κοινοῦ κηδεμών, δυστυχὴς μέντοι γε παρὰ πάντα
of-the common guardian unfortunate however at-least through all
τὸν βίον αὐτοῦ, κἀν τῷ τέλει δὲ δυστυχέστατος. Τὰ
the life his also-in the end and most-unfortunate the(-things)
μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην πόλιν τὴν Κωνσταντίνου
indeed indeed concerning the great city the of-Constantine(-city)
ἐπὶ μέγα δόξης ἀρθεῖσαν καὶ δυναστείας καὶ πλούτου
to great of-glory having-been-raised and of-power and of-wealth
ἔν γε τοῖς κατ' αὐτὴν καιροῖς, καὶ πάσας τὰς πρὸ
in at-least the by it times and all the(-cities) before
αὐτῆς ἀποκρύψασαν πολλῷ τινι καὶ ἀπείρῳ τῷ μέσῳ ἐπί
it having-eclipsed by-much some and boundless the interval in

τε δόξῃ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ ἀρχῇ καὶ δυνάμει καὶ μεγέθει
both glory and wealth and rule and power and size
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι θαυμαζομένην, οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν.
and the other(-things) all being-admired so ended
73.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις τήν τε πόλιν καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ
emperor and Mehmed the both city and the(-things) in it
πάντα καλῶς θεασάμενος, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον
all well having-viewed returns to the camp
καὶ διατίθεται τὰ κατὰ τὴν λείαν. Καὶ πρῶτον
and disposes the(-things) concerning the booty and first
μὲν λαμβάνει τὸν ξυνήθη δασμὸν αὑτῷ τῶν λαφύρων,
indeed he-takes the customary share for-himself of-the spoils
ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἀριστεῖα ἀπὸ πάντων ἐκλέγεται, παρθένους
then and also prizes from all chooses maidens
τε ὡραίας καὶ τῶν εὖ γεγονότων καὶ παῖδας καλλίστους,
both ripe and of-the well born and children most-beautiful
ἔστιν ἃ δὲ τούτων καὶ ὠνούμενος παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
it-is which and of-these also buying from the soldiers
Ἐκλέγεται δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐμάνθανε γένει
he-chooses and also of-the illustrious men whom he-learned in-race
τε καὶ φρονήσει καὶ ἀρετῇ διαφέρειν τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ δὴ
both and prudence and virtue to-excel the others and indeed
καὶ Νοταρᾶν αὐτὸν, ἄνδρα τῶν δυνατῶν τε καὶ ἐπιφανῶν
also Notaras himself man of-the powerful both and illustrious
ὄντα ἔν τε ξυνέσει καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ ἀρχῇ καὶ ἀρετῇ
being in both understanding and wealth and rule and virtue
καὶ πολιτικῇ δυνάμει, καὶ τιμᾷ τοῦτον τῇ ἐσόδῳ τῇ
and political power and honors him with-the entry the
παρ᾽ αὐτὸν, καὶ λόγων μεταδίδωσι μειλιχίων καὶ χρησταῖς
to him and words imparts soothing and with-good
ἀνακτᾶται ταῖς ἐλπίσιν, οὐ μόνον αὐτὸν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς
wins-over the hopes not only him but also the

ἄλλους τοὺς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ· ἐσήει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἔλεος τῶν
others the(-ones) with him came-upon for him pity for-the
ἀνδρῶν καὶ τῆς δυστυχίας αὐτῶν, ἐξ οἵας ἄρα εὐδαιμονίας
men and of-the misfortune of-them from what-sort then prosperity
ἐς οἵαν κακοδαιμονίαν κατήχθησαν· καὶ χρηστὰ περὶ
to what-sort wretchedness they-were-brought-down and good(-things) about
αὐτῶν ἐβουλεύετο, εἰ καὶ ὁ φθόνος μικρὸν οὐκ εἴασεν
them he-planned if even the envy a-little not allowed
ὕστερον. Διαθέμενος δὲ ταῦτά τε καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς
later having-arranged and these(-things) both and the(-things) concerning the
στρατιώτας ἅπαντα καλῶς καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν,
soldiers all well and as was to-him according-to mind
καὶ τιμήσας τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀρχαῖς τε καὶ ἀξιώμασι,
and having-honored the(-ones) indeed of-them with-offices both and ranks
τοὺς δὲ χρήμασι, τοὺς δὲ σιτηρεσίοις καὶ παντοίοις
the(-ones) and with-money the(-ones) and with-rations and all-kinds
ἄλλοις δώροις, εὖ πεποιηκώς τε καὶ δεξιωσάμενος οὓς ἤδει
other gifts well having-treated both and having-greeted whom he-knew
καλῶς ἀγωνισαμένους, ἔτι τε δημηγορήσας καὶ πολλὰ
well having-contended further both having-barangued and many(-things)
εἰπὼν ἐς ἔπαινον φέροντα καὶ εὐχαριστίαν αὐτῶν, ἀπολύει
having-said to praise tending and thanksgiving of-them he-dismisses
τὴν στρατιάν. Αὐτὸς δὲ μετά γε τῶν ἐν τέλει καὶ τῆς
the army himself and with at-least the(-ones) in office and the
ἰδίας αὐλῆς ἔσεισιν ἐς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ πρῶτον βουλεύεται,
own court enters into the city and first plans
ὅπως ἂν αὐτὴν ξυνοικίσας πάλιν, οὐχ ὅσον ἦν πρότερον,
how — it having-resettled again not as-much-as it-was before
ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσαν* εἰδιάαιτο, ὥστε βασίλειον εἶναι αὐτῷ, ἐν
but also whole he-might-arrange so-as royal-seat to-be for-him in
ἐπικαίρῳ γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης κειμένην· ἔπειτα δωρεῖται πᾶσι
vantage of-land and of-sea lying then he-gives to-all

τοῖς τε ἐν τέλει καὶ οἰκείοις οἰκίας τε λαμπρὰς τὰς
the(-ones) both in office and household houses both brilliant the(-ones)
τῶν δυνατῶν καὶ παραδείσους καὶ ἀγροὺς καὶ ἀμπέλους ἔσω
of-the powerful and gardens and fields and vineyards within
τῆς πόλεως, τοῖς δὲ καὶ ναοὺς περικαλεῖς, ὥστε εἶναι
the city to-the(-ones) and also temples very-beautiful so-as to-be
αὐτοῖς ἐς κατοίκησιν. Ἐκλέγεται δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν μέσον
for-them for dwelling he-chooses and also himself the middle
καὶ κάλλιστον χῶρον τῆς πόλεως ἐς οἰκοδομὴν βασιλείων.
and finest place of-the city for building of-palaces
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο, τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὅσους ἔλαβε δασμὸν ξὺν
after and this of-the captives as-many-as he-took as-share with
γυναιξὶ καὶ παισὶ καθίζει παρὰ τῷ τοῦ λιμένος αἰγιαλῷ τῆς
wives and children he-settles by the of-the harbor shore of-the
πόλεως, θαλασσίους ὄντας, οὓς πρώην Στενίτας ὠνόμαζον,
city seafaring being whom formerly Stenitai they-named
δοὺς αὐτοῖς καὶ οἰκίας καὶ ἀτέλειαν χρόνων ῥητῶν·
having-given to-them both houses and exemption-from-taxes of-times stated
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ πᾶσι τοῦτ' αὐτὸ προκηρύξας, ὅσοι
and to-the others and all this same having-proclaimed as-many-as
τὴν ἰδίαν ὠνὴν καταβαλόντες ἢ ξυνθέμενοι καταβαλεῖν ἐν
the own price having-paid or having-agreed to-pay at
καιρῷ ῥητῷ τοῖς δεσπόταις, βούλοιντ' ἂν κατοικεῖν ἐν τῇ
time stated to-the masters would-wish — to-dwell in the
πόλει, καὶ τούτοις δὴ ἀτέλειαν καὶ οἰκίας παρέσχεν ἢ
city and to-these indeed exemption and houses he-provided either
τῶν ἰδίων ἢ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων. Ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ τῶν
of-the own(-houses) or of-the others' he-wished and also of-the
ἀρχόντων οὓς ἐξελέξατο κατοικίσαι αὐτοῦ ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ
nobles whom he-chose to-settle there with wives and
τέκνοις, παρασχὼν αὐτοῖς καὶ οἰκίας καὶ κτήματα καὶ
children having-provided to-them both houses and possessions and

πρόνοιαν τοῦ ζῆν, καὶ τρόπῳ παντὶ θεραπεῦσαι αὐτούς·
provision of-the to-live and by-way every to-tend them
καὶ ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦτο κατὰ νοῦν τε καὶ διὰ σπουδῆς, ὡς
and was for-him this according-to mind both and with zeal as
ἐλέγετο· τὸν δέ γε Νοταρᾶν καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἐπιστάτην
was-said — and at-least Notaras also of-the city overseer
ἐσκόπει καταστῆσαι καὶ τοῦ ξυνοικισμοῦ ταύτης κύριον,
he-considered to-appoint and of-the resettlement of-it lord
ξυμβούλῳ χρησάμενος αὐτῷ πρότερον περὶ τούτου· ἀλλ᾽
as-counselor having-used him first about this but
ἔφθησαν αὐτοὺς τὰ τοῦ φθόνου βέλη βαλόντα καιρίαν,
forestalled them the of-the envy darts having-struck mortally
καὶ κυροῦται θάνατος ἄδικος κατ᾽ αὐτῶν. Τῶν γὰρ μέγα
and is-ratified death unjust against them of-the for greatly
δυναμένων ἔνιοι, οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅθεν, φθόνῳ δὴ καὶ μίσει τῷ
powerful some not I-know whence by-envy indeed and hatred the
πρὸς τοὺς ἄνδρας φερόμενοι ἀναπείθουσι τὸν κρατοῦντα
toward the men borne persuade the ruler
τούτους ἐκ μέσου ποιῆσαι, μὴ δεῖν λέγοντες ἄνδρας
them from the-midst to-make not to-be-needful saying men
Ῥωμαίους καὶ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν μὴ ὅτι γε κατοικεῖν ἐν τῇ
Romans and of-the illustrious not that at-least to-dwell in the
πόλει ταύτῃ καὶ προνοίας ἡστινοσοῦν ἠξιῶσθαι, ἀλλ᾽
city this and of-provision any to-be-deemed-worthy but
οὐδὲ ζῆν ὅλως καὶ περινοστεῖν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τῷ σῷ·
not-even to-live at-all and to-go-about in the place the yours
ἀνεθέντας γὰρ μικρὸν καὶ τῆς δουλείας ἀπαλλαγέντας
having-been-released for a-little and from-the slavery having-been-freed
οὐχ ἀτρεμήσειν ἔτι, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἰδίων καλῶν καὶ ὧν
not to-be-quiet any-longer but the own goods and which
πρόσθεν εἶχον ἐπιθυμήσαντας καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐλευθερίας,
before they-had having-desired and indeed also freedom

πάντα πράξειν κατὰ τῆς πόλεως, ἢ αὐτομολήσαντας πρὸς
all to-do against the city either having-deserted to
τοὺς ἡμῖν ἐναντίους ἢ αὐτοῦ μένοντας. Τούτοις πεισθεὶς ἢ
the to-us opposed or there remaining by-these persuaded or
μᾶλλον παραπεισθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσεν. ἀναιρηθῆναι
rather misled the emperor ordered to-be-killed
τοὺς ἄνδρας. Οἱ δὲ ἀναιροῦνται, καὶ ξυναναιρεῖται τούτοις
the men they and are-killed and is-killed-with them
ὁ μέγας δοὺξ ξὺν τοῖς δυσὶ υἱέσι. Φασί γέ τοι τοῦτον,
the great duke with the two sons they-say indeed surely him
ἐς τὸν τόπον τῆς ἀναιρέσεως ἀπαχθέντα, παρακαλέσαι
to the place of-the execution having-been-led-away to-have-begged
τὸν δήμιον πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν αὐτοῦ πρότερον ἀποκτεῖναι
the executioner before eyes his first to-kill
τοὺς παῖδας, τοῦ μὴ τὸν θάνατον δείσαντας ἀρνηθῆναι
the children so-that not the death having-feared they-should-deny
τὴν πίστιν, εἶθ' οὕτως αὐτὸν τοῖς παισὶν ἐπιθῦσαι.
the faith then so himself on-the children to-sacrifice
Ἱστάμενον οὖν ὁρᾶν ἀτενὶ σφαττομένους τοὺς παῖδας
standing then to-see intently being-slaughtered the children
ἀτρέπτῳ τῷ ὄμματι καὶ ἀπτοήτῳ τῇ γνώμῃ, εἶθ'
with-unturned the eye and with-unterrified the judgment then
οὕτως εὐξάμενον καὶ τῷ θεῷ χάριτας ὁμολογήσαντα τῆς
so having-prayed and — to-God thanks having-acknowledged for-the
ἀπαγωγῆς τῶν παίδων, καὶ ἑαυτοῦ ὑποθεῖναι τὸν αὐχένα
leading-away of-the children and of-himself to-place-under the neck
τῷ ξίφει. Οὕτω γενναίως καὶ μετὰ φρονήματος καθεστῶτος
to-the sword so nobly and with spirit composed
καὶ ψυχῆς ἀνδρείας ἀπέθνησκεν. Ἦν γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ εὐσεβής
and soul courageous he-died was for the man pious
τε τὰ ἐς θεὸν ὅλως καὶ ξυνέσει διαφέρων,
both in-the(-things) toward God wholly and in-understanding excelling

ἔτι δὲ φρονήματος μεγαλείῳ καὶ γνώμης ὀξύτητι καὶ
further and of-spirit in-greatness and of-judgment in-sharpness and
ψυχῆς ἐλευθερίᾳ πάντων κρατῶν, καὶ διὰ πάντων φύσεως
of-soul in-freedom all surpassing and through all of-nature
ῥώμην δεικνὺς καὶ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ὢν· δι' ὧν καὶ τὴν
strength showing and man good being through which also the
πολιτικὴν ἀρετὴν ἔσχε, καὶ τὴν ἐν τοῖς πράγμασι δύναμιν
political virtue he-had and the in the affairs power
ἐκτήσατο, καὶ ἐπὶ μέγα δόξης ἤρθη καὶ πλούτου, τὰ
acquired and to great of-glory was-raised and of-wealth the
πρωτεῖα φέρων οὐ μόνον παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ
first-prizes carrying not only among Romans but indeed also
πολλοῖς τῶν ἔξω γενῶν. Καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτῷ δὲ πάντες
among-many of-the outside races and the(-ones) with him and all
εὐθαρσῶς τε καὶ μετὰ γνώμης σταθερᾶς καὶ ἀνδρείας
courageously both and with judgment steady and courage
ἀπέθνησκον, ἐννέα τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὄντες. Ὕστερόν γε μὴν
died nine in-the number being later at-least indeed
καταφωράσας ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν δόλον καὶ τὴν κακουργίαν
having-detected the emperor the treachery and the villainy
τῶν ἀναπεισάντων αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ
of-the(-ones) having-persuaded him to-kill the men and
μισήσας τῆς κακουργίας αὐτοὺς ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν ποιεῖται,
having-hated for-the villainy them from eyes makes
τοὺς μὲν θανάτῳ ζημιώσας, τοὺς δὲ παραλύσας τῆς
the(-ones) indeed with-death having-punished the(-ones) and having-removed from-the
ἀξίας καὶ τῆς τιμῆς· καὶ ταύτην οὐκ ἐς μακρὰν ἔδοσαν
rank and the honor and this not to long they-paid
δίκην τῆς ἐς τοὺς ἄνδρας παρανομίας. Καὶ ταῦτα
penalty for-the toward the men lawlessness and these(-things)
μὲν μικρὸν ὕστερον. Ἀποκαθίστησι δὲ καὶ τῆς πόλεως
indeed a-little later he-appoints and also of-the city

ἔπαρχον τότε καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὴν ἄνδρα τῶν πάνυ
governor then and of-the(-parts) around it man of-the very
ξυνετῶν καὶ χρησίμων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τοὺς τρόπους
intelligent and useful but indeed also in-the ways
χρηστὸν, Σουλαϊμάνην ὄνομα, ᾧ τά τε ἄλλα καὶ
good Süleyman by-name to-whom the both other(-things) and
δὴ καὶ τὸν τῆς πόλεως ξυνοικισμὸν ἐπέτρεψε πάνυ τοι
indeed also the of-the city resettlement he-entrusted very surely
προὔργου ποιεῖν.
advantageously to-do

74.1 Ταῦτα δὲ δράσας ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ θέρους,
these(-things) and having-done he-returns to the of-Hadrian(-city) in-summer
κἀκεῖ δέχεται πρεσβείας παρά τε Τριβαλλῶν καὶ
and-there receives embassies from both Triballians and
Ἰλλυριῶν καὶ Πελοποννησίων, ἔτι δὲ Μιτυληναίων καὶ
Illyrians and Peloponnesians further and Mytilenaeans and
Χίων καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων, αἷς ἀπάσαις ἐχρημάτισεν
Chians and many others to-which all he-gave-audience
ἡμέρως, τοῖς μὲν σπεισάμενος καὶ πίστεις δοὺς
mildly with-the(-ones) indeed having-made-truce and pledges having-given
καὶ λαβὼν, τοῖς δὲ δωρησάμενος ἃ ἤτουν, ἔστι
and having-received to-the(-ones) and having-granted what they-asked it-is
δ' οἷς καὶ φόρους ἀνεὶς, τοῖς δὲ ἄλλο τι
and to-whom also tributes having-remitted to-the(-ones) and other something
καλὸν πεποιηκὼς, πᾶσι δὲ λαλήσας εἰρηνικά. Ὁμοίως
fine having-done to-all and having-spoken peaceable(-things) likewise
ἥκουσι πρέσβεις αὐτῷ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Περσῶν βασιλέως
come envoys to-him also from the of-Persians king
καὶ Αἰγύπτου, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ Καραμάνου τοῦ Κιλίκων
and of-Egypt but indeed also of-Karaman the of-Cilicians
ἐπάρχοντος, ξυγχαίροντές τε τῶν κατωρθωμένων καὶ ἅμα
governing rejoicing-with both in-the successes and at-once

ἐπαινοῦντες αὐτὸν τῆς τε ἀνδρείας καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ τῆς
praising him for-the both courage and virtue and the
ὑπὲρ τοῦ γένους σπουδῆς· καὶ δέχεται τούτους ἀσμένως,
for the race zeal and he-receives these gladly
καὶ τιμᾷ δώροις ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς φιλοτίμοις καὶ δὴ
and honors with-gifts other both many lavish and indeed
καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν λαφύρων, καὶ ἀποπέμπει λαμπρῶς.
also with-the(-ones) from the spoils and sends-away brilliantly
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῶν εὐγενῶν παίδων οὓς ἔλαβεν ἀριστίνδην
after and this of-the noble children whom he-took by-merit
ἐπιλεξάμενος, ἀποκαθίστησιν οὓς μὲν σωματοφύλακας καὶ
having-chosen he-appoints some indeed bodyguards and
περὶ αὑτὸν, οὓς δὲ καὶ περὶ τὴν ἄλλην θεραπείαν αὐτοῦ, τῆς
about himself some and also for the other service his of-the
τε φρονήσεως καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀρετῆς καὶ παιδείας θαυμάσας
both prudence and of-the other virtue and learning having-admired
αὐτούς· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥρᾳ τε σώματος διαλάμποντες
them and for they-were in-bloom both of-body shining
καὶ ψυχῆς εὐγενείᾳ καὶ εὐφυΐᾳ, τῇ τε τῶν τρόπων καὶ
and of-soul in-nobility and good-nature in-the both of-the ways and
τοῦ ἤθους καταστάσει πολὺ διαφέροντες, ἅτε γένους ὄντες
of-the character settledness much excelling as of-race being
ἐπισήμου τε καὶ λαμπροῦ καὶ φύσεως τυχόντες ἀρίστης
notable both and brilliant and of-nature having-obtained best
καὶ ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις πεπαιδευμένοι καλῶς. Ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
and in the palaces educated well likewise and also
τὴν τῶν παρθένων αἰδῶ καὶ κόσμον καὶ κάλλος ἐθαύμασε,
the of-the maidens modesty and order and beauty he-admired
καὶ τὴν ἐν τοῖς καλοῖς πᾶσι τοῦ γένους ὑπεροχήν.
and the in the fine(-things) all of-the race preeminence

75.1 Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις ἀφικνεῖται καὶ παρὰ τῶν
in and the same days arrives also from the
νήσων πρεσβεία τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἣν ἔπεμψε Κριτόβουλος
islands embassy to-the emperor which sent Kritoboulos
ὁ Ἰμβριώτης, ὁ καὶ τάδε ξυγγράψας, ἐνδιδοῦσα
the Imbriot the(-one) also these(-things) having-written surrendering
τὰς ἐν τῷ Αἰγαίῳ νήσους αὐτῷ, Ἴμβρον καὶ Λῆμνον
the in — Aegean islands to-him Imbros and Lemnos
καὶ Θάσον, κατηκόους οὔσας πρότερον τῷ βασιλεῖ
and Thasos subject being before to-the emperor
Κωνσταντίνῳ. Οἱ γὰρ ἐν αὐταῖς παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ σταλέντες
Constantine the for in them by him sent
ἄρχοντες πρότερον, μαθόντες τήν τε τῆς πόλεως ἅλωσιν
governors earlier having-learned the both of-the city capture
καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ θάνατον, ἀπογνόντες τοῖς ὅλοις εὐθὺς
and the his death having-despaired of-the whole at-once
ᾤχοντο φεύγοντες, οἱ μὲν, οἱ Λήμνιοι, μετὰ τῶν
went-off fleeing the(-ones) indeed the Lemnians with the
Ἰταλικῶν τριήρεων καταχθεισῶν ἐν ἄκρᾳ τῆς Λήμνου ἐν
Italian triremes brought-in at headland — of-Lemnos in
τῇ φυγῇ τῇ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ὑποστροφῇ, οἱ δὲ
the flight the from the city and return the(-ones) and
ἐν τῇ Ἴμβρῳ μετὰ τῶν ὁλκάδων καταχθεισῶν καὶ αὐτῶν
in — Imbros with the merchantmen brought-in also themselves
ἐν τῷ Κεφάλῳ λεγομένῳ, ἄκρᾳ τῆς Ἴμβρου. Οἱ δὲ
at — Kephalos called headland — of-Imbros the(-people) and
ἐν ταῖς νήσοις ἰδόντες τε τὸν δρασμὸν τῶν ἀρχόντων,
in the islands having-seen both the flight of-the governors
καὶ δεδιότες τὴν ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως στόλου, μήποτε
and fearing the approach of-the emperor's fleet lest-ever
ἐπιπλεύσῃ αὐτοῖς (ἤδη γὰρ ἐπυνθάνοντο ὑποστρέφοντα
it-sail-against them already for they-learned returning

τοῦτον ἐν Καλλιουπόλει), δρασμὸν ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ
it at Kallipolis flight they-planned and
μέντοι γε καὶ ἀπέδρων τῶν Λημνίων ἐγγύς που
indeed at-least also ran-away of-the Lemnians near somewhere
διακόσιοι ἄνδρες ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις, οἱ μὲν
two-hundred men with wives and children the(-ones) indeed
ἐς Κρήτην, οἱ δὲ ἐς Χίον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Εὔβοιαν
to Crete the(-ones) and to Chios the(-ones) and to Euboea
ἀπαχθέντες. Κριτόβουλος δὲ τοῦτο μαθὼν ἀνέσχε τε
carried-off Kritoboulos and this having-learned held-back both
τούτους τῆς ὁρμῆς, χρηστοῖς ἐλπίσι κουφίσας, καὶ
them from-the impulse with-good hopes having-lightened(-them) and
ἄνδρα πιστὸν αὐτῷ πέμπει κρύφα Χαμούζᾳ τῷ σατράπῃ
man trustworthy to-him sends secretly to-Hamza the satrap
Καλλιουπόλεως καὶ ἡγεμόνι τοῦ στόλου παντὸς, καὶ μετ'
of-Kallipolis and leader of-the fleet whole and with
αὐτοῦ ξυνθήκας ποιεῖται μὴ ἐπιπλεύσεσθαι ταῖς νήσοις,
him agreements makes not to-sail-against the islands
μηδὲ κακόν τι μηδὲν ταύταις ὅλως ἢ βουλεῦσαι ἢ
nor evil any none to-them at-all either to-plan or
πρᾶξαι, πολλοῖς δώροις ἀναπείσας αὐτὸν, καὶ δι' αὐτοῦ
to-do with-many gifts having-persuaded him and through him
μέσου πέμπει δὴ καὶ πρέσβεις ὡς βασιλέα τόν τε
as-mediator he-sends indeed also envoys to emperor the both
ἱερέα τῆς νήσου καὶ ἄρχοντα μετ' αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐγχωρίων,
priest of-the island and governor with him of-the natives
δῶρά τε κομίζοντας καὶ ἐνδιδόντας τὰς νήσους αὐτῷ
gifts both bringing and surrendering the islands to-him
καὶ ἅμα παρακαλοῦντας ἐâσαί τε μένειν αὐτὰς ἐν τῇ
and at-once begging to-allow both to-remain them in the
προτέρᾳ αὐτῶν καταστάσει οἰκουμένας καὶ ἀποφέρειν αὐτῷ
former their state inhabited and to-pay to-him

τούς τε ὡρισμένους φόρους ἐτησίως καὶ ἄρχοντα ἔχειν
the both fixed tributes yearly and governor to-have
ὃν ἂν κελεύσῃ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως
whomever — he-should-order emperor and receives them mildly
καὶ παρέχει τὰ αἰτηθέντα καὶ δωρεῖται τὰς νήσους
and grants the(-things) asked and gives the islands
καθὼς ἦσαν ἐν τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως καιρῷ τεταγμέναι,
as they-were in the of-the emperor time arranged
Ἴμβρον μὲν Παλαμήδῃ τῷ τῆς Αἴνου ἐπάρχοντι, Λῆμνον
Imbros indeed to-Palamedes the — of-Ainos governor Lemnos
δὲ καὶ Θάσον Δωριεῖ τῷ Μυτιλήνης ἡγεμόνι. Ἔτυχον
but and Thasos to-Dorino the of-Mytilene leader they-happened
γὰρ τότε ὁ μὲν ἀποστείλας τὸν υἱὸν πρέσβυν ὡς
for then the(-one) indeed having-sent the son as-envoy to
βασιλέα, ὁ Δωριεύς, ὁ δὲ ἄρχοντα τῶν πρώτων παρ᾽
emperor — Dorino the(-one) and official of-the first(-men) with
αὐτῷ καὶ σφόδρα οἰκείων, ὁ Παλαμήδης, κατὰ ζήτησιν
him and very intimate — Palamedes in quest
τῶν αὐτῶν νήσων· οἷς καὶ ξυνέπραξαν τὰ μάλιστα
of-the same islands with-whom also helped-together the most
οἱ παρὰ τοῦ Κριτοβούλου πρέσβεις σταλέντες, ἔχοντες
the from — Kritoboulos envoys sent having
ἀνάθεσιν ταύτην καὶ ἐξαιτήσαντες καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῦτο παρὰ
commission this and having-requested also themselves this from
τοῦ βασιλέως. Οὕτως ἠλευθέρωντο τοῦ τότε κινδύνου αἱ
the emperor so were-freed from-the then danger the
νῆσοι· προσεδοκᾶτο γὰρ αὐταῖς κίνδυνος οὐχ ὁ τυχὼν ἐν
islands was-expected for for-them danger not the ordinary in
τῇ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως ἐπανόδῳ τοῦ στόλου ἐς Καλλιούπολιν.
the from the city return of-the fleet to Kallipolis

Κατὰ δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς ἡμέρας ξυλλαμβάνει καὶ Χαλίλην 76.1
in and the same days arrests also Halil
ὁ βασιλεύς, ἄνδρα τῶν πρώτων παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ
the emperor man of-the first(-men) with him and
μέγα δυναμένων, καὶ ἐς εἱρκτὴν ἐμβάλλει, καὶ πολλὰ
greatly powerful and into prison throws and much
αἰκισάμενος ἀναιρεῖ· εὕρηται δὲ πολύ τι χρῆμα χρυσοῦ
having-tortured(-him) kills has-been-found and great some quantity of-gold
καὶ ἀργύρου ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ πλούτου παντοδαποῦ ἐκ παλαιῶν
and of-silver in him and of-wealth of-every-kind from ancient
ἤδη χρόνων ξυλλεγέντος παρά τε τῶν προγόνων καὶ αὐτοῦ
already times collected from both the forefathers and himself
δή· ἦν γὰρ ὁ ἀνὴρ τῶν εὖ γεγονότων παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς,
indeed was for the man of-the(-ones) well born among them
καὶ ἐπὶ δόξῃ καὶ πλούτῳ διαφανῶν καὶ δυνάμει. Πάντα
and in glory and wealth conspicuous and power all
οὖν τὸν πλοῦτον ἐπῆξεν ἐς τὸ βασιλικὸν ταμιεῖον, πλὴν
then the wealth he-brought into the royal treasury except
ὧν κατέλιπε τοῖς υἱέσιν αὐτοῦ εὐαριθμήτων πάνυ· ὕστερον
what he-left to-the sons his easy-to-count very later
μέντοι πάντα ἀπέδωκεν αὐτοῖς. Εἶχε δ᾽ αἰτίας καὶ ἄλλας
however all he-gave-back to-them he-had and causes also other
μὲν, δι᾽ ἃς εἰκότως ὠργίζετο αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς, αἱ
indeed for which naturally was-angry with-him the emperor the(-causes)
δὲ μείζους ἦσαν αὗται, ὅτι τε, ζῶντος αὐτῷ τοῦ πατρὸς,
and greater were these that both living for-him the father
ἐν πολλοῖς ἠναντίωτο μέγα δυνάμενος παρ᾽ αὐτῷ, καὶ
in many(-things) he-had-opposed(-him) greatly being-powerful with him and
δὴ καὶ κύριον ἔτι ζῶντος ἀποδείξαντος αὐτὸν τῆς
indeed also lord while-still living having-appointed him of-the
ὅλης ἀρχῆς, ἐσηγήσεσι τούτου πάλιν παρέλυσε ταύτης, καὶ
whole rule by-the-proposals of-this-man again removed(-him) from-it and

ὅτι ἐς τὸν κατὰ τῆς πόλεως πόλεμον ἀποτρέπων τε ἦν
that to the against the city war dissuading both was
αὐτὸν, καὶ ἐν ἀπορρήτοις ἐκοινολογεῖτο Ῥωμαίοις, ἔκφορα
him and in secrets communed with-Romans published
καθιστὰς τὰ αὐτοῦ, καὶ πάντα τρόπον ἀντιπράττων
making the(-things) his and in-every way working-against
τε ἦν αὐτῷ καὶ ἐναντιούμενος. Καὶ αὗται μὲν ἦσαν αἰτίαι
both was him and opposing and these indeed were causes
προηγούμεναι ἐς τὸ φανερὸν τῆς τε ξυλλήψεως αὐτοῦ
leading in the open of-the both arrest his
καὶ τῆς ἀναιρέσεως· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι τῶν ἀφανῶν.
and of-the killing there-were and also others of-the hidden(-causes)
Ἐς δὲ τὴν τούτου τάξιν ἀντικατέστησεν Ἰσαάκην, ἄνδρα
into and the of-this-man rank he-appointed-instead Isaac man
τῶν πάνυ ξυνετῶν τε καὶ πολλῶν πραγμάτων ἔμπειρον,
of-the very intelligent both and of-many affairs experienced
ἀλλὰ δὲ καὶ στρατηγικὸν καὶ ἀνδρεῖον.
but and also skilled-in-generalship and brave

77.1 Μετ᾽ οὐ πολλὰς δὲ ἡμέρας παραλύει καὶ Ζάγανον τῆς τε
after not many and days he-removes also Zaganos from-the both
ἀρχῆς ἅμα καὶ τάξεως, ἀπολύσας αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα,
rule at-once and rank having-released from-him also the daughter
ἣν νεωστὶ γεγαμηκὼς ἦν· καὶ πέμπει δὴ τοῦτον ξὺν τῇ
whom lately married he-had and sends indeed him with the
θυγατρὶ ἐς Ἀσίαν, δοὺς αὐτοῖς καὶ χώραν ἱκανὴν ἐκεῖ
daughter to Asia having-given to-them also land sufficient there
ἐς διατροφήν· ἀντικαθιστᾷ δὲ ἐς τὴν τούτου τάξιν τε
for nourishment he-appoints-instead and into the of-this-man rank both
καὶ ἀρχὴν καὶ τῶν ὅλων πραγμάτων ἐπιμέλειαν τὸν ἐπὶ
and rule and of-the whole affairs care the on
τῇ ἑτέρᾳ θυγατρὶ αὐτοῦ κηδεστὴν Μαχουμούτεα, ἄνδρα τὰ
the other daughter his son-in-law Mahmud man the

πρῶτα μὲν φέροντα τοῦ γένους Ῥωμαίων πρός τε πατρὸς
first(-places) indeed carrying of-the race of-Romans on both father's
καὶ μητρὸς (ὁ δέ γε πρὸς πατρὸς πάππος αὐτῷ
and mother's(-side) the and at-least on father's(-side) grandfather to-him
Φιλανινὸς καὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἦρχε καὶ τῇ τοῦ Καίσαρος
Philaninos also — of-Hellas ruled and with-the — of-Caesar
ἀξίᾳ ἐτετίμητο), οὕτω δὲ φύσεως ἀρίστης λαχόντα, ὡς
rank had-been-honored so and of-nature best having-obtained as
ἀποκρύψαι μὴ μόνον τοὺς κατ' αὐτὸν ἅπαντας, ἀλλὰ
to-eclipse not only the(-ones) in his(-time) all but
δὴ καὶ τοὺς πρὸ αὐτοῦ ἔν τε φρονήσει καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ
indeed also the(-ones) before him in both prudence and courage
καὶ ἀρετῇ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καλοῖς· ὀξὺν μὲν οἴκοθεν
and virtue and the other fine(-things) keen indeed by-himself
ξυνιδεῖν τὸ δέον καὶ, ἄλλου εἰπόντος, νοῆσαι, ὀξύτερον
to-perceive the needful and of-another having-spoken to-understand keener
δ' ἑλέσθαι καὶ καταπρᾶξαι, ἔτι δὲ δεινὸν μὲν ὁμιλῆσαι
and to-choose and to-carry-out further and clever indeed to-deal
πλήθει καὶ πολλῶν ἄρξαι, δεινότερον δὲ πράγμασι
with-multitude and many to-rule cleverer and with-affairs
χρήσασθαι καὶ ἐν ἀπόροις πόρον εὑρεῖν, μεγαλοπράγμονα,
to-deal and in difficulties way to-find great-in-enterprise
βουλευτικὸν, εὐθαρσῆ, γενναῖον, ἄριστον διὰ πάντων,
deliberative courageous noble best through all
ὡς ἔδειξαν αὐτὸν οἵ τε καιροὶ καὶ τὰ πράγματα· ἐξ
as showed him the both times and the affairs from
ὅτου γὰρ οὗτος γέγονεν ἐν τοῖς τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως
when for this-man came-to-be in the of-the great emperor
πράγμασι, πάντα τὰ τῆς μεγάλης ταύτης ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ
affairs all the(-things) of-the great this rule to
τὸ κρεῖττον ἐπέδωκε τῇ τε θαυμαστῇ σπουδῇ καὶ ταῖς
the better advanced by-the both marvelous zeal and by-the

ἀρίσταις βουλαῖς καὶ τῇ καθαρᾷ καὶ ἀδόλῳ τούτου πρὸς
best counsels and by-the pure and guileless of-this-man toward
τὸν κρατοῦντα πίστει τε καὶ εὐνοίᾳ· οὕτω κρείττονος
the ruler faith both and goodwill so of-better
τοῖς ὅλοις φύσεως ἦν τε ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ διεδείχθη τοῖς
in-the whole nature was both the man and was-shown in-the
πράγμασι. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ταῦτα πράξας ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει
affairs emperor and these(-things) having-done in Adrianople
ἐπάνεισι φθινοπώρου ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον· καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν δὴ
returns in-autumn to — Byzantium and sixtieth indeed
καὶ ἓν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς
and one year besides the nine-hundred and six-thousand in-the
ὅλοις ἠνύετο, τρίτον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
total was-being-completed third and of-the rule for-the emperor

II · AINOS, SERBIA, AND THE ISLANDS

Mehmed repeoples Constantinople, makes Gennadios patriarch, and sends his fleet against Kos. He takes Novo-Brdo, then Ainos from Dorino Gattilusio (Yunus gives Imbros to Kritoboulos), besieges Belgrade, where John, leader of the Paionians, breaks the assault and Mehmed is wounded, and Ali besieges Smederevo after Lazar's death. The pope's fleet under Ludovico seizes Lemnos and Thasos.

Περιέχει ἥδε τήν τε τῆς Αἴνου προσχώρησιν καὶ
it-contains this(-book) the both — of-Ainos surrender and
τὸν πόλεμον τῶν Τριβαλλῶν καὶ τὴν τελείαν τούτων
the war of-the Triballians and the complete of-these
καταστροφὴν καὶ δουλείαν, τήν τε τῶν νήσων Λήμνου
subjugation and slavery the both of-the islands of-Lemnos

καὶ Θάσου καὶ Σαμοθράκης ἅλωσιν παρὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν.
and Thasos and Samothrace capture by the Italians
Χρόνου πλῆθος ἔτη τρία.
of-time length years three
Βασιλεὺς δὲ καταλαβὼν τὴν Κωνσταντίνου πρῶτον μὲν 1.1
emperor and having-reached the of-Constantine(-city) first indeed
πάνυ τοι προὔργου ποιεῖται τόν τε τῆς πόλεως ξυνοικισμὸν
very surely advantageous makes the both of-the city resettlement
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ταύτης ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ διόρθωσιν· καὶ πέμπει
and the other of-it care and restoration and sends
δὴ προστάγματα καὶ διατάξεις βασιλικὰς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν
indeed commands and ordinances royal through all
αὐτοῦ τὴν ἀρχὴν, μετοικίζων ἐς αὐτὴν πλείστους ὅσους
his the rule transferring into it most as-many-as
οὐ μόνον Χριστιανῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ ἰδίου σφῶν γένους καὶ
not only of-Christians but also of-the own their race and
δὴ καὶ Ἑβραίων τοὺς πολλούς. Ἔπειτα κελεύει τὰ
indeed also of-Hebrews the many then he-orders the(-parts)
καταρριφθέντα τοῦ τείχους παρὰ τῶν μηχανῶν τειχίζειν
hurled-down of-the wall by the engines to-wall
τε ἀσφαλῶς πάντα, καὶ ὅπη ἄλλη πεπονηκὸς ἦν τῷ
both securely all and wherever else worn-out it-was by-the
χρόνῳ κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν ἀνορθοῦν. Καταβάλλει
time by both land and sea to-set-upright he-lays
δὲ καὶ θεμελίους τῶν βασιλείων, ἀπολεξάμενος ὅπερ ἔφην
and also foundations of-the palaces having-chosen as I-said
τὸν πλεῖστον καὶ κάλλιστον χῶρον τῆς πόλεως. Ἔτι δὲ
the greatest and finest place of-the city further and
κελεύει τειχίζειν καὶ φρούριον ἐρυμνὸν περί που τὴν
he-orders to-wall also fortress strong around somewhere —
Χρυσέαν, ᾗ ποτε τῶν βασιλέων τὸ φρούριον ἦν, καὶ
Golden(-gate) where once of-the emperors the fortress was and

γίνεσθαι ταῦτα πάντα κατὰ σπουδὴν, ἐργάζεσθαι δὲ
to-happen these(-things) all with zeal to-work and
τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους Ῥωμαίους λαμβάνοντας τῆς ἡμέρας
the captive Romans receiving for-the day
μισθὸν ἀνὰ νομισμάτων ἓξ ἢ καὶ πλείω. Ἦν δὲ τοῦτο
wage of coins six or even more was and this
τρόπον τινὰ πρόνοια παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις
in-a-way some provision from the emperor for-the captives
τοῦ τε διατρέφεσθαι καὶ τοῦ τὴν ἰδίαν ὠνὴν εὐποροῦντας
of-the both to-be-fed and of-the the own price being-well-off
ἐκ τούτου ἔχειν κατατίθεσθαι τοῖς σφῶν κυρίοις, καὶ
from this to-be-able to-pay-down to-the their masters and
ἐλευθέρους γινομένους κατοικεῖν ἐν τῇ πόλει· οὐ μόνον δὲ,
free becoming to-dwell in the city not only and
ἀλλὰ καὶ φιλανθρωπίᾳ πολλῇ καὶ εὐποιίᾳ, προσέτι γε
but also love-of-mankind much and beneficence besides at-least
μὴν καὶ μεγαλοψυχίᾳ βασιλικῇ καὶ περὶ πάντας μὲν τοὺς
indeed also magnanimity royal and toward all indeed the
ἄλλους ἁπλῶς, οὐχ ἥκιστα δὲ περὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους
others simply not least and toward the captives
τούτους ἐχρῆτο, ἐλεῶν τε αὐτοὺς καὶ καθ' ἡμέραν φιλοτίμως
these he-used pitying both them and by day lavishly
εὐεργετῶν. Ἐξερχόμενος γὰρ τῶν βασιλείων πολλάκις καὶ
benefiting(-them) going-out for from-the palaces often and
κατὰ θέαν τὴν πόλιν περιιὼν ἢ ἄλλως γέ πως, εἴ πού
for sight the city going-around or otherwise at-least somehow if somewhere
τισιν ἐνετύγχανε τούτων, εὐθὺς ἀνέχων τὸν ἵππον διεδίδου
some he-met of-these at-once checking the horse he-distributed
πᾶσι δαψιλῶς αὐτοχειρὶ καὶ ἀργυρίου νομίσματα καὶ
to-all lavishly with-his-own-hand both of-silver coins and
χρυσίου πολλάκις· τοσοῦτος ἔλεος εἶχεν αὐτὸν τῶν ἀνδρῶν.
of-gold often so-much pity held him for-the men

Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις μετακαλεῖται καὶ τὸν Γεννάδιον, 2.1
in and the same days he-summons also — Gennadios
ἄνδρα σοφὸν πάνυ καὶ θαυμαστόν· τούτου γὰρ τῆς τε
man wise very and marvelous of-him for of-the both
σοφίας καὶ φρονήσεως καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ πρόσθεν πολὺν
wisdom and prudence and virtue also before much
ἔχων λόγον ὑπὸ τῆς φήμης, εὐθὺς μετὰ τὴν ἅλωσιν ἐζήτει
having account from the report at-once after the capture he-sought
τὸν ἄνδρα, ποθῶν ἰδεῖν τε αὐτὸν καὶ ἀκοῦσαι τῆς σοφίας
the man longing to-see both him and to-hear the wisdom
αὐτοῦ· ἔνθεν τοι καὶ ξὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ ζητήσας αὐτὸν ἐν
his whence surely also with much toil having-sought him in
Ἀδριανουπόλει εὑρίσκει παρά τινι τῶν δυνατῶν ἐν κώμῃ
Adrianople he-finds with one of-the powerful in village
τινὶ φυλαττόμενον, ἐν πολλῇ δὲ θεραπείᾳ τυγχάνοντα·
some guarded in much and attendance happening(-to-be)
ἠδεῖτο γὰρ αὐτοῦ τὴν ἀρετὴν ὁ κατέχων, καὶ πολέμιος
revered for his the virtue the(-one) holding(-him) even enemy
ὤν. Ἰδὼν δὲ τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ πεῖραν ὡς ἐν
being having-seen and him the emperor and trial as in
ὀλίγῳ λαβὼν τῆς τε σοφίας καὶ ξυνέσεως καὶ ἀρετῆς
little having-taken of-the both wisdom and understanding and virtue
τοῦ ἀνδρὸς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῆς τοῦ λόγου δυνάμεώς τε καὶ
of-the man further and also of-the of-the speech power both and
χάριτος, ἐθαύμασέ τε τοῦτον διαφερόντως καὶ ἐν πολλῇ
grace marveled-at both him exceedingly and in much
ἦγε θεραπείᾳ τε καὶ τιμῇ, χώραν τε διδοὺς αὐτῷ τῆς
held attendance both and honor room both giving to-him of-the
εἰσόδου τῆς παρ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ ὁμιλίας ἀξιῶν ἐλευθέρας καὶ
entry the to him and of-converse deeming-worthy free and
ἡδόμενος τοῖς τε λόγοις αὐτοῦ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ξυντυχίαις
delighting in-the both words his and the other meetings

καὶ ἀποκρίσεσι· τιμᾷ δὲ καὶ δώροις αὐτὸν φιλοτίμοις τε
and answers he-honors and also with-gifts him lavish both
καὶ ἐντίμοις, καὶ τέλος πατριάρχην καθίστησι καὶ ἀρχιερέα
and honorable and finally patriarch appoints and high-priest
Χριστιανοῖς, πολλαῖς ἀξιώσεσι καὶ ἀνάγκαις χαρισάμενος
for-Christians with-many requests and compulsions having-granted
αὐτῷ ξὺν πολλοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ τὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας κράτος
to-him with many others also the of-the church power
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην δύναμιν καὶ ἀρχὴν, οὐδὲν ἧττον ἧς εἶχε
and the other authority and rule nothing less than-what it-had
πρόσθεν παρὰ τῶν βασιλέων. Καὶ διαλέξεις δὲ πολλὰς καὶ
before from the emperors and discussions too many and
καλὰς περὶ τῆς τῶν Χριστιανῶν πίστεως καὶ θεολογίας
fine about the of-the Christians faith and theology
ἐνδίδωσιν αὐτῷ ἐνώπιον αὑτοῦ ἀδεῶς καὶ ἐλευθέρως
he-grants to-him before himself fearlessly and freely
ποιεῖσθαι, αὐτὸς φοιτῶν παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἄγων τε μεθ᾽ αὑτοῦ
to-make himself visiting to him leading both with himself
καὶ τοὺς παρ᾽ αὐτῷ ἐντίμους τε καὶ σοφοὺς, τιμῶν κἀν
also the(-ones) with him honored both and wise honoring also-in
τούτοις αὐτόν· καὶ πολλοῖς δὲ ἄλλοις ἀγάλλει τὸν ἄνδρα·
these(-ways) him and with-many too other(-things) he-adorns the man
οὕτως οἶδεν αἰδεῖσθαι ἀνδρὸς ἀρετὴν οὐ πολέμιος μόνον,
so knows to-revere of-man virtue not enemy only
ἀλλὰ καὶ τάξις πᾶσα, βασιλέως, φημὶ, καὶ δυναστῶν. Καὶ
but also rank all of-emperor I-mean and of-potentates and
οὕτω δὴ καὶ τὴν ἐκκλησίαν Χριστιανοῖς θεοῦ θελήματι
so indeed also the church to-Christians by-God's will
μετὰ πολλοῦ τοῦ περιόντος ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀποδίδωσι.
with much the abundance the emperor gives-back

Οὕτω δὲ διαθεὶς τὰ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν ὁ βασιλεὺς 3.1
so and having-arranged the(-things) concerning the city the emperor
ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν διαβαίνει, καὶ καταλαβὼν τὴν Προυσίου
into — Asia crosses and having-reached the of-Prousias(-city)
σπένδει τε τῷ πατρὶ καὶ ἁγιστείας ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦδε τάφῳ
pours-libations both to-the father and rites at the his tomb
καὶ μνημόσυνα τελεῖ μεγαλοπρεπῶς, κοσμεῖ δὲ τοῦτον
and memorials performs magnificently adorns and it
ἀναθήμασι πολυτελέσι καὶ δώροις βασιλικοῖς. Ἔπειτα
with-offerings costly and with-gifts royal then
τὰ ἐν Ἀσίᾳ καθίστησιν, εἴ τί που νεωτερίζον ἦν
the(-things) in Asia he-settles if anything somewhere rebelling was
ἢ νεοχμοῦν ὅλως παρά τε τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἡγεμόνων τε καὶ
or making-new at-all from both the there leaders both and
γενῶν, ἢ ἄλλως γέ πως ἔχον, ἅπαντα καθιστάμενος,
races or otherwise at-least somehow being all(-things) settling
ἔτι τε σατραπείας ἀπολεγόμενος καὶ ἀρχὰς, καὶ ἄρχοντας
further both satrapies choosing and offices and officials
καὶ σατράπας ταύταις ἐγκαθιστὰς τά τε ἄλλα ἐν
and satraps in-these establishing the both other(-things) in
αὐτῇ πάντα καλῶς διορθωσάμενός τε καὶ πρὸς τὸ δοκοῦν
it all well having-set-right both and to the seeming
διαθεὶς ἐν πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ταῖς πάσαις ἡμέραις,
having-arranged in five and thirty the all days
ἔπαρχόν τε τῆς ὅλης Ἀσίας ἀποδείξας τὸν Χαμουζᾶν,
governor both of-the whole Asia having-appointed — Hamza
ἐπάνεισιν αὖθις ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον. Μικρὸν δὲ διατρίψας
returns again to — Byzantium a-little and having-stayed
αὐτοῦ καὶ ὅσον θεάσασθαι τὰς ταύτῃ γεγενημένας
there and as-much-as to-view the there made
οἰκοδομὰς καὶ ἐπιτάξας ἃ δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐν αὐταῖς τε καὶ
buildings and having-ordered what is-needed to-do in them both and

τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασι καὶ ὅτι τάχιστα ἀνύτειν τὰ ἔργα,
the others all and as quickly-as-possible to-accomplish the works
ὥρμησεν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ χειμῶνος. Κἀκεῖσε γενόμενος
he-set-out for the of-Hadrian(-city) in-winter and-there having-arrived
εὐθὺς μεταπέμπει Ἰονούζην τὸν σατράπην Καλλιουπόλεως
at-once he-summons Yunus the satrap of-Kallipolis
καὶ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου, καὶ κελεύει πάσῃ σπουδῇ τὸν
and leader of-the fleet and orders with-all zeal the
στόλον ἐξαρτύσαντα ἐπιπλεῖν τῇ τε Νάξῳ καὶ ταῖς περὶ
fleet having-fitted-out to-sail-against — both Naxos and the around
Ῥόδον νήσοις, Πάρῳ τε καὶ Ῥηνείᾳ καὶ Κῷ καὶ ταῖς
Rhodes islands Paros both and Rheneia and Kos and the
ἄλλαις ταῖς ταύτῃ. Ῥόδιοι γὰρ, τῶν ἄλλων ἁπάντων
others the(-ones) there Rhodians for of-the other all
νησιωτῶν ἐνσπόνδων ὄντων τε καὶ γενομένων τῷ βασιλεῖ,
islanders treaty-partners being both and having-become to-the emperor
μόνοι τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν διαλλαγάς τε καὶ σπονδὰς οὐκ
alone the toward him reconciliations both and truces not
ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ᾽ ἔμειναν ἔξω σπονδῶν, δεχόμενοι δὲ τὰς τῶν
accepted but remained outside truces receiving and the of-the
δυτικῶν Ἰβήρων καὶ Ἀλανῶν ληστρικὰς ναῦς καταιρούσας
western Iberians and Alans pirate ships putting-in
αὐτοῦ, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἑτέρας ἀντιπληροῦντες ἐκάκουν πᾶσαν
there and themselves others manning-in-turn harmed all
τὴν παραλίαν τοῦ βασιλέως. Ὡς δὲ καὶ οἱ Νάξιοι,
the coast of-the emperor likewise and also the Naxians
δεχόμενοι καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰς κατάρσεις τῶν πειρατῶν καὶ
receiving also themselves the landings of-the pirates and
παρέχοντες τούτοις σιτήσεις τε καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ
providing to-these provisions both and the other(-things) the(-ones)

πρὸς τὴν χρείαν, ἔβλαπτον καὶ αὐτοὶ οὐκ ὀλίγα τὴν
for the need harmed also themselves not few(-things) the
βασιλέως. Ἐπὶ τούτοις οὖν τὸν στόλον ἐξέπεμψεν.
emperor's(-land) for these(-things) then the fleet he-sent-out
Ἰονούζης δὲ πληρώσας ὀγδοήκοντα ναῦς στρατιώτιδας καὶ 4.1
Yunus and having-manned eighty ships of-war and
ὁπλίσας καλῶς, καὶ ἑτέρας σκευαγωγοὺς οὐκ ὀλίγας
having-armed(-them) well and others baggage-carrying not few
καὶ φερούσας τὰς μηχανὰς, ἀναχθεὶς ἀπὸ Καλλιουπόλεως
and carrying the engines having-put-out from Kallipolis
ἔπλει διὰ τοῦ Ἑλλησποντικοῦ πορθμοῦ εὐθὺ τῶν
sailed through — Hellespontine strait straight-for —
Αἰγοσποταμῶν, καὶ παραμείψας Σηστόν τε καὶ Ἄβυδον
Aigospotamoi and having-passed Sestos both and Abydos
καὶ τὰς καλουμένας Κυνὸς κεφαλὰς, γίνεται κατὰ τὴν
and the called Dog's heads comes at —
Δαρδανίαν πρὸς τῷ στόματι τοῦ πορθμοῦ· παραπλεύσας δὲ
Dardania by the mouth of-the strait having-sailed-past and
τό τε Ῥοῖον τὸ Τρωικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἀχιλλέως σῆμα κατήχθη ἐς
— both Rhoiteion the Trojan and the of-Achilles tomb he-put-in at
Τένεδον· ἐπιμείνας δὲ ταύτῃ δύο ἡμέρας καὶ ὑδρευσάμενος
Tenedos having-stayed and there two days and having-taken-water
τάς τε ναῦς ἁπάσας ξυναγαγὼν (ὑστέριζον γὰρ ἔτι τούτων
the both ships all having-gathered were-lagging for still of-these
ἔνιαι, κατὰ τὴν ταύτῃ παραλίαν ἐρέτας ξυλλέγουσαι),
some along the there coast rowers collecting
νυκτὸς ἄρας, ἵνα μὴ ἔκπυστος γένηται θεαθεὶς
by-night having-set-out so-that not discovered he-might-become being-seen
(ἐβούλετο γὰρ λανθάνειν ὡς τὰ πολλὰ), ἔπλει τὸ Αἰγαῖον,
he-wished for to-escape-notice as the most he-sailed — Aegean
ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἔχων τὰς Κυανίδας νήσους κατὰ πρύμναν, ἐν
on right indeed having the Kyanian islands at stern on

ἀριστερᾷ δὲ τὴν Λέσβον κατὰ πρώραν. Αἴφνης δὲ σφοδροῦ
left and — Lesbos at prow suddenly and violent
καταρραγέντος χειμῶνος καὶ κλύδωνος μετὰ λάβρων ὑετῶν
having-broken-out storm and surge with violent rains
καὶ ἀστραπῶν καὶ βροντῶν καὶ πνευμάτων ἐξαισίων καὶ
and lightnings and thunders and winds extraordinary and
σκότους, τῆς τε θαλάσσης ἀγριουμένης καὶ τρικυμίας
darkness of-the both sea growing-wild and triple-wave
ἐγειρούσης μεγάλας, ὥσπερ ξύνηθες τῷ Αἰγαίῳ, τὰ μὲν
raising great as customary — in-Aegean the indeed
πρῶτα ἔπλεον αἱ νῆες πᾶσαι περί που τὸν φρυκτὸν τῆς
first sailed the ships all around somewhere the beacon of-the
στρατηγίδος νεὼς, ἐπόμεναι ταύτῃ, ἅτε δὲ ἐν νυκτὶ καὶ σκότῳ
flagship ship following it as but in night and darkness
βαθεῖ καὶ τρικυμίᾳ μεγίστῃ καὶ καταιγίδι καὶ πνευμάτων
deep and triple-wave greatest and squall and of-winds
ἀντιπνοίαις ἀτάκτως φερόμεναι ξυνέπιπτον ἀλλήλαις καὶ
counter-blasts in-disorder borne collided with-one-another and
προσηράσσοντο, καὶ κατεδύοντο αἱ πλείους αὐτοῦ, ὥστε καὶ
dashed-together and were-sunk the most there so-that also
τὴν στρατηγίδα ναῦν μικροῦ κατέδυσαν ἂν ἐπεισπεσοῦσαι
the flagship ship nearly they-would-have-sunk — falling-upon(-it)
ἀθρόαι, εἰ μὴ ὁ κυβερνήτης τοῦτο αἰσθόμενος εὐθὺς
all-together if not the helmsman this having-perceived at-once
ἀφανίζει τὸν φρυκτόν. Καὶ οὕτω δὴ σκεδασθεῖσαι ἄλλῃ καὶ
blots-out the beacon and so indeed scattered here and
ἄλλῃ τοῦ πελάγους ἐφέροντο παννύχιοι χειμαζόμεναι, ἕως
there of-the sea they-were-borne all-night storm-tossed until
ἡμέρα τε ἐγένετο καὶ κατήχθησαν μόγις που ἄλλῃ καὶ
day both came and they-put-in scarcely somewhere here and
ἄλλῃ τῆς ταύτῃ ἠπείρου, ὡς ἔτυχον ἑκάστη περισωθεῖσα
there of-the there mainland as happened each having-come-safe-out

τοῦ κλύδωνος. Ἔνιαι δὲ καὶ καταχθεῖσαι μικρὸν ἀπωτέρω
of-the surge some and also having-put-in a-little farther
τῆς γῆς κατέδυσαν, ὑφάλοις τε καὶ σπιλάσιν ἐγκύρσασαι,
from-the land sank on-reefs both and rocks having-struck
αἱ δὲ τὰς μηχανὰς φέρουσαι νῆες ὑπό τε τῆς βίας
the and the engines carrying ships by both the force
τοῦ ῥοῦ καὶ τῆς τρικυμίας ἀτάκτως φερόμεναι, αἱ
of-the current and the triple-wave in-disorder borne the(-ones)
μὲν αὐτῶν σκοπέλοις τε καὶ ἀκταῖς προσαρράξασαι
indeed of-them on-crags both and shores having-dashed
ξυνετρίβησαν, καὶ αἱ ἐν αὐταῖς μηχαναὶ αὐτοῦ που
were-smashed and the in them engines there somewhere
κατέδυσαν, αἱ δ᾽ ὀψὲ καὶ μόλις περιεσώθησαν.
sank the(-ones) and late and scarcely came-safe-through
Ἰονούζης δὲ μετὰ νεῶν ἓξ ἀπολειφθεὶς καὶ πανήμερος ἐν 5.1
Yunus and with ships six left-behind and all-day in
τῷ πελάγει χειμαζόμενός τε καὶ κλυδωνιζόμενος μόλις
the open-sea storm-tossed both and wave-beaten scarcely
που καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἐς τὸν ἐν τῇ Χίῳ
somewhere also himself toward evening into the in — Chios
κατήχθη λιμένα, διάβροχος καὶ πάντα τὰ ἐπὶ τῶν
put-in harbor drenched and all the(-things) on the
καταστρωμάτων ἀποβαλών· παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθε κίνδυνον·
decks having-lost by so-much he-came danger
ἡμέρας δὲ τρεῖς ἐπιμείνας ἐν Χίῳ καὶ τὸν περιλειφθέντα
days and three having-stayed in Chios and the remaining
στόλον πάντα ξυναγαγὼν καὶ ἐπισκευάσας ἐκ τῶν
fleet all having-gathered and having-repaired from the
ἐνόντων, ἀναχθεὶς ἐκεῖθεν καταίρει ἐς Κῶν τὴν νῆσον,
available(-means) having-put-out thence he-lands at Kos the island
καὶ ἀποβὰς ἔκειρέ τε τὴν γῆν τῶν Κῴων, καὶ
and having-disembarked ravaged both the land of-the Koans and

προσβαλὼν τῷ ἄστει, ἐπολιόρκει ἐπὶ τρισὶν ἡμέραις· ὡς δ'
having-attacked the town besieged(-it) for three days when but
οὐδὲν ἤνυεν, ἐμπρήσας τὰς πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος οἰκίας, καὶ
nothing be-accomplished having-burned the before the town houses and
πᾶσαν τὴν ἄλλην νῆσον καταδραμὼν καὶ κώμας διαρπάσας
all the other island having-overrun and villages having-plundered
καὶ λείαν πλείστην ἐλάσας καὶ ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐνθέμενος
and booty very-much having-driven and in-the ships having-put
ἐπανήει. Γενόμενος δὲ κατὰ Φώκαιαν τὴν νέαν λεγομένην,
returned having-come and to Phokaia the new called
Χίων οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπόβασιν ποιησάμενος παρεστήσατο
of-Chians being and landing having-made he-brought-to-terms
ταύτην ὁμολογίᾳ. Τοῦτο δ' ἐποίησεν ἐνσπόνδοις ὀργὴν
it by-agreement this and he-did treaty-partners anger
ἔχων τοῖς Χίοις, ὅτι γε οὐκ ἐδέξαντο τοῦτον καλῶς
having at-the Chians that at-least not they-received him well
ἐκεῖ καταχθέντα, οὐδὲ τοῖς προσήκουσι δώροις ἐτίμησαν.
there having-put-in nor with-the fitting gifts honored(-him)
Διαθεὶς δὲ τὰ κατὰ τὴν Φώκαιαν ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ
having-arranged and the(-things) concerning — Phokaia as was to-him
κατὰ νοῦν, καὶ φυλακὴν ἐγκαταστήσας αὐτῇ καὶ παῖδας
according-to mind and garrison having-established in-it and children
λαβὼν ἀπέπλευσεν ἐπὶ οἴκου ἐς Καλλιούπολιν καὶ διέλυσε
having-taken sailed-away to home to Kallipolis and dissolved
τὸν στόλον. Ἀπέβαλε δὲ τῶν νεῶν ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι πέντε
the fleet he-lost and of-the ships in the storm five
καὶ εἴκοσι μετά γε τῶν σκευαγωγῶν τὰς πάσας. Ἐφ'
and twenty with at-least the baggage-carriers the all(-together) at
ᾧ δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον, ὥς φασιν, ἔκτοτε ὠργίζετο αὐτῷ
which indeed also more as they-say from-then was-angry with-him

ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ δι᾽ αὐτό γε τοῦτο καὶ ἄλλας αἰτίας
the emperor and because-of very at-least this and other causes
μικρὸν ὕστερον ἀνεῖλεν αὐτόν. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ταύτῃ.
a-little later killed him and these(-things) indeed thus
Βασιλεὺς δ᾽ ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει διάγων χειμῶνος στρατιὰν 6.1
emperor and in Adrianople spending-time in-winter army
μεγάλην παρεσκεύαζεν ἐπὶ Τριβαλλούς· καὶ γὰρ ἦν
great prepared against Triballians and for he-was
προπυνθανόμενος τὰ ἐκεῖ νεοχμοῦντα· τὸν γὰρ τῶν
learning-beforehand the(-things) there innovating the for of-the
Τριβαλλῶν ἡγεμόνα νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμοῦντα κοινολογεῖσθαί
Triballians leader new(-things) desiring to-confer
τε καὶ λόγους προσφέρειν κρύφα τῷ βασιλεῖ Παιόνων,
both and words to-bring secretly to-the king of-Paionians
καὶ ξυνθήκας ποιεῖσθαι μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ὅπως καλῶς τε
and agreements to-make with him so-that well both
παρασκευασάμενος καὶ τὸν Ἴστρον διαβὰς ἐς τὴν τοῦ
having-prepared and — Istros having-crossed into the of-the
βασιλέως χώραν ἐμβάλλῃ ξυνεμβάλλοντι καὶ αὐτῷ·
emperor land he-should-invade invading-with also him
οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν ξυνήθη δασμὸν βραδέως
not only and but also the customary tribute slowly
τε πάνυ παρεῖχε καὶ πλημμελῶς, πλαττόμενος ἀεὶ
both very he-provided and faultily devising always
προφάσεις τε καὶ ἀναβολὰς οὐ καλάς· ἐφ᾽ ᾧ δὴ καὶ
pretexts both and postponements not fine at which indeed also
μᾶλλον ὠργίζετο ὁ βασιλεὺς τεκμαιρόμενος ἐκ τούτου
more was-angry the emperor inferring from this
νεωτέρων αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν· οὐ ταῦτα δὲ μόνον ἐνῆγεν
new(-things) him to-desire not these(-things) and only urged
αὐτὸν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ τῆς χώρας φύσις, αὐτάρκη θέσιν
him but also the of-the land nature self-sufficient position

παρεχομένη ἔς τε τὸν κατὰ Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν
providing for both the against Paionians both and Dacians
πόλεμον ἐκπεπολεμωμένων αὐτῷ, ὥστε ῥᾳδίας ἀπ' αὐτῆς
war made-enemies to-him so-as easy from it
ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων ἔχειν ποιεῖσθαι τὰς ἐσβολάς.
into the their(-land) to-be-able to-make the invasions

7.1 Ἡ γὰρ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν κεῖται μὲν ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τῆς
the(-land) for of-the Triballians lies indeed in vantage of-the
ἄνω Θρᾴκης, ἀρχομένη μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἄνω Μυσίας καὶ
upper Thrace beginning indeed from the upper Mysia and
τοῦ Αἵμονος ὄρους, παρήκουσα δὲ μέχρι τοῦ Ἴστρου, καὶ
the Haimos mountain extending and as-far-as — Istros and
ὁμοροῦσα δι' αὐτοῦ τῇ Δακῶν καὶ Παιόνων ἀρχῇ· ὁ
bordering through it on-the of-Dacians and Paionians rule —
γὰρ Ἴστρος, μέγιστος ὢν ποταμῶν τῶν κατὰ τὴν
for Istros greatest being of-rivers of-the(-ones) in —
Εὐρώπην, ἄρχεται μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν Κελτικῶν ὀρῶν, ῥέων
Europe begins indeed from the Celtic mountains flowing
δὲ δι' αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῆς τῶν Παιόνων τε
and through them but indeed also of-the(-land) of-the Paionians both
καὶ Δακῶν καὶ ἑτέρων οὐκ ὀλίγων γενῶν, καὶ πολλὴν
and Dacians and of-others not few races and much
διερχόμενος γῆν καὶ κρείττων αὐτὸς ἑαυτοῦ γινόμενος ἀεὶ
passing-through land and greater itself than-itself becoming always
ταῖς προσθήκαις τῶν ἐς αὐτὸν ἐσβαλλόντων ποταμῶν,
by-the additions of-the into it flowing rivers
τελευτᾷ μὲν ἐς τὴν Γετικήν τε καὶ Σκυθικὴν, καὶ δι'
ends indeed in — Getic both and Scythian(-land) and through
αὐτῶν ἐκδίδωσιν ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον. Περικλείει δὲ
them empties into — Euxine sea encloses and
ἐντὸς ἑαυτοῦ ἄλλα τε ἔθνη πολλὰ μαχιμώτατα, καὶ δὴ
within itself other both nations many most-warlike and indeed

καὶ τὰ Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν, οἷς ἐστιν ὅμορος,
also the(-nations) of-Paionians both and Dacians to-which is bordering
ὡς ἔφην, ἡ Τριβαλλῶν παρακειμένη τε τούτοις
as I-said the(-land) of-Triballians lying-beside both these
μέχρι πολλοῦ καὶ πόλεις ἔχουσα πολλὰς καὶ καλὰς ἐν τῇ
for long and cities having many and fine in the
μεσογείᾳ καὶ φρούρια ἐρυμνὰ περί που τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ
inland and fortresses strong around somewhere the banks of-the
ποταμοῦ· δι' ἃ δὴ καὶ μάλιστα ἀναγκαῖον ἐδόκει
river because-of which indeed also most necessary it-seemed
τῷ βασιλεῖ χειρώσασθαί τε αὐτὴν καὶ τὰ παρὰ τὰς
to-the emperor to-subdue both it and the along the
ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ φρούρια κατασχεῖν, ὅπως εἴη τῆς
banks of-the river fortresses to-seize so-that he-might-be of-the
τούτου διαβάσεως κύριος, καὶ ὅταν αὐτός γε ἐθέλῃ,
of-it crossing lord and whenever he at-least wishes
ῥᾳδίως ἔχῃ διαβαίνειν ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων κἀκείνους (τε)
easily might-be-able to-cross into the their(-land) and-them both
ἀπείργῃ τῆς ἐς τὴν αὐτοῦ διαβάσεως· οὐ μόνον δὲ,
might-bar from-the into the his(-land) crossing not only and
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ τῆς χώρας ἀρετὴ οὐδὲν ἧττον ἐπῆγεν αὐτὸν,
but also the of-the land excellence nothing less drew him
θαυμαστή τις οὖσα καὶ πᾶσιν εὐθηνουμένη τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς·
marvelous some being and with-all abounding the goods
ἥ τε γὰρ γῆ πάμφορός τέ ἐστιν αὐτῇ, ἐρρωμένη πρὸς
the both for earth all-bearing both is for-it strong for
ἁπάσας γονὰς καὶ πάντα μετὰ δαψιλείας παρεχομένη
all births and all with abundance providing
ὅσα φέρουσιν ὧραι σπερμάτων τε καὶ φυτῶν, ἀλλὰ δὴ
whatever bear seasons of-seeds both and plants but indeed
καὶ ὅσα νέμονται γῆν, αἰπόλιά τε φημὶ καὶ ποίμνια καὶ
also whatever graze land goat-herds both I-mean and flocks and

συφόρβια καὶ βουκόλια καὶ ἵππων ἀγαθῶν οὐκ ὀλίγην
swine-herds and cattle-herds and of-horses good not small
φορὰν καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἐδωδίμων τε καὶ χρησίμων
crop and of-many other edible both and useful
ζώων ἡμέρων τε καὶ ἀγρίων γένη διάφορα ἅπαντα τρέφει
animals tame both and wild kinds various all it-nourishes
μετὰ πολλῆς περιουσίας· τὸ δὲ μέγιστον καὶ ᾧ πάσας
with much abundance the and greatest and in-which all
τὰς ἄλλας νικᾷ μεθ' ὑπερβολῆς, ὅτι χρυσὸν καὶ ἄργυρον
the others it-surpasses with excess that gold and silver
ὥσπερ ἀπὸ πηγῶν ἀναδίδωσι, καὶ πανταχοῦ ταύτης
as from springs it-sends-up and everywhere of-it
ὀρύσσοντι ψήγματα παρέχει χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου πλεῖστα
to-one-digging dust provides of-gold and silver very-much
καὶ κάλλιστα καὶ κρείσσονα τῆς Ἰνδικῆς· δι' ἃ
and finest and better — than-Indian(-land's) because-of which
δὴ καὶ τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἡ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ἀρχὴ εὐδαίμων
indeed also the from beginning the of-the Triballians rule prosperous
τε ἦν καὶ ἐπὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δυναστείᾳ μέγα ἐφρόνει, καὶ
both was and on wealth and power greatly prided-itself and
βασίλειον ἦν καὶ πόλεις εἶχε πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ὑφ'
royal-seat was and cities had many and great under
ἑαυτῇ, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ εὐδαίμονας, καὶ φρούρια ἐρυμνὰ καὶ
itself but indeed also prosperous and fortresses strong and
δυσάλωτα, καὶ καταλόγων στρατιωτικῶν τε στρατευμάτων
hard-to-take and of-registers of-soldiers both armies
ἐπλούτει, καὶ ὅπλων πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν, καὶ οἰκήτορας
was-rich and of-arms many and fine and inhabitants
εἶχεν ἀρίστους, καὶ νεότητα ἔτρεφε πολλήν τε καὶ
had best and youth nourished much both and
εὐανδροῦσαν, καὶ ζηλωτὸς ἦν ἐν πᾶσί τε καὶ περίβλεπτος,
abounding-in-men and enviable was in all both and admired

ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐπίφθονος, καὶ πολλοὺς εἶχε τοὺς οὐ
but indeed also envied and many had the(-ones) not
μόνον ἐρῶντας αὐτῆς, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντας.
only loving it but indeed also plotting-against(-it)
Ἐστράτευσε μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ ταύτην καὶ πρόσθεν Μωράτης,
campaigned indeed then against it also before Murad
ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως πατὴρ, χειρὶ πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει
the of-the emperor father with-hand much and power
ἐσβαλὼν, καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν παρεστήσατο, καὶ πόλεις
having-invaded and all it brought-to-terms and cities
καὶ φρούρια εἶλε, τά τε ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ τά τε
and fortresses took the(-ones) both in the inland the(-ones) both
παρὰ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ Ἴστρου κείμενα, τὰ μὲν ἐξ
along the banks — of-Istros lying the(-ones) indeed by
ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀμαχὶ
onslaught by-force with-the arms the(-ones) and also without-fighting
προσχωροῦντα, καὶ πάσης ἁπλῶς ἐκράτησε, τὸν ταύτης
surrendering and of-all simply he-mastered the of-it
ἡγεμόνα Λάζαρον ἐξελάσας ἐς Παίονας· ὅν γε δὴ,
leader Lazar having-driven-out to Paionians whom at-least indeed
χρόνον ἤδη συχνὸν περιιόντα τε καὶ ἀλώμενον ἐν
for-time already long going-around both and wandering among
αὐτοῖς, ᾤκτειρε τῆς ἄλης ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ τὰ μὲν
them pitied for-the wandering the emperor and the(-things) indeed
οἴκοθεν, τὰ δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων παρακληθεὶς (καὶ
from-home the(-things) and by the friends having-been-urged and
γὰρ ἦν, εἴ τις ἄλλος, τήν τε γνώμην καὶ τὸν τρόπον
for he-was if anyone else in-the both judgment and the ways
χρηστός), ἔτι δὲ καὶ ξύμμαχόν τε καὶ ξύνεργον ἔχειν
good further and also ally both and fellow-worker to-have
βουλόμενος, φίλον τε ἤδη γεγονότα καὶ εὖ πεπονθότα
wishing friend both already having-become and well treated

τὰ μέγιστα, ἔς (τε) τὸν κατὰ Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν
in-the greatest(-things) for both the against Paionians both and Dacians
πόλεμον, πολὺν δὴ χρόνον ὁμοροῦντά τε τούτοις καὶ τὴν
war much indeed time bordering both on-them and the
ἐκείνων χώραν καὶ ἤθη καλῶς ἐξεπιστάμενον καὶ δὴ καὶ
their land and customs well knowing and indeed also
γενναῖον ὄντα καὶ στρατηγικὸν, πάλιν ἀποδίδωσιν αὐτῷ
noble being and skilled-in-generalship again gives-back to-him
τήν τε χώραν καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν, μήτε τινὸς στερήσας
the both land and the rule neither of-anything having-deprived(-him)
ὧν ἔλαβε, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ προσεπιδοὺς πολλὰ τῶν
of-what he-took rather and also giving-besides many of-the
ἰδίων, μήτε μὴν ὅμηρόν τι λαβὼν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ, φόρους
own(-things) nor indeed hostage any having-taken from him tributes
δὲ μόνους τοὺς εἰθισμένους καταβάλλειν κελεύσας καὶ
and only the customary to-pay-down having-ordered and
ὅρκοις καταδήσας καὶ πιστεύσας αὐτῷ τὴν ἀρχήν.
with-oaths having-bound(-him) and having-entrusted to-him the rule

8.1 Λάζαρος δὲ τὴν ἰδίαν ἀρχὴν αὖθις ἀναλαβὼν κατὰ μικρόν
Lazar and the own rule again having-taken-up by little
τε κρατυνάμενος καὶ ἄρξας αὐτῆς ἐγκρατῶς, ἦν
both having-strengthened(-himself) and having-ruled it mightily was
ὑποταττόμενος τῷ τε πατρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ αὐτῷ
subject to-the both father of-the emperor and to-very
δὴ τῷ βασιλεῖ, μέχρι τινὸς καὶ τὸν φόρον ἀποδιδούς·
indeed the emperor up-to a-point and the tribute paying
μετὰ ταῦτά γε μὴν, ἥπερ ἔφην, ἀβουλίᾳ γνώμης
after these(-things) at-least indeed as I-said with-folly of-judgment
χρησάμενος καὶ νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμήσας, οὔτε τὸν φόρον
having-used and new(-things) having-desired neither the tribute
ἀπεδίδου ῥᾳδίως, καὶ μετὰ τῶν Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν
paid readily and with the Paionians both and Dacians

ἔπραττε, παραβαίνων τὰς μετὰ βασιλέως σπονδάς. Ὃ
acted transgressing the with emperor truces which
δὴ καταφωράσας ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸν ποιοῦντα καὶ
indeed having-detected the emperor him doing and
ληφθεὶς ὀργῇ, τὴν ἐκστρατείαν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐποιεῖτο.
seized by-anger the campaign against him made
Παρασκευασάμενος οὖν χειμῶνος καλῶς, ἐπειδὴ ἔαρ
having-prepared then in-winter well when spring
ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ
was-showing already having-set-out from the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the
στρατῷ ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ ἐχώρει διὰ τῆς μεσογείας
army cavalry both and infantry went through the inland
Θρᾴκης τε καὶ Μακεδονίας, ξυνεπαγόμενος ἅμα οἱ
of-Thrace both and of-Macedonia bringing-along at-once with-him
καὶ μηχανὰς οὐκ ὀλίγας καὶ ὅπλα πάμπολλα. Ἦν δὲ
also engines not few and arms very-many was and
ὁ στρατὸς αὐτῷ, ὡς ἐλέγετο, ἵπποις μὲν πεντακισμύρια,
the army for-him as was-said horse indeed fifty-thousand
πεζὸς δὲ οὐκ ὀλίγῳ πλείων τούτων. Καταλαβὼν δὲ τήν τε
foot and not by-little more than-these having-reached and — both
Μυσίαν καὶ τὸ Αἵμονος ὄρος, ἔνθα ἡ πάροδος, ἑβδομαῖος
Mysia and the Haimos mountain where the pass on-the-seventh-day
διαβαίνει τε ταύτην ἀσφαλῶς παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ, κἀκεῖθεν
crosses both it safely with-all the army and-thence
ὁρμηθεὶς τριταῖος ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὴν Τριβαλλῶν· καὶ
having-set-out on-the-third-day invades into the(-land) of-Triballians and
κατατρέχει μὲν αὐτῆς τὰ πολλὰ καὶ ληίζεται, χειροῦται
overruns indeed of-it the most and plunders subdues
δὲ καὶ φρούρια οὐκ ὀλίγα, τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ,
and also fortresses not few the(-ones) indeed by onslaught by-force
τὰ δὲ καὶ πολιορκίᾳ ἑλών. Δράσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐν
the(-ones) and also by-siege having-taken having-done and these(-things) in

πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις μετὰ τὴν ἐσβολὴν,
five and twenty the whole days after the invasion
ἀφικνεῖται ἐς πόλιν ἐχυρὰν καὶ εὐδαίμονα Νοβόπροδον
he-arrives at city strong and prosperous Novo-Brdo
οὕτω καλουμένην τῇ Τριβαλλῶν φωνῇ, οὗ δὴ καὶ
so called in-the of-Triballians tongue where indeed also
πλεῖστος ἄργυρος καὶ χρυσὸς γεωργεῖται ἀνορυττόμενος,
very-much silver and gold is-worked being-dug-up
καὶ στρατόπεδον τίθησιν ἐπ᾽ αὐτήν. Καὶ πρῶτα μὲν
and camp he-sets against it and first indeed
λόγους προσφέρει τοῖς ἐν αὐτῇ περί τε ἐνδόσεως
words he-brings to-the(-ones) in it about both surrender
καὶ ξυνθηκῶν, εἰ βούλοιντο παραδόντες αὐτῷ τὴν πόλιν
and agreements if they-would-wish having-handed-over to-him the city
καὶ ἑαυτοὺς μετὰ ξυμβάσεων καὶ ὁμολογίας καὶ πίστεως
and themselves with agreements and accord and faith
καθῆσθαι ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι
to-stay with wives and children and the possessions all
σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς ἐπὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς καὶ ὁμοίοις, ἐφ᾽
safe and of-evils unharmed on the same and like(-terms) on
οἷσπερ καὶ πρότερον, καὶ φόρους ἀποφέρειν οὓς καὶ τῷ
which also before and tributes to-pay which also to-the
σφῶν βασιλεῖ, τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν εἰρηνεύοντες. Ὡς δ᾽
their emperor in-the other all being-at-peace when but
οὐ προὐχώρει κατὰ νοῦν αὐτῷ ἡ πεῖρα, τῶν ἔνδον
not proceeded according-to mind for-him the trial the(-ones) within
καθάπαξ οὐ βουλομένων, ἔκειρέ τε τὴν γῆν εὐθὺς, καὶ
once-for-all not wishing he-ravaged both the land at-once and
περισταυρώσας τὸ ἄστυ καὶ κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῷ
having-palisaded the town and in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the
στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει.
army and engines having-set-up besieged(-it)

Λάζαρος δὲ ὁ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ἡγεμὼν τὴν ἀθρόαν ἔφοδον 9.1
Lazar and the of-the Triballians leader the sudden approach
τοῦ βασιλέως μαθὼν τήν τε τῶν φρουρίων ἅλωσιν
of-the emperor having-learned the both of-the fortresses capture
καὶ τὴν πολιορκίαν τοῦ Νοβοπρόδου, ἐξεπλάγη τε τῷ
and the siege — of-Novo-Brdo was-struck both at-the
γινομένῳ καὶ ὅλος ἦν ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ καὶ ἀπορίᾳ, μὴ ἔχων
happening and wholly was in helplessness and perplexity not having
ὅτι καὶ δράσειεν· ὅμως γε μὴν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν τά
what also he-might-do nevertheless at-least indeed from the possible(-means) the
τε λοιπὰ τῶν φρουρίων ἐπεσκέυαζε τούς τε ἄνδρας καὶ
both rest of-the fortresses he-equipped the both men and
γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἀπὸ τῶν κάτω χωρῶν τοὺς μὲν
women and children from the lower regions the(-ones) indeed
ἐς τὰ φρούρια, τοὺς δὲ ἐς τὰ μετεωρότερα τῆς χώρας
into the fortresses the(-ones) and into the higher(-parts) of-the land
μετῴκιζε, τά τε βοσκήματα ἀνεκόμιζε καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πᾶσαν
he-resettled the both cattle he-brought-up and the other all
περιουσίαν αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποσκευὴν, τήν τε λοιπὴν ἠσφαλίζετο
abundance of-them and baggage the both remaining he-secured
χώραν. Αὐτὸς δὲ φρουράν τε ἱκανὴν καὶ φρούραρχον ἕνα
land himself and garrison both sufficient and fortress-commander one
τῶν αὐτῷ πιστοτάτων ἐγκαταστήσας τῇ Σαμανδρίᾳ, τά
of-the to-him most-trusted having-established — in-Smederevo the
τε ἐπιτήδεια ἄφθονα ἐσκομίσας αὐτῇ, καὶ ὅσα γε ἐς
both provisions abundant having-brought-in to-it and whatever at-least for
μακρὰν πολιορκίαν ἀρκέσειν ἐνόμιζε, διαβαίνει τὸν Ἴστρον
long siege would-suffice he-thought crosses — Istros
ξὺν γυναικὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι καί
with wife and children and the possessions all and
τισι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀφικόμενος ἐς Δάκας καὶ
some of-the(-ones) about him and having-arrived among Dacians and

Παίονας ἐκεῖ διέτριβεν. Ὅμως γε μὴν μετὰ μικρον
Paionians there spent-time nevertheless at-least indeed after a-little
ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βουλευσαμένῳ πρεσβείαν τε πέμπειν ὡς
it-seemed-good to-him having-deliberated embassy both to-send to
βασιλέα καὶ πειρᾶσθαι εἰ δύναιτο τρόπῳ παντὶ σπονδῶν
emperor and to-try if he-could by-way every truces
τυχεῖν καὶ εἰρήνης. Ἀπολεξάμενος οὖν ἄνδρας τοὺς πρώτους
to-obtain and peace having-chosen then men the first
παρ᾽ αὐτῷ, ξυνετούς τε καὶ τῶν ἄγαν πεπαιδευμένων,
with him intelligent both and of-the(-ones) exceedingly educated
καὶ δῶρα δοὺς αὐτοῖς χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου πλεῖστά
and gifts having-given to-them of-gold and of-silver very-many
τε καὶ πολυτελῆ, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὸν ξυνήθη δασμὸν,
both and costly but indeed also the customary tribute
ὃν ἔφαμεν, ἀποπέμπει. Οἱ δὲ ἀφικόμενοι τά τε δῶρα
which we-said he-sends they and having-arrived the both gifts
κομίζουσι τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ τὸν δασμὸν, ἀπαγγέλλοντες αὐτῷ
bring to-the emperor and the tribute reporting to-him
καὶ τὰ παρὰ τοῦ σφῶν ἡγεμόνος. Καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
also the(-things) from the their leader and the emperor
δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως καὶ χρηματίζει φιλανθρώπως, καὶ
receives them mildly and gives-audience humanely and
λαλήσας εἰρηνικὰ μετ᾽ αὐτῶν σπονδὰς ποιεῖται, καὶ
having-spoken peaceable(-things) with them truces makes and
πίστεις δίδωσι καὶ λαμβάνει ἐφ᾽ ᾧ κατέχειν τε αὐτὸς
pledges gives and receives on the(-terms) to-hold both himself
ἃ ἔλαβε φρούρια, καὶ χώραν ὅσην ἐπῆλθε μετὰ
what he-took fortresses and land as-much-as he-went-over with
τῶν ὅπλων, τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν πάντων ἄρχειν τὸν ἡγεμόνα
the arms of-the and rest all to-rule the leader
σφῶν, ἀποδιδόντα φόρον ἐτήσιον ὀλίγῳ ἐλάσσονα τοῦ
of-them paying tribute yearly by-little less than-the

προτέρου καὶ στρατιώτας ῥητοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἐκστρατείαις
former and soldiers stated in the campaigns
τοῦ βασιλέως. Ἤδη γὰρ καὶ τὸ πολιορκούμενον ἄστυ
of-the emperor already for also the besieged town
τοῦ Νοβοπρόδου, μὴ δυνάμενον ἀντέχειν ἔτι τῇ
— of-Novo-Brdo not being-able to-hold-out any-longer against-the
πολιορκίᾳ μέχρι πολλοῦ παρατεινομένῃ (τεσσαράκοντα
siege for long extended forty
γάρ που παρεῖλκον ἡμέραι πολιορκουμένῳ), ἀλλὰ δὴ
for about dragged-on days for-it-being-besieged but indeed
καὶ τῶν τειχῶν αὐτῷ κατερριμμένων ταῖς μηχαναῖς,
also the walls for-it hurled-down by-the engines
προσεχώρησεν ὁμολογίᾳ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐφ' ᾧ μηδέν
surrendered by-agreement to-the emperor on the(-terms) nothing
τι κακὸν παθεῖν πάντας τοὺς ἐν αὐτῷ, ἀλλὰ μένειν ὡς
any evil to-suffer all the(-ones) in it but to-remain as
εἶχον ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι,
they-were with wives and children and the possessions all
κατοικοῦντάς τε τὸ ἄστυ καὶ νεμομένους τὴν χώραν.
inhabiting both the town and occupying the land
Σπεισάμενος οὖν καὶ πίστεις δούς τε καὶ λαβών, καὶ
having-made-truce then and pledges having-given both and having-received and
δώροις φιλοτίμοις τε καὶ ξενίοις τιμήσας τοὺς πρέσβεις
with-gifts lavish both and hospitable having-honored the envoys
καὶ λόγοις ἡμέροις καὶ φιλανθρώποις δεξιωσάμενος
and with-words mild and humane having-greeted(-them)
ἀποπέμπει. Οἱ δὲ παραγενόμενοι ἀπαγγέλλουσι τῷ σφῶν
he-sends-away they and having-arrived report to-the their
ἡγεμόνι Λαζάρῳ ἃ ἔπραξαν· ὁ δὲ παρ' ἐλπίδα τυχὼν
leader Lazar what they-did he and against hope having-obtained
τῶν σπονδῶν, ὅπερ οὐκ ἄν ποτε προσεδόκησεν, οὐδὲ

γὰρ ἐνόμιζεν ἔτι δυνατὸν εἶναι σπείσασθαί οἱ τὸν
for he-thought any-longer possible to-be to-make-truce with-him the
βασιλέα τοσαύτην ἀγείραντα στρατιὰν καὶ παρασκευὴν
emperor so-great having-gathered army and preparation
τοσήνδε καὶ δαπάνην ἐς τὸν πόλεμον πεποιημένον, ὅμως
so-great and expense for the war having-made nevertheless
γε μὴν ἥσθη τε τῷ γενομένῳ διαφερόντως καὶ
at-least indeed he-was-pleased both at-the happening exceedingly and
(τῶν) ὧν ἀπέβαλεν οὐδένα πεποίηται λόγον, ἀγαπήσας
of-the(-things) which he-lost no has-made account content
τοῖς καταλειφθεῖσι· πάντων γὰρ ἀθρόων ἐνόμιζεν
with-the(-things) left of-all for together he-thought
ἐκπεσεῖσθαι. Ἀναλαβὼν οὖν αὖθις τήν τε γυναῖκα καὶ
to-be-going-to-fall-from having-taken-up then again the both wife and
τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πᾶσαν ἀποσκευὴν, καὶ τὸν
the children and the other all baggage and —
Ἴστρον διαβὰς ἦκεν ἐς τὴν ἰδίαν ἀρχήν. Βασιλεὺς δὲ
Istros having-crossed came into the own rule emperor and
τά τε φρούρια καλῶς ἀσφαλισάμενος πάντα ἃ ἔλαβε,
the both fortresses well having-secured all which he-took
καὶ φυλακὴν ἱκανὴν ἐγκαταστήσας τῇ χώρᾳ, σατράπην
and guard sufficient having-established in-the land satrap
τε ἐγκαταλιπὼν αὐτῇ τὸν Ἀλῆν, ἄνδρα στρατηγικὸν καὶ
both having-left to-it — Ali man skilled-in-generalship and
γενναῖον, καὶ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι πολλὴν αὐτός τε καὶ τῇ
noble and booty having-driven as much himself both and to-the
στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ· ἤδη γὰρ
army having-distributed returns to the of-Hadrian(-city) already for
καὶ τὸ θέρος ἐτελεύτα· βραχὺν δὲ χρόνον ἐνδιατρίψας αὐτοῦ
also the summer was-ending short and time having-spent there
καί τινα τῶν αὐτόθι καταστησάμενος, μεσοῦντος ἤδη
and some of-the(-things) there having-settled mid already

φθινοπώρου, ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον, παραχειμάσων
autumn arrives at — Byzantium going-to-winter
αὐτοῦ· καὶ τρία καὶ ἑξήκοντα ἔτη πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις
there and three and sixty years besides the nine-hundred
τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο, πέμπτον δὲ
both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed fifth and
τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
of-the rule for-the emperor

Καταλαβὼν δὲ τὴν πόλιν εὗρε τά τε βασίλεια 10.1
having-reached and the city he-found the both palaces
τετελεσμένα λαμπρῶς, καὶ τὸ ἐν Χρυσέαις φρούριον τά τε
completed brilliantly and the in Golden(-gate) fortress the both
τείχη τῆς πόλεως πάντα καλῶς ᾠκοδομημένα. Ἀρεσθεὶς
walls of-the city all well built pleased
οὖν τοῖς γενομένοις καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἔργων ἐπιστάτας
then with-the(-things) done and the of-the works overseers
δωρησάμενος χρήμασί τε καὶ ἱματίοις καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις,
having-rewarded with-money both and garments and many others
κελεύει πάλιν ὅτι τάχιστα ἀνορθοῦν τὰς γεφύρας
he-orders again as quickly-as-possible to-set-upright the bridges
τὰς ἐν τοῖς κόλποις Ἀθύρα τε καὶ Ῥηγίου, τῷ χρόνῳ
the(-ones) in the gulfs of-Athyras both and of-Rhegion by-the time
πεπονηκυίας τε καὶ πεσούσας, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὰς ἄλλας
worn-out both and fallen further and also the other
ὁδοὺς τὰς πρὸς τὴν πόλιν φερούσας, ὅπῃ τελματώδεις τε
roads the(-ones) to the city leading where marshy both
ἦσαν καὶ δυσδιεξίτητοι, καταλεαίνοντας καὶ ἐξομαλίζοντας
they-were and hard-to-pass-through smoothing and leveling
πλαξὶ καὶ λίθοις καταστρωννύντες, ὥστε ῥᾳδίαν εἶναι
with-slabs and stones paving so-as easy to-be
καὶ ἀσφαλῆ τὴν τούτων διάβασιν· οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ
and safe the of-these passage not only and but

καὶ πανδοκεῖα καὶ καταγώγια οἰκοδομεῖν ἐν αὐταῖς ἐς
also inns and lodgings to-build on them for
κατάλυσίν τε καὶ ἀνάπαυλαν τῶν ὁδοιπορούντων τε
lodging both and rest of-the(-ones) traveling both
καὶ κατὰ γῆν ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἀφικνουμένων, καὶ ἀγορὰν δὲ
and by land to the city arriving and market too
μεγίστην τε καὶ καλλίστην ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει ἐγγύς που
greatest both and finest in middle the city near somewhere
τῶν βασιλείων κελεύει γίνεσθαι τείχεσί τε ἠσφαλισμένην
the palaces he-orders to-be-made with-walls both secured
ἰσχυροτάτοις τὰ ἔξω, καὶ στοαῖς καλλίσταις τε καὶ
strongest the outside and with-stoas finest both and
μεγίσταις διειλημμένην τὰ ἔνδον, τόν τε ὄροφον ἔχουσαν
greatest divided the inside the both roof having
ἐξ ὀπτῆς πλίνθου καὶ διαφανῶν λίθων ἐξειργασμένον,
of baked brick and translucent stones worked
ἔτι δὲ λουτρὰ κατασκευάζειν λαμπρὰ καὶ πολυτελῆ,
further and baths to-construct brilliant and costly
καὶ ὑδάτων ἀφθονίαν ἔξωθεν ἐπαγαγεῖν τῇ πόλει δι᾽
and of-waters abundance from-outside to-bring to-the city through
ὀχετῶν, ἄλλα τε πολλὰ τοιαῦτα προσέταξε γίνεσθαι ἔς
conduits other both many such(-things) he-commanded to-be-made for
τε κατασκευὴν καὶ κόσμον τῆς πόλεως καὶ ὠφέλειαν
both equipment and adornment of-the city and benefit
καὶ χρείαν τῶν ἐνοικούντων καὶ ἄλλην παραμυθίαν. Πρὸ
and use of-the inhabitants and other comfort before
πάντων δὲ τοῦ τε ξυνοικισμοῦ τῆς πόλεως ἐπεμέλετο
all and of-the both resettlement of-the city he-took-care
καὶ τοῦ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν οἰκητόρων πληρῶσαι, καθὰ δὴ
and of-the all it with-inhabitants to-fill as indeed
καὶ τὸ πρὶν ἦν, πανταχόθεν τε τῆς αὐτοῦ πάντας
also the before(-time) it-was from-all-sides both of-the his(-land) all

ξυλλέγων, ἔκ τε Ἀσίας καὶ Εὐρώπης, καὶ μετοικίζων ἐς
collecting from both Asia and Europe and transferring into
αὐτὴν μεθ᾽ ὅτι πλείστης ἐπιμελείας τε καὶ σπουδῆς ἐκ
it with as most care both and zeal from
παντὸς μὲν καὶ ἄλλου γένους, καὶ μάλιστα δὲ τοῦ
every indeed and other race and most too of-the(-race)
Χριστιανῶν· οὕτω δεινὸς ἔρως ἐνέπεσεν αὐτοῦ τῇ ψυχῇ
of-Christians so terrible love fell-into his the soul
τῆς τε πόλεως καὶ τοῦ ταύτης ξυνοικισμοῦ τοῦ τε ἐς
of-the both city and of-the of-it resettlement of-the both into
τὴν ἀρχαίαν εὐδαιμονίαν ἀποκαταστῆσαι πάλιν αὐτήν.
the ancient prosperity to-restore again it
Ἐν τούτοις δ᾽ ὄντος αὐτοῦ, μεσοῦντος ἤδη χειμῶνος, 11.1
in these(-things) and being him mid already winter
ἀγγέλλεται τὸν ἡγεμόνα τῆς Αἴνου Δωριέα καὶ τῶν νήσων
it-is-reported the leader — of-Ainos Dorino and of-the islands
Ἴμβρου καὶ Σαμοθρᾴκης νεοχμοῦν τε βούλεσθαι καὶ
Imbros and Samothrace to-innovate both to-wish and
νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμεῖν· ὁ γάρτοι πατὴρ αὐτοῦ Παλαμήδης,
new(-things) to-desire the for-surely father his Palamedes
πρὸ μικροῦ τελευτῶν, κατέλιπεν ἐν ταῖς αὐτοῦ διαθήκαις
before little dying left in the his testament
αὐτόν τε Δωριέα καὶ τὴν τοῦ πρεσβυτέρου ἀδελφοῦ
him both Dorino and the of-the elder brother
γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας κληρονόμους τε τῶν αὐτοῦ
wife and the children heirs both of-the his
πάντων ἐξ ἴσης, καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς διαδόχους, μᾶλλον δὲ
all(-things) from equal and of-the rule successors rather and
καὶ τὸ πλέον ἐν ταῖς διαθήκαις ἔνεμε ταύτῃ τε καὶ τοῖς
also the more in the testament he-allotted to-her both and to-the
ταύτης παισίν, ὡς τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐς τὸν πρεσβύτερον υἱέα
her children as the rule to the elder son

αὐτοῦ περισταμένης δικαίως, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἔτι περιόντι
his passing justly since also while-still being-alive
ὁ πατὴρ ἐκείνῳ πᾶσαν ἔδωκε τὴν ἀρχὴν, τῶν ἐν
the father to-that-one all gave the rule of-the in
τῇ Μιτυλήνῃ κτημάτων μόνων κύριον ἀποδείξας τὸν
— Mytilene possessions only lord having-appointed —
Δωριέα. Ὁ δὲ βραχὺ φροντίσας τοῦ τε δικαίου καὶ τῶν
Dorino he and little having-cared for-the both just and the
διαθηκῶν τοῦ πατρὸς, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῆς ἰδίας ἀσφαλείας·
testament of-the father but indeed also of-the own safety
ἀσφαλέστερος γὰρ ἔμελλεν εἶναι τηρήσας τὰ πρὸς
safer for he-was-going to-be having-kept the(-things) toward
τοὺς παῖδας τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ δίκαια καὶ τὴν τούτων μητέρα· ὁ
the children of-the brother just and the their mother he
δὲ παρωσάμενος τὴν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας, ἀδίκως
but having-thrust-aside the both wife and the children unjustly
ἐγκρατὴς γίνεται τοῦ τε κατ᾽ οἶκον βίου παντὸς καὶ τῆς
master becomes of-the both in house livelihood all and of-the
ὅλης ἀρχῆς, μηδενὸς τούτων παραχωρήσας τοῖς τε παισὶ
whole rule nothing of-these having-yielded to-the both children
καὶ τῇ γυναικί. Ἡ δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐν δεινῷ τιθεμένη καὶ
and the wife she and the affair in terrible setting and
τὴν καταδυναστείαν μὴ φέρουσα, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα λόγοις
the oppression not bearing the indeed first by-words
ἐπειρᾶτο τοῦτον τῆς πλεονεξίας ἀπάγειν, τὰ μὲν
tried him from-the greed to-lead-away the(-times) indeed
δι᾽ αὐτῆς, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ ξυνετῶν καὶ φρονίμων
through herself the(-times) and also through intelligent and prudent
ἀνδρῶν τῶν ταύτῃ, προσέτι δὲ καὶ οἰκείων αὐτοῖς, καὶ
men of-the(-ones) there besides and also related to-them and
οἷς οὐχ ἥκιστα ἔμελλεν ἀκινδύνως ἔχειν τὰ τῆς
through-whom not least he-was-going safely to-hold the(-things) of-the

ἀρχῆς. Οἳ καὶ προσελθόντες εὐνοϊκῶς ξυνεβούλευον αὐτῷ
rule who also having-approached kindly advised him
μηδὲν ὅλως περὶ τὰς τοῦ πατρὸς διαθήκας καινοτομεῖν,
nothing at-all about the of-the father testament to-innovate
μηδὲ καταδυναστεύειν ἐθέλειν τήν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς
nor to-oppress to-wish the both wife and the
παῖδας τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ, τήν τε θείαν νέμεσιν δεδιότα, ἣ
children of-the brother the both divine nemesis fearing which
πανταχοῦ περιερχομένη τὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων δικάζει
everywhere going-around the(-things) of-the men judges
καὶ τοὺς ἀδικουμένους καὶ ἀδικοῦντας ὁρᾷ, τήν τε τοῦ
and the wronged and wronging sees the both of-the
κρατοῦντος πρὸς τὰ τοιαῦτα ῥοπὴν καὶ τὸ σφόδρα τε
ruler toward the such(-things) inclination and the very both
ἀπαραίτητον καὶ ἀδιάλλακτον. Οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀνεκτὸν ἔλεγον
inexorable and irreconcilable not-even for tolerable they-said
ἔσεσθαι τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις σιγῇ καθῆσθαι, ἀλλὰ ζητήτουσι
it-will-be for-the wronged in-silence to-sit but they-will-seek
ἐξ ἅπαντος τρόπου τὸ ἑαυτῶν δίκαιον, καὶ καταβοήσονταί
by every way the own right and will-cry-out-against
σου πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ῥητὰ καὶ ἄρρητα ἐξειπόντες·
you to the emperor spoken(-things) and unspoken having-told
καὶ ὅρα πῇ τελευτήσει τὸ πρᾶγμα· ἀλλ᾽ εἴ τι κήδῃ
and see how will-end the affair but if anything you-care-for
σαυτοῦ τε καὶ ἡμῶν καὶ τῆς ὅλης ἀρχῆς, πρόσθητι
yourself both and us and the whole rule assent-to
τὰ βέλτιστα ξυμβουλευομένοις ἡμῖν, καὶ κοινώνει τῶν
the(-things) best advising us and share of-the
τε πραγμάτων καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς τοῖς τε παισὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ
both affairs and of-the rule with-the both children of-the brother
καὶ τῇ γυναικὶ, παραχωρῶν τῷ δικαίῳ· καὶ οὕτω χρηστά
and the wife yielding to-the just and so good

τε καὶ ἄριστα καὶ βουλεύσῃ καὶ δράσεις σαυτῷ καὶ ἡμῖν
both and best both you-will-plan and you-will-do to-yourself and to-us
πᾶσιν ἐπωφελῆ, εἰρηνικήν τε ἕξεις τοῦ λοιποῦ καὶ
all profitable peaceful both you-will-have for-the future and
ἀκίνδυνον τὴν λαχοῦσαν ἀρχήν. Ταῦτά τε καὶ τοιαῦτα
safe the allotted rule these(-things) both and such
πολλὰ πολλάκις πρὸς αὐτὸν λέγοντες οὐκ ἔπειθον ὅμως.
many often to him saying not they-persuaded nevertheless
Ἡ δὲ γυνὴ τούτων ἀπογνοῦσα καθάπαξ, καταφεύγει πρὸς
the and woman of-these having-despaired once-for-all flees to
τὸν κρατοῦντα, καὶ πέμπει δὴ πρέσβυν τε καὶ ἱκέτην
the ruler and sends indeed envoy both and suppliant
τὸν πρὸς μητρὸς θεῖον αὐτῇ. Ὁ δὲ ἀφικόμενος λύπην τε
the on mother's(-side) uncle to-her he and having-arrived grief both
ἔχων καὶ δικαίαν ὀργὴν καὶ ἅμα βουλόμενος ἀμύνασθαι
having and just anger and at-once wishing to-avenge-himself-on
τὸν ἀδικοῦντα, εἰ δέοι καὶ κοινῶς ξυνεκπεσεῖν
the(-one) wronging if it-should-be-needed even jointly to-fall-from
τῆς ἀρχῆς, ὃ δή που καὶ γέγονε, πολλὰ κατεφόρει
the rule which indeed somehow also happened much accused
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ Δωριέως, ὡς δύσνους τε εἴη λέγων
before the emperor — Dorino as ill-disposed both he-was saying
αὐτῷ, καὶ νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμεῖ καὶ κοινολογεῖται τοῖς
to-him and new(-things) desires and confers with-the
Ἰταλοῖς καὶ ὅπλα ξυλλέγει καὶ φρουροὺς μισθοῦται καὶ
Italians and arms collects and guards hires and
φύλακας ἐγκαθιστάνειν βούλεται Αἴνῳ τε καὶ ταῖς νήσοις
garrisons to-establish wishes in-Ainos both and the islands
καὶ ὅλως ἐς ἀποστασίαν δρᾷ· καὶ εἰ μὴ θᾶττον, ἔλεγε,
and wholly toward revolt acts and if not quicker he-said
προληφθείη, κἂν ἐς ἔργον ἄξει τὸ σπουδαζόμενον.
he-should-be-forestalled and-would to deed bring the(-thing) eagerly-pursued

Ταῦτά τε καὶ πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἰπὼν ἐς ὀργήν τε 12.1
these(-things) both and many such having-said to anger both
καὶ θυμὸν τὸν βασιλέα κινεῖ. Ὁ δὲ οὐκέτι καθεκτὸς ἦν,
and fury the emperor moves he and no-longer restrainable was
οὐδέ γε τοῦ λοιποῦ μέλλειν ᾤετο δεῖν· οὐδὲ γὰρ
nor at-least for-the rest to-delay thought to-be-needful not-even for
παροπτέα οἱ τὰ τῆς Αἴνου εἶναι ἐδόκει, οὐδέ γε
to-be-overlooked to-him the(-things) — of-Ainos to-be seemed nor at-least
ὅλως ἀμελητέα πόλεως λόγου ἀξίας πολλῶν ἕνεκα, καὶ
at-all to-be-neglected city of-account worthy for-many reasons both
προσόδων μεγάλων καὶ θέσεως ἐπικαίρου καὶ ἀρετῆς
of-revenues great and of-position strategic and of-excellence
γῆς καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων. Αἶνος γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὸ παλαιὸν
of-land and many others Ainos for was indeed the of-old
πόλις μεγίστη τῶν Αἰολίδων, ἐπί τε δόξῃ καὶ πλούτῳ
city greatest of-the Aeolian(-cities) in both glory and wealth
καὶ δυναστείᾳ μέγα φρονοῦσα, ξυμπάσης τε τῆς καθ᾽
and power greatly priding-itself of-all both the by
αὐτὴν παραλίας κρατοῦσα, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῶν νήσων
it coast being-master but indeed also of-the islands
ἐνίων. Κεῖται γὰρ ἐν καλλίστῳ τῆς παραλίας Θρᾴκης
some it-lies for in finest(-part) of-the coast of-Thrace
τε καὶ Μακεδονίας, ἐκ μεσημβρίας μὲν ἔχουσα τόν τε
both and Macedonia from south indeed having — both
Αἰγαῖον καὶ τὰς νήσους παρακειμένας Ἴμβρον καὶ Λῆμνον
Aegean and the islands lying-beside Imbros and Lemnos
καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς, καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τούτων ἐμπορίαν δαψιλῶς
and the rest and the from these trade abundantly
καρπουμένη· ἀπὸ δὲ ἄρκτου Εὖρον ποταμὸν, ὃς ἔκ τε
enjoying from and north Hebros river which from both
τῆς ἄνω Μυσίας καὶ τοῦ Αἵμονος ὄρους τὰς πηγὰς ἔχων
the upper Mysia and the Haimos mountain the springs having

ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς μεσογείας Θρᾴκης τε καὶ Μακεδονίας, κατὰ
flows through the inland of-Thrace both and Macedonia toward
μεσημβρίαν ἀεὶ πορευόμενος, προϊὼν δὲ κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ
south always going advancing and by little and
τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ παραρρέων μέγας τε γίνεται καὶ ναυσὶ
the of-Hadrian(-city) flowing-past great both becomes and for-ships
περατὸς, δεχόμενος καὶ ἑτέρους ποταμοὺς ἐσβάλλοντας
passable receiving also other rivers flowing-in
ἐς αὐτὸν, τόν τε Κοντάεσδον καὶ Ἀγριάνην καὶ Τέαρον·
into it — both Kontaesdos and Agrianes and Tearos
ὃς δὴ Τέαρος ἔκ τε τοῦ παρακειμένου ὄρους μεταξὺ
which indeed Tearos from both the nearby mountain between
Ἡραίου τε καὶ Ἀπολλωνίας τῆς πρὸς Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ
Heraion both and Apollonia the(-one) on Euxine sea
τὰς πηγὰς ἔχων ἐκ πέτρας ῥεούσας, καὶ κάλλιστόν
the springs having from rock flowing and finest
τε καὶ ποτιμώτατον, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ὠφελιμώτατον ἐν
both and most-drinkable but indeed also most-beneficial in
πολλοῖς ὕδωρ ἁπάντων ἔχειν μαρτυρεῖται παρά τε τῶν
many(-ways) water of-all to-have is-attested by both the
ταύτῃ προσχώρων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ δι' ὅσων ῥεῖ.
there neighbors but indeed also through whatever(-lands) it-flows
Ὁ δ' οὖν Εὖρος κατιών τε καὶ πρὸς τῷ Δορίσκῳ
— and then Hebros coming-down both and at — Doriskos
γινόμενος καὶ παραρρέων αὐτὸν ἔξεισι πρὸ τοῦ λιμένος
coming and flowing-past it goes-out before the harbor
Αἴνου ἐς τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν τοῦ Αἰγαίου. Τρέφει δὲ
of-Ainos into the there sea — of-Aegean it-nourishes and
γένη τε παντοδαπῶν ἰχθύων πολλὰ, μειζόνων τε καὶ
kinds both of-every-sort fish many larger both and
μειόνων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ πιόνων· παρέχει δὲ καὶ τοῖς
smaller but indeed also fat(-ones) it-provides and also to-the(-ones)

ἐν τῇ πόλει δι᾽ αὐτοῦ πλοίοις φορτηγοῖς τὰς ἐμπορίας
in the city through it with-boats cargo the trade
ποιεῖσθαι ἔς τε τὴν μεσόγειαν καί τινας τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
to-make into both the inland and some of-the in it
πόλεων πλησιοχώρους αὐτῷ. Εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως
cities neighboring to-it there-are and also before the city
λίμναι καὶ ἕτεραι πέριξ αὐτῆς, αἳ δὴ καὶ χερρόνησον
lakes and others around it which indeed also peninsula
ταύτην [ποιοῦσιν], ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἑτέρα τις λίμνη μεγάλη
it make but indeed also another some lake great
ἐμβάλλουσα ἐς αὐτὰς ὄπισθεν τοῦ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως ὄρους,
flowing-in into them behind the before the city mountain
κειμένη πρὸς βορρᾶν ἄνεμον, Στεντορὶς καλουμένη τὸ
lying toward north wind Stentoris called the
παλαιὸν, τρέφουσαι καὶ αὗται ἰχθύων τε γένη πολλὰ
of-old nourishing also these of-fish both kinds many
καὶ κύκνων ἀγέλας καὶ πτηνῶν ἄλλων ἐδωδίμων, λίμναις
and of-swans flocks and of-birds other edible in-lakes
ἐνδιαιτωμένων καὶ ποταμοῖς· ἐξ ὧν ἁπάντων ἀφθονίαν
living and rivers from which all abundance
εἶχε τὸ παλαιὸν ἡ πόλις αὕτη, καὶ νῦν ἔχει πάντων
had the of-old the city this and now has of-all
καλῶν. Τὸ δὲ δὴ μεῖζον καὶ ᾧ πάσας σχεδὸν τὰς
goods the but indeed greater and in-which all nearly the(-cities)
γειτονούσας νικᾷ μεθ᾽ ὑπερβολῆς τῇ τε τῶν χρημάτων
neighboring it-surpasses with excess in-the both of-the money
καὶ προσόδων φορᾷ, οἱ ἐν αὐτῇ γινόμενοι ἅλες πλεῖστοι
and of-revenues yield the in it produced salts very-many
καὶ κάλλιστοι τῶν ἁπανταχοῦ, οὓς ἀνὰ πᾶσαν
and finest of-the(-ones) everywhere which through all
Θρᾴκην τε καὶ Μακεδονίαν διαδιδοῦσά τε καὶ διατιθεμένη
Thrace both and Macedonia distributing both and disposing

ὅτι πλεῖστον ξυλλέγει χρυσὸν καὶ ἄργυρον· καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ
as most it-collects gold and silver and as from
πηγῶν οὕτως ἡ πόλις αὕτη τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς εὐδαίμων τε
springs so the city this the from beginning prosperous both
ἦν καὶ πλοῦτον ἄφθονον εἶχε καὶ δύναμιν πλείστην καὶ
was and wealth abundant had and power very-much and
δόξαν περιεβέβλητο, καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις ἐκόμα καλοῖς.
glory had-put-on and with-many other was-luxuriant fine(-things)
Τῷ χρόνῳ δὲ καὶ αὕτη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλληνίδων
in-the time and also this with the other Hellenic
πόλεων πεσοῦσά τε καὶ διαφθαρεῖσα ἔμεινεν ἀοίκητος
cities having-fallen both and having-been-destroyed remained uninhabited
μέχρι πολλοῦ, χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον δι' ἀρετὴν τῆς
for long in-time and later because-of excellence of-the
χώρας ἐπολίσθη μέρος τι ταύτης πρὸς τῶν βασιλέων
land was-made-a-city part some of-it by the emperors
Ῥωμαίων, τὸ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι, καὶ κατῳκίσθη, ὃ ἦν
of-Romans the(-part) by the harbor and was-settled which was
τὸ παλαιὸν ἀκρόπολις, καὶ κατὰ βραχὺ προϊοῦσα γέγονε
the of-old acropolis and by little advancing became
πόλις αὖθις τῶν ὀνομαστῶν καὶ πλουσίων, οἰκήτορσί τε
city again of-the renowned and rich with-inhabitants both
ἀρίστοις κεχρημένη καὶ εὐθηνουμένη πᾶσι καλοῖς.
best having and abounding in-all goods

13.1 Εἶχε δὲ αὐτῆς τὴν ἀρχὴν πρὸ χρόνων μάλιστά που
had and its the rule before years most about
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν τῶν τις ἀνὴρ Ἰταλῶν, εὐγενής
fifty and hundred of-the a-certain man Italians noble
τε καὶ τῶν ἄγαν δυνατῶν, Γατελιοῦζος τοὔνομα, δόντος
both and of-the exceedingly powerful Gattilusio by-name having-given
αὐτῷ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων τήν τε ἀδελφὴν ἐς γυναῖκα καὶ
to-him the emperor of-Romans the both sister as wife and

φερνὴν Αἶνόν τε καὶ Μιτυλήνην· ὃς δὴ καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον
dowry Ainos both and Mytilene who indeed also to the better
ταύτην προήγαγε τοῦ χρόνου προϊόντος καὶ κρείττω τοῖς
it advanced of-the time advancing and stronger in-the
ὅλοις ἀπέφηνε. Καὶ ἦκεν ἡ ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ γένους διαδοχὴ
whole showed(-it) and came the from that the race succession
ἐς τετάρτην δὴ ταύτην γενεὰν μέχρι Παλαμήδους τε καὶ
to fourth indeed this generation as-far-as Palamedes both and
τοῦ υἱοῦ Δωριέως, παρ᾽ ὧν ἀφείλετο τὴν πόλιν ταύτην
the son Dorino from whom took-away the city this
τελείως ὁ βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ οὗτοί τε καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτῶν
completely the emperor and for these both and the(-ones) before them
ἀπέφερον πάντες τοῖς τε προγόνοις τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ δὴ
paid all to-the both forefathers of-the emperor and indeed
καὶ αὐτῷ, ἐξ ὅτου δὴ τὸ πρῶτον ἐκεῖνοι διαβάντες ἐς
also to-himself from when indeed the first those having-crossed into
τὴν Εὐρώπην, Θρᾴκην ἅπασαν καὶ Μακεδονίαν κατέσχον,
— Europe Thrace all and Macedonia seized
δασμὸν ἐτήσιον τάς τε δύο μοίρας τῶν γινομένων ἁλῶν
tribute yearly the both two shares of-the produced salts
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐπετείων φόρων, αὐτοὶ καρπούμενοι τὰ
and of-the other yearly tributes themselves enjoying the
λοιπὰ ἐνδόσει τῶν βασιλέων, καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἄρχοντες·
rest by-grant of-the emperors and the city ruling
καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς, ὅταν ἐθέλωσι, ταύτην λαβεῖν,
and for it-was in them whenever they-wished it to-take
ὥσπερ δῆτα καὶ ἔλαβον νῦν. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ταύτῃ.
as indeed also they-took now and these(-things) indeed thus
Ἰωνούζης δὲ, κελεύσαντος βασιλέως, ὅτι τάχιστα 14.1
Yunus and having-ordered emperor as quickly-as-possible
πληρώσας δέκα τριήρεις καὶ ἀναχθεὶς ἀπὸ Καλλιουπόλεως
having-manned ten triremes and having-put-out from Kallipolis

τῇ προτεραίᾳ κατήχθη ἐς Ἐλαιοῦντα καὶ περιπλεύσας
on-the former(-day) put-in at Elaious and having-sailed-around
Χερρόνησον περαιοῦται νυκτὸς τὸν Μέλανα κόλπον καὶ
Chersonese crosses by-night — Black gulf and
καταίρει ἐς ἄκραν Παχεῖαν ἀκτὴν λεγομένην μικρὸν
lands at headland Thick shore called a-little
ἀπωτέρω τῆς Αἴνου, οὗ δὴ λέγεται Ξέρξην, ὅτε κατὰ
farther — from-Ainos where indeed is-said Xerxes when against
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐστράτευσε, τὰς νέας ἀνελκύσαντα τὰς
the Hellenes he-campaigned the ships having-hauled-up the
αὐτοῦ διαβρόχους οὔσας θεραπεῦσαι τήν τε στρατιὰν
his waterlogged being to-have-tended the both army
ἑαυτοῦ πᾶσαν ἐν Δορίσκῳ ἀναμετρῆσαι· τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ
of-himself all at Doriskos to-have-counted on-the and next(-day)
ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ Ἰωνούζης ἐπιπλεῖ τῷ λιμένι τῆς Αἴνου.
at-once with-day Yunus sails-against the harbor — of-Ainos
Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχέμετις ἀναλαβὼν τήν τε βασιλικὴν ἴλην
emperor and Mehmed having-taken the both royal squadron
πᾶσαν καὶ δύο τάξεις ἱππέων ἐχώρει διὰ τῆς μεσογείας
all and two ranks of-horsemen went through the inland
σφοδροτάτου χειμῶνος· ἦν γὰρ ἐν ἀκμῇ τῆς ὥρας τὰ
most-violent winter was for in peak of-the season the(-things)
γινόμενα· τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἐπίεσεν αὐτοὺς καθ' ὁδὸν ὅ τε
happening so-much for pressed them on road the both
νιφετὸς καὶ ὁ κρυμὸς καὶ αἱ τοῦ βορέου δριμεῖαι πνοαὶ
snowfall and the frost and the of-the north-wind sharp blasts
ὥστε πολλοὺς μὲν τοῦ πεζοῦ τῇ χιόνι καταχωσθέντας
so-that many indeed of-the infantry by-the snow buried
ἀποθανεῖν εὐθὺς ἐν προαστείοις τῆς πόλεως, ἀλλὰ δὴ
to-die at-once in suburbs of-the city but indeed
καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἄλλην ὁδὸν, οὐκ ὀλίγους δὲ καὶ τὰ τοῦ
also along the other road not few and also the of-the

σώματος ἄκρα λελωβημένους τῷ ψύχει ἀποβαλεῖν τάς
body extremities maimed by-the cold to-lose the
τε ῥῖνας καὶ ὦτα καὶ τἆλλα τῶν καιρίων τοῦ σώματος
both noses and ears and the-rest of-the vital of-the body
μορίων ἠκρωτηριασμένους. Ὅμως γε μὴν μετὰ τοσούτου
parts mutilated nevertheless at-least indeed with so-great
χειμῶνος καὶ ψύχους καὶ νιφετοῦ ὁρμηθεὶς ἀπὸ τῆς
storm and cold and snowfall having-set-out from the
πόλεως τεταρταῖος ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Κύψελα, κώμην μεγάλην
city on-the-fourth-day arrives at Kypsela village great
νῦν, πόλιν οὖσαν τὸ παλαιὸν τῶν ὀνομαστῶν, ἀπέχουσαν
now city being the of-old of-the renowned distant
τῆς Αἴνου κατὰ γῆν σταδίους ἑκατόν που μάλιστα.
— from-Ainos by land stades hundred about most
Οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει Αἴνῳ ἰδόντες τε κατὰ θάλασσαν 15.1
the(-ones) and in the city Ainos having-seen both by sea
ἐφορμοῦντα τῷ λιμένι τὸν στόλον, τήν τε τοῦ βασιλέως
lying-at-anchor at-the harbor the fleet the both of-the emperor
ἀθρόαν ἔφοδον ἐν Κυψέλοις μαθόντες, ἐξεπλάγησάν τε
sudden approach at Kypsela having-learned were-astonished both
τῷ γινομένῳ, καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν μηδαμοῦ ξυνιδεῖν ἔχοντες
at-the happening and the cause nowhere to-perceive being-able
ἐς ἀπόγνωσιν ὅτι πλείστην καὶ ἀπορίαν δεινὴν καὶ φόβον
into despair as most and perplexity terrible and fear
ἐνέπεσον, μὴ ἔχοντες ὅτι καὶ δράσειαν. Ἐνόμισαν γὰρ
fell not having what also they-might-do they-thought for
ἀναρπάστους ἂν αὐτοὺς εὐθὺς γενήσεσθαι ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ
to-be-carried-off — themselves at-once going-to-be with wives and
τέκνοις αὐτοῖς κατά τε γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν προσβάλλοντος
children themselves by both land and sea attacking
τοῦ βασιλέως. Δωριεὺς γὰρ ὁ τούτων ἡγεμὼν οὐκ ἦν ἐκεῖσε
the emperor Dorino for the their leader not was there

τότε παρὼν, ἀλλ' ἔτυχε πρὸ μικροῦ ἐς Σαμοθράκην νῆσον
then present but happened before little to Samothrace island
ἀπάρας, παραχειμάσων ἐκεῖ. Πλήν γε δὴ ἐκ τῶν
having-set-out going-to-winter there except at-least indeed from the
ἐνόντων ἄνδρας ἀπολεξάμενοι τοὺς πρώτους τῶν
available(-means) men having-chosen the first of-the(-ones)
παρ' αὐτοῖς πέμπουσιν ὡς βασιλέα, ἐνδιδόντες ἑαυτούς τε
among them they-send to emperor surrendering themselves both
καὶ τὴν πόλιν αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῷ μηδέν τι κακὸν παθεῖν·
and the city to-him on the(-terms) nothing any evil to-suffer
Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἥκοντας δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως, καὶ λαλήσας
emperor and having-come receives them mildly and having-spoken
εἰρηνικὰ μετ' αὐτῶν, καί τινα ὧν ᾔτουν δοὺς
peaceable(-things) with them and some of-what they-asked having-given
ἀποπέμπει ὀπίσω· ξυμπέμπει δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ Μαχουμούτεα
sends-away back sends-with and them also Mahmud
τὸν πασίαν, τὴν πόλιν παραληψόμενον. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ
the pasha the city going-to-take-over on-the and next(-day)
καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς αὐτὴν ἀφικνεῖται καὶ ἐσελθὼν ἐς τὰ βασίλεια
also himself to it arrives and having-entered into the palaces
Δωριέως ἀφαιρεῖται πάντα τὸν πλοῦτον, ὃν εὗρεν ἐν αὐτοῖς
of-Dorino takes-away all the wealth which he-found in them
χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων, ὡς δὲ καὶ τὰς οἰκίας
of-gold and of-silver and of-the others likewise and also the houses
διαρπάζει τῶν δυνατῶν τῶν μετὰ Δωριέως ἀπόντων.
plunders of-the powerful of-the(-ones) with Dorino absent
Ἐπιμείνας δὲ ἡμέρας τρεῖς ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ διαθέμενος
having-stayed and days three in the city and having-arranged
τὰ κατ' αὐτὴν ὡς ἐδόκει οἱ, ἀπολεξάμενός τε
the(-things) concerning it as seemed-good to-him having-chosen both
παῖδας πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν τοὺς ἀρίστους, καὶ ἄρχοντα
children fifty and hundred the best and governor

ἐπιστήσας αὐτῇ ἄνδρα ξυνετόν τε καὶ τοὺς τρόπους χρηστὸν
having-set-over it man intelligent both and in-the ways good
Μωράτην οὕτω καλούμενον, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ.
Murad so called returns to the of-Hadrian(-city)
Ἰωνούζης δὲ πεντηκόντορον ἀποστείλας ἐς Σαμοθράκην, 16.1
Yunus and fifty-oar having-sent to Samothrace
ἀναληψομένην τὸν Δωριέα, αὐτὸς ἀπέπλευσεν ἐπ᾽ Ἴμβρου,
going-to-take-up — Dorino himself sailed-away to Imbros
καταστησόμενός τε τἀκεῖ καὶ τοὺς Δωριέως ἁρμοστὰς
going-to-settle both the(-things)-there and the of-Dorino governors
ἐκβαλών. Χειμῶνι δὲ χρησάμενος οὐκ ἠδυνήθη κατᾶραι
throwing-out by-storm and having-met not was-able to-put-in
ἐς τὸν λιμένα, ἀλλὰ προσέσχε τῷ Κεφάλῳ, ἄκρᾳ
into the harbor but put-to — at-Kephalos headland
τῆς Ἴμβρου πρὸς μεσημβρίαν ἀκλύστῳ τε οὔσῃ καὶ
— of-Imbros toward south sheltered both being and
εὐδιεινῇ. Καὶ πέμψας ἄγγελον μετακαλεῖται Κριτόβουλον
calm and having-sent messenger summons Kritoboulos
καὶ παραδίδωσιν αὐτῷ τήν τε νῆσον πᾶσαν καὶ τὰ
and hands-over to-him the both island all and the
ἐν αὐτῇ φρούρια ἄρχειν τε καὶ φυλάττειν· αὐτὸς δὲ
in it fortresses to-rule both and to-guard himself and
ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς Δωριέως ἁρμοστὰς ἀπέπλευσεν ἐπὶ οἴκου
having-taken the of-Dorino governors sailed-away to home
ἐς Καλλιούπολιν. Δωριεὺς δὲ ἐκ Σαμοθράκης ἐς μὲν τὴν
to Kallipolis Dorino and from Samothrace into indeed the
πεντηκόντορον οὐκ ἐσῆλθεν οὐδὲ ἀφῖκτο πρὸς Ἰωνούζην,
fifty-oar not entered nor came to Yunus
δείσας αὐτὸν, ὡς οἶμαι, ἐμβὰς δὲ ἐς πάραλον
having-feared him as I-think having-embarked and into coaster
τὴν αὐτοῦ, ἀπέπλευσεν ἐπὶ Αἶνου κἀκεῖθεν ἀφίκετο ἐς
the his sailed-away to Ainos and-thence came to

τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ· καὶ ἐς ὄψιν ἐλθὼν τῷ βασιλεῖ δέχεταί
the of-Hadrian(-city) and into sight having-come to-the emperor is-received
τε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἡμέρως, καὶ φιλανθρωπίας καὶ προνοίας
both by him mildly and humanity and provision
τυχὼν λαμβάνει πάλιν τὰς νήσους ἐς ἰδίαν ἀρχὴν,
having-obtained takes again the islands into own rule
Ἴμβρον καὶ Λῆμνον καὶ Σαμοθρᾴκην. Ἰωνούζης δὲ ὀργὴν
Imbros and Lemnos and Samothrace Yunus and anger
ἔχων τῷ Δωριεῖ, ὅτι γε οὐκ ἀφῖκτο παρ᾽ αὐτὸν, ὡς
having — at-Dorino that at-least not he-came to him so-that
ἂν δι᾽ αὐτοῦ προσαχθείη τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπεροψίαν
— through him he-might-be-brought to-the emperor but contempt
ἑαυτοῦ νομίσας τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ ἀμύνασθαι βουλόμενος
of-himself having-thought the affair and to-avenge-himself wishing
τοῦτον, πέμπει κρύφα τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἔτι ὄντος Δωριέως ἐν
on-him sends secretly to-the emperor still being Dorino in
τῇ Ἀδριανοῦ, μὴ δεῖν λέγων ἐκδοῦναι τὰς νήσους τῷ
the of-Hadrian(-city) not to-be-needful saying to-give-up the islands —
Δωριεῖ, τῶν τε νησιωτῶν οὐ παραδεχομένων αὐτὸν, καὶ
to-Dorino of-the both islanders not accepting him and
δύσνῳ ὄντι ἀνδρὶ, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ πολλὴν ἄδειαν τὴν ἐν
ill-disposed being man so-that not through much license the in
ταῖς νήσοις νεοχμώσῃ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ δοῦναι χώραν
the islands he-might-innovate but in the inland to-give land
αὐτῷ ἐς διατροφήν. Βασιλεὺς δὲ πείθεται τούτοις, καὶ τὰς
to-him for nourishment emperor and is-persuaded by-these and the
μὲν νήσους παρακατέχει, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ τὰ περὶ Ζῆχνα
indeed islands retains gives and to-him the around Zichna
χωρία καρποῦσθαι. Δωριεὺς δὲ ἀπελθὼν ἐκεῖσε καὶ βραχὺν
estates to-enjoy Dorino and having-gone there and short
χρόνον αὐτοῦ διαγαγὼν, μικρὸν ὕστερον φυγὰς ᾤχετο ἐς
time there having-spent a-little later as-fugitive went-off to

Μιτυλήνην, κἀκεῖθεν ἐς Νάξον διαβὰς καὶ γήμας ἐν
Mytilene and-thence to Naxos having-crossed and having-married in
τῇ νήσῳ ἑνὸς τῶν δυνατῶν θυγατέρα, ἔμεινε παρ᾽ αὐτῇ.
the island of-one of-the powerful daughter remained with her
Βασιλεὺς δὲ διάγων ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει τοῦ αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος, 17.1
emperor and spending-time in Adrianople of-the same winter
στρατιὰν μεγάλην ἤθροιζε, καὶ μηχανὰς κατεσκεύαζε πρὸς
army great gathered and engines built besides
ταῖς οὔσαις πλείους τε καὶ ἰσχυροτάτας καὶ ὅπλα ξυνέλεγε
the existing more both and strongest and arms collected
καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην πολεμικὴν χρείαν ἐξήρτυεν· οὐ μέντοι
and all other warlike need fitted-out not however
γε κατάδηλον ἐποίει τὴν αὐτοῦ γνώμην οὐδὲ ἤδει τις
at-least manifest made the his judgment nor knew anyone
ὅποι τὴν ὁρμὴν ποιήσοιτο. Παρασκευασάμενος δὲ καλῶς
where the impulse he-would-make having-prepared and well
καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν, ἅμα ἦρι ὁρμηθεὶς ἐκ
and as was to-him according-to mind at-once with-spring having-set-out from
τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ, ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς μεσογείας Θρᾴκης τε
the of-Hadrian(-city) he-marched through the inland of-Thrace both
καὶ Μακεδονίας ἐπὶ τὴν ἄνω Μυσίαν (ἣν δὴ Σοφίαν
and Macedonia to the upper Mysia which indeed Sofia
καλοῦσι οἱ νῦν) καὶ τὴν τοῦ Αἵμονος πάρορον,
call the(-ones) now and the — of-Haimos pass
καὶ διαβὰς αὐτὴν ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὴν Τριβαλλῶν, καὶ
and having-crossed it invades into the of-Triballians(-land) and
καταδραμὼν αὐτῆς τὰ πολλὰ καὶ καταστρεψάμενος
having-overrun of-it the most and having-subdued(-it)
ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ τῶν Παιόνων ἄστυ τὸ παρὰ τὰς
arrives at the of-the Paionians town the(-one) along the
ὄχθας τοῦ Ἴστρου κείμενον, Πελωγράδω οὕτω καλούμενον,
banks — of-Istros lying Belgrade so called

ἐρυμνότατον πάντῃ καὶ ἀσφαλέστατον, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ
strongest wholly and safest rather and also
ὅλως ἀπόμαχον τῇ τε ἄλλῃ οἰκοδομῇ καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῖς
wholly unassailable by-the both other building and indeed also by-the
δυσὶ ποταμοῖς ἑκατέρωθεν διειλημμένον τὰς δύο πλευράς,
two rivers on-either-side cut-off-at the two sides
ἔνθεν μὲν τῷ Ἴστρῳ παραρρέοντι ἀπὸ ἄρκτου, ἀπὸ δὲ
on-one-side indeed — by-Istros flowing-past from north from and
μεσημβρίας τῷ τε Σάῳ ἐσβάλλοντι ἐς αὐτὸν καὶ ὄχθαις
south — both by-Saos flowing-in into it and by-banks
μεγάλαις καὶ ἀποκρήμνοις καὶ ῥεύματι σφοδροτάτῳ καὶ
great and precipitous and by-current most-violent and
δίναις βαθείαις καὶ παλιρροίαις κατωχυρωμένον, τὴν δέ
eddies deep and back-flows fortified the and
γε πρὸς τῇ χέρσῳ πλευρὰν καὶ ᾗ μᾶλλον ἐπίμαχον
at-least toward the dry-land side and where more assailable
ἦν καὶ μηχαναῖς ἁλωτὸν, τείχει τε διπλῷ καὶ ὑπερυψήλῳ
it-was and by-engines capturable by-wall both double and very-high
καὶ τάφρῳ βαθείᾳ καὶ τεναγώδει καὶ ὑδάτων πλήρει
and by-ditch deep and marshy and of-waters full
κατησφαλισμένην ἔχον. Εἶχε δὲ καὶ φρουρὰν ἐντὸς ἱκανὴν
secured having it-had and also garrison within sufficient
Παιόνων μαχίμων καὶ καταφράκτων ὅλων· οὕτως ἀπόμαχον
of-Paionians warlike and armored whole so unassailable
ἦν. Ἐνταῦθα τοίνυν στρατόπεδον θέμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ
it-was there therefore camp having-set the emperor and
περισταυρώσας τὸ ἄστυ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει.
having-palisaded the town and engines having-set-up besieged(-it)

18.1 Λάζαρος δὲ ὁ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ἡγεμὼν, ὡς ἔγνω τὴν
Lazar and the of-the Triballians leader when he-learned the
ἀρχὴν τὴν ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως ἐς τὴν αὐτοῦ, εὐθὺς
at-first the approach of-the emperor into the his(-land) at-once

διαβὰς τὸν Ἴστρον ξὺν γυναικὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς
having-crossed — Istros with wife and children and the
ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσιν, ᾤχετο ἐς Δακίαν κἀκεῖ διέτριβε, τοῦ
possessions all went-off to Dacia and-there spent-time of-the
πολέμου τὸ πέρας ἀποσκοπῶν. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸ ἄστυ
war the end watching emperor and the town
πολιορκῶν τὸ μὲν τεῖχος κατέσειε ταῖς μηχαναῖς, τὸ
besieging the indeed wall shook with-the engines the(-part)
δὲ καὶ κατερρίπτει τελείως, αὐτὸς δὲ διανειμάμενος κατὰ
and also hurled-down completely himself and having-divided by
μέρη τὴν στρατιὰν, τὴν τάφρον ἐχώννυεν, ὅπως ῥᾳδία
parts the army the ditch filled-up so-that easy
εἴη τοῖς ὁπλίταις ἡ ἐς τὸ τεῖχος διάβασις. Καὶ τὸ
might-be for-the hoplites the to the wall crossing and the
ἔργον ταχέως ἠνύετο τῇ πολυχειρίᾳ. Οἱ δὲ ἐντὸς
work quickly was-accomplished by-the numbers the(-ones) and within
τοῦ ἄστεος ἀπεμάχοντο μὲν ἰσχυρῶς σταυρώματά τε
the town fought-back indeed strongly stockades both
καὶ προβλήματα παντοίας ὕλης ἐπάγοντες, λίθων τέ
and screens of-every-kind material bringing-up of-stones both
φημι καὶ ξύλων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων, τῷ κατερριμμένῳ τοῦ
I-mean and of-timbers and of-the others to-the hurled-down(-part) of-the
τείχους, τάφρον τε ἀπὸ τῶν ἔνδον ὀρύττοντες βαθεῖαν
wall ditch both from the(-parts) inside digging deep
καὶ χῶμα αἴροντες ὑψοῦ καὶ τἆλλα πάντα μηχανώμενοι
and mound raising high and the-rest all devising
ἐς ἀποτροπήν· οὐ μὴν εἶχόν τι καὶ ἀνύειν, τῶν
for averting not indeed they-could anything also to-accomplish the
ἐκ τῶν μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένων λίθων ἅπαντα σχεδαννύντων
from the engines let-fly stones all scattering
τε καὶ διαλικμώντων συντιθέμενα καὶ καθαιρούντων τὸ
both and winnowing put-together(-things) and taking-down the

τεῖχος. Ἰωάννης δὲ, ὁ Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν ἡγεμὼν,
wall John and the of-Paionians both and Dacians leader
πέραν τοῦ Ἴστρου καθήμενος ἀπαντικρὺ τοῦ ἄστεος
across — Istros sitting opposite the town
ξὺν τετρακισχιλίοις ὁπλίταις ἀπεσκόπει τὰ δρώμενα.
with four-thousand hoplites watched the(-things) being-done
Ὡς οὖν ἔγνω τό τε τεῖχος κατερριμμένον, τήν τε
when then he-learned the both wall hurled-down the both
τάφρον ἤδη χωσθεῖσαν ἅπασαν, τόν τε πόλεμον ὅσον
ditch already filled all the both war all
οὐ προσδοκώμενον καὶ τὴν προσβολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως
but expected and the attack of-the emperor
παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ, δείσας περὶ τοῦ ἄστεος, ὅπως
with-all the army having-feared for the town so-that
μὴ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ ληφθείη τοῖς ὅπλοις, λαθὼν
not by onslaught by-force it-be-taken with-the arms escaping-notice
διαβαίνει ξὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἐσελθὼν τὸ
crosses with the hoplites the river and having-entered the
ἄστυ ἐκάθητο, μηδενὸς εἰδότος τῶν ἔξω τὴν τούτου
town sat no-one knowing of-the(-ones) outside the his
διάβασιν. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἐπειδὴ πάντα οἱ ἦν εὐτρεπῆ (τό
crossing emperor and since all for-him was ready the
τε γὰρ τεῖχος ἐς ἔδαφος κατέρριπτο, ἥ τε τάφρος
both for wall to ground had-been-hurled-down the both ditch
ἐχώσθη, τά τε ἄλλα πάντα ἐς τειχομαχίαν καλῶς
was-filled the both other(-things) all for wall-fighting well
ἐξήρτυτο), δεῖν ἔγνω μηκέτι τοῦ λοιποῦ διαμέλλειν,
had-been-fitted-out to-be-needful he-resolved no-longer for-the rest to-delay
μηδ' ἐν ἀναβολαῖς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τάχος προσβάλλειν τῷ
nor in postponements to-be but with speed to-attack the
ἄστει πάσῃ καὶ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει. Ἐκτάξας οὖν καλῶς
town with-all both hand and power having-drawn-up then well

πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ παραινέσας πολλὰ πρότερον καὶ
all the army and having-exhorted much first and
δημηγορήσας καὶ παραθαρρύνας ἐς τὸ πολεμεῖν αὐτοὺς,
having-harangued and having-encouraged to the to-make-war them
καὶ παραγγείλας ἃ δεῖ ποιεῖν, καὶ παρακελευσάμενος
and having-instructed what is-needed to-do and having-urged
ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς νῦν ἤδη φανῆναι, ἡγεῖτο πρῶτος αὐτὸς
men good now already to-appear he-led first himself
τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος. Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἀλαλάξαντες
the(-way) to the wall the and soldiers having-raised-the-war-cry
μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν δρόμῳ καὶ βοῇ ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τὸ
great and fearful with-running and shout went against the
κατερριμμένον τοῦ τείχους, προλαβόντες τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ
thrown-down(-part) of-the wall having-outrun the emperor and
προσβάλλοντες τούτῳ εὐρώστως ἠγωνίζοντο, παρελθεῖν
attacking it stoutly contended to-pass
εἴσω βιαζόμενοι. Οἱ δὲ Παίονες ἐδέχοντό τε αὐτοὺς
inside forcing the and Paionians received both them
ἐρρωμένως, ἀνθιστάμενοι τοῖς ἐπιοῦσι καὶ μαχόμενοι
mightily resisting the(-ones) attacking and fighting
γενναίως, καὶ ὠθισμὸς ἦν ἐνταῦθα πολὺς καὶ φόνος ἀνδρῶν,
nobly and pushing was there much and slaughter of-men
τῆς μάχης ξυσταδὸν γινομένης καὶ πρὸ τοῦ βασιλέως,
the battle hand-to-hand becoming and before the emperor
τῶν μὲν παρελθεῖν εἴσω τοῦ τείχους βιαζομένων καὶ
the(-ones) indeed to-pass inside the wall forcing and
κατασχεῖν αὐτὸ, τῶν δὲ Παιόνων ἀπώσασθαί τε τούτους
to-seize it the and Paionians to-thrust-back both them
καὶ τὸ ἄστυ φυλάξαι· καὶ τέλος ὑπερέσχον οἱ τοῦ
and the town to-guard and finally prevailed the(-men) of-the
βασιλέως, καὶ βιασάμενοι τοὺς Παίονας ἐπιβαίνουσι τοῦ
emperor and having-forced the Paionians mount the

τείχους εὐρώστως, καὶ μαχόμενοι ἰσχυρῶς τρέπονται καὶ
wall stoutly and fighting strongly rout and
ὠθοῦσιν αὐτοὺς, ἔσω τοῦ ἄστεος ἐσχυθέντες, καὶ διώκοντες
push them inside the town having-poured-in and pursuing
οὐκ ἐν τάξει καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ ἔκτεινον ἀφειδῶς.
not in rank and with no order they-killed unsparingly
19.1 Κἀνταῦθα δὴ ἐπιφαίνεται αὐτοῖς αἴφνης ἐπεκδραμὼν ὁ
and-there indeed appears to-them suddenly having-sallied —
Ἰωάννης ξὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν, καὶ μέγα βοήσας ἐτάραξέ
John with the(-ones) about him and loudly having-shouted confounded
τε τούτους εὐθὺς, καὶ σφόδρα καταπλήξας εἶρξε τοῦ
both them at-once and exceedingly having-terrified barred(-them) from-the
πρόσω. Καὶ γίνεται δὴ μάχη καρτερὰ ἐνταῦθα μετὰ
forward(-way) and arises indeed battle fierce there with
θυμοῦ καὶ ὀργῆς, καὶ φόνος πολὺς τῶν τε ὁπλιτῶν
spirit and anger and slaughter much of-the both hoplites
ἅμα καὶ τῶν Παιόνων, ἀμφοτέρων ἀγωνιζομένων καλῶς
at-once and of-the Paionians both contending well
καὶ ἀντιφιλοτιμουμένων ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀνδρῶν ἀγαθῶν
and rivaling one-another and men good
γινομένων, τῶν μὲν νομιζόντων σχεδὸν ἔχειν ἤδη τὸ
becoming the(-ones) indeed thinking nearly to-have already the
ἄστυ, καὶ δεινὸν ἡγουμένων τὴν τούτου ἀπόλειψιν, τῶν
town and terrible thinking the of-it abandonment the
δὲ Παιόνων αἰσχυνομένων τε τὴν ἧτταν καὶ τοιοῦτον
and Paionians ashamed both of-the defeat and such
ἄστυ ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν ἀπολέσαι. Ὅμως γε μὴν ἐν
town from the hands to-lose nevertheless at-least indeed in
τούτῳ σφόδρα ἐκακοπάθουν οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως, ἅτε
this exceedingly suffered the(-men) of-the emperor as
κατὰ πρόσωπόν τε παιόμενοι καὶ ἄνωθεν ἀπό τε τῶν
at face both being-struck and from-above from both the

ἐπάλξεων τοῦ τείχους καὶ τῶν οἰκημάτων ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων
battlements of-the wall and the dwellings from above
βαλλόμενοι, καὶ πανταχόθεν ἐπικειμένων αὐτοῖς τῶν
being-shot and from-all-sides pressing on-them the
Παιόνων· καὶ μὴ δυνάμενοι ἀντέχειν ἔτι ἐγκλίνουσι, καὶ
Paionians and not being-able to-hold-out any-longer they-give-way and
οἱ Παίονες ἀναθαρσήσαντες εὐθὺς ἐσπεσόντες μάλα
the Paionians having-taken-courage at-once having-fallen-upon(-them) very
εὐρώστως, ἐδίωκόν τε τούτους κατὰ πόδας καὶ ἤρκουν, καὶ
stoutly pursued both them at feet and sufficed and
ἀπωσάμενοι τοῦ τείχους εἵποντο μέχρι τοῦ στρατοπέδου
having-thrust(-them) from-the wall followed as-far-as the camp
κτείνοντες. Γενόμενοι δὲ κατὰ τὰς μηχανὰς, ἐνίας μὲν
killing having-come and at the engines some indeed
αὐτῶν ῥίπτουσι κατὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔστιν ἃς δὲ καὶ ἔσω
of-them they-throw into the river it-is which and also inside
τοῦ χάρακος· οἱ πλείους δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ πρὸς διαρπαγὴν
the palisade the(-ones) more and of-them also to plunder
ἐτράποντο τοῦ στρατοπέδου, κἂν εἰργάσαντό τι
turned of-the camp and-would have-done something
μέγα δεινὸν, καὶ τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατοπέδου διηρπάγη,
great terrible and the most of-the camp would-have-been-plundered
εἰ μὴ βασιλεὺς εὐθὺς ξὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἐσπηδήσας
if not emperor at-once with the(-ones) about him having-leapt
κατὰ μέσον αὐτῶν ἐπέσχε τε τῆς ὁρμῆς, καὶ μαχόμενος
into middle of-them checked both from-the impulse and fighting
ἰσχυρῶς τρέπεται τούτους λαμπρῶς καὶ καταδιώκει μέχρι
strongly routs them brilliantly and pursues as-far-as
τοῦ τείχους, φονεύων καὶ κτείνων ἀνοικτὶ, καὶ βιασάμενος
the wall slaughtering and killing pitilessly and having-forced
μάλα ἐρρωμένως ἔσω τούτους ὠθεῖ καὶ κατακλείει πάλιν
very mightily inside them pushes and shuts-in again

ἐντὸς τοῦ ἄστεος· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀναχωρεῖ
within the town and after this indeed also himself withdraws
τῆς διώξεως καὶ ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐπάνεισιν. Ἐλήφθη δὲ
from-the pursuit and to the camp returns were-taken and
οὐ πολλὰ τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, τοῦ βασιλέως,
not many(-things) of-the(-things) from the camp of-the emperor
ὅπερ ἔφην, αἴφνης ἐπεσπεσόντος αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐς φυγὴν
as I-said suddenly having-fallen-upon them and to flight
τρέψαντος καὶ διώξαντος. Ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν ἄλλων
having-turned(-them) and having-pursued died and of-the indeed other
στρατιωτῶν οὐκ ὀλίγοι, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλικῆς
soldiers not few and indeed also from the royal
αὐλῆς ἔνιοι ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες· πίπτει δὲ καὶ ὁ τῆς Εὐρώπης
court some good men falls and also the — of-Europe
ἔπαρχος Καρατζίας, λίθῳ βληθεὶς τῶν ἀπὸ μηχανῆς,
governor Karaca by-stone hit of-the(-ones) from engine
ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς καὶ τῶν μέγα δυναμένων παρὰ βασιλεῖ,
man good and of-the(-ones) greatly powerful with emperor
καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ στρατηγίᾳ καὶ
and indeed also of-the renowned for courage and generalship and
ἀρετῇ. Λέγεται δὲ καὶ τὸν βασιλέα μαχόμενον βληθῆναι
virtue it-is-said and also the emperor fighting to-have-been-hit
δόρατι τὸν μηρὸν, μὴ μέντοι μέγα εἶναι τὸ τραῦμα, ἀλλ᾽
by-spear in-the thigh not however great to-be the wound but
ἐπιπόλαιον. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἀπογνοὺς ὅλως τὴν αἵρεσιν
superficial emperor and having-despaired wholly of-the taking
τοῦ φρουρίου (ἤδη γὰρ ἐν μεγίστῃ φυλακῇ ἦν, πολλῶν
of-the fortress already for in greatest guard it-was many
ἐσεληλυθότων ἐν αὐτῷ), ἀνίστησί τε τὴν στρατιὰν
having-entered into it raises both the army
ἐκεῖθεν, καὶ καταδραμὼν μέρος τι τῆς Τριβαλλίδος
thence and having-overrun part some of-the Triballian(-land)

ληίζεται, καὶ φρούρια χειροῦται, καὶ κώμας διαρπάζει,
plunders and fortresses subdues and villages plunders
καὶ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι πολλὴν αὐτὸς καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ
and booty having-driven as much himself and to-the army
διαδοὺς σατράπην τε αὖθις ἐγκαταστήσας αὐτῇ τὸν
having-distributed satrap both again having-established over-it —
Ἀλῆν, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, τελευτῶντος ἤδη τοῦ
Ali returns to the of-Hadrian(-city) ending already the
θέρους· διελθὼν δὲ τὸ φθινόπωρον ὅλον αὐτοῦ, χειμῶνος
summer having-passed and the autumn whole there of-winter
ἀρχομένου ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον. Καὶ τέταρτον καὶ
beginning arrives at — Byzantium and fourth and
ἑξηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις
sixtieth year besides the nine-hundred both and six-thousand
τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο, ἕκτον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
in-the total was-being-completed sixth and of-the rule for-the emperor
Λάζαρος δὲ ὁ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ἡγεμὼν ἐπειδὴ ἔγνω τὴν 20.1
Lazar and the of-the Triballians leader when he-learned the
ἀναχώρησιν τοῦ βασιλέως, πάλιν διαβὰς τὸν Ἴστρον
withdrawal of-the emperor again having-crossed — Istros
ἦκεν ἐς τὴν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐν Σαμανδρίᾳ διῆγε. Μιχαῆλος
came into the his(-land) and in Smederevo stayed Michael
δὲ, ὁ τοῦ Ἰωάννου τῆς γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς, ὕπαρχος
and the — of-John of-the wife brother governor
τοῦ Πελωγράδου ἀπολειφθεὶς πρὸς αὐτοῦ, ἐνεκότει τῷ
— of-Belgrade left-behind by him bore-a-grudge —
Λαζάρῳ δεινῶς, καὶ πάντα τρόπον λοχῶν τε ἦν
against-Lazar terribly and in-every way lying-in-wait both was
αὐτὸν καὶ βουλόμενος ξυλλαβεῖν, μήτε εἰδότος αὐτοῦ μήτε
for-him and wishing to-seize(-him) neither knowing he nor
ἡγησαμένης αἰτίας οὐδεμιᾶς. Λοχήσας οὖν αὐτὸν μετὰ
having-preceded cause any having-ambushed then him after

μικρὸν ἔν τινι τῶν αὐτοῦ φρουρίων ξυλλαμβάνει δόλῳ, καὶ
a-little in one of-the his fortresses seizes(-him) by-guile and
ἐς εἱρκτὴν ἐμβάλλων ἐν Πελωγράδῳ, ἐν φυλακῇ εἶχε
into prison throwing in Belgrade in guard kept(-him)
πολλῇ. Λάζαρος δὲ μὴ ἔχων ἄλλως ἐκεῖθεν ἀποφυγεῖν,
much Lazar and not having otherwise thence to-escape
ἀποδόσθαι αὐτὸν χρυσοῦ ᾔτει τὸν Μιχαῆλον· ὁ δὲ τὸ μὲν
to-sell-back him for-gold asked — Michael he and the indeed
πρῶτον ἀνένευε, χώραν τε αἰτῶν καὶ φρούρια ἐς ἀπόδοσιν
first refused land both asking and fortresses for payment
ἢ καὶ βαρύνειν βουλόμενος τὴν ὠνήν· ὡς δὲ καιροῦ
or also to-make-heavy wishing the price when but time
παρῳχηκότος ἱκανοῦ, μόλις δὴ καὶ πολλὰ παρακληθεὶς·
having-passed sufficient scarcely indeed and much having-been-begged
ἐνέδωκεν ἀπολῦσαι τοῦτον, λαβὼν τρισμυρίους χρυσίνους.
he-consented to-release him having-taken thirty-thousand gold-pieces
Λάζαρος δὲ ἀποσωθεὶς ἐς τὴν ἰδίαν ἀρχὴν, πρὶν ἢ
Lazar and having-got-safe into the own rule before than
γοῦν καὶ μικρὸν ἀναπνεῦσαι τῇ τε λύπῃ κατεργασθεὶς
at-any-rate even a-little to-breathe by-the both grief worn-out
καὶ νόσῳ βαρείᾳ ξυσχεθεὶς τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον, διαδόχους τῆς
and by-disease heavy seized ends the life successors of-the
ἰδίας ἀρχῆς τήν τε γυναῖκα καὶ Λάζαρον καταλιπὼν τὸν
own rule the both wife and Lazar having-left the
υἱόν. Ὁ δὲ κακὸς φανεὶς περὶ τοὺς γεννήσαντας, τόν
son he and bad having-appeared toward the(-ones) having-begotten(-him) the
τε πατέρα ζῶντα ἐν πολλοῖς τε ἄλλοις σφόδρα ἐλύπησε,
both father living in many both other(-things) exceedingly grieved
καὶ δὴ καὶ κατεχόμενον ὑπὸ τοῦ Μιχαήλου ἐν φρουρᾷ
and indeed also held by — Michael in guard
οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀπολύσασθαι καταβαλὼν τὴν ὠνὴν, ἀλλὰ μόλις
not wished to-release having-paid the price but scarcely

που καὶ ξὺν βίᾳ τοῦτο πεποίηκε πολλὰ παρακληθεὶς ὑπὸ
somehow and with force this has-done much having-been-begged by
τῆς μητρός, αὐτήν τε τὴν μητέρα, τελευτήσαντος αὐτῷ
the mother herself both the mother having-died for-him
τοῦ πατρὸς, τῆς τε ἀρχῆς ἀπεστέρησε πάσης καὶ πολλὰ
the father of-the both rule deprived all and much
ἐκάκου, δι᾽ ὄχλου ταύτῃ γινόμενος ὁσημέραι, κλῆρόν
harmed through annoyance to-her becoming daily inheritance
τε ἀπαιτῶν πατρικὸν καὶ βίον ἀπόθετον ὑπ᾽ αὐτῆς
both demanding paternal and livelihood stored-away by her
κεκρυμμένον. Ἡ δὲ μὴ φέρουσα τὴν καθ᾽ ἡμέραν ἐπήρειαν
hidden she and not bearing the by day abuse
τούτου καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἐπίθεσιν, ἀποδιδράσκει λαθοῦσα
of-him and the other assault runs-away having-escaped-notice
ξύν γε τῇ θυγατρὶ Ἀμηρήσῃ καὶ τῷ πηρῷ υἱῷ Γρηγορίῳ,
with at-least the daughter Amirissa and the maimed son Gregory
ἐπαγομένη καὶ βίον ἅμα πολύν. Λάζαρος δὲ ὁ υἱὸς
bringing-along and livelihood at-once much Lazar and the son
τοῦτο πυθόμενος διώκει κατὰ σπουδὴν, καὶ καταλαμβάνει
this having-learned pursues with haste and overtakes
ταύτας ἔν τινι τῶν φρουρίων τῶν ἑαυτοῦ· οὐδὲ γὰρ
them in one of-the fortresses of-the his-own not-even for
ἔφθησαν ἐς τὴν χώραν καταφυγοῦσαι τοῦ βασιλέως,
they-had-arrived-first into the land having-fled of-the emperor
ἔνθα ἠπείγοντο, ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν Γρηγόριος ξὺν τῇ ἀδελφῇ,
where they-were-hastening but — indeed Gregory with the sister
λαθόντες ἢ καὶ προλαβόντες αὐτόν (λέγεται γὰρ καὶ
having-escaped-notice or also having-outrun him it-is-said for also
ἄμφω), ἀποδιδράσκουσι καὶ καταφεύγουσιν ἔν τινι τῶν
both run-away and flee into one of-the
φρουρίων τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα παραγενόμενοι
fortresses of-the emperor and after these(-things) having-come

ἐς βασιλέα, δέχονταί τε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀσμένως, καὶ τιμῆς
to emperor are-received both by him gladly and of-honor
ἀξιοῦνται καὶ προνοίας τῆς προσηκούσης· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ,
are-deemed-worthy and of-provision the fitting the and mother
αὐτοῦ καταλειφθεῖσα δι᾽ ἀδυναμίαν τοῦ γήρως, μετὰ
there left-behind because-of weakness of-the old-age after
μικρὸν καὶ αὐτὴ κατεργασθεῖσα τῇ λύπῃ καὶ μικρὸν
a-little also herself worn-out by-the grief and a-little
νοσήσασα τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον, καὶ θάπτεται αὐτοῦ.
having-been-ill ends the life and is-buried there
Λάζαρος δὲ ὁ υἱὸς τελέσας ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ τὰ νενομισμένα
Lazar and the son having-performed over her the customary(-rites)
καὶ λαβὼν πάντα ὅσα ἐπήγετο μεθ᾽ ἑαυτῆς, ἐπάνεισιν
and having-taken all whatever she-brought with herself returns
ἐς Σαμανδρίαν, καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν εἶχε μόνος τὴν Τριβαλλῶν,
to Smederevo and the rule held alone the of-Triballians
ὅση κατελέλειπτο, μηδένα τῶν οἰκείων ἔχων ἤδη
as-much-as had-been-left none of-the kin having already
κοινωνόν· τῶν γὰρ ἀδελφῶν, πηρῶν ὄντων, ὁ μὲν,
partner of-the for brothers maimed being the(-one) indeed
ἥπερ ἔφην, ὁ Γρηγόριος, ὑπεξέφυγε ξὺν τῇ ἀδελφῇ,
as I-said — Gregory escaped with the sister
Στέφανος δὲ αὐτοῦ μένων ἡσύχαζε. Λάζαρος δὲ, ἅτε νέος
Stephen and there remaining kept-quiet Lazar and as young
ὢν καὶ τοῦ ἄρχειν ἀπείρατος, καὶ μηδένα χρηστὸν ὅλως
being and of-the to-rule inexperienced and no good at-all
ἄνδρα καὶ ξυνετὸν ἔχων ἐν τοῖς πράγμασιν, ἢ, εἰ καὶ
man and intelligent having in the affairs or if also
εἶχε, μὴ παρακολουθῶν ἢ πειθόμενος ὅλως, οὐ διῴκει
he-had not following or obeying wholly not administered
καλῶς τὴν ἀρχὴν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐνόσει τὰ Τριβαλλῶν, καὶ
well the rule but was-sick the(-affairs) of-Triballians and

ἐν ξυγχύσει ἦν καὶ ἀταξίᾳ πολλῇ. Διὸ δὴ καὶ ἔν τε
in confusion was and disorder much wherefore indeed also in both
ἄλλοις πολλοῖς ἐσφάλλετο καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα δὴ τῷ μὴ
other many(-things) he-failed and not least indeed in-the not
ἀποδιδόναι τοὺς ξυνήθεις φόρους τῷ βασιλεῖ· ἐφ' ᾧ δὴ
to-pay the customary tributes to-the emperor at which indeed
καὶ μᾶλλον ὠργίζετο αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ ἐν παρασκευῇ
also more was-angry with-him the emperor and in preparation
ἦν ἅμα ἦρι ἐσβαλεῖν ἐς τὴν αὐτοῦ. Ὅμως γε
was at-once with-spring to-invade into the his(-land) nevertheless at-least
μὴν καὶ οὗτος μικρὸν ἐπιβιοὺς τῇ ἀρχῇ, νοσήσας
indeed also this-one a-little having-survived in-the rule having-been-ill
τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον, διαδόχους καταλιπὼν τῆς ἀρχῆς τήν
ends the life successors having-left of-the rule the
τε γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδα θήλειαν οὔπω ἔφηβον ἔτι.
both wife and child female not-yet of-age still
Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Λαζάρου πυθόμενος, αὐτίκα 21.1
emperor and the death — of-Lazar having-learned at-once
στρατιὰν ἐκπέμπει Ἀλῇ τῷ τῆς χώρας σατράπῃ κελεύων
army sends-out to-Ali the of-the land satrap ordering
αὐτὸν κατὰ τάχος ἐς τὴν τοῦ Λαζάρου χώραν ἐμβαλεῖν
him with speed into the — of-Lazar land to-invade
καὶ πᾶσαν καταδραμεῖν καὶ χειρώσασθαι. Ὁ δὲ τὴν
and all to-overrun and to-subdue he and the
στρατιὰν ταύτην δεξάμενος καὶ ἑτέραν οὐκ ὀλίγην ἐκ τῆς
army this having-received and another not small from the
αὐτοῦ σατραπείας ἀθροίσας, κατατρέχει τὴν λοιπὴν πᾶσαν
his satrapy having-gathered overruns the rest all
τῶν Τριβαλλῶν καὶ χειροῦται, καὶ πόλεις καὶ φρούρια καὶ
of-the Triballians(-land) and subdues and cities and fortresses and
πᾶσαν τὴν ἄλλην χώραν ποιεῖται ὑφ' ἑαυτῷ. Προσελάσας
all the other land makes under himself having-ridden-up

δὲ τῇ Σαμανδρίᾳ πρῶτον μὲν λόγους προσφέρει περὶ
and — to-Smederevo first indeed words he-brings about
ξυμβάσεων τῇ τε βασιλίδι καὶ τοῖς ἐν τέλει, εἰ
agreements to-the both queen and to-the(-ones) in office if
βούλοιντο, παραδόντες τὸ ἄστυ τῷ βασιλεῖ, τὴν λοιπὴν
they-would-wish having-handed-over the town to-the emperor the rest
πᾶσαν χώραν αὐτοὶ καρποῦσθαι, βασιλέως ἐνδόντος
all land themselves to-enjoy emperor having-granted
καὶ τὰ πιστὰ διδόντος αὐτοῖς. Ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἐπὶ
and the pledges giving to-them when but not they-accepted on
τούτοις, ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας ἐκάθηντο, ὁ Ἀλῆς
these(-terms) but having-shut the gates sat — Ali
κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν αὐτοὺς τῷ στρατῷ καὶ κατακλείσας
in-circle having-surrounded them with-the army and having-shut-in
ἰσχυρῶς ἐφρούρει τοῦ μή τι τῶν ἔνδον ἐξαγαγεῖν
strongly guarded(-them) so-that not anything of-the(-things) within to-bring-out
ἢ τῶν ἔξωθεν ἐσκομίσασθαι.
or of-the(-things) from-outside to-bring-in

22.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ διάγων ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει, ξυνῴκιζέ τε
emperor and spending-time in Constantinople resettled both
αὐτὴν καὶ τῶν ἔνδον ἐπεμέλετο ἰσχυρῶς, λουτρά τε
it and of-the(-things) within took-care strongly baths both
κατασκευάζων ἐς κάλλος καὶ χρείαν καὶ μέγεθος ἱκανὰ
constructing for beauty and use and size sufficient
καὶ οἰκίας λαμπρὰς καὶ πανδοκεῖα οἰκοδομῶν καὶ ἀγορὰς
and houses brilliant and inns building and markets
πανταχοῦ ταύτης καὶ καταγωγὰς, ἔτι δὲ παραδείσους
everywhere of-it and lodgings further and gardens
φυτεύων καὶ ὑδάτων ἀφθονίαν ἐσάγων καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα
planting and of-waters abundance bringing-in and whatever other(-things)
κόσμον οἶδε φέρειν καὶ κάλλος αὐτῇ καὶ χρείαν ἀναγκαίαν
ornament know to-bring and beauty to-it and use necessary

καὶ ψυχαγωγίαν τῶν ἐνοικούντων ἅπαντα καθιστάμενος·
and entertainment of-the inhabitants all establishing
οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἔξω πάντα τῆς χώρας
not only and but also the(-parts) outside all of-the land
ξυνῴκιζεν, ἀποικίζων πολλούς τε τῶν Τριβαλλῶν καὶ
he-resettled transplanting many both of-the Triballians and
Παιόνων καὶ Μυσῶν τῆς αὐτῶν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ
Paionians and Mysians from-the their(-land) the(-ones) and also
ληιζόμενος καὶ κατοικίζων ἐν αὐτῇ. Ἔγνωστο γὰρ αὐτῷ
taking-as-booty and settling in it it-had-been-resolved for by-him
πᾶσαν τὴν ἔξω καὶ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως χώραν ξυνοικίσαι
all the outer and before the city land to-resettle
καλῶς, ἅμα μὲν δι᾽ ἀρετὴν τῆς γῆς (ἔστι γὰρ ἀγαθὴ
well at-once indeed because-of excellence of-the land it-is for good
σπείρειν τε καὶ φυτεύειν καὶ πρὸς ἁπάσας ἐρρωμένη γονὰς
to-sow both and to-plant and for all strong births
καὶ καρποὺς, καὶ τὰ μέγιστα ξυντελέσειν ἔμελλε ταῖς
and fruits and the greatest(-things) to-contribute it-was-going to-the
χρείαις τῆς πόλεως), ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὴν χώραν ἐξημερῶν,
needs of-the city at-once and also the land taming
ἐρήμην τε οὖσαν καὶ ἀοίκητον αὐτῆς τὴν πολλὴν καὶ
desolate both being and uninhabited of-it the most and
τοῖς ὁδοιποροῦσιν ἐπισφαλῆ. Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐν τούτοις ἦν.
to-the(-ones) traveling dangerous and he indeed in these(-things) was
Νικόλαος δὲ ὁ τῆς Ῥώμης ἀρχιερεὺς κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν 23.1
Nicholas and the — of-Rome high-priest at the same
χρόνον στρατιὰν ἤθροιζεν ἐς Ἰταλίαν, καὶ στόλον ἐξήρτυε
time army gathered in Italy and fleet fitted-out
διαπόντιον κατὰ τῶν ἐν τῷ Αἰγαίῳ νήσων τοῦ βασιλέως,
overseas against the in — Aegean islands of-the emperor
Ἴμβρου καὶ Λήμνου καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν. Καὶ πληρώσας
Imbros and Lemnos and the rest and having-manned

τριήρεις τριάκοντα καὶ ὁλκάδας δύο τῶν μεγάλων,
triremes thirty and merchantmen two of-the great
καὶ ὁπλίσας καλῶς, στρατιώτας τε τῶν μαχίμων
and having-armed(-them) well soldiers both of-the warlike
ἐπιβιβάσας καὶ ὅπλα παντοῖα ἐνθέμενος καὶ μηχανὰς,
having-put-aboard and arms all-kinds having-put-in and engines
καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἑλόμενος Λοδοβίκον τὸν
and general with-full-power having-chosen Ludovico the
ἀδελφιδοῦν, ὃν καὶ πατριάρχην τῶν ἀνατολικῶν μερῶν
nephew whom also patriarch of-the eastern parts
κατέστησεν, ἅμα ἦρι ἐκπέμπει. Καὶ ὃς ἀναχθεὶς
he-appointed at-once with-spring sends-out and he having-put-out
ἐξ Ἰταλίας ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Ῥόδον, καὶ μικρόν τι
from Italy arrives at Rhodes and a-little something
διατρίψας αὐτοῦ, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν ἐπιπλεῖ ταῖς νήσοις
having-spent-time there having-set-out thence sails-against the islands
τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ προσσχὼν τὸ πρῶτον ἐν Λήμνῳ, καὶ
of-the emperor and having-put-in the first at Lemnos and
ἀπόβασιν ποιησάμενος, παρεστήσατο ταύτην ὁμολογίᾳ,
landing having-made brought-to-terms it by-agreement
τῶν τε Λημνίων ἐνδόντων εὐθὺς καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
the both Lemnians surrendering at-once and the in it
φυλάκων τοῦ βασιλέως· εἶχε γὰρ ἐν αὐτῇ φρουροὺς
guards of-the emperor he-had for in it guards
ἄνδρας ἑκατὸν μαχίμους τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς
men hundred warlike of-the(-ones) from the own court
νεοδαμωδῶν καὶ ἄρχοντα τούτων τε καὶ τῆς νήσου
newly-enrolled and commander of-these both and of-the island
ξυμπάσης Μωράτην οὕτω καλούμενον. Ἐπιμείνας δὲ τῇ
whole Murad so called having-stayed and —
Λήμνῳ ἡμέρας ὀκτὼ καὶ καταστησάμενος τὰ αὐτοῦ,
on-Lemnos days eight and having-settled the(-things) there

φρουράν τε ἱκανὴν αὐτῇ καὶ φρούραρχον ἐγκαταλιπὼν
garrison both sufficient to-it and fortress-commander having-left
τὸν Λωΐζον, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν ἐπιπλεῖ τῇ Θάσῳ, καὶ
— Luigi having-set-out thence sails-against — Thasos and
ἀποβὰς λόγους προσφέρει πρῶτον περί τε ξυμβάσεων
having-disembarked words he-brings first about both agreements
καὶ ἐνδόσεως τῆς νήσου τοῖς ἐν τῷ φρουρίῳ τοῦ
and surrender of-the island to-the(-ones) in the fortress of-the
λιμένος. Ὡς δ' οὐκ ἔπειθε, κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῇ
harbor when but not he-persuaded in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the
στρατιᾷ καὶ πανταχόθεν προσβαλὼν αὐτῷ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ
army and from-all-sides having-attacked it strongly and
κλίμακας ἐπαγαγὼν τῷ τείχει καὶ μηχανὰς, αἱρεῖ κατὰ
ladders having-brought-up to-the wall and engines takes(-it) by
κράτος ἐκ πρώτης προσβολῆς, καὶ τῶν φυλάκων τοὺς
force from first attack and of-the guards the(-ones)
μὲν ἀναιρεῖ, τοὺς δὲ ζῶντας αἱρεῖ· ἦσαν γὰρ ἐν τούτῳ
indeed he-kills the(-ones) and alive takes there-were for in this
φρουροὶ ἄνδρες ἑξήκοντα τοῦ βασιλέως. Καταπλήξας δὲ
guards men sixty of-the emperor having-terrified and
ἰσχυρῶς ἐκ τούτου καὶ τοὺς ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις πολίσμασι
strongly from this also the(-ones) in the other towns
λαμβάνει καὶ τούτους ὁμολογίᾳ ἑαυτούς τε καὶ τὰ φρούρια
he-takes also these by-agreement themselves both and the fortresses
παραδόντας ἀμαχί. Παραστησάμενος δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν
having-handed-over without-fighting having-brought-to-terms and all the
νῆσον καὶ κατασχὼν τελείως ἐν πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμέραις
island and having-seized(-it) completely in fifteen days
ταῖς ὅλαις, διατίθεται τὰ κατ' αὐτὴν, καὶ φρουρὰν
the whole he-arranges the(-things) concerning it and garrison
ἐγκαταστησάμενος αὖθις ἀπέπλευσεν ἐς Λῆμνον παντὶ τῷ
having-established again sailed-away to Lemnos with-all the

στόλῳ, ἔχων καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας οὓς ἔλαβε ζῶντας τῶν
fleet having also the men whom he-took alive of-the
φρουρῶν. Γινόμενος δ' ἐν Λήμνῳ ἐκπέμπει δέκα τριήρεις ἐς
guards being and at Lemnos he-sends-out ten triremes to
Ἴμβρον καὶ ἄρχοντα μετ' αὐτῶν Κόντον οὕτω καλούμενον.
Imbros and commander with them Conte so called
Λοδοβίκος δὲ τέτταρας μόνας ἡμέρας ἐπιμείνας τῇ Λήμνῳ
Ludovico and four only days having-stayed — on-Lemnos
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς ἄνδρας τούς τε ἐκ Λήμνου
on-the next(-day) having-taken the men the(-ones) both from Lemnos
τούς τε ἐκ Θάσου ζωγρηθέντας τοῦ βασιλέως, ὅσοι
the(-ones) both from Thasos taken-alive of-the emperor as-many-as
μὴ ἀπέθανον, ξὺν τῷ λοιπῷ στόλῳ ἀπέπλευσεν ἐς Ῥόδον.
not died with the rest fleet sailed-away to Rhodes
Κόντος δὲ ἀφικόμενος ἐς Ἴμβρον ξὺν ταῖς δέκα τριήρεσι,
Conte and having-arrived at Imbros with the ten triremes
λόγους προσφέρει Κριτοβούλῳ τῷ ταύτης ἐπάρχ ὄντι περὶ
words brings to-Kritoboulos the of-it governor being about
ἐνδόσεως τῆς νήσου, ἐγχειρίσας αὐτῷ καὶ γράμματα περὶ
surrender of-the island having-handed to-him also letters about
τούτου τοῦ Λοδοβίκου. Κριτόβουλος δὲ δέχεται τοῦτον
this — of-Ludovico Kritoboulos and receives him
φιλοφρόνως, καὶ πολλὰ δωρησάμενός τε καὶ λόγοις
kindly and many(-things) having-given both and with-words
ἡμέροις καὶ προσηνέσι δεξιωσάμενος, πάσῃ τε ἄλλῃ
mild and gentle having-greeted(-him) with-all both other
χρησάμενος ἐς αὐτὸν θεραπείᾳ, ἀποπέμπει μετ' εἰρήνης
having-used toward him attendance sends-away with peace
ἀρκεσθέντα τοῖς λόγοις τοῖς παρ' αὐτοῦ καὶ μηδὲν
content with-the words the(-ones) from him and nothing
ζητήσαντα περαιτέρω μηδὲ πολυπραγμονήσαντα ὅλως ἢ
having-sought further nor having-meddled at-all or

περὶ ὧν ἦκέ τι διαπραξάμενον. Ἐγχειρίζει δὲ αὐτῷ
concerning what he-came anything having-accomplished he-bands and to-him
καὶ γράμματα ἐς Λοδοβίκον, οἰκονομίαν δὲ ἔχοντα καὶ
also letters to Ludovico management and having and
φιλίαν δεικνύντα. Καὶ ἀποπλεῖ καὶ οὗτος ἐς Ῥόδον. Ἐν
friendship showing and sails-away also this-one to Rhodes in
τούτῳ δὲ καὶ τὸ φθινόπωρον ἐτελεύτα, καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν καὶ
this and also the autumn was-ending and sixtieth and
πέμπτον ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς
fifth year besides the nine-hundred and six-thousand in-the
ὅλοις ἠνύετο, ἕβδομον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
total was-being-completed seventh and of-the rule for-the emperor

III · THE PELOPONNESE

When the despots Thomas and Demetrios withhold their tribute and quarrel, Mehmed invades the Peloponnese, takes the lower walls of Corinth, and receives the city through Matthew Asanes. He visits Athens and admires it, builds temples and palaces in the capital, and returns to the Peloponnese, taking Sparta from Demetrios, storming Kastrion, starving out Gardiki, and driving Thomas to Corfu.

Περιέχει ἥδε τόν τε πόλεμον τῶν Πελοποννησίων καὶ
it-contains this(-book) the both war of-the Peloponnesians and
τὴν πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἐσβολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τὴν
the first and second invasion of-the emperor and the
παντελῆ καταστροφὴν καὶ δουλείαν τούτων καὶ ἑτέρας
complete subjugation and slavery of-these and other
πράξεις ἐν τῷ μεταξύ. Χρόνου πλῆθος ἔτη τρία.
deeds in the between of-time length years three

1.1 Τοῦ δ' αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος καὶ βασιλεὺς πέμπει πρεσβείαν
of-the and same winter also emperor sends embassy
ἐς Πελοπόννησον, ἀπαιτῶν παρὰ τῶν ταύτῃ ἡγεμόνων
to Peloponnese demanding from the there leaders
τοὺς ἐπετείους φόρους, οὓς ὤφειλον αὐτῷ τριῶν ἐτῶν
the yearly tributes which they-owed to-him of-three years
που μάλιστα. Οἱ γὰρ τῆς Πελοποννήσου δεσπόται,
about most the for — of-Peloponnese despots
τῆς Βυζαντίδος ἁλούσης, εὐθὺς νεωτερισάντων τῶν ἐν
— Byzantine(-city) having-been-taken at-once having-revolted the in
Πελοποννήσῳ Ἰλλυριῶν καὶ ἐπαναστάντων αὐτοῖς, καλοῦσιν
Peloponnese Illyrians and having-risen-against them call
ἐς ἐπικουρίαν τὸν βασιλέα, ὑπεσχημένοι τούτῳ δασμὸν
for help the emperor having-promised to-him tribute
ἐτήσιον ἀποφέρειν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου χρυσίου στατῆρας
yearly to-pay from Peloponnese of-gold staters
ἑξακισχιλίους. Βασιλεὺς δὲ δέχεται τούτοις ξυμμαχήσειν,
six-thousand emperor and accepts with-these to-fight-as-ally
καὶ παρέχει στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δὲ ξὺν ταύτῃ
and provides army sufficient to-them they and with this
καταγωνισάμενοι τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς δουλοῦνται τελείως καὶ
having-fought-down the Illyrians enslave(-them) completely and
φόρου ποιοῦνται ὑποτελεῖς. Μετὰ ταῦτά γε μὴν,
of-tribute make subject after these(-things) at-least indeed
τὸν δασμὸν ἀπαιτοῦντος τοῦ βασιλέως, οὐκ ἀπεδίδουν
the tribute demanding the emperor not they-paid
ῥᾳδίως, πλαττόμενοί τε κενὰς αἰτίας ἀεὶ καὶ ἀναβολὰς
readily devising both empty causes always and postponements
οὐ καλὰς, καίτοι γε λαμβάνοντες αὐτοὶ τὸν δασμὸν
not fine although at-least receiving themselves the tribute
παρὰ τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν ἐτησίως ἐφ' ᾧ καταβάλλειν τῷ
from the Illyrians yearly on condition to-pay to-the

βασιλεῖ· οἱ δὲ ἀνήλισκον ἐς ἀκαίρους δαπάνας ἰδίας,
emperor they and spent(-it) on untimely expenses own
παρακρουόμενοι τὸν βασιλέα. Πέμπων οὖν πολλάκις πρὸς
cheating the emperor sending then often to
αὐτοὺς οὐδὲν ἤνυεν· οὐ τοῦτο δὲ μόνον ἦν, ἀλλ' ὅτι
them nothing he-accomplished not this and only was(-it) but that
καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους στασιάζοντές τε ἦσαν καὶ ἠκούοντο
also against one-another quarreling both were and were-heard-of
οἱ δεσπόται, καὶ πολέμους εἶχον ἐμφυλίους καὶ μάχας,
the despots and wars had civil and battles
καὶ χεῖρον εἶχε τὰ τῆς Πελοποννήσου δι' αἰτίας, ἃς
and worse were the(-things) — of-Peloponnese for causes which
μικρὸν ὕστερον ἐροῦμεν. Πρὸς τούτους οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις
a-little later we-will-tell to these then the envoys
ἐξέπεμπεν, ἅμα μὲν ἀπαιτῶν τὸν δασμόν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ
he-sent-out at-once indeed demanding the tribute at-once and also
τἀκεῖ κατασκεψόμενος καλῶς· ἐδεδίει γὰρ μήποτε
the(-things)-there going-to-survey well he-feared for lest-ever
ἡ πρὸς ἀλλήλους αὕτη τούτων διαφορά τε καὶ στάσις
the toward one-another this of-these quarrel both and faction
ἐπαγάγηται τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἢ ἄλλο τι
should-bring-in the Italians into Peloponnese or other some
γένος τῶν ἑσπερίων, καὶ προκαταλαβεῖν αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο
race of-the western(-ones) and to-seize-first himself wished
ταύτην, χώραν τε οὖσαν ἐχυρωτάτην φύσει καὶ πόλεις
it land both being strongest by-nature and cities
ἔχουσαν ὀχυράς τε καὶ λόγου ἀξίας καὶ φρούρια πλεῖστά
having strong both and of-account worthy and fortresses very-many
τε καὶ δυσάλωτα, καὶ τοῖς πᾶσιν αὐτάρκως ἔχουσαν πρός
both and hard-to-take and in-the all self-sufficiently being for
τε πόλεμον καὶ εἰρήνην, θέσεώς τε λαχοῦσαν ἐπικαίρου
both war and peace position both having-obtained strategic

κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν καὶ δυναμένην παραπέμπειν
by land both and sea and able to-convey
καλῶς τούς τε ἀπὸ Θρᾴκης καὶ Μακεδονίας ἐς
well the(-ones) both from Thrace and Macedonia to
Ἰταλίαν, τούς τε ἐξ Ἰταλίας αὖθις ἐς Θρᾴκην τε καὶ
Italy the(-ones) both from Italy again to Thrace both and
Μακεδονίαν. Ἀφικόμενοι δὲ οἱ πρέσβεις ἐς Πελοπόννησον
Macedonia having-arrived and the envoys at Peloponnese
καὶ τὰ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπαγγείλαντες οὔτε τὸν
and the(-things) from the emperor having-reported neither the
δασμὸν ἔλαβον καὶ τἀκεῖ πάντα εὗρον ξυγκεχυμένα
tribute received and the(-things)-there all found confused
τε καὶ νενοσηκότα κακῶς. Ἐπανήκοντες οὖν ἀπήγγειλαν
both and diseased badly returning then they-reported
πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ· ὁ δὲ προὔργου ποιούμενος τὴν τῆς
all to-the emperor he and advantageous making the —
Πελοποννήσου κατάσχεσιν διὰ τὸν μελετώμενόν οἱ
of-Peloponnese seizure because-of the being-planned by-him
καὶ ὅσον οὐ πρὸς Ἰταλοὺς ἐσόμενον πόλεμον, καλῶς τε
and all but against Italians going-to-be war well both
παράπλου κειμένην τῆς Ἰταλίας, ὡς ἔφην, καὶ λιμένας
for-coasting lying — of-Italy as I-said and harbors
ἔχουσαν ἀσφαλεῖς καὶ ὁρμητήριον οὖσαν τῷ πολέμῳ
having safe and base being for-the war
στρατευμάτων τε πολλῶν καὶ νεῶν, οὐκέτι μέλλειν ᾤετο
of-armies both many and of-ships no-longer to-delay he-thought
δεῖν, ἀλλὰ στρατεύειν ἐς τὴν Πελοπόννησον.
to-be-needful but to-campaign into — Peloponnese

2.1 Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐν Σαμανδρίᾳ ὄντες τῶν ἐν
in this and also the(-ones) in Smederevo being of-the(-ones) in
τέλει καὶ δὴ καὶ ἡ Λαζάρου γυνή, ἐπειδὴ πολὺν ἤδη
office and indeed also the of-Lazar wife since for-long already

χρόνον πολιορκούμενοι οὐκ ἀντεῖχον, ξυνέβησαν ὁμολογίᾳ,
time being-besieged not they-held-out came-to-terms by-agreement
ὥστε λαβόντες πάντα τὰ ἑαυτῶν τοῦ ἄστεος ἐξελθεῖν
so-that having-taken all the(-things) of-themselves from-the town to-go-out
σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς· τῇ δέ γε Λαζάρου γυναικὶ
safe and of-evils unharmed to-the and at-least of-Lazar wife
πολίσματα δύο παρέσχεν ἐς ἀρχὴν ἀντὶ Σαμανδρίας
towns two granted for rule instead-of Smederevo
ἐς Δαλματίαν καὶ Βόστρους ὁ βασιλεύς. Ἡ δὲ λαβοῦσα
in Dalmatia and Bosnians the emperor she and having-taken
τήν τε θυγατέρα καὶ πάντα τὸν βίον αὐτῆς, ἀφίκετο
the both daughter and all the livelihood her came
ἐς Βόστρους, κἀκεῖ ξυνάπτει τὴν θυγατέρα τῷ τούτων
to Bosnians and-there joins the daughter to-the of-these
ἡγεμόνι, δοῦσα καὶ φερνὴν αὐτῷ πάντα τὰ πολίσματα,
leader having-given also dowry to-him all the towns
καὶ χρόνον ἱκανὸν αὐτοῦ διαγαγοῦσα ὕστερον ἀπέπλευσεν
and time sufficient there having-spent later sailed-away
ἐς Κέρκυραν παρά τε τὴν μητέρα καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφούς.
to Corfu to both the mother and the brothers
Βασιλεὺς δὲ χειμῶνος καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος καὶ 3.1
emperor and in-winter well having-prepared and
στρατιὰν ὅτι πλείστην ἀγείρας ἱππικήν τε καὶ πεζὴν,
army as most having-gathered cavalry both and infantry
ἐπειδὴ ἔαρ ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ
when spring was-showing already having-set-out from the of-Hadrian(-city)
παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ, ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς κάτω Μακεδονίας ὡς
with-all the army marched through the lower Macedonia as
ἐπ᾽ Ἀμφίπολίν τε καὶ Στρυμόνα ποταμὸν, ξυνεπαγόμενος
toward Amphipolis both and Strymon river bringing-along
ἅμα οἱ καὶ ὅπλα πολλὰ καὶ μηχανὰς παντοίας καὶ
at-once with-him also arms many and engines of-all-kinds and

χαλκὸν ὅτι πλεῖστον καὶ σίδηρον. Γενόμενος δ' ἐν Στρυμόνι
bronze as most and iron having-come and at Strymon
διαβαίνει τε τοῦτον καὶ παραμείψας τὴν Κερκινῖτιν ἢ
crosses both it and having-passed — Kerkinitis or
Βόλβην λίμνην καὶ προσελαύνων ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω,
Bolbe lake and riding-on to the(-places) forward
ἐπιβαίνει Θετταλίας, κἀνταῦθα στρατοπεδευσάμενος ἔγνω
enters Thessaly and-there having-encamped resolved
μικρὸν παραμεῖναι, ὥστε διαναπαῦσαί τε τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ
a-little to-stay so-as to-rest both the army and
ἑτέραν αὐτοῦ περιμεῖναι, καὶ ἅμα πεῖραν ποιούμενος τῶν
another there to-await and at-once trial making of-the
τῆς Πελοποννήσου ἡγεμόνων, εἴ πως ἄρα ἐνδοῖεν, τὴν
— of-Peloponnese leaders if somehow then they-would-yield the
κατ' αὐτῶν ἐκστρατείαν τοῦ βασιλέως μαθόντες, καὶ τὸν
against them campaign of-the emperor having-learned and the
δασμὸν ἀποδοῖεν. Ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι εἰ ἥκον ἂν
tribute would-pay it-was-said for also this that if had-come —
ἐν τῷ τότε πρέσβεις αὐτῶν παρὰ βασιλέα, κομίζοντές τε
in the then(-time) envoys of-them to emperor bringing both
τὸν δασμὸν καὶ δεόμενοι τυχεῖν εἰρήνης, ἔτυχον
the tribute and begging to-obtain peace they-would-have-obtained(-it)
ἂν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω τοῦ λοιποῦ προὐχώρει
— and not — to the(-places) forward for-the rest would-have-advanced
ὁ βασιλεὺς, οὐδ' ἐστράτευσε κατ' αὐτῶν· εἶχε γὰρ
the emperor nor would-have-campaigned against them he-had for
ἄλλα τὰ κατεπείγοντα. Ὡς δὲ ἡμέρας ἱκανὰς αὐτοῦ
other the(-things) pressing when but days sufficient there
διαγαγὼν οὐδὲν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου ἐφαίνετο, ἥ τε στρατιὰ
having-spent nothing from Peloponnese appeared the both army
διανεπαύσατο καὶ ἡ προσδοκωμένη ἀφῖκτο, ἄρας
had-rested and the(-army) expected had-come having-set-out

ἐκ Θετταλίας ἐχώρει διὰ τῆς μεσογείας αὐτῆς, παρελάσας
from Thessaly he-went through the inland of-it having-ridden-past
δὲ ταύτην τε καὶ τὴν Φθιῶτιν καὶ ὑπερβαλὼν τά τε
and this both and — Phthiotis and having-crossed-over the both
ὄρη ταύτης καὶ τὰ Ἀχαϊκὰ τούς τε ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ
mountains of-it and the(-ones) Achaean the both in the between
ποταμοὺς διαβὰς, Σπερχειόν τε καὶ Πηνειὸν, ἀφικνεῖται
rivers having-crossed Spercheios both and Peneios arrives
ἐς Πύλας, καὶ διαβαίνει τὴν ταύτῃ πάροδον ἀσφαλῶς.
at Pylai and crosses the there pass safely
Καταβὰς δὲ ἔς τε τὴν Φωκίδα καὶ Βοιωτίαν καὶ
having-gone-down and into both — Phocis and Boeotia and
Πλαταιίδα στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ πρὸς τῷ Ἀσωπῷ ποταμῷ,
Plataiis encamps there by — Asopos river
καὶ πέμπει δὴ τοὺς κατασκεψομένους τὰς παρόδους τοῦ
and sends indeed the(-ones) going-to-survey the passes —
Κιθαιρῶνος τὰς φερούσας ἐς τὸν Ἰσθμόν· ἐδεδίει γὰρ
of-Kithairon the(-ones) leading to — Isthmus he-feared for
μὴ οἱ Πελοποννήσιοι προεξελθόντες προκατάσχωσι ταύτας,
lest the Peloponnesians having-gone-out-first should-seize-first these
καὶ ἐργώδης εἴη αὐτῷ ἡ ἐς τὸν Ἰσθμὸν διάβασις.
and laborious might-be for-him the to — Isthmus crossing
Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἥκουσι πρέσβεις παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου Θωμᾶ,
there and come envoys from the despot Thomas
κομίζοντες καὶ τοῦ δασμοῦ μοῖράν τινα, πεντακοσίους καὶ
bringing also of-the tribute share some five-hundred and
τετρακισχιλίους χρυσίνους, καὶ δεόμενοι σπονδῶν τυχεῖν
four-thousand gold-pieces and begging truces to-obtain
καὶ εἰρήνης· τοῦτο δ' ἀνόνητον ἦν πάντῃ τότε καὶ παρὰ
and peace this but useless was wholly then and against

τὸν καιρὸν, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ ὅλως ἀνόητον· ἀπώλεσε γὰρ
the time rather and also wholly foolish he-lost for
καὶ τὰ δοθέντα καὶ οὐδὲ τῆς εἰρήνης τετύχηκε.
both the(-things) given and not-even the peace has-obtained
Βασιλεὺς γὰρ τὸν μὲν δασμὸν ἔλαβε παρὰ τῶν πρέσβεων,
emperor for the indeed tribute took from the envoys
"τὰς δὲ σπονδὰς ὅταν ἐντὸς, ἔφη, γενώμεθα τῆς
the but truces when within he-said we-come —
Πελοποννήσου, ποιήσομεν", διαχλευάζων καὶ διαπαίζων
of-Peloponnese we-will-make mocking and making-sport-of
αὐτοὺς τῆς ἀβουλίας καὶ ἀκαιρίας· τότε γὰρ ἔδει
them for-the folly and untimeliness then for it-was-needed
τοῦτο ποιῆσαι, ὅταν ὅ τε βασιλεὺς ἐκάλει καὶ ὁ καιρὸς
this to-do when the both emperor called and the time
μετὰ τῶν πραγμάτων ἐδίδου. Ὡς δὲ ἦκον οἱ κατάσκοποι
with the affairs allowed when and came the scouts
φράζοντες μηδὲν εἶναι ταῖς παρόδοις ἐμποδὼν, ὁρμηθεὶς
telling nothing to-be in-the passes in-the-way having-set-out
ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ἐχώρει ἐπὶ τὰς παρόδους, ταύτας δὲ
from — Asopos he-went to the passes these and
διαβὰς οὐ ξὺν πόνῳ, καταβαίνει ἐς τὸ πεδίον τὸ πρὸ
having-crossed not with toil goes-down into the plain the(-one) before
τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ καὶ τοῦ τείχους, καὶ στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ
— Isthmus and the wall and encamps there
μίαν ἡμέραν, τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν τὸν στρατὸν
one day on-the and next(-day) having-taken the army
ἅπαντα ξυντεταγμένον, ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὴν Κορινθίων,
all drawn-up invades into the of-Corinthians(-land)
ἀκμάζοντος ἤδη τοῦ σίτου, καὶ στρατόπεδον τίθησι οὐ
ripening already the grain and camp sets not
μακρὰν, ἀλλ' ὅσον ἀπὸ τεττάρων σταδίων ἀπέχον
far but as-much-as from four stades distant

τῆς πόλεως. Τῇ δ' ἐφεξῆς ἀναλαβὼν τῶν ἐν
from-the city on-the and following(-day) having-taken of-the(-ones) in
τέλει ἐνίους καὶ στρατηγῶν καὶ σατραπῶν τοὺς ἀρίστους,
office some and of-generals and satraps the best
περιῄει τόν τε λόφον καὶ τὴν πόλιν αὐτὴν, κατασκοπῶν
went-around the both hill and the city itself surveying
τά τε ὅλως ἀπόμαχα τοῦ χωρίου τά τε ἐπίμαχα
the(-parts) both wholly unassailable of-the place the(-parts) both assailable
ὁπωσοῦν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἡ πόλις ἐχυρωτάτη, ὥσπερ
in-any-way and seemed to-him the city strongest as
δῆτα καὶ ἦν· ὑπερύψηλόν τε γὰρ ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ
indeed also it-was very-high both for was the place and
ἀπότομον καὶ κρημνῶδες κύκλοθεν, καὶ μίαν μόνην
sheer and precipitous all-around and one only
πάροδον ἔχον τὴν ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν, καὶ αὐτὴν ἀνάντη τε
approach having the(-one) to the city and this uphill both
καὶ τριπλῷ τείχει τετειχισμένην καὶ πεφραγμένην· ἡ δέ
and with-triple wall walled and fenced — and
γε Ἀκροκόρινθος καὶ πάντῃ ἀπόμαχος, ὑπερανῳκισμένη
at-least Acrocorinth also wholly unassailable settled-above
τε τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ λόφου καὶ τείχεσιν ἰσχυροτάτοις
both the summit of-the hill and with-walls strongest
ὠχυρωμένη. Ἔγνω οὖν δεῖν λόγους πρῶτον προσφέρειν
fortified he-resolved then to-be-needful words first to-bring
τοῖς ἐν τῇ πόλει περί τε ξυμβάσεων καὶ ἐνδόσεως
to-the(-ones) in the city about both agreements and surrender
αὐτῆς· καὶ πέμπει δὴ τοὺς ἐροῦντας. Ὡς δὲ οὐκ
of-it and sends indeed the(-ones) going-to-say when but not
ἔπειθε, πρῶτον μὲν ἔκειρε πᾶσαν τὴν ἔξω χώραν
he-persuaded first indeed he-ravaged all the outer land
αὐτῶν καὶ ἐδῄωσε, παραδείσους τέ φημι καὶ ἀγροὺς καὶ
of-them and laid-waste gardens both I-mean and fields and

ἀμπέλους καὶ τἆλλα, κάλλιστά τε καὶ πολυφόρα πάντα,
vineyards and the-rest finest both and fruitful all
τόν τε σῖτον ἀκμάζοντα ἤδη διέφθειρεν. Ἔπειτα κύκλῳ
the both grain ripening already he-destroyed then in-circle
περισχὼν αὐτοὺς τῷ στρατῷ καὶ κατακλείσας ἐντὸς
having-surrounded them with-the army and having-shut(-them) within
τοῦ ἄστεος ἀσφαλῶς καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει.
the town securely and engines having-set-up besieged(-them)
Ὡς δὲ συχνὰς ἡμέρας περικαθήμενος τῇ πόλει καὶ
when but many days sitting-around the city and
πολιορκῶν οὐδὲν ἤνυεν, ἔγνω χρονίαν ἔσεσθαι
besieging nothing he-accomplished he-recognized long to-be-going-to-be
τὴν πολιορκίαν αὐτῷ· αἵ τε γὰρ μηχαναὶ οὐκ ἐξικνοῦντο
the siege for-him the both for engines not reached
πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος καλῶς, οὐδὲ βλάπτειν ὅλως ἠδύναντο·
to the wall well nor to-harm at-all were-able
ἀφαιρούμεναι γὰρ τὴν βίαν τῷ μήκει, ἐξεκαυλίζοντο καὶ
being-deprived for of-the force by-the length they-were-cut-short and
ἀσθενέστερον τῷ τείχει προσέπιπτον. Οὐ γὰρ ἐνῆν
more-weakly on-the wall fell not for it-was-possible
αὐτὰς τῷ ἀποκρότῳ καὶ σκληρῷ τοῦ χωρίου ἐγγύς
them on-the rocky and hard of-the place near
που τοῦ τείχους προσενεγκεῖν ὥστε καὶ παίειν αὐτὸ
somewhere the wall to-bring so-as also to-strike it
μετὰ βίας σφοδρᾶς καὶ ῥύμης καὶ καταρριπτεῖν· εἰ δὲ
with force violent and rush and to-hurl-down if and
καὶ ὅλως κατερριπτεῖτο τὸ τεῖχος, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὕτως ἡ ἐς
even wholly was-hurled-down the wall yet even so the to
τὸ ἄστυ καὶ τὴν πόλιν πάροδος ἀπόμαχος ἦν, ἑκατέρωθεν
the town and the city approach unassailable was on-either-side
ἀποτόμοις κρημνοῖς καὶ σκοπέλοις διειλημμένη καὶ φόβον
by-sheer precipices and crags cut-off and fear

καὶ δειλίαν πλείστην παρεχομένη τοῖς κάτωθεν εἰσιοῦσι
and cowardice very-much providing to-the(-ones) from-below entering
μεθ᾽ ὅπλων, ἄνωθέν τε καὶ ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς βαλλομένοις
with arms from-above both and over head being-shot
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων. Καὶ πολλάκις δὲ ταύτῃ
from above from the heights and often too there
προσβαλὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεκρούσθη.
having-attacked the emperor strongly was-repelled
Ἐπεὶ οὖν οὔτε ἐκ προσβολῆς βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις, οὔτε 4.1
since then neither by assault by-force with-the arms nor
μηχαναῖς οὔτε ἄλλῳ τῳ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ ὁ βασιλεὺς
by-engines nor by-other any way such the emperor
αἱρήσειν τὴν πόλιν ἐνόμισεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἢ μόνον λιμῷ καὶ
would-take the city he-thought but — only by-hunger and
πολιορκίᾳ μακρᾷ, οὐκέτι πρὸς τὰ λοιπὰ διαμέλλειν
siege long no-longer to the rest(-things) to-delay
ἐγνώκει δεῖν οὐδ᾽ εἰκῇ τὸν καιρὸν ἀναλίσκειν, ἀλλὰ
he-resolved to-be-needful nor at-random the time to-spend but
τὸ μὲν ἥμισυ τῆς στρατιᾶς ξὺν Μαχουμούτει καταλιπὼν
the indeed half of-the army with Mahmud having-left
αὐτοῦ, ὥστε πολιορκεῖν καὶ φυλάσσειν τὴν πόλιν, τοῦ
there so-as to-besiege and to-guard the city so-that
μή τι τῶν ἔνδον ἐξάγειν ἢ τῶν ἔξωθεν
not anything of-the(-things) within to-bring-out or of-the(-things) from-outside
ἐσκομίζεσθαι, αὐτὸς τὴν λοιπὴν ἀναλαβὼν ἐχώρει πρὸς τὰ
to-be-brought-in himself the rest having-taken went to the
λοιπά. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν τὰ περὶ τὴν Κόρινθον φρούρια,
rest and first indeed the around — Corinth fortresses
τὰ μὲν βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὰ δὲ φόβῳ καὶ
the(-ones) indeed by-force with-the arms the(-ones) and by-fear and
καταπλήξει, τὰ δὲ καὶ πειθοῖ ἑλὼν ἐν ὀλίγαις
panic the(-ones) and also by-persuasion having-taken in few

ἡμέραις ἐχειρώσατο πάντα. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐπὶ τὰ
days he-subdued all after and this to the(-parts)
ἔνδον τῆς Πελοποννήσου προὐχώρει, καταστρεφόμενός τε
within — of-Peloponnese he-advanced subduing both
καὶ ληιζόμενος πάντα τὰ ἐν ποσὶ, τά τε ἀνάντη
and plundering all the(-things) at feet the(-places) both uphill
καὶ δύσβατα καὶ σκληρὰ τῶν τε χωρίων καὶ τῶν παρόδων
and impassable and rough of-the both places and of-the passes
ἐξομαλίζων καὶ ἡμερῶν, καὶ τὰ ἐρυμνότατα τῶν φρουρίων
leveling and taming and the strongest of-the fortresses
ἐξαιρῶν τε καὶ κατασκάπτων καὶ πάντῃ χειρούμενος.
taking-out both and razing and wholly subduing
Προσελάσας δὲ τῇ Τεγέᾳ πόλει, ἣν οἱ νῦν Μοχλίον
having-ridden-up and — to-Tegea city which the(-ones) now Mouchli
καλοῦσι, στρατόπεδον τίθησι, καὶ περισταυρώσας αὐτὴν
call camp he-sets and having-palisaded it
καὶ κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῷ στρατῷ ἐπολιόρκει ἐπ᾽
and in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the army besieged(-it) for
ὀλίγαις ἡμέραις. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο Δημήτριος Ἀσάνης, ὁ
few days and after this Demetrios Asanes the
ταύτης ἔπαρχος, λόγους προσφέρει τῷ βασιλεῖ περί τε
of-it governor words brings to-the emperor about both
ξυμβάσεων καὶ ἐνδόσεως αὐτῆς. Καὶ ξυμβαίνουσι δὴ,
agreements and surrender of-it and they-agree indeed
καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν πόλιν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁμολογίᾳ. Προσχωρεῖ
and takes the city the emperor by-agreement go-over
δὲ αὐτῷ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ καὶ ἕτερα φρούρια οὐκ ὀλίγα τῶν
and to-him upon this also other fortresses not few of-the
πλησιοχώρων. Οἱ δὲ τῆς Πελοποννήσου δεσπόται ἐν τῇ
neighboring the and — of-Peloponnese despots in the
μεσογείᾳ ταύτης, ἐν Ἀμυκλαίῳ, καθήμενοι ξυντεταγμένοι,
inland of-it at Amyklaion sitting drawn-up

ἐπειδὴ ἔμαθον προσελαύνοντα τῇ Τεγέᾳ τὸν βασιλέα,
when they-learned riding-up — to-Tegea the emperor
διαλυθέντες εὐθὺς ᾤχοντο φεύγοντες, καὶ ἀναχωροῦσιν
having-broken-up at-once went-off fleeing and withdraw
ὁ μὲν ἐς Μαντίνειαν (ὁ Θωμᾶς), οὗ δὴ καὶ ἡ γυνὴ
the(-one) indeed to Mantineia — Thomas where indeed also the wife
αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ παῖδες ἦσαν, ὁ δὲ ἐς Ἐπίδαυρον τὴν
his and the children were the(-one) and to Epidauros the
Λιμηρὰν (ὁ Δημήτριος) ἥτις νῦν Μονεμβασία καλεῖται, καὶ
Limera — Demetrios which now Monemvasia is-called and
διέτριβον ἐν αὐταῖς τοῦ πολέμου τὸ πέρας ἀποσκοποῦντες.
spent-time in them of-the war the end watching
Βασιλεὺς δὲ βραχείας ἡμέρας ἐν Τεγέᾳ διαγαγὼν καὶ 5.1
emperor and short days in Tegea having-spent and
καταστησάμενος τὰ αὐτοῦ, φρουράς τε ἐγκαταλιπὼν
having-settled the(-things) there garrisons both having-left
αὐτῇ τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φρουρίοις, ᾔει τὴν ἐπὶ Πάτρας τῆς
in-it both and in-the other fortresses went the to Patras —
Ἀχαΐας τραχεῖαν ὁδὸν καὶ πάντη ἀνάντη, δυσχωρίαις τε
of-Achaea rough road and wholly uphill by-rough-grounds both
πολλαῖς καὶ τόποις ἀβάτοις καὶ ἀποκρήμνοις διειργομένην
many and places impassable and precipitous blocked
καὶ κλειομένην. Ὁ δὲ οὐδέν τι μεῖον σπουδῇ καὶ
and shut he and nothing anything less with-zeal and
πόνῳ προὐχώρει, τὰ πρὸ τῶν ποδῶν ἅπαντα
toil advanced the(-things) before the feet all
ληιζόμενός τε καὶ καταστρεφόμενος. Οἱ δὲ ἐν ταῖς
plundering both and subduing the(-ones) and in —
Πάτραις τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως μαθόντες,
Patras the against them approach of-the emperor having-learned
ἐκπλήξει καὶ φόβῳ ληφθέντες, εὐθὺς ἐκλιπόντες τήν
by-astonishment and fear seized at-once having-abandoned the

τε πόλιν καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν, ᾤχοντο φεύγοντες ξὺν
both city and the(-things) of-themselves went-off fleeing with
γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις, οἱ μὲν ἐς τὰς ἐντὸς πόλεις
wives and children the(-ones) indeed to the inner cities
Πελοποννήσου τῶν Ἐνετῶν, οἱ δὲ ἐς Ναύπακτον
of-Peloponnese of-the Venetians the(-ones) and to Naupaktos
διαπεραιωθέντες, μόνην τὴν ἀκρόπολιν καταλιπόντες ἐν
having-crossed-over only the acropolis having-left in
φυλακῇ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἀφικόμενος ἐς Πάτρας καὶ τὴν πόλιν
guard emperor and having-arrived at Patras and the city
ἔρημον εὑρὼν καὶ κενὴν ἀνδρῶν ἀπολύει τὴν στρατιὰν
deserted having-found and empty of-men releases the army
ἐς διαρπαγὴν τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ, τὴν δὲ ἀκρόπολιν κύκλῳ
to plunder of-the(-things) in it the and acropolis in-circle
περισχὼν τῷ στρατῷ καὶ περισταυρώσας πάντοθεν
having-surrounded with-the army and having-palisaded(-it) on-all-sides
καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει. Οἱ δὲ ἐντὸς φρουροὶ
and engines having-set-up besieged(-it) the and inside guards
δείσαντες τὸν ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν κίνδυνον, μὴ, τοῦ τείχους
having-feared the from the engines danger lest the wall
καταρριφθέντος, ληφθῶσι βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις, καὶ περὶ τὸ
having-been-hurled-down they-be-taken by-force with-the arms and for the
ζῆν κινδυνεύσωσι, προσχωροῦσιν ὁμολογίᾳ τῷ βασιλεῖ,
life be-in-danger surrender by-agreement to-the emperor
ἐφ᾽ ᾧ μηδέν τι κακὸν παθεῖν· καὶ μέντοι γε
on condition nothing any evil to-suffer and indeed at-least
οὐδὲ πεπόνθασι. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν παραλαβὼν
not-even they-suffered emperor and the acropolis having-taken-over
φυλακὴν ἐγκαθίστησι, καὶ Πατρέων διακηρυκεύεται τοῖς
guard establishes and of-Patrans proclaims to-the(-ones)
βουλομένοις αὖθις ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἰέναι καὶ κατοικεῖν
wishing again into the city to-go and to-dwell

ἐλευθερίαν καὶ ἀτέλειαν χρόνων ῥητῶν καὶ κτημάτων
freedom and exemption-from-taxes of-times stated and of-possessions
ἐπίδοσιν· ἤρεσκε γὰρ αὐτῷ διαφερόντως ἥ τε πόλις καὶ ἡ
grant pleased for him exceedingly the both city and the
χώρα, πάμφορός τε οὖσα καὶ θέσεως οἰκείας λαχοῦσα, ἐν
land all-bearing both being and of-position fitting having-obtained in
καλῷ τε κειμένη τῆς Πελοποννήσου καὶ πρὸς τῷ στόματι
fine both lying — of-Peloponnese and at the mouth
τοῦ Κρισαίου κόλπου, τῇ τε ἀντιπέρας ἠπείρῳ διὰ τοῦ
— of-Krisaian gulf with-the both opposite mainland through —
ἐκεῖσε Ῥίου συναπτομένη καὶ τὰ αὐτῆς καρπουμένη
there Rhion joined and the(-things) of-itself enjoying
καλῶς, καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ἁπλῶς εὐθηνουμένη καλοῖς.
well and with-all other(-things) simply abounding goods
Διά τοι τοῦτο καὶ περὶ πολλοῦ τὴν ταύτης ξυνοίκισίν
because-of surely this also of much the of-it resettlement
τε καὶ φυλακὴν ἐποιεῖτο· καὶ μέντοι γε καὶ ξυνῴκισεν.
both and guarding he-made and indeed at-least also resettled(-it)
Ἡμέρας δὲ ἱκανὰς αὐτοῦ διατρίψας καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν
days and sufficient there having-spent and the around it
φρούρια χειρωσάμενος πάντα καὶ φρουροὺς ἐγκαταστήσας
fortresses having-subdued all and guards having-established
αὐτῇ τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φρουρίοις, τῆς μὲν στρατιᾶς
in-it both and in-the other fortresses of-the indeed army
εὐθὺς ἐκπέμπει μέρος καταδραμεῖν τήν τε Ἠλείαν καὶ
at-once he-sends-out part to-overrun — both Elis and
Μεσσηνίαν καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὰς ἅπαντα καὶ λήσασθαι
Messenia and the(-places) around them all and to-plunder
καρτερῶς καὶ τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν ὡς αὐτὸν ἀγαγεῖν.
mightily and the booty all to him to-bring

6.1 Αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν ἄλλην στρατιὰν ἀναλαβὼν ᾔει διὰ τῆς
himself and the other army having-taken went through the
παραλίας τοῦ Κρισαίου κόλπου ὡς ἐπὶ Κόρινθον καὶ
coast — of-Krisaian gulf as toward Corinth and
προσβάλλει δὴ πόλει τινὶ παραλίῳ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν
attacks indeed city some coastal of-the renowned
Βόστιτζα καλουμένῃ τὸ νῦν· καὶ καταπλήξας τοὺς
Vostitza called the now and having-terrified the(-ones)
ἐντὸς ἰσχυρῶς ἐξ ἐφόδου καὶ μόνης λαμβάνει καὶ
within strongly by onset and alone takes also
ταύτην ὁμολογίᾳ καὶ φυλακὴν ἐγκαθίστησιν. Ἄρας
this by-agreement and guard establishes having-set-out
δ' ἐκεῖθεν ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ Κόρινθον, πάντα τὰ
and thence he-drove toward Corinth all the(-things)
προστυχόντα χειμάρρου δίκην παρασύρων τε καὶ ὑφ'
met of-torrent like sweeping-away both and under
ἑαυτῷ ποιούμενος, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐξανδραποδιζόμενός τε
himself making the(-things) and also enslaving both
καὶ κατασκάπτων τελείως. Ἀφικόμενος δ' ἐς Κόρινθον ὁ
and razing completely having-arrived and at Corinth the
βασιλεὺς εὗρεν ἔτι πολιορκουμένην καὶ μηδαμοῦ ἐνδιδοῦσαν
emperor found still being-besieged and nowhere surrendering
αὐτήν. Κοινολογησάμενος οὖν Μαχουμούτει καὶ τοῖς
it having-conferred then with-Mahmud and the
ἄλλοις σατράπαις καὶ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς κοινῇ
other satraps and generals it-seemed to-them in-common
βουλευσαμένοις πάσῃ καὶ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
having-deliberated with-all both hand and power and the other
ὑπάρχουσι τῇ πόλει προσβαλεῖν καὶ πειράσασθαι τρόπῳ
possessions the city to-attack and to-try by-way
παντὶ εἴ γε δυνατὸν ἐξ ἐφόδου βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις
every if at-least possible by onset by-force with-the arms

ταύτην ἑλεῖν (ἤδη γὰρ κατερρίφθη καὶ μέρος τι τοῦ περὶ
it to-take already for was-hurled-down also part some of-the around
τὴν πάροδον καὶ τὰς πύλας τείχους ταῖς μηχαναῖς) καὶ
the approach and the gates wall by-the engines and
μὴ μάτην ἔτι κατατρίβεσθαι καὶ πονεῖν τοσοῦτον ἤδη
not in-vain any-longer to-be-worn-down and to-toil so-much already
χρόνον περικαθημένους αὐτῇ καὶ μηδὲν ἀνύοντας. Ὅ τε
time sitting-around it and nothing accomplishing the both
γὰρ χρόνος τῆς πολιορκίας ἱκανὸς ἦν· τετράμηνος γάρ·
for time of-the siege sufficient was four-month(-long) for
ἥ τε στρατιὰ τῷ μήκει ταύτης κακοπαθοῦντες ἤχθοντο,
the both army by-the length of-it suffering were-vexed
τά τε ἀχθοφόρα τῶν ζῴων λιμῷ διεφθείρετο, τῆς γῆς
the both burden-bearing of-the animals by-hunger were-destroyed the land
δηουμένης ἁπάσης, ἄλλα τε πολλὰ ἐπιγενόμενα ἐπίεσεν
being-ravaged all other both many(-things) having-come-on pressed
αὐτοὺς ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἢ οὕτως ἢ ἐκείνως
them strongly and because-of this either so or that-way
ἀπαναστῆναι ταύτης ἐβούλοντο. Παρασκευασάμενος οὖν
to-rise-up from-it they-wished having-prepared then
ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκτάξας τε καὶ
the emperor and all the army having-drawn-up both and
ὁπλίσας καλῶς, τούς τε ἐν τέλει πάντας, σατράπας τέ
having-armed well the both in office all satraps both
φημι καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων καὶ δὴ καὶ
I-mean and generals and leaders of-the ranks and indeed also
στρατιώτας αὐτοὺς, παροξύνας τε καὶ παραθαρρύνας ἐς τὸ
soldiers themselves having-urged-on both and having-encouraged to the
πολεμεῖν καὶ παρακελευσάμενος ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς φανῆναι,
to-make-war and having-urged men good to-appear
προσέβαλλε τῇ πόλει ἰσχυρῶς. Καὶ ξυνίσταται δὴ μάχη
attacked the city strongly and arises indeed battle

καρτερὰ περί τε τὰς πύλας καὶ τὴν πάροδον· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ
fierce around both the gates and the approach there for
ἦν καὶ μόνον τὸ δοκοῦν ἐπίμαχον, ὡς τῆς γε ἄλλης
was also only the(-part) seeming assailable as of-the at-least other
ἁπάσης πόλεως ἀπομάχου παντάπασιν οὔσης· καὶ γίνεται
all city unassailable altogether being and comes-about
ὠθισμὸς ἐνταῦθα πολὺς καὶ κραυγὴ παρ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων καὶ
pushing there much and shouting from both and
φόνος καὶ τραύματα, τῆς μάχης σχεδὸν ἤδη ξυσταδὸν
slaughter and wounds the battle nearly already hand-to-hand
γινομένης. Βιασάμενοι οὖν τοὺς προμαχομένους εὐρώστως
becoming having-forced then the front-fighters stoutly
οἱ ὁπλῖται γίνονται ἐντὸς τῶν πυλῶν τοῦ κατερριμμένου
the hoplites come within the gates of-the hurled-down
πρώτου τείχους καὶ αὐτοῦ δὴ τοῦ τείχους ἐγκρατεῖς.
first wall and very indeed the wall masters
Βιαζόμενοι δὲ καὶ τοῦ δευτέρου τείχους ἔσω παρελθεῖν,
forcing and also of-the second wall inside to-pass
ἐκακοπάθουν ἰσχυρῶς, κατὰ μέτωπόν τε αὐτοῖς
they-suffered strongly at front both on-them
προσβαλλόντων τῶν ἐναντίων δόρασι μακροῖς καὶ ξυστοῖς
attacking the opponents with-spears long and pikes
καὶ παλτοῖς, καὶ ἄνωθεν ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ἑκατέρου μέρους
and darts and from-above from the heights of-each part
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων λίθοις βαλλόμενοι κατὰ κεφαλῆς· ὃ δὴ
from above with-stones being-hit on head which indeed
καὶ μάλιστα τούτους ἐπίεσε· καὶ τέλος ἀποκρούονται παρὰ
also most them pressed and finally they-are-repelled by
τῶν ἔνδοθεν ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ἐξωθοῦνται τοῦ τείχους βιαίως·
the(-ones) from-within strongly and are-thrust-out from-the wall forcibly
καὶ ἀπέθανον αὐτοῦ οὐκ ὀλίγοι τῶν ὁπλιτῶν, καὶ μάλιστα
and died there not few of-the hoplites and most

ὑπὸ τῶν ἄνωθεν καὶ ἀφ᾽ ὑψηλοῦ καταφερομένων μεγίστων
by the from-above and from high borne-down greatest
λίθων ἰσχυρῶς βαλλόμενοι, βιαζόμενοί τε τὴν εἴσοδον
stones strongly being-hit forcing both the entrance
καὶ θρασύτερον ἐπεμβαίνοντες. Ὅπερ ἰδὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς
and more-boldly pressing-in which having-seen the emperor
ἀναχωρεῖν εὐθὺς σημαίνει τούτοις, καὶ ἔξω βέλους γενομένοις
to-withdraw at-once signals to-them and outside missile having-come
ἀποστῆναι τοῦ πολεμεῖν, εἰπὼν μὴ μάτην πονεῖν καὶ
to-stand-off from-the to-make-war having-said not in-vain to-toil and
κινδυνεύειν αὐτούς· οὐ γὰρ ὅπλα καὶ σώματα, ἀλλὰ λιμὸν
to-run-risks them not for arms and bodies but hunger
εἶναι τὸν ταύτης τῆς πόλεως ἰσχυρὸν ἀνταγωνιστήν, ὃς
to-be the of-this the city strong opponent which
ἀκονιτὶ καὶ κινδύνων χωρὶς καταγωνιεῖται ταύτην ταχέως.
without-dust and of-dangers without will-fight-down it quickly
Ἐγνώκει γὰρ ὁ βασιλεὺς μηδαμοῦ ταύτης ἀπαναστῆναι,
had-resolved for the emperor nowhere from-it to-rise-up
ἀλλὰ περικαθῆσθαι αὐτὴν ἕως ἂν ἐκπολιορκήσῃ λιμῷ·
but to-sit-around it until — he-should-reduce(-it) by-hunger
ἐνόμιζε γὰρ ὡς ταύτην ἑλὼν πᾶσαν ἤδη τὴν
he-thought for that it having-taken all already —
Πελοπόννησον ἕξει ἀμαχεί, ὥσπερ δῆτα καὶ γέγονεν.
Peloponnese he-will-have without-fighting as indeed also it-happened
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἦκον οἱ σταλέντες 7.1
in this and also the soldiers came the(-ones) sent
ἐς προνομὴν, λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἐλάσαντες ἀπό τε τῆς
for foraging booty as most having-driven from both —
Ἠλείας καὶ τῆς ἄλλου προσχώρου· ἐλέγοντο δὲ ζῴων
Elis and the other neighboring(-land) were-said and of-animals
μὲν προβάτων τε καὶ βοῶν καὶ ἵππων ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε
indeed sheep both and oxen and horses about the five

καὶ δέκα μυριάδας ἀγαγεῖν, ἀνδρῶν δὲ καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ
and ten myriads to-have-brought of-men and and women and
παιδίων ὑπὲρ τὰς τέσσαρας χιλιάδας. Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα
little-children over the four thousands and the indeed other
πάντα, πρόβατά φημι καὶ βόας καὶ ἵππους, διένειμε πάσῃ
all sheep I-mean and oxen and horses he-distributed to-all
τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἄνδρας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἀπέστειλε
the army men and and women and children he-sent
ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, κατοικίζων πᾶσαν τὴν ἔξω χώραν
to the of-Constantine(-city) settling all the outer land
αὐτῆς. Καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτως. Κορινθίους δὲ τετράμηνον
of-it and he indeed thus (the)-Corinthians and four-month(-long)
ἤδη πολιορκουμένους ὁ σῖτος ἐπελελοίπει καὶ τἆλλα τῶν
already being-besieged the grain had-failed and the-rest of-the
ἀναγκαίων· καὶ πιεζόμενοι [δὲ] τῷ λιμῷ, ὅμως ἀντεῖχον
necessities and pressed too by-the hunger nevertheless they-held-out
ἔτι καλῶς, οὐδαμοῦ σπονδῶν μεμνημένοι· ἐδεδίεσαν γὰρ
still well nowhere of-truces mindful they-feared for
μὴ σφόδρα ὠργισμένος αὐτοῖς ὢν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ τριβῇ
lest exceedingly angered at-them being the emperor by-the length
τῆς πολιορκίας κακόν τι μέγα ἐργάσηται ἐς αὐτοὺς,
of-the siege evil some great should-work against them
ἄλλως τε καὶ ὅτι πολλάκις προκαλεσάμενος ἐπὶ ξυμβάσεις
otherwise both and that often having-called-out to agreements
αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἐσηκούσθη, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπεστράφη. Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ
them not he-was-listened-to but was-turned-away in this and
παραγίνεται αὐτοῖς Ἀσάνης Ματθαῖος ἀπὸ Σπάρτης, ὃν
arrives to-them Asanes Matthew from Sparta whom
ἔπεμψεν ὁ δεσπότης Δημήτριος βοηθόν τε ἥκειν αὐτοῖς
sent the despot Demetrios helper both to-come to-them
καὶ πειρασόμενον εἰ δύναιτο καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς δεσπόταις
and going-to-try if he-could also to-very the despots

καταλλάξαι τὸν βασιλέα καὶ σπονδὰς ποιῆσαι τὰς δυνατὰς,
to-reconcile the emperor and truces to-make the possible
μὴ μέντοι γε τούτῳ τῆς Κορίνθου ἐκστάντα. Εἶχε
not however at-least for-this — of-Corinth standing-out(-of) he-had
δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας ἑβδομήκοντα στρατιώτας μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ,
and also men seventy soldiers with himself
ἔχοντας καὶ σίτου μεδίμνους δέκα, ὃν ἔφερον ἐπὶ τῶν
having and of-grain medimnoi ten which they-carried on the
ὤμων ἐπηχθισμένοι, ἕκαστος ἀνὰ χοινίκων τριῶν· οἵτινες
shoulders laden each of choinikes three who
ἐξεπιστάμενοι πάροδον ἐκ τοῦ ἀπομαχωτάτου μέρους
knowing path from the most-unassailable part
τοῦ τε βουνοῦ καὶ τῆς πόλεως, ἄγνωστον μὲν καὶ
of-the both hill and of-the city unknown indeed and
ἄβατον τοῖς πολλοῖς, ἀνάντη δὲ ὅλως καὶ τραχεῖαν καὶ
untrodden to-the many uphill and wholly and rough and
δύσπορον, φέρουσαν ἐς τὸν Ἀκροκόρινθον, νυκτὸς λαθόντες
hard-to-pass leading to — Acrocorinth by-night escaping-notice
ἀνῄεσαν διὰ τῆς πέτρας χαλεπῶς πάνυ καὶ ἐπικινδύνως,
went-up through the rock with-difficulty very and dangerously
ἀναρριχώμενοί τε καὶ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον ἀνέχων τε
climbing both and one the other holding-up both
καὶ διαβαστάζων, ἐνίους δὲ σφῶν αὐτῶν καὶ ἀνιμώμενοι
and carrying some and of-them selves also drawing-up
σχοινίοις ἐκδεδεμένους· καὶ ἐσέρχονται ἐς τὴν πόλιν. Οἱ
with-ropes tied and they-enter into the city the
δὲ Κορίνθιοι τόν τε Ἀσάνην ἰδόντες καὶ τοὺς μετ' αὐτοῦ
and Corinthians — both Asanes having-seen and the(-ones) with him
ἀνερρώσθησάν τε οὐ μικρὸν καὶ ἀνέπνευσαν, νομίσαντες
were-strengthened both not little and breathed-again having-thought
βοηθόν τε ἥκειν αὐτοῖς ἐς τά τε ἄλλα καὶ δὴ καὶ
helper both to-come to-them for the both other(-things) and indeed also

σπονδὰς μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ποιήσειν αὐτοῖς ξυμφερούσας.
truces with the emperor to-make for-them advantageous
Ἀσάνης δὲ ἐσελθὼν ἐν τῇ πόλει ὡς εἶδε τούς τε
Asanes and having-entered into the city when he-saw the both
Κορινθίους δεινῶς ὑπὸ τοῦ λιμοῦ πιεζομένους καὶ ἀντέχειν
Corinthians terribly by the hunger pressed and to-hold-out
ἔτι μὴ δυναμένους, διακηρυκεύεται τῷ βασιλεῖ περί
any-longer not able negotiates with-the emperor about
τε ξυνθηκῶν καὶ διαλλαγῶν καὶ ἐνδόσεως τῆς πόλεως. Καὶ
both agreements and reconciliations and surrender of-the city and
ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται ἐπὶ τούτοις, καὶ δίδωσι αὐτῷ πιστά.
the emperor accepts on these(-terms) and gives to-him pledges
Ὁ δὲ ἐξελθὼν ποιεῖται ξυνθήκας τε καὶ σπονδὰς μετὰ
he and having-gone-out makes agreements both and truces with
τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ παραδίδωσιν αὐτῷ τήν τε πόλιν καὶ τὸν
the emperor and hands-over to-him the both city and —
Ἀκροκόρινθον καὶ τοὺς Κορινθίους μένοντας ἐφ᾽ οἷς ἔχουσι
Acrocorinth and the Corinthians remaining on what they-have
σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς, φόρου δὲ μόνον ὑποτελεῖς, ἔπειτα
safe and of-evils unharmed of-tribute but only subject then
καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν Πελοποννήσου, ὅσην ἐπῆλθε
also all the land of-Peloponnese as-much-as he-went-over
μεθ᾽ ὅπλων ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ πόλεις καὶ φρούρια, ὅσα
with arms the emperor and cities and fortresses as-many-as
ἐχειρώσατο, τοῦ βασιλέως εἶναι κατήκοα (ἦν δέ γε ἡ
he-subdued of-the emperor to-be subject was and at-least the
τρίτη μοῖρα Πελοποννήσου), τὴν δέ γε λοιπὴν πᾶσαν
third share of-Peloponnese the and at-least rest all
εἶναι τῶν δυναστῶν δασμὸν ἐτήσιον ἀποφερόντων τῷ
to-be of-the potentates tribute yearly paying to-the
βασιλεῖ νομίσματα τρισχίλια χρυσοῦ, ἔχειν δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτῶν
emperor coins three-thousand of-gold to-have and with them

εἰρήνην βεβαίαν καὶ φιλίαν τὸν βασιλέα καὶ ξύμμαχον
peace firm and friendship the emperor and ally
εἶναι καὶ βοηθὸν, ἤν τις αὐτοῖς μεθ᾽ ὅπλων ἐπίῃ.
to-be and helper if anyone them with arms attack
Πράξας δὲ ταῦτα μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ ξυνθέμενος ὁ 8.1
having-done and these(-things) with the emperor and having-agreed —
Ἀσάνης ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τοὺς δεσπότας, ἀπαγγέλλων αὐτοῖς
Asanes returns to the despots reporting to-them
τὰ πεπραγμένα οἱ καὶ τὴν μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰρήνην.
the(-things) done by-him also the with the emperor peace
Οἱ δὲ δέχονται τὰς ἐπὶ τούτοις διαλλαγὰς ἑκόντες ἄκοντες·
they and accept the on these(-terms) reconciliations willing unwilling
βαρύτατον γὰρ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς καὶ τοῖς ὅλοις ἀξύμφορον
most-grievous for it-seemed to-them and in-the whole disadvantageous
οὐ τοσοῦτον τὰ ἄλλα ὅσον ἡ τῆς Κορίνθου ἔκδοσις,
not so-much the other(-things) as the — of-Corinth surrender
πόλεως ἐχυρωτάτης τε καὶ λόγου ἀξίας, ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ
city strongest both and of-account worthy in vantage
τε τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ κειμένης καὶ ὥσπερ ἀκροπόλεως οὔσης
both — of-Isthmus lying and as acropolis being
Πελοποννήσου· ὅμως γε μήν τί καὶ εἶχον δρᾶσαι;
of-Peloponnese nevertheless at-least indeed what also could-they to-do
Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν Κόρινθον παραλαβὼν φυλακήν τε 9.1
emperor and — Corinth having-taken-over guard both
ἱκανὴν ἐσάγει ἔς τε τὴν ἄκραν καὶ ἐς αὐτὴν ἄνδρας
sufficient brings-in into both the citadel and into it(-the-city) men
ἐπιλέκτους τετρακοσίους τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς
picked four-hundred of-the(-ones) from the own court
νεοδαμωδῶν, καὶ φρούραρχον αὐτοῖς ἐφίστησιν ἕνα τῶν
newly-enrolled and fortress-commander over-them sets one of-the
πιστοτάτων αὐτῷ, καὶ σιτήσει καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ μηχαναῖς
most-trusted to-him and with-provisions and arms and engines

καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ἐπισκευάζει καλῶς τάς τε ἄλλας
and all others he-equips well the both other
πόλεις ἃς εἰλήφει, τάς τε ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ καὶ
cities which he-had-taken the(-ones) both in the inland and
παραλίᾳ, καὶ φρούρια τὰ δόξαντα καλῶς ἔχειν αὐτῷ
coast and fortresses the(-ones) having-seemed well to-be to-him
πάντα ἐπισκευάζει καὶ ἐξοπλίζει καλῶς φρουροῖς τε καὶ
all he-equips and arms well with-guards both and
φρουράρχαις καὶ σίτῳ καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ βέλεσι καὶ πᾶσι
fortress-commanders and grain and arms and missiles and all
τοῖς ἀναγκαίοις. Ἔνια δὲ τῶν φρουρίων, ὅσα μὴ
the necessities some and of-the fortresses as-many-as not
ἐδόκει αὐτῷ, κατασκάπτει τελείως, τοὺς δὲ οἰκήτορας
seemed(-good) to-him he-razes completely the and inhabitants
τούτων, ἄνδρας, φημὶ, καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας, ἀσινεῖς
of-these men I-mean and women and children unharmed
ὅλως ἐκπέμπει καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου μετὰ τῶν
wholly he-sends-out also them to the of-Constantine(-city) with the
ἄλλων, κατοικίζων, ἥπερ ἔφην, πᾶσαν τὴν ἔξω χώραν
others settling as I-said all the outer land
αὐτῆς. Καταστησάμενος δὲ πάντα τὰ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ
of-it having-settled and all the(-things) in Peloponnese
καλῶς τε καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν, σατράπην τε
well both and as was to-him according-to mind satrap both
πάσῃ τῇ αὐτοῦ χώρᾳ τὸν Ἀμάρην καταλιπὼν, ἀπολύεται
for-all the his land — Omar having-left he-dismisses
τὴν στρατιὰν, πολλὰ πρότερον ἐπαινέσας τε αὐτοὺς καὶ
the army much first having-praised both them and
δωρησάμενος καὶ τιμήσας τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἐπιδόσεσί τε
having-rewarded and having-honored the good with-gifts both
καὶ ἀξιώμασι καὶ ἀρχαῖς καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις· αὐτὸς δὲ
and ranks and offices and many others himself and

ἄρας ἐκ Κορίνθου, φθινοπώρου ἀρχομένου (τὸ γὰρ
having-set-out from Corinth autumn beginning the for
θέρος ἤδη τετελευτήκει), μετά τε τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς καί
summer already had-ended with both the own court and
τινων τῶν ἐν τέλει, ἔξεισι τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται
some of-the(-ones) in office goes-out — from-Isthmus and arrives
διὰ τῶν Μεγάρων ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας. Κατεῖχε γὰρ αὐτὸν
through — Megara at — Athens held for him
ἔρως σφοδρὸς τῆς τε πόλεως ταύτης καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
love violent of-the both city this and the in it
θεαμάτων, ὅτι ἤκουσε πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ περί τε τῆς
sights because he-had-heard many and fine(-things) about both the
σοφίας καὶ φρονήσεως τῶν ἐνταῦθα προγεγονότων ἀνδρῶν
wisdom and prudence of-the there earlier-living men
καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀνδρείας καὶ ἀρετῆς καὶ τῶν πολλῶν
and the other courage and virtue and the many
καὶ θαυμαστῶν ἔργων, ὧν ἐν τοῖς κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς καιροῖς
and marvelous works which in the in their times
ἐπεδείξαντο καὶ πρὸς Ἕλληνας καὶ πρὸς βαρβάρους
they-displayed both against Hellenes and against barbarians
ἀγωνιζόμενοι· καὶ ἐπεθύμει ἰδεῖν τε καὶ ἱστορῆσαι τήν τε
contending and he-desired to-see both and to-inquire-into the both
πόλιν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας ταύτης οἰκοδομὰς καὶ δὴ καὶ τὴν
city and the other of-it buildings and indeed also the
ἀκρόπολιν αὐτὴν τούς τε τόπους, ἐν οἷς οἱ ἄνδρες ἐκεῖνοι
acropolis itself the both places in which the men those
ἐπολιτεύοντο καὶ ταῦτα ἔπραττον, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πᾶσαν
were-citizens and these(-things) did and the other all
θέσιν τῆς χώρας τε καὶ κατάστασιν τῆς τε κατ᾽ αὐτὴν
position of-the land both and situation of-the both by it
θαλάσσης καὶ τῶν λιμένων καὶ περὶ πάντων ἁπλῶς.
sea and of-the harbors and about all simply

Καὶ εἶδε καὶ ἐθαύμασε καὶ ἐπήνεσε, καὶ μάλιστά γε δὴ
and he-saw and marveled and praised and most at-least indeed
τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, ἀναβὰς ἐς αὐτὴν, ἀπό τε τῶν ἐρειπίων
the acropolis having-gone-up to it from both the ruins
καὶ τῶν λειψάνων ὡς σοφός τε καὶ φιλέλλην καὶ μέγας
and the remains as wise both and philhellene and great
βασιλεὺς τὰ ἀρχαῖα καὶ ἄρτια στοχαζόμενός τε καὶ
emperor the ancient(-things) and perfect conjecturing both and
τεκμαιρόμενος. Τοὺς δέ γε οἰκήτορας ταύτης, αἰδοῖ
inferring the and at-least inhabitants of-it out-of-reverence
τῶν προγόνων φιλανθρώπως τε εἶδε καὶ ἐδωρήσατο
for-the forefathers humanely both he-saw and rewarded
πολυτρόπως, καὶ πάντων ὧν ᾔτησαν ἔτυχον παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ.
in-many-ways and all which they-asked they-obtained from him
Τέσσαρας δὲ ἡμέρας αὐτοῦ διαγαγὼν, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐκεῖθεν
four and days there having-spent on-the next(-day) thence
ὁρμηθεὶς ᾔει διά τε τῆς Βοιωτίας καὶ Πλαταιΐδος,
having-set-out went through both — Boeotia and Plataiis
ἀποσκοπῶν πάντας τε τοὺς Ἑλληνικοὺς τόπους καὶ
surveying all both the Hellenic places and
ἀνερευνῶν ἀκριβῶς καὶ πυνθανόμενος περὶ πάντων.
searching-out exactly and inquiring about all
Παροδεύσας δ᾽ ἐξεπίτηδες καὶ γενόμενος καταντικρὺ τῆς
having-traveled-by and on-purpose and having-come opposite —
Εὐβοίας, κατεθεᾶτο τάς τε συχνὰς παλιρροίας Εὐρίπου
Euboea he-viewed the both frequent back-flows of-Euripos
καὶ τὰς μεταβολὰς τήν τε ἄλλην τῆς νήσου θέσιν τε
and the changes the both other of-the island position both
καὶ κατάστασιν καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀρετὴν, καὶ ὡς οἰκειοῦται
and situation and indeed also excellence and how it-is-joined
τῇ χέρσῳ διὰ τοῦ στενοτάτου πορθμοῦ, μᾶλλον δὲ ὥς
to-the dry-land through the narrowest strait rather and how

ἐστι χερρόνησος καθάπερ ποταμῷ μέσῳ τῷ βραχυτάτῳ
it-is peninsula as by-river middle by-the shortest
ῥεύματι τούτῳ διειργομένη καὶ πάλιν ξυναπτομένη γεφύρᾳ.
current this separated and again joined by-bridge
Οἱ δὲ Εὐβοεῖς τὴν ἀθρόαν ἐς αὐτοὺς ἔλευσιν τοῦ βασιλέως
the and Euboeans the sudden to them coming of-the emperor
ἰδόντες, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔδεισαν περὶ ἑαυτῶν, μὴ ἄρα
having-seen the indeed first feared for themselves lest then
σφίσιν ἐπὶ κακῷ αὕτη εἴη, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο δῶρα πλείστου
for-them for evil this might-be after and this gifts of-very-much
ἄξια ἑτοιμάσαντες τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐξῆλθον ἐς ξυνάντησιν
worth having-prepared for-the emperor went-out to meeting
αὐτῷ. Καὶ ὃς δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως καὶ λαλήσας
him and he receives them mildly and having-spoken
εἰρηνικὰ μετ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀπολύει πάλιν. Αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας
peaceable(-things) with them releases(-them) again himself and having-set-out
ἐκεῖθεν καὶ ἀεὶ σπουδῇ ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω,
thence and always with-zeal driving to the(-places) forward
δεκαταῖος ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Φερὰς τῆς Μακεδονίας. Ὀλίγας
on-the-tenth-day arrives at Pherai — of-Macedonia few
δὲ ἡμέρας διατρίψας αὐτοῦ καὶ ὅσον διαναπαῦσαι αὐτόν
and days having-spent there and as-much-as to-rest himself
τε καὶ τοὺς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ὁρμηθεὶς ἐκεῖθεν καταλαμβάνει
both and the(-ones) with him having-set-out thence reaches
τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, μεσοῦντος ἤδη φθινοπώρου.
the of-Hadrian(-city) mid already autumn
Κἀνταῦθα γενόμενος εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται Ἰσμαῆλον τὸν 10.1
and-there having-come at-once he-summons Ismail the
Καλλιουπόλεως ἔπαρχον καὶ τοῦ στόλου παντὸς ἡγεμόνα,
of-Kallipolis governor and of-the fleet whole leader
καὶ κελεύει τοῦτον ὅτι τάχιστα στόλον πεντήκοντα
and orders him as quickly-as-possible fleet of-fifty

καὶ ἑκατὸν νεῶν ἐξαρτίσαντα ἐπιπλεῦσαι τῇ Λέσβῳ καὶ
and hundred ships having-fitted-out to-sail-against — Lesbos and
Μιτυλήνῃ καὶ καταδραμεῖν πᾶσαν αὐτὴν καὶ ληίσασθαι
Mytilene and to-overrun all it and to-plunder
δηοῦντα καὶ ἀφανίζοντα κατὰ κράτος. Οἱ γὰρ τοῦ ταύτης
ravaging and blotting-out by force the for of-the of-it
ἡγεμόνος Δωριέως υἱεῖς δύο καταλειφθέντες μετὰ θάνατον
leader Dorino sons two left after death
αὐτοῦ κληρονόμοι τῆς τε νήσου ξυμπάσης καὶ τῆς
his heirs of-the both island whole and of-the
ἀρχῆς, στασιάζοντές τε ἦσαν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ νεωτέρων
rule quarreling both were with-one-another and new(-things)
ἐπιθυμοῦντες ἀεί· καὶ ἐπειδὴ τὰς ἐξ Ἰταλίας ἡκούσας
desiring always and when the from Italy having-come
τριάκοντα τριήρεις εἶδον τοῦ Ῥώμης ἀρχιερέως, ὧν
thirty triremes they-saw of-the of-Rome high-priest which
ἐναυάρχει Λοδοβίκος στρατηγὸς αὐτοκράτωρ ὢν αὐτὸς,
commanded Ludovico general with-full-power being himself
ἐνεόχμωσαν εὐθὺς, καὶ ξυνθήκας ποιησάμενοι μετ' αὐτοῦ
they-innovated at-once and agreements having-made with him
ἠθέτησαν τὰς μετὰ βασιλέως, καὶ οὐκέτι ἤθελον
set-aside the(-agreements) with emperor and no-longer wished
ἀποδιδόναι αὐτῷ τὸν ξυνήθη δασμὸν, ὃν ἀπέφερον
to-pay to-him the customary tribute which they-paid
ἐτησίως· οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ πρὸ τούτου τὰς
yearly not only and but that also before this the
κατάρσεις τῶν πειρατικῶν νεῶν δεχόμενοι, καὶ σιτήσεις καὶ
landings of-the pirate ships receiving and provisions and
πίστεις αὐτοῖς λάθρα παρέχοντες ἐκάκουν πᾶσαν τὴν ταύτῃ
pledges to-them secretly providing they-harmed all the there
παραλίαν τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τὰς κατ' ἐμπορείαν πλεούσας
coast of-the emperor and the for trade sailing

ναῦς ἐσκύλευον. Ἔχων οὖν αὐτοῖς ὀργὴν διὰ ταῦτα
ships they-despoiled having then at-them anger because-of these(-things)
ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν στόλον ἐξέπεμψεν. Ἰσμαῆλος δὲ πληρώσας
the emperor the fleet sent-out Ismail and having-manned
ὅτι τάχιστα ναῦς πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ ὅπλα
as quickly-as-possible ships fifty and hundred and arms
καὶ μηχανὰς καὶ ὁπλίτας ἐμβιβάσας αὐταῖς ἱκανοὺς καὶ
and engines and hoplites having-put-aboard them sufficient and
ἵππους ἐν ναυσὶν ἱππαγωγοῖς καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην παρασκευήν
horses in ships horse-transport and all other preparation
τε καὶ χρείαν πολεμικὴν ἐξαρτίσας τε καὶ ταῖς ναυσὶν
both and need warlike having-fitted-out both and in-the ships
ἐνθέμενος, ἄρας ἐκ Καλλιουπόλεως τριταῖος καταίρει
having-put having-set-out from Kallipolis on-the-third-day lands
ἐς Λέσβον, καὶ ἀποβὰς ἔς τινα πολίχνην παράλιον
at Lesbos and having-disembarked at some small-town coastal
Μόλυβον οὕτω καλουμένην, πρῶτον ἔκειρε πᾶσαν τὴν
Molyvos so called first ravaged all the(-land)
αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐδῄωσεν, ἔπειτα περισταυρώσας τὸ ἄστυ καὶ
there and laid-waste then having-palisaded the town and
κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῷ στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας
in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the army and engines having-set-up
ἐπολιόρκει. Ἔτυχον δὲ τότε ἐν Λέσβῳ παροῦσαι κατὰ
besieged(-it) happened and then in Lesbos being-present by
ξυμμαχίαν δύο καὶ δέκα τριήρεις τῶν μετὰ Λοδοβίκου,
alliance two and ten triremes of-the(-ones) with Ludovico
ὧν ἐναυάρχει Σέργιος, ἃς προαπέστειλε Λοδοβίκος
which commanded Sergio which sent-ahead Ludovico
βοηθοὺς Μιτυλήνῃ, εἴ γε ὁ στόλος αὐτῇ ἐπιπλεύσειε τοῦ
as-helpers for-Mytilene if at-least the fleet it should-sail-against of-the
βασιλέως (ἐλέγετο γάρ)· αἳ προμαθοῦσαι τὸν ἐπίπλουν
emperor it-was-said for which having-learned-beforehand the sailing-against

τοῦ βασιλέως στόλου, δείσασαι εὐθὺς ἀπέπλευσαν ἐς Χίον
of-the emperor fleet having-feared at-once sailed-away to Chios
κἀκεῖ περιέμενον. Ἰσμαῆλος δὲ ἐπεὶ δέκα ἡμέρας τὸ ἄστυ
and-there waited Ismail and since ten days the town
πολιορκῶν οὐδὲν ἤνυεν, ἐμπρήσας τε τὰς πρὸ τοῦ
besieging nothing he-accomplished having-burned both the before the
ἄστεος οἰκίας καὶ καταδραμὼν τὰ πολλὰ τῆς Λέσβου καὶ
town houses and having-overrun the most — of-Lesbos and
λησάμενος καὶ δηώσας καὶ κώμας διαρπάσας καὶ λείαν
having-plundered and having-ravaged and villages having-sacked and booty
ὅτι πλείστην ἐλάσας καὶ ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐνθέμενος ἀπέπλευσεν
as most having-driven and in-the ships having-put sailed-away
ἐπὶ οἶκου ἐς Καλλιούπολιν, καὶ διέλυσε τὸν στόλον.
to home to Kallipolis and dissolved the fleet
Σέργιος δὲ ξὺν ταῖς δώδεκα ναυσὶ μαθὼν ἀναχθέντα τὸν
Sergio and with the twelve ships having-learned put-out the
στόλον ἀπὸ τῆς Λέσβου, πάλιν ἐπανῆκεν ἐς Μιτυλήνην,
fleet from — Lesbos again returned to Mytilene
καὶ πολλὰ ὀνειδισθείς τε καὶ μεμφθεὶς παρὰ τῶν αὐτῆς
and much reproached both and blamed by the of-it
ἡγεμόνων, ὅπως κατὰ ξυμμαχίαν τε ἥκων αὐτοῖς καὶ
leaders how by alliance both having-come to-them and
βοηθήσειν ἐπαγγειλάμενος καὶ κεναῖς ἐλπίσιν ἀναρτήσας
to-help having-promised and with-empty hopes having-suspended
αὐτοὺς, ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τῆς ἀνάγκης καταλιπὼν φυγὰς
them in the time of-the need having-abandoned(-them) as-fugitive
ᾤχετο, ἀνιαθεὶς ἢ μᾶλλον αἰσχυνθεὶς ἀπέπλευσεν ἐς
went-off grieved or rather ashamed sailed-away to
Λῆμνον καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐς Ῥόδον παρὰ Λοδοβίκον.
Lemnos and after these(-things) to Rhodes to Ludovico
Μιτυληναῖοι δὲ κατὰ τοὺς νηπίους πληγέντες νοῦν
Mytilenaeans and like the infants having-been-struck sense

ἔσχον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα πέμπουσι πρέσβεις ὡς βασιλέα,
had and after these(-things) send envoys to emperor
ἀπολογούμενοί τε περὶ ὧν ἐνεχαλοῦντο, καὶ τὸν δασμὸν
apologizing both about what they-were-charged-with and the tribute
ἀποδιδόντες ὃν ὤφειλον, καὶ δεόμενοι σπονδῶν τυχεῖν
paying which they-owed and begging truces to-obtain
καὶ εἰρήνης τοῦ λοιποῦ· καὶ μέντοι γε καὶ τυγχάνουσι,
and peace for-the future and indeed at-least also they-obtain(-it)
δεξαμένου τοῦ βασιλέως σφᾶς. Τὸ δ' αὐτὸ καὶ Χῖοι καὶ
having-accepted the emperor them the and same also Chians and
Νάξιοι πεποιήκασιν ὕστερον, δείσαντες μὴ ὅπερ ἔπαθον οἱ
Naxians have-done later having-feared lest what suffered the
Μιτυληναῖοι, καὶ αὐτοὶ πάθωσι, καὶ πέμψαντες πρέσβεις
Mytilenaeans also themselves might-suffer and having-sent envoys
τόν τε δασμὸν ὃν ὤφειλον ἀπέδοσαν, καὶ τὰς μετὰ
the both tribute which they-owed paid and the with
βασιλέως ξυνθήκας ἀνενεώσαντο. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸ λοιπὸν
emperor agreements renewed emperor and the rest
τοῦ φθινοπώρου διαγαγὼν ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει, χειμῶνος
of-the autumn having-spent in Adrianople of-winter
ἀρχομένου ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον, καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν ἤδη
beginning arrives at — Byzantium and sixtieth already
καὶ ἕκτον ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις
and sixth year besides the nine-hundred both and six-thousand
τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο, ὄγδοον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
in-the total was-being-completed eighth and of-the rule for-the emperor
Καταλαβὼν δὲ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου τῶν τε ξυνήθων 11.1
having-reached and the of-Constantine(-city) the both customary
φροντίδων εἶχετο, καὶ τῆς κατ' αὐτὴν ἐπιμελείας
cares he-held and the concerning it care
ὅλος ἦν καὶ τοῦ ταύτης ξυνοικισμοῦ· καὶ πρῶτα
wholly was and the of-it resettlement and first

μὲν τῶν Πελοποννησίων οὓς ἤγαγεν, ὅσοι τούτῳ
indeed of-the Peloponnesians whom he-brought as-many-as to-him
ἐδόκουν διαφέρειν τε τῶν ἄλλων καὶ τέχνας ἠπίσταντο,
seemed to-excel both the others and crafts knew
ἀπολεξάμενος, ἐντὸς κατοικίζει τῆς πόλεως, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς
having-chosen within he-settles the city the and rest
ἐν τῇ ἔξω χώρᾳ κατὰ κώμας καθίζει, διαδοὺς αὐτοῖς
in the outer land by villages settles having-distributed to-them
καὶ σῖτον καὶ ζεύγη βοῶν καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην αὐτάρκειάν τε
both grain and yokes of-oxen and all other sufficiency both
καὶ χρείαν ἐς τὸ παρὸν, ὥστε ἀροῦν καὶ γεωργίᾳ προσέχειν.
and need for the present so-as to-plow and to-farming to-attend
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο πέμψας ἐς Ἄμαστριν, πόλιν Παφλαγονίας
after and this having-sent to Amastris city of-Paphlagonia
παράλιον ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ, ἀποικίζει τὸ πλέον αὐτῆς
coastal on — Euxine sea he-transplants the most of-it
καὶ μᾶλλον δυνάμενον, ἔτι δὲ καὶ Ἀρμενίων τοὺς
and more powerful further and also of-Armenians the(-ones)
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ δυνατωτάτους τε καὶ εὐπορίᾳ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ
under him most-powerful both and in-resources and wealth and
τέχναις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐπιτηδεύμασι διαφέροντας καὶ δὴ
crafts and the other pursuits excelling and indeed
καὶ τὴν τάξιν ἐμπορικοὺς πάντας ἀναστήσας τῆς αὐτῶν
also the rank merchants all having-removed from-the their(-land)
μετοικίζει ἐνταῦθα, οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ
he-resettles there not only and but also of-the under him
ἄλλων γενῶν τοὺς τοιούτους. Ἔπειτα δὲ ξυγκαλέσας
other races the such(-men) then and having-called-together
πάντας τοὺς ἐν τέλει καὶ μέγα παρ᾽ αὐτῷ δυναμένους καὶ
all the(-ones) in office and greatly with him powerful and
πλούτῳ πολλῷ καὶ εὐπορίᾳ κομῶντας, κελεύει λαμπράς
with-wealth much and resources luxuriant he-orders brilliant

τε οἰκίας οἰκοδομεῖν ἐν τῇ πόλει, ᾗ ἕκαστος βούλοιτο,
both houses to-build in the city where each might-wish
καὶ βαλανεῖα κατασκευάζειν καὶ πανδοχεῖα καὶ ἀγορὰς καὶ
and baths to-construct and inns and markets and
ἐργαστήρια πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα, νεώς τε ἀνεγείρειν καὶ
workshops very-many and finest temples both to-raise and
ἱερὰ, καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις τοιούτοις ἀγάλλειν αὐτὴν καὶ
sacred(-places) and with-many other such(-things) to-adorn it and
κοσμεῖν, μηδενὸς φειδομένους, ὡς ἕκαστος εὐπορίας ἔχει τε
to-ornament nothing sparing as each of-resources has both
καὶ δυνάμεως. Καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ τὸν κάλλιστον ἀπολεξάμενος
and of-power and himself too the finest having-chosen
χῶρον ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει καὶ μᾶλλον τῶν ἄλλων
place in middle the city and more than-the others
ἀνέχοντα, νεών τε ἀνεγείρειν ἐν τούτῳ κελεύει τοῖς
rising temple both to-raise in this orders with-the(-ones)
ἐν αὐτῇ προϋπάρχουσι μεγίστοις τε καὶ καλλίστοις τῶν
in it previously-existing greatest both and finest of-the
νεῶν ἁμιλλώμενον ἐς ὕψος καὶ κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος, καὶ
temples vying for height and beauty and size and
ὕλας ξυλλέγειν τε καὶ ἑτοιμάζειν πρὸς τοῦτο παντοίας
materials to-collect both and to-prepare for this of-all-kinds
τε καὶ καλλίστας, μαρμάρων τε καὶ λίθων ἄλλων
both and finest of-marbles both and of-stones other
διαφανῶν καὶ τιμίων, ἔτι δὲ κιόνων πλῆθος μεγέθει καὶ
translucent and precious further and of-columns multitude in-size and
κάλλει διαφερόντων, καὶ σίδηρον καὶ χαλκὸν ὅτι πλεῖστον
beauty excelling and iron and bronze as most
καὶ μόλυβδον καὶ πάσην ἄλλην ὕλην ἐπιτήδειον. Ἔτι δὲ
and lead and all other material suitable further and
καὶ βασίλεια οἰκοδομεῖν ἐπέταξεν ἐπὶ τῆς πρὸς θάλασσαν
also palaces to-build he-ordered on the toward sea

ἀνεχούσης ἄκρας τοῦ παλαιοῦ Βυζαντίου, κρείττω τοῖς
rising headland of-the old Byzantium better in-the
ὅλοις καὶ θαυμαστότερα τῶν προτέρων ὥρᾳ τε καὶ
whole and more-marvelous than-the former in-beauty both and
μεγέθει καὶ πολυτελείᾳ καὶ χάριτι, πρὸς δὲ τούτοις νεώρια
size and costliness and grace besides and these dockyards
κατασκευάζειν πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἐς ὑποδοχήν τε
to-construct very-many and finest for receiving both
νεῶν καὶ τῶν τούτων ἀποσκευῶν, οἴκους τε οἰκοδομεῖν
of-ships and of-the of-these gear houses both to-build
ἐχυρωτάτους τε καὶ μεγίστους ἐς φυλακὴν ὅπλων τε καὶ
strongest both and greatest for keeping of-arms both and
μηχανῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τοιούτων. Καὶ ἄλλα δὴ πολλὰ
engines and the other such(-things) and other indeed many
τοιαῦτα ἐπέταξε γίνεσθαι κόσμον τε τῇ πόλει φέροντα
such(-things) he-ordered to-be-made ornament both to-the city bringing
καὶ κοινὴν ὠφέλειαν, προσέτι δὲ καὶ χρείαν ἀναγκαίαν
and common benefit besides and also need necessary
ἔς τε τοὺς πολέμους καὶ τὰς μάχας αὐτῷ, γίνεσθαι
for both the wars and the battles for-him to-be-done
δὲ ταῦτα πάντα κατὰ σπουδὴν, ἄρχοντας ἐπιστήσας
and these(-things) all with zeal officials having-set-over
τοῖς ἔργοις τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τε καὶ σπουδαιοτάτους.
the works the most-experienced both and most-earnest
Ἐγνωστο γὰρ αὐτῷ διὰ πάντων αὐταρκεστάτην
it-had-been-resolved for by-him through all most-self-sufficient
τε καὶ δυνατωτάτην ἀποφῆναι τὴν πόλιν καὶ οἷα τὸ
both and most-powerful to-make the city and such-as the
παλαιὸν ἦν ἔν τε δυνάμει καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ δόξῃ καὶ
of-old it-was in both power and wealth and glory and
ἐπιστήμαις καὶ τέχναις καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ἐπιτηδεύμασί τε
sciences and crafts and all other pursuits both

καὶ παραδείγμασι τῶν καλῶν καὶ δημοσίοις καὶ κοινοῖς
and patterns of-the fine(-things) and public and common
οἰκοδομήμασί τε καὶ ἀναθήμασι.
buildings both and offerings
Ξὺν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Μαχουμούτης ὁ τῆς Εὐρώπης 12.1
with this and also Mahmud the — of-Europe
ἡγεμὼν, πρῶτός τε ὢν τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ μέγα
leader first both being of-the(-ones) with him and greatly
δυνάμενος μετ᾽ αὐτὸν, καὶ τῶν ὅλων πραγμάτων τῆς
powerful after him and of-the whole affairs of-the
ἀρχῆς ἐπιμελητὴς, νεών τε ἀνεγείρει μέγιστον καὶ
rule overseer temple both raises greatest and
περικαλλέστατον ἐν ἀπόπτῳ τῆς πόλεως, λίθοις τε
most-beautiful in conspicuous(-part) of-the city with-stones both
διαφανέσι καὶ μαρμάροις ἀστράπτοντα καὶ κιόνων ὥρᾳ
translucent and marbles flashing and of-columns in-beauty
τε καὶ μεγέθει διαπρεπέστατον, ἔτι δὲ γραφικῇ τε καὶ
both and size most-distinguished further and with-painting both and
γλυφικῇ τέχνῃ καλῶς ἠσκημένον, καὶ χρυσῷ πολλῷ καὶ
carving art well decorated and with-gold much and
ἀργύρῳ καταλαμπόμενον, καὶ πολλοῖς καὶ καλοῖς ἄλλοις
silver shining and with-many and fine other
κοσμούμενον δώροις τε καὶ ἀναθήμασι καὶ φιλοτιμήμασι.
adorned gifts both and offerings and lavish-works
Περὶ αὐτὸν δὲ πτωχοτροφεῖα καὶ πανδοχεῖα κατασκευάζει
around it and poorhouses and inns he-constructs
καὶ λουτρὰ φιλοτίμως ἄγαν ἔς τε χρείαν καὶ κάλλος
and baths lavishly exceedingly for both use and beauty
ἅμα καὶ μέγεθος ἠσκημένα. Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις οἰκίας τε
at-once and size decorated besides and these houses both
λαμπρὰς οἰκοδομεῖ ἑαυτῷ καὶ πολυτελεῖς, καὶ παραδείσους
brilliant he-builds for-himself and costly and gardens

φυτεύει περὶ αὐτὰς, παντοίοις κομῶντας φυτοῖς ἔς τε χάριν
plants around them with-all-kinds luxuriant plants for both grace
καὶ τέρψιν καὶ ἀπόλαυσιν ἱκανοὺς, καὶ ὑδάτων ἀφθονίαν
and delight and enjoyment sufficient and of-waters abundance
ἐσάγει καὶ πολλὰ τοιαῦτα ποιεῖ, ἑπόμενός τε τῇ τοῦ
brings-in and many such(-things) does following both the of-the
κρατοῦντος γνώμῃ κατάκρας καὶ ἅμα κοσμῶν καὶ αὐτὸς
ruler judgment utterly and at-once adorning also himself
τὴν πόλιν ὡς δυνατὸν ἰδίαις τε δαπάναις καὶ ἀναλώμασι
the city as possible with-own both expenses and outlays
καὶ κοινωφελέσιν οἰκοδομήμασί τε καὶ ἀναθήμασι.
and public-beneficial buildings both and offerings

13.1 Μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ καὶ τριήρεις ὁ βασιλεὺς πανταχοῦ τῆς
after these(-things) and also triremes the emperor everywhere of-the
αὐτοῦ ναυπηγεῖσθαι κελεύει, τὸ τῆς θαλάσσης κράτος εἰδὼς
his(-land) to-be-built orders the of-the sea power knowing
ἀναγκαῖόν τε ὂν αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν ταύτης ἀρχὴν καὶ μάλιστα
necessary both being for-him and the of-it rule and most
δὴ ἔν γε ταῖς ὑπερορίοις ἐκστρατείαις· καὶ γὰρ ἤδει
indeed in at-least the beyond-the-borders campaigns and for he-knew
κἀν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἔργοις αὐτῷ τὰ μέγιστα ξυνενεγκόντα
also-in the earlier works for-him the greatest(-things) having-contributed
τὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν στόλον· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῶν πάλαι
the by sea fleet but indeed also of-the ancient
βασιλέων τοὺς τὰ μέγιστα δυνηθέντας ἀκριβῶς ἐξετάζων
kings the(-ones) the greatest(-things) having-been-able exactly examining
τε καὶ σκοπούμενος εὕρισκε τὰς κατὰ θάλασσαν πράξεις
both and considering he-found the by sea deeds
μεγίστας τε οὔσας καὶ ὀνομαστοτάτας καὶ τὰ μέγιστα
greatest both being and most-renowned and the greatest(-things)
κατωρθωκότας διὰ θαλάσσης αὐτούς. Διά τοι τοῦτο
having-achieved through sea them because-of surely this

καὶ τὸ ταύτης κράτος ἐς ἑαυτὸν ἐβούλετο μεταστῆσαι· γῇ
also the of-it power to himself he-wished to-transfer land
γὰρ καὶ θάλασσα ξυνελθοῦσαι ὑπὸ μίαν ἀρχὴν, μεγίστην
for and sea having-come-together under one rule greatest
ταχέως αὐτὴν ἀπεργάζονται. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως.
quickly it make and these(-things) indeed thus
Τοῦ δ' αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος καὶ Κριτόβουλος ὁ Ἰμβριώτης 14.1
of-the and same winter also Kritoboulos the Imbriot
λόγους προσφέρει τοῖς δυνατοῖς τῶν Λημνίων περὶ ἐνδόσεως
words brings to-the powerful of-the Lemnians about surrender
τῆς νήσου τῷ βασιλεῖ· ἔτι γὰρ κατεῖχον Ἰταλοί. Οἱ δὲ
of-the island to-the emperor still for held(-it) Italians they and
δέχονται καὶ παρέχουσι τούτῳ πιστὰ ἢ μὴν δώσειν τὴν
accept and give to-him pledges truly indeed to-give the
νῆσον ἀφικομένῳ· ἦν γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις τῶν
island to-him-having-come was for to-them among the first of-the
φίλων ἀνὴρ, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ τά γε τοιαῦτα,
friends the-man and they trusted him in-the at-least such(-things)
καὶ προέπεμπον κρύφα ἀπαλλαγῆναί τε βουλόμενοι τῆς
and sent-ahead secretly to-be-freed both wishing from-the
βαρύτητος τῶν Ἰταλῶν καὶ, τὸ μέγιστον, δεδιότες τὸν
heaviness of-the Italians and the greatest fearing the
στόλον τοῦ βασιλέως, μήποτε ἐπελθὼν αἴφνης αὐτοῖς
fleet of-the emperor lest-ever having-come-upon suddenly them
μεγάλως βλάψειε· Ἰταλοὶ γὰρ οὐκ ἠδύναντο βοηθεῖν· καὶ
greatly it-should-harm Italians for not were-able to-help and
διὰ τοῦτο ἐβούλοντο ἀποστάντες αὐτῶν προσχωρῆσαι
because-of this they-wished having-revolted from-them to-go-over
τῷ βασιλεῖ. Κριτόβουλος δὲ τὰ πιστὰ λαβὼν παρ'
to-the emperor Kritoboulos and the pledges having-received from
αὐτῶν, ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ· καὶ πέμπει δὴ
them arrives at the of-Hadrian(-city) and sends indeed

γράμματα κατὰ τάχος ἐς τὸν δεσπότην Δημήτριον
letters with speed to the despot Demetrios
μηνύοντα καιρὸν εἶναι τὰς νήσους αἰτῆσαι παρὰ τοῦ
signifying time to-be the islands to-ask from the
βασιλέως, Ἴμβρον καὶ Λῆμνον, ἑτοίμου τε ὄντος δώσειν
emperor Imbros and Lemnos ready both being to-give
αὐτοῦ, καὶ αὐτὸς εἰπὼν δυνατὸς εἶναι τὴν Λῆμνον ἑλεῖν
he and himself having-said able to-be — Lemnos to-take
καὶ τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς ἐξελάσαι· εἶχε γὰρ ἤδη καὶ πρότερον
and the Italians to-drive-out he-had for already also before
περὶ τούτου γράμματα τοῦ δεσπότου. Δεσπότης δὲ τοῦτο
about this letters of-the despot despot and this
μαθὼν, ὡς τάχιστα τὸν Ἀσάνην ἐκπέμπει πρέσβυν ὡς
having-learned as quickly-as-possible — Asanes sends-out as-envoy to
βασιλέα, καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὰς νήσους αἰτεῖ καὶ λαμβάνει,
emperor and from him the islands asks and receives
ξυνθέμενος δὴ καὶ δασμὸν ἐτήσιον ὑπὲρ τούτων ἀποφέρειν
having-agreed indeed also tribute yearly for these to-pay
βασιλεῖ τρισχιλίους χρυσίνους, ξυμπαρόντος γε καὶ αὐτοῦ
to-emperor three-thousand gold-pieces being-present-with at-least also himself
Κριτοβούλου τότε ἐν Ἀδριανουπόλει (τε) καὶ ξυμπράττοντος.
Kritoboulos then in Adrianople both and cooperating
Δεξάμενος δὲ ὁ Κριτόβουλος τὰ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
having-received and — Kritoboulos the from the emperor
γράμματα, ἐπανῆλθεν ἐς Ἴμβρον ὡς τάχιστα· καὶ μίαν
letters returned to Imbros as quickly-as-possible and one
μόνην ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ διαγαγὼν, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐμβὰς
only day there having-spent on-the next(-day) having-embarked
ἐς πάραλον καὶ λαθὼν τὰς ἐφορμούσας τε καὶ
into coaster and having-escaped-notice-of the lying-at-anchor both and
περιπλεούσας τὴν νῆσον προφυλακίδας νῆας τῶν Ἰταλῶν,
sailing-around the island guard ships of-the Italians

νυκτὸς καταίρει ἐς Λῆμνον, καὶ ἐσέρχεται ἐν τῷ φρουρίῳ,
by-night lands at Lemnos and enters into the fortress
τῶν Καστριωτῶν περὶ πρώτην που φυλακὴν δεξαμένων
of-the Kastriots about first somewhere watch having-received
αὐτόν. Κοινολογησάμενος δὲ τῷ τε φρουράρχῃ καὶ
him having-conferred and with-the both fortress-commander and
τοῖς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ (εἶχε γὰρ καὶ τοῦτον μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων
the(-ones) with him he-had for also this-man with the others
ξυμπράττοντα), εὐθὺς ἀναλαβόντες ἱππεῖς πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν
cooperating at-once having-taken horsemen five and twenty
ἀφικνοῦνται ἐς τὸ τοῦ Κοτζίνου ἄστυ περὶ ὄρθρον βαθύν,
they-arrive at the — of-Kotzinos town about dawn deep
καὶ ἐσέρχονται ἐν αὐτῷ, ἀνοιξάντων εὐθὺς τὴν πρὸς
and enter into it having-opened at-once the toward
νότον πυλίδα τῶν ἔνδοθεν ξυμπραττόντων αὐτοῖς· εἶχε
south postern the(-ones) from-within cooperating with-them he-had
γὰρ πάντας τούτους ᾗπερ ἔφην προκατεσκευασμένους τε
for all these as I-said prepared-beforehand both
καὶ ταὐτὰ ξυμβουλομένους αὐτῷ.
and the-same(-things) wishing-with him
Εἰσελθόντα δὲ δέχονται πάντες οἱ τοῦ ἄστεος ἄσμενοι,
him-having-entered and receive all the(-ones) of-the town glad
καὶ κοινῇ ξυνδραμόντες ξὺν ὅπλοις κατακλείουσι τοὺς
and in-common having-run-together with arms shut-in the
Ἰταλοὺς ἐν τοῖς ἐπαρχικοῖς δημοσίοις οἴκοις, πέντε καὶ
Italians in the governor's public houses five and
τεσσαράκοντα ὄντας, βουληθέντας μὲν ἐς χεῖρας αὐτοῖς
forty being having-wished indeed to hands with-them
ἰέναι καὶ διὰ μάχης γενέσθαι καὶ ὡρμηκότας ἤδη, μὴ
to-go and through battle to-come and having-started already not
δυνηθέντας δέ. Τί γὰρ καὶ εἶχον οὗτοι δρᾶσαι πρὸς τοὺς
having-been-able and what for also could these to-do against the(-ones)

ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος ἅπαντας; Τέλος δὲ, ἡμέρας ἤδη γενομένης,
from the town all finally and day already having-come
προσχωροῦσι καὶ ἄνευ ὁμολογίας, καὶ παραδιδόασι σφὰς
they-surrender even without agreement and hand-over them
αὐτοὺς Κριτοβούλῳ χρήσασθαι ὅ τι καὶ βούλοιτο,
selves to-Kritoboulos to-use(-them) what thing also he-might-wish
πιστεύσαντες αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ ἀπέλυσε πάντας εἰπὼν, "εἰ
having-trusted him he and released all having-said if
μὲν αἱρεῖσθε μεθ' ἡμῶν εἶναι καὶ κατοικεῖν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ,
indeed you-choose with us to-be and to-dwell in the island
δεχόμεθά τε ὑμᾶς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀρκοῦντα παρέξομεν·
we-receive both you and the necessities sufficient we-will-provide
εἰ δ' οὐ, ἄπιτε ὅποι φίλον ἑκάστῳ." Τὸν δέ γε τούτων
if but not go-away wherever dear to-each the and at-least of-these
ἄρχοντα Καλαβρέζον δώροις τε πολλοῖς καὶ ξενίοις
commander Calabrese with-gifts both many and hospitable
τιμήσας ἀπέπεμψε μετ' εἰρήνης ἐς Εὔβοιαν ἀπελθόντα.
having-honored sent-away with peace to Euboea departing
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο πέμψας ἄγγελον ἐς τὸν τοῦ Παλαιοῦ
after and this having-sent messenger to the — of-Old
Κάστρου καλουμένου (τοῦτο δ' ἦν ἡ παλαιὰ Μυρινούπολις)
Castle called this and was the old Myrina
φρούραρχον Μιχέλην, αἰτεῖ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, ὑπισχνούμενος
fortress-commander Michele he-asks the acropolis promising
αὐτῷ καὶ δῶρα δώσειν καὶ τιμήσειν ἱκανῶς. Ἔστι γὰρ
to-him both gifts to-give and to-honor(-him) sufficiently is for
ἡ τῆς Μυρινουπόλεως ἀκρόπολις ἐχυρωτάτη καὶ πάντη
the — of-Myrina acropolis strongest and wholly
ἀνεπιχείρητος καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἐπ' ἀσφαλείᾳ ἐκ πάνυ
unassailable and of-the renowned for safety from very
παλαιοῦ, ἐπ' ἄκρας τε ὑπερανῳκισμένη τῆς πόλεως ἐφ'
old on height both settled-above the city on

ὑψηλοῦ καὶ τριπλῷ τείχει παλαιτάτῳ καὶ λίθοις μεγίστοις
high and with-triple wall most-ancient and with-stones greatest
κατησφαλισμένη τε καὶ κατωχυρωμένη, καὶ πᾶσαν ὑφ᾽
secured both and fortified and all under
αὑτὴν ἔχουσα καὶ καταδουλοῦσα τὴν πόλιν. Καὶ διὰ
itself having and enslaving the city and because-of
τοῦτο ἐβούλετο τοῦτον ὑπαγαγέσθαι λόγοις ἡμέροις τε καὶ
this he-wished him to-win-over with-words mild both and
προσηνέσι καὶ τὸ ὅλον εἰρηνικοῖς. Ὁ δὲ, ἅτε νέος ὢν καὶ
gentle and the whole peaceable he and as young being and
πιστεύων τῇ τῆς ἀκροπόλεως ἐχυρότητι καὶ ἅμα φυλακῇ
trusting in-the of-the acropolis strength and at-once in-guard
ἰσχυρᾷ καὶ σιτήσει (εἶχε γὰρ ἐντὸς μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὰ
strong and in-provisions he-had for within with himself also the
ἐπιτήδεια ἄφθονα καὶ ἀρκοῦντα ἐς ὅλον ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἄνδρας
necessities abundant and sufficient for whole year and men
ὀγδοήκοντα καταφράκτους), λόγοις μὲν οὐκ ἀποκρίνεται,
eighty armored with-words indeed not answers
αἵματι δὲ ξίφος ἐγχαράξας ἐς χάρτην ἀποπέμπει
with-blood but sword having-engraved on paper sends
Κριτοβούλῳ, τοῦτο δηλῶν, ὡς "αἵματι καὶ σιδήρῳ
to-Kritoboulos this showing that with-blood and iron
μόνῳ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν λήψῃ, ἄλλως δ᾽ οὐ," καὶ ἅμα
only the acropolis you-will-take otherwise but not and at-once
προσεπαπειλησάμενος ἐν τῷ χάρτῃ καὶ τοῦτο μετ᾽ εἰρωνείας·
having-threatened-further on the paper also this with irony
"μὴ οὕτω τὴν ἀκρόπολιν αἴτει, οὐ γὰρ λήψῃ· ἀλλ᾽ εἴ
not so the acropolis ask not for you-will-take(-it) but if
γε ἀνὴρ εἶ, αὐτὸς ἐλθὼν ξὺν ὅπλοις λάμβανε ταύτην."
at-least man you-are yourself having-come with arms take it

15.1 Κριτόβουλος δὲ ἡμέρας τέσσαρας ἐν τῷ Κοτζίνου
Kritoboulos and days four in the of-Kotzinos
ἄστει διαγαγὼν καὶ καταστησάμενος τὰ αὑτοῦ, τῇ
town having-spent and having-settled the(-things) of-himself on-the
ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν τετρακοσίους ἱππεῖς εὖ ὡπλισμένους
next(-day) having-taken four-hundred horsemen well armed
καὶ πεζῶν ὁπλίτας οὐκ ἐλάσσους τριακοσίων ἀφικνεῖται ἐς
and of-foot hoplites not fewer than-three-hundred arrives at
Μυρινούπολιν, καὶ στρατοπεδεύεται πόρρω τοῦ ἄστεος,
Myrina and encamps far from-the town
τοῦ μὴ λυμήνασθαι τούς τε ἵππους καὶ στρατιώτας τὰς περὶ
so-as not to-damage the both horses and soldiers the around
τοῦ ἄστεος ἀμπέλους καὶ τοὺς ἀγρούς· καὶ πέμψας ἄγγελον
the town vineyards and the fields and having-sent messenger
λαλεῖ πάλιν εἰρηνικὰ τῷ φρουράρχῃ καὶ πειρᾶται
speaks again peaceable(-things) to-the fortress-commander and tries
λόγοις ἡμέροις αὐτὸν ὑπαγαγέσθαι καὶ ὑποσχέσεσιν. Ὁ δὲ
with-words mild him to-win-over and with-promises he and
τήν τε παροῦσαν δύναμιν πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν ὁρῶν, καὶ τοὺς
the both present force before eyes seeing and the(-ones)
ἐντὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑφορώμενός τε καὶ ἅμα δεδιὼς μὴ
within the city suspecting both and at-once fearing lest
τοῖς ἔξωθεν ἐπαρθέντες ἢ καὶ κοινολογησάμενοι μετὰ
by-the(-ones) from-outside encouraged or also having-conferred with
τούτων καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔνδοθεν ξυνεπαναστῶσι, καὶ τήν τε
these also themselves from-within rise-up-with(-them) and the both
ἀκρόπολιν ἀποβαλεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσειε, δέχεται τοὺς
acropolis he-will-lose and himself should-be-in-danger accepts the
λόγους εἰρηνικῶς καὶ ξυνθήκας ποιεῖται καὶ προθεσμίαν αἰτεῖ
words peaceably and agreements makes and term asks
καὶ λαμβάνει μηνῶν τριῶν, ἕως οὗ κοινωσάμενος τῷ
and receives of-months three until which having-communicated with-the

τοῦ τῆς Ῥόδου ἡγουμένῳ μεγάλῳ μαΐστρῳ (Λοδοβίκος
of-the — of-Rhodes ruling great master Ludovico
γὰρ προαπεπεπλεύκει ἐς Ἰταλίαν, ἐπίτροπον τοῦτον ταῖς
for had-sailed-away-before to Italy as-steward him over-the
νήσοις καταλιπών) δέξηται καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ξύνθημα τοῦ
islands having-left he-should-receive also from him signal of-the
παραδοῦναι τήν τε ἀκρόπολιν καὶ τὸ ἄστυ· καὶ ὁμήρους
to-hand-over the both acropolis and the town and hostages
ἐπὶ τούτοις δίδωσι καὶ πιστά. Κριτόβουλος δὲ ταῦτα
for these(-terms) gives and pledges Kritoboulos and these(-things)
διαπραξάμενος ἐκπέμπει δύο τῶν Λημνίων ἀρχόντων ἐς
having-accomplished sends-out two of-the Lemnian officials to
Πελοπόννησον ἀγγελοῦντάς τε τῷ Δημητρίῳ τὰ
Peloponnese going-to-report both — to-Demetrios the(-things)
πεπραγμένα οἱ, καὶ ἄρχοντας αἰτήσοντας ἀφῖχθαι αὐτῷ
done by-him also officials going-to-ask to-have-come to-him
τοῦ παραδοῦναι τὴν νῆσον καὶ τὰ πολίσματα. Αὐτὸς δὲ
of-the to-hand-over the island and the towns himself and
περιέμενεν ἐν Λήμνῳ. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
waited in Lemnos and these(-things) indeed thus
Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἅμα ἦρι ἀρχομένῳ ἐκστρατεύει κατὰ τῶν 16.1
emperor and at-once with-spring beginning campaigns against the
προσοίκων τῷ Ἰονίῳ κόλπῳ Ἰλλυριῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἐσπλέοντι
dwellers-by — Ionian gulf Illyrians on right for-one-sailing-in
τοῦτον περί που τὴν παλαιὰν Ἐπίδαμνον, οἳ δὴ
it around somewhere the old Epidamnos who indeed
βάρβαροι ὄντες τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς Ταυλάντιοί τε καὶ Μαχάονες
barbarians being the from beginning Taulantians both and Machaones
ἐκαλοῦντο, νομάδες οἱ πλείους αὐτῶν καὶ αὐτόνομοι καὶ
were-called nomads the most of-them and self-governing and
ἀβασίλευτοι ἐκ πολλοῦ· οἰκοῦσι δὲ ὄρη τε μεγάλα
kingless from long they-inhabit and mountains both great

καὶ ὑπερύψηλα καὶ δυσπρόσοδα, ἔχοντες ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ
and very-high and hard-to-approach having in themselves also
φρούρια πλεῖστα καὶ ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πολίσματα ἐχυρὰ ἐν τῇ
fortresses very-many and strong and towns secure on the
παραλίᾳ τοῦ Ἰονίου, ἥ τε χώρα πᾶσα αὐτῶν πανταχόθεν
coast — of-Ionian the both land all their on-all-sides
ὠχύρωται δυσχωρίαις τε μεγάλαις καὶ ὕλαις βαθείαις
has-been-fortified by-rough-grounds both great and forests deep
καὶ τόποις ἀποτόμοις καὶ ἀποκρήμνοις. Προστησάμενοι
and places sheer and precipitous having-set-at-their-head
δὲ πρὸ χρόνων ὀλίγων ἐκ τῆς σφετέρας γενεᾶς Ἀρειανόν
and before years few from the their-own race Arianites
τινα καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἡγεμόνας ἑαυτῶν κατέχουσι τὴν
a-certain and Alexander as-leaders of-themselves they-hold the
χώραν ἰσχυρῶς, οὐκ ἐθέλοντες οὔτε σπένδεσθαι βασιλεῖ
land strongly not wishing neither to-make-truce with-emperor
οὔτε δασμὸν ἀποφέρειν οὔθ' ὅλως κατακούειν αὐτοῦ· οὐ
nor tribute to-pay nor at-all to-obey him not
μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς αὑτῶν πολλάκις ἐκθέοντες καὶ
only and but also from-the their(-land) often running-out and
λαθραίας ἐπιθέσεις καὶ ἐκδρομὰς ποιούμενοι ἔβλαπτον τὴν
secret attacks and sallies making harmed the
ὅμορον αὐτοῖς χώραν τοῦ βασιλέως. Ἐστράτευσε μὲν οὖν
bordering them land of-the emperor campaigned indeed then
ἐπὶ τούτους καὶ πρόσθεν Μωράτης ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁ τοῦ
against them also before Murad the emperor the of-the
βασιλέως πατὴρ, χειρὶ πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει, καὶ ξυμβαλὼν
emperor father with-hand much and power and having-engaged
αὐτοῖς νικᾷ τε τούτους καὶ τῶν τε παρόδων ἐκράτησε
them conquers both them and of-the both passes was-master
καὶ μέρος πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν κατέδραμε καὶ ἐδήωσε
and part much of-the their(-land) overran and laid-waste

καὶ τῶν φρουρίων ἔνια ἐξεῖλε καὶ λείαν ὡς πλείστην
and of-the fortresses some took-out and booty as most
ἤλασεν· οὐκ ἠδυνήθη δ᾽ οὖν ὅμως ἑλεῖν καὶ ὑπαγαγέσθαι
drove not was-able but then nevertheless to-take and to-win-over
τέλεον, ἀλλ᾽ ἐσπείσατο μόνον αὐτοῖς αἰτήσασιν, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ
completely but made-truce only with-them having-asked on condition
καταβάλλειν αὐτῷ δασμόν τινα ἐπέτειον, ἐλάσας δὲ
to-pay to-him tribute some yearly having-driven and
λείαν ὅτι πολλὴν ἐκεῖθεν καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς
booty as much thence and to-the army having-distributed
ἀνεχώρησεν. Βραχὺν δὲ οὗτοι χρόνον ἐμμείναντες ταῖς
withdrew short and these time having-abided by-the
ξυνθήκαις, αὖθις ἐνεόχμωσαν καὶ τόν τε δασμὸν οὐκ
agreements again innovated and the both tribute not
ἀπεδίδοσαν καὶ ἐκδρομὰς ποιούμενοι κατέτρεχον τὴν
they-paid and sallies making overran the
βασιλέως καὶ ἔβλαπτον. Ἐπὶ τούτους οὖν τὴν στρατιὰν
emperor's(-land) and harmed(-it) against these then the army
ἤλαυνεν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ
drove the emperor and having-set-out from the of-Hadrian(-city)
παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ, ἤει διὰ τῆς
with-all the army cavalry both and infantry went through the
αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐν τοῖς ὁρίοις αὐτῶν ἐν τρισὶ καὶ
his(-land) and arrives at the borders their in three and
τριάκοντα ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις, καὶ στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ,
thirty the whole days and encamps there
καὶ αὐτίκα κελεύει Μαχουμούτεα τρεῖς ἴλας ἀπολεξάμενον
and at-once orders Mahmud three squadrons having-chosen
ὁπλιτῶν τε καὶ τοξοτῶν καὶ ὑπασπιστῶν καὶ δὴ
of-hoplites both and archers and shield-bearers and indeed
καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους
also of-the(-ones) from the own court the most-warlike

νυκτὸς ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τὰς παρόδους καὶ φθῆναι ταύτας
by-night to-go to the passes and to-be-first these
προκατασχόντα πρὶν τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς ἥκειν πυθομένους.
having-seized-beforehand before the Illyrians to-come having-learned(-it)
Ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν εὗρε ταύτας ἤδη κατεχομένας ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν·
he and having-come found these already held by them
προεπύθοντο γὰρ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἔφοδον· καὶ
they-had-learned-beforehand for the of-the emperor approach and
ξυμβαλὼν αὐτοῖς νικᾷ τε τούτους λαμπρῶς καὶ κρατεῖ τῶν
having-engaged them conquers both them brilliantly and masters the
παρόδων βίᾳ· καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς κατόπιν ἐλαύνων μετὰ τῆς
passes by-force and the emperor behind driving with the
ὅλης στρατιᾶς ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν, ἀκμάζοντος
whole army invades into the land their ripening
ἤδη τοῦ σίτου, καὶ καταδραμὼν αὐτῆς τὰ πλεῖστα τόν τε
already the grain and having-overrun of-it the most the both
σῖτον διαφθείρει καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἐλαύνει ἀνθρώπων
grain destroys and booty as most drives of-men
τε καὶ βοσκημάτων παντοίων, καὶ φρούρια χειροῦται
both and of-cattle of-all-kinds and fortresses subdues
τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ, τὰ δὲ καὶ πολιορκίᾳ
the(-ones) indeed by onslaught by-force the(-ones) and also by-siege
ἑλών, καὶ κατασκάπτει τελείως, καὶ ἁπλῶς πᾶσαν τὴν
having-taken and razes completely and simply all the
ἐν ποσὶ καὶ κάτω χώραν αὐτῶν διαφθείρει, σκυλεύων τε
at feet and lower land their destroys stripping both
καὶ ληιζόμενος καὶ δηῶν κατὰ κράτος. Οἱ δέ γε Ἰλλυριοὶ
and plundering and ravaging by force the and at-least Illyrians
κατέχοντες ἤδη τὰ ὑψηλὰ (οὐ γὰρ ἐτόλμων καταβῆναι ἐς
holding already the heights not for they-dared to-come-down into
τὰ πεδία) καὶ τὴν αὑτῶν ἀγομένην καὶ φερομένην ὁρῶντες
the plains and the their(-land) being-led and being-carried seeing

καὶ πορθουμένην κακῶς καὶ ἅμα δεδιότες περὶ αὑτῶν, ἐς
and being-sacked badly and at-once fearing for themselves into
ἀνάγκην καταστάντες τρέπονται ἐς ξυμβάσεις, καὶ κήρυκα
necessity having-come turn to agreements and herald
πέμψαντες δέονται τοῦ βασιλέως σπονδῶν τυχεῖν, ὁμήρους
having-sent beg the emperor truces to-obtain hostages
τε δόντες καὶ πιστὰ, ἦ μὴν δασμόν τε ἐτήσιον ἀποφέρειν
both having-given and pledges truly indeed tribute both yearly to-pay
τῷ βασιλεῖ παῖδάς τε ῥητοὺς καὶ βοσκημάτων ἀγέλας
to-the emperor children both stated and of-cattle herds
(οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν αὐτοῖς χρήματα) καὶ στρατιώτας ἐν ταῖς
not for there-was for-them money and soldiers in the
ἐκστρατείαις τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ φίλους εἶναι καὶ ξυμμάχους
campaigns of-the emperor and friends to-be and allies
ἀδόλους. Καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ σπένδεται·
guileless and the emperor accepts on these(-terms) and makes-truce
καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς ὁμήρους καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἐλάσας
and having-taken the hostages and booty as most having-driven
τε αὐτὸς καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς, ἐπάνεισιν ἐπὶ τὴν
both himself and to-the army having-distributed returns to the
Ἀδριανοῦ, τελευτῶντος ἤδη τοῦ θέρους· καὶ διαγαγὼν τὸ
of-Hadrian(-city) ending already the summer and having-spent the
φθινόπωρον ὅλον αὐτοῦ, χειμῶνος ἀρχομένου ἀφικνεῖται
autumn whole there of-winter beginning arrives
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον παραχειμάσων αὐτοῦ· καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν καὶ
at — Byzantium going-to-winter there and sixtieth and
ἕβδομον ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς
seventh year besides the nine-hundred and six-thousand in-the
ὅλοις ἠνύετο, ἔννατον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
total was-being-completed ninth and of-the rule for-the emperor

17.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ γενόμενος ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου καὶ μικρὸν
emperor and having-come in the of-Constantine(-city) and a-little
διαναπαύσας αὐτὸν πάλιν δίδωσι ταῖς τῆς ἀρχῆς
having-rested himself again gives(-himself) to-the of-the rule
φροντίσι καὶ τῇ τῶν ὅλων διοικήσει καὶ διορθώσει, καὶ
cares and to-the of-the whole administration and correction and
μάλιστα δὴ τῶν τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς καὶ τῶν (γε)
most indeed of-the(-affairs) of-the own court and of-the at-least
στρατιωτῶν· φιλοκρινῶν τε πάντας αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐκλεγόμενος
soldiers sifting both all them and choosing
τοὺς ἀρίστους ἔν τε φρονήσει καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ μελέτῃ καὶ
the best in both prudence and courage and practice and
ἀσκήσει τῶν πολεμικῶν, καὶ προάγων καὶ προβιβάζων ἐπὶ
training of-the warlike(-arts) and promoting and advancing to
τὸ πρόσω, διδούς τε ἑκάστῳ τὴν ἁρμόττουσαν χώραν
the forward(-place) giving both to-each the fitting place
καὶ τάξιν, καὶ τιμῶν ἐξ ἅπαντος τρόπου τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς
and rank and honoring by every way the good
ἐπιδόσεσί τε χρημάτων καὶ ἀρχαῖς καὶ ἀξιώμασι καὶ ταῖς
with-gifts both of-money and offices and ranks and the
ἄλλαις εὐποιίαις καὶ δωρεαῖς, μηδενὸς φειδόμενος. Μετὰ δὲ
other benefits and donations nothing sparing after and
τοῦτο τῶν σατραπῶν τοὺς ἀρίστους τε καὶ δοκιμωτάτους
this of-the satraps the best both and most-approved
ἀναφανέντας τοῖς ἔργοις καὶ τὰς αὑτῶν σατραπείας τε
having-appeared in-the works and the their satrapies both
καὶ ἀρχὰς ὡς ἔδει διῳκηκότας καὶ καλῶς ἄρξαντας
and offices as was-needed having-administered and well having-ruled
μετεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὰς κρείττους τε καὶ μεγίστας τῶν τιμῶν
he-transferred to the greater both and greatest of-the honors
τε καὶ ἀρχῶν, ἑτέρους τε αὖ ἐς τὰς αὐτῶν ἀντικαθίστα
both and offices others both again into the their he-appointed-instead

σατραπείας καὶ τάξεις, ὅσοι τούτῳ ἐδόκουν, ἥπερ ἔφην,
satrapies and ranks as-many-as to-him seemed as I-said
τῶν σφόδρα χρησίμων τε καὶ σπουδαίων ἀνδρῶν, ἄθλα
of-the very useful both and earnest men prizes
παρεχόμενος ἑκάστοις τὰ πρέποντα. Ἔπειτα κηρύγματα
providing to-each the fitting(-ones) then proclamations
διαπέμπει καὶ διατάξεις πανταχοῦ τῆς αὐτοῦ ἔν τε Ἀσίᾳ
he-sends-round and ordinances everywhere of-the his(-land) in both Asia
καὶ Εὐρώπῃ, πάντας, ὅσοι τῆς Κωνσταντίνου εἴτε
and Europe all as-many-as of-the of-Constantine(-city) whether
αἰχμαλωσίᾳ εἴτε μετοικήσει εἴτε ἄλλως πως ἢ πρὸ
by-captivity or by-emigration or otherwise somehow either before
τῆς ἁλώσεως ἢ μετὰ τὴν ἅλωσιν ἐν ἑτέραις πόλεσιν
the capture or after the capture in other cities
ᾤκουν, μετανιστῶν τε καὶ μετοικίζων ἐνταῦθα· ἦσαν γὰρ
dwelt removing both and resettling there there-were for
ἔτι τούτων πολλοὶ καὶ ἐν τῇ Ἀδριανοῦ καὶ Φιλίππου
still of-these many also in the of-Hadrian(-city) and of-Philip(-city)
καὶ Καλλίου καὶ Προυσίου καὶ ἑτέραις πόλεσιν ἀπό
and of-Kallias(-city) and of-Prousias(-city) and other cities from
τε τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας καὶ ἔτι πρότερον διασπαρέντες καὶ
both the captivity and still earlier scattered and
κατοικήσαντες ἐν αὐταῖς, ἐπιστήμονες ἄνδρες καὶ τῶν
having-settled in them skilled men and of-the
ἄγαν χρησίμων, οἵ ταῖς ἰδίαις ἐπιστήμαις χρώμενοι
exceedingly useful who the own skills using
πανταχοῦ ἐν ὀλίγῳ καιρῷ καὶ εὐπορίαν ἔσχον πολλὴν, καὶ
everywhere in little time both resources had much and
πλοῦτον ἐκτήσαντο. Πάντας οὖν τοὺς τοιούτους μετοικίζει
wealth acquired all then the such he-resettles
ἐνταῦθα, διαδιδοὺς τοῖς μὲν αὐτῶν οἰκίας, τοῖς
there distributing to-the(-ones) indeed of-them houses to-the(-ones)

δὲ πᾶσαν ἄλλην αὐτάρκειάν τε καὶ χρείαν ἀναγκαίαν
and all other sufficiency both and need necessary
παρέχων φιλοτίμως ἐς τὸ παρόν. Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς
providing lavishly for the present in and the same
ἡμέραις ἀποικίζει καὶ Φωκαιέας ἀμφοτέρους τοὺς ἐν
days he-transplants also Phokaians both the(-ones) in
Ἰωνίᾳ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ κατοικίζει καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ πόλει.
Ionia — of-Asia and settles also them in the city
Ἐκπέμπει δὲ καὶ Ζάγανον τὸν Καλλιουπόλεως σατράπην
he-sends-out and also Zaganos the of-Kallipolis satrap
καὶ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου παντὸς μετὰ τεσσαράκοντα νεῶν
and leader of-the fleet whole with forty ships
ἐν ταῖς νήσοις· ὃς ἀφικόμενος ἀνίστησι Θασίους τε καὶ
to the islands who having-arrived removes Thasians both and
Σαμόθρακας καὶ μετοικίζει ἐνταῦθα.
Samothracians and resettles(-them) there
Οὕτω σφοδρὸς ἔρως τῆς πόλεως ταύτης ἐνέπνευσεν αὐτοῦ
so violent love of-the city this breathed-into his
τῇ ψυχῇ, καὶ τοῦ ταύτην αὖθις ἐν τῇ προτέρᾳ δυνάμει τε
the soul and of-the it again in the former power both
καὶ δόξῃ καὶ λαμπρότητι καταστᾶσαν ἐπιδεῖν. Ἐπιστατεῖ
and glory and brilliance established to-see he-oversees
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ταῖς οἰκοδομίαις ταῖς ἑαυτοῦ, τοῦ τε νεώ,
and also himself the buildings the(-ones) of-himself of-the both temple
φημὶ, καὶ τῶν βασιλείων, ἐπιμελῶς ξυγκομιδῇ τε σπουδαίᾳ
I-mean and of-the palaces carefully by-collection both earnest
οὐ μόνον τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐς τὰ ἔργα ὑλῶν, ἀλλὰ δὴ
not only of-the necessary for the works materials but indeed
καὶ τῶν ἄγαν φιλοτίμων καὶ περιττῶν, καὶ μετακλήσει
also of-the exceedingly lavish and extraordinary and by-summoning
πανταχόθεν τεχνιτῶν τῶν ἀρίστων, οἰκοδόμων τε, φημὶ,
from-all-sides of-craftsmen the best builders both I-mean

καὶ λιθοξόων καὶ ξυλουργῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλην ἡντινοῦν
and stone-cutters and carpenters and of-the(-ones) other any
ἐς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐχόντων ἐμπειρίαν καὶ τέχνην· ἔργα τε
for the such(-works) having experience and art works both
γὰρ δὴ μεγάλα κατεσκευάζετο καὶ ἀξιοθέατα καὶ διὰ
for indeed great were-being-built and worth-seeing and through
πάντων τοῖς μεγίστοις τε καὶ καλλίστοις τῶν παλαιῶν
all with-the greatest both and finest of-the ancient(-works)
ἁμιλλώμενα, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο πολλῆς ἐδεῖτο τῆς ἐπιστασίας
vying and because-of this much needed of-the oversight
τε καὶ φροντίδος καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὑλῶν διαφόρων τε καὶ
both and care and of-hands and of-materials various both and
λαμπρῶν καὶ δαπάνης καὶ ἀναλωμάτων ὡς πλείστων τε
brilliant and of-expense and outlays as very-many both
καὶ μεγίστων. Εἶχε μὲν οὖν καὶ πολλοὺς περὶ ταῦτα τοὺς
and greatest he-had indeed then also many over these the(-ones)
ἐφεστηκότας καὶ τῶν ἄγαν σπουδαίων τε καὶ ξυνέσει
set-over(-them) and of-the exceedingly earnest both and in-understanding
καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ διαφερόντων ἐς τὰ τοιαῦτα, οὐ μὴν, ἀλλ' οὐδ'
and experience excelling for the such(-works) not indeed but not-even
αὐτός γε ἠμέλει τῆς ξυνεχοῦς ἐπιστασίας τε καὶ θέας τῶν
himself at-least neglected the continuous oversight both and viewing of-the
ἔργων, φιλοτίμως ἄγαν ἅπαντα πράττων καὶ φιλοκάλως
works lavishly exceedingly all doing and with-love-of-beauty
καὶ τὸ ὅλον βασιλικῶς. Καὶ ὁ μὲν περὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν.
and the whole royally and he indeed about these(-things) was
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Μικέλης ὁ τὴν τοῦ Παλαιοῦ 18.1
in this and also Michele the(-one) the — of-Old
Κάστρου καλουμένου κατέχων ἄκραν ἐν Λήμνῳ ξυνέβη
Castle called holding citadel in Lemnos came-to-terms
Κριτοβούλῳ καὶ παραδίδωσιν αὐτῷ τήν τε ἀκρόπολιν
with-Kritoboulos and hands-over to-him the both acropolis

καὶ τὸ ἄστυ, λαβὼν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ χρυσοῦ νομίσματα
and the town having-received from him of-gold coins
χίλια, ἃ ξυνεξέτισεν ὁ δῆμος ὁ τῶν Λημνίων.
thousand which contributed the people the of-the Lemnians

19.1 Τοῦ δ᾽ αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος καὶ οἱ τῆς Πελοποννήσου δεσπόται
of-the and same winter also the — of-Peloponnese despots
διενεχθέντες ἐπὶ κακῷ τῷ σφετέρῳ ἐπολέμησαν ἀλλήλοις
having-quarreled to evil the their-own warred with-one-another
δι᾽ αἰτίαν τοιαύτην· οἱ γὰρ ὑπό σφισιν ὄντες τῶν ἐν
for cause such the for under them being of-the(-ones) in
τέλει καὶ ἀρχὰς ἔχοντες καὶ προσόδους μεγάλας καὶ πόλεων
office and offices having and revenues great and of-cities
καὶ φρουρίων ἐπιστατοῦντες οὐ καρπούμενοι τούτοις, ἀλλ᾽
and fortresses presiding not enjoying these but
ἁπληστίᾳ τε γνώμης καὶ μοχθηρίᾳ τρόπων ἀεὶ τοῦ
by-greed both of-judgment and wickedness of-ways always the
πλείονος ἐφιέμενοι καὶ νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμοῦντες, στασιάζοντές
more desiring and new(-things) desiring quarreling
τε ἦσαν ἐν ἀλλήλοις αὐτοὶ καὶ πολεμοῦντες καὶ πάντα
both were among one-another themselves and warring and all
τἀκεῖ ξυγχύσεώς τε καὶ ταραχῆς ἐμπιπλῶντες, τούς
the(-things)-there of-confusion both and turmoil filling the
τε δεσπότας ξυνέκρουόν τε καὶ ξυνέβαλλον ἀλλήλοις
both despots they-made-clash both and set-against one-another
καὶ ξυνετάραττον, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα καὶ λάθρα τούτοις
and confounded the(-times) indeed first also secretly to-them
προσερχόμενοι καὶ διαλεγόμενοι παρὰ μέρος ἑκατέρῳ καὶ
approaching and conversing in turn with-each and
ὥς τινα τῶν ἀπορρήτων δῆθεν ἐκφαίνοντες καὶ λόγοις
as some of-the secrets forsooth revealing and with-words
ψευδέσι καὶ διαβολαῖς κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων αὐτοὺς ἐρεθίζοντες καὶ
false and slanders against one-another them provoking and

ὁπλίζοντες, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ φανερῶς ἀναισχυντοῦντες
arming after and this also openly being-shameless
ἤδη ἀφιστάμενοί τε τούτων καὶ αὐτομολοῦντες ἀφ᾽ ἑτέρου
already revolting both from-them and deserting from one
πρὸς ἕτερον, ξυναφιστῶντές τε καὶ πόλεις καὶ φρούρια
to another making-revolt-with(-them) both also cities and fortresses
ἃ κατεῖχον, ὃ δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον τοὺς δεσπότας κατ᾽
which they-held which indeed also more the despots against
ἀλλήλων ἐξέμηνε καὶ ἐς φανερὰν ἔχθραν κατέστησεν.
one-another maddened and into open enmity set
Ἐπειράθησαν μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἅπαξ καὶ δὶς διαπρεσβευσάμενοι
they-tried indeed for also once and twice having-sent-envoys
παρ᾽ ἀλλήλους λόγοις λύειν τὰ διάφορα καὶ μὴ πολέμῳ·
to one-another by-words to-settle the differences and not by-war
ὡς δ᾽ οὐ προὐχώρει κατὰ νοῦν αὐτοῖς ἡ πεῖρα, τῶν
when but not proceeded according-to mind for-them the trial the
χειρόνων κρατούντων, καὶ ἀξύμβατοι διελύοντο, οὕτως ἤδη
worse(-men) prevailing and unreconciled they-parted so already
καὶ ἐς φανερὸν κατέστησαν πόλεμον, καὶ καταστάντες
also into open they-came war and having-come
ἐμάχοντο κατακράτος, ἐσβάλλοντες ἐς τὴν ἀλλήλων
fought mightily invading into the one-another's(-land)
ἰσχυρῶς καὶ κατατρέχοντες καὶ ληιζόμενοι ταύτην, καὶ
strongly and overrunning and plundering it and
χώρας ἐμπιπρῶντες καὶ φρούρια χειρούμενοι, τὰ δὲ καὶ
lands burning and fortresses subduing the(-ones) and also
κατασκάπτοντες, καὶ λείαν ἐλαύνοντες καὶ πᾶσι τρόποις
razing and booty driving and in-all ways
διαφθείροντες τὸ ὁμόφυλον· καὶ τοῦτο ἦν μέχρι πολλοῦ.
destroying the kindred(-people) and this was until long
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῶν τε ταύτῃ Ἰλλυριῶν μεταπεισόντων
after and this of-the both there Illyrians having-gone-over

ἐς τὸν δεσπότην Θωμᾶν, τῶν τε τοῦ δεσπότου Δημητρίου
to the despot Thomas of-the both of-the despot Demetrios
καλλιστευόντων αὐτομολίᾳ καθ' ἡμέραν χρωμένων ἐς
most-excellent desertion by day using to
αὐτὸν, καὶ τὰ φρούρια ἐνδιδόντων, ὑπερέσχεν οὗτος, καὶ
him and the fortresses surrendering prevailed this-one and
τῶν πλείστων κύριος γεγονὼς καταδιώκει τὸν ἀδελφὸν,
of-the most lord having-become pursues the brother
καὶ κατακλείει μετὰ γε τῆς γυναικὸς καὶ τῆς θυγατρὸς
and shuts(-him)-in with at-least the wife and the daughter
ἐς Ἐπίδαυρον τὴν Λιμηρὰν, ἣ δὴ νῦν Μονεμβασία
at Epidauros the Limera which indeed now Monemvasia
καλεῖται, Ὑπεραλγήσας οὖν τοῖς γινομένοις ὁ δεσπότης
is-called having-grieved-exceedingly then at-the happenings the despot
Δημήτριος καὶ μὴ ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειεν (ἐκινδύνευε
Demetrios and not having what thing also he-might-do he-was-in-danger
γὰρ ἁπάσης ἐκπεσεῖν τῆς ἀρχῆς), ἐκπέμπει τὸν Ἀσάνεα
for of-all to-fall-from the rule he-sends-out — Asanes
πρέσβυν ὡς βασιλέα, δεόμενος ἐπικουρίας καὶ βοηθείας
as-envoy to emperor begging help and aid
τυχεῖν κατὰ τῆς ἐπηρείας καὶ καταδυναστείας τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ·
to-obtain against the abuse and oppression of-the brother
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἐς τὸ φανερόν· ὅμως γε μὴν διττὸς
and these(-things) indeed for the open nevertheless at-least indeed double
ἐνταῦθα φέρεται λόγος· οἱ μὲν γάρ φασιν ὡς οὐχ'
here is-carried account the(-ones) indeed for say that not
ἕνεκεν βοηθείας ἁπλῆς ὁ δεσπότης ἐξέπεμπε τὸν Ἀσάνεα,
for-the-sake of-help simple the despot sent-out — Asanes
ἀλλὰ κατεγγυώμενός τε τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν θυγατέρα καὶ τὴν
but betrothing both to-the emperor the daughter and —
Πελοπόννησον ἅπασαν ἐνδιδοὺς, αὐτὸς δὲ τόπον ἕτερον
Peloponnese all surrendering himself and place other

αἰτῶν ἀντιδοθῆναι ταύτης ἐν τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐς
asking to-be-given-in-exchange for-it in the(-land) of-the emperor for
ἀρχήν. Ἔνιοι δ' αὖ οὐχ οὕτως ἔχειν διισχυρίζονται, ἀλλ'
rule some and again not so to-be maintain but
ὁ μὲν δεσπότης ξυμμαχίαν αἰτήσοντα παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
the indeed despot alliance going-to-ask from the emperor
ἐξέπεμψε τὸν Ἀσάνεα, ἄνδρας ἐπικούρους καὶ στρατιὰν ἐς
sent-out — Asanes men auxiliaries and army for
βοήθειαν, τὸν δὲ ὀργὴν ἔχοντα τῷ τε δεσπότῃ Θωμᾷ
help the(-man) and anger having at-the both despot Thomas
καὶ τοῖς ἐν τέλει Πελοποννησίων ἐναντιουμένοις οἱ τὰ
and the(-ones) in office of-Peloponnesians opposing him the
μάλιστα, καὶ ἀμυνόμενον, καὶ ἄνευ τῆς τοῦ δεσπότου
most and avenging-himself also without the of-the despot
γνώμης ταῦτα πεποιηκέναι.
judgment these(-things) to-have-done

Πλὴν ὅπως ποτ' εἶχε τὸ πρᾶγμα, πυθόμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς 20.1
except how ever stood the affair having-learned the emperor
τήν τε πρὸς ἀλλήλους σφῶν αὐτῶν μάχην τε καὶ
the both toward one-another their own battle both and
διαφορὰν καὶ τὸν ἀκήρυκτον πόλεμον, οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ
quarrel and the undeclared war not only and but
καὶ ὡς ὁ δεσπότης Θωμᾶς ἀθετήσας τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν
also how the despot Thomas having-set-aside the toward him
διαλλαγὰς, ἐπεκδραμὼν παρείλετό τινα τῶν αὐτοῦ καὶ
reconciliations having-sallied took-away some of-the his(-places) and
ξυνθήκας μετὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν ποιεῖται καινὰς, καὶ τούτους
agreements with the Italians makes new and them
ἐς ἐπικουρίαν καλεῖ, ὀργισθείς τε τῷ γινομένῳ καὶ
for help calls having-been-angered both at-the happening and
ἅμα δείσας περὶ τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ, μὴ ἐπ' ἄλλοις
at-once having-feared for — Peloponnese lest to others

γένηται, οὐκέτι ἐν ἀναβολαῖς τὸ πρᾶγμα τίθησι, ἀλλ'
it-should-come no-longer in postponements the affair he-sets but
ὡς εἶχεν εὐθὺς, ἔαρος ἐπιλάμποντος ἤδη, ἐκστρατεύει ἐς
as he-was at-once spring shining already campaigns to
Πελοπόννησον. Ἄρας οὖν ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ
Peloponnese having-set-out then from the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the
στρατῷ ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ καὶ σπουδῇ ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ
army cavalry both and infantry and with-zeal driving to
τὰ πρόσω, ἑβδόμῃ καὶ εἰκοστῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται
the(-places) forward on-the-seventh and twentieth day arrives
ἐς Κόρινθον, καὶ στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ τρίτην ἡμέραν
at Corinth and encamps there third day
περιμένων τὸν δεσπότην Δημήτριον· οὕτω γὰρ ἔφασαν
awaiting the despot Demetrios so for they-said
ξυντεθεῖσθαι αὐτῷ παρὰ τοῦ Ἀσάνεω. Δεσπότης δὲ ἐξ
to-have-been-agreed for-him by — Asanes despot and from
Ἐπιδαύρου ἥκων ἐς Σπάρτην, αὐτὸς μὲν οὐκ ἀφικνεῖται
Epidauros having-come to Sparta himself indeed not arrives
ἐς βασιλέα, ἐκπέμπει δὲ τὸν Ἀσάνεα μετὰ δώρων ὅτι
to emperor sends-out and — Asanes with gifts as
πολλῶν, καὶ ὃς ἀφικόμενος εὐθὺς ἔσεισιν ὡς βασιλέα
many and he having-arrived at-once enters to emperor
τῇ προτεραίᾳ, καὶ κοινολογησάμενος κατὰ μόνας ἐφ'
on-the former(-day) and having-conferred by alone for
ἱκανὸν αὐτῷ τε καὶ Μαχουμούτει τῷ πασίᾳ ἔξεισι·
sufficient(-time) with-him both and Mahmud the pasha goes-out
τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ τὸν μὲν Ἀσάνεα κελεύει
on-the and next(-day) at-once with-day — indeed Asanes orders
ξυλλαβεῖν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν ἀδέσμῳ.
to-seize the emperor and in guard to-keep unbound
Αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν ἐσέβαλεν οὐκ ἐς τὴν
himself and having-taken the army invaded not into the

τοῦ δεσπότου Θωμᾶ οὖσαν ἐχθρὰν (ὅπερ εἰκός τε ἦν
of-the despot Thomas being hostile(-land) which likely both was
καὶ προσεδοκᾶτο), ἀλλ᾽ ἐς τὴν τοῦ δεσπότου Δημητρίου
and was-expected but into the of-the despot Demetrios
φιλίαν οὖσαν, ἐλαύνων εὐθὺ τοῦ Ἄργους· ὃ δὴ
friendly(-land) being driving straight — to-Argos which indeed
καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς ἐβεβαίωσε τοὺς προλεχθέντας λόγους,
also to-the many confirmed the before-mentioned accounts
καὶ πιστοὺς εἶναι πεποίηκεν, ὡς οἴκοθεν οὗτοι καὶ παρ᾽
and trustworthy to-be made(-them) as from-home these and from
ἑαυτῶν ἐπηγάγοντο τὸν βασιλέα, ἐνδιδόντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ
themselves brought-in the emperor surrendering themselves and
τὴν Πέλοπος διά τε τὴν πρὸς τὸν δεσπότην Θωμᾶν
the of-Pelops(-land) because-of both the toward the despot Thomas
καὶ τοὺς Πελοποννησίους ἀπέχθειαν, τὰ δ᾽ ἄλλα
and the Peloponnesians hatred the(-things) but other
σκηνὴ καὶ ὑπόκρισις ἦσαν καὶ πλάσμα, ὡς καὶ ἐκ τῶν
stage and pretense were and fabrication as also from the(-things)
μετὰ ταῦτα γέγονε δῆλον. Βασιλεὺς γὰρ παραγενόμενος
after these(-things) became clear emperor for having-come
ἐν Ἄργει αὐτίκα κελεύει Μαχουμούτεα στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν
in Argos at-once orders Mahmud army sufficient
ἀναλαβόντα νυκτὸς ἀπελθεῖν ἐς Σπάρτην καὶ κατακλεῖσαι
having-taken by-night to-go to Sparta and to-shut-in
αὐτοῦ δῆθεν τὸν δεσπότην Δημήτριον. Ὁ δ᾽ ἀπελθὼν
there forsooth the despot Demetrios he and having-gone
καὶ νυκτὸς ὅλης ὁδοιπορήσας ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ καταλαμβάνει
and by-night whole having-marched at-once with-day overtakes
τοῦτον ἐν Σπάρτῃ, καὶ κατακλείει αὐτοῦ καὶ πέμψας τὸν
him in Sparta and shuts(-him)-in there and having-sent the
γραμματέα τοῦ βασιλέως Θωμᾶν τὸν Καταβοληνοῦ, λόγους
secretary of-the emperor Thomas the of-Katabolenos words

προσφέρει τούτῳ εἰρηνικοὺς καὶ φιλίους περί τε ἐνδόσεως
brings to-him peaceable and friendly about both surrender
ἑαυτοῦ τε καὶ τοῦ ἄστεος, ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθοῖς ἔσεσθαι λέγων αὐτῷ
of-himself both and of-the town for goods to-be saying for-him
τε καὶ τοῖς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὸ θαρρούντως καταπιστεῦσαι
both and the(-ones) with him the confidently to-entrust
αὐτόν τε καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ μὴ ἀντιβῆναι
himself both and the rule to-the emperor and not to-oppose
ὅλως ἢ ἐνδοιάσαι· τοῦτο γὰρ οὐκ ἐς καλὸν ἔσται αὐτῷ.
at-all or to-hesitate this for not for fine will-be for-him
Δεσπότης δὲ τὸν Ἀσάνεα πρῶτον ἔφη ἀπολυθέντα ἥκειν
despot and — Asanes first he-said released to-come
παρ᾽ αὐτὸν τὰ πιστὰ φέροντα, καὶ οὕτω δρᾶσαι τὸ
to him the pledges bringing and so to-do the(-thing)
κελευόμενον. Ταῦτα δὲ πάντα, ᾗπερ ἔφην, ἐς τὸ φανερὸν
ordered these(-things) and all as I-said for the open
μὲν ἐπλάττοντο, ἄλλα δ᾽ ἦσαν ἐν ἀπορρήτοις καὶ
indeed were-fabricated other(-things) but were in secrets both
βεβουλευμένοι καὶ πράττοντες. Μαχουμούτης δὲ τὸν μὲν
having-planned and doing Mahmud and — indeed
Ἀσάνεα, τὰ πιστὰ δοὺς, ἀπολύει εὐθὺς, ξυνεκπέμπει
Asanes the pledges having-given releases at-once sends-out-with
δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ Χαμουζᾶ τὸν σατράπην, ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα
and him also Hamza the satrap among the most
φίλον ὄντα δεσπότῃ. Οἱ δὲ ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἐσελθόντες
friend being to-the-despot they and into the city having-entered
καὶ τῷ δεσπότῃ ξυντυχόντες ἐξάγουσι τοῦτον ἐς τὸ
and with-the despot having-met lead-out him to the
στρατόπεδον ὡς Μαχουμούτεα, ὁ δὲ δέχεται τοῦτον
camp to Mahmud he and receives him
ἀσμένως καὶ φιλοφρόνως καὶ μετὰ τῆς προσηκούσης
gladly and kindly and with the fitting

τιμῆς, παραλαμβάνει δὲ καὶ τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὴν ἄκραν
honor takes-over and also the city and the citadel
αὐτήν. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ
itself on-the and next(-day) also emperor arrives and
αὐτίκα μετακαλεῖται τὸν δεσπότην, καὶ τιμᾷ τοῦτον
at-once summons the despot and honors him
ἥκοντα τῇ ἐσόδῳ τῇ παρ' αὐτὸν, ὑπαναστάς τε
having-come with-the entry the to him having-risen both
τῆς καθέδρας αὐτῷ ἐσιόντι τὴν σκηνὴν καὶ δεξιὰν
from-the seat for-him entering the tent and right-hand
δοὺς καὶ καθίσας παρ' αὑτῷ, καὶ πολλὰ εἰπὼν
having-given and having-seated(-him) beside himself and much having-said
εἰρηνικὰ καὶ φιλάνθρωπα λόγοις ἡμέροις καὶ προσηνέσι
peaceable and humane with-words mild and gentle
τοῦτον παραμυθεῖται, ἀγανακτούμενός τε τῆς δειλίας, καὶ
him comforts being-vexed both at-the cowardice and
τοῦ δέους ἀπαλλάττων· ἠσθάνετο γὰρ αὐτὸν δεδιότα
from-the fear freeing(-him) he-perceived for him fearing
καὶ θορυβούμενον· χρηστάς τε ἐλπίδας αὐτῷ περὶ τοῦ
and troubled good both hopes to-him about the
μέλλοντος ὑποτείνει, καὶ ἅμα θαρρεῖν δίδωσιν, ὡς πάντα
future holds-out and at-once to-be-confident gives as all
τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ καλῶς ἕξει καὶ κατὰ γνώμην αὐτῷ.
the(-things) from him well will-be and according-to judgment for-him
Ἔπειτα καὶ πολυτρόπως δωρεῖται χρημάτων τε ἐπιδόσει
then also in-many-ways rewards(-him) of-money both with-gift
πολλῶν καὶ πέπλων καὶ ἱματίων πολυτελῶν, ἔτι δὲ
much and of-robes and garments costly further and
ἵππων καὶ ἡμιόνων καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων τῶν ἐς τὴν
of-horses and mules and many others of-the(-things) for the
τότε χρείαν ἡκόντων αὐτῷ· μεταπέμπεται δὲ καὶ τὴν
then need having-come to-him he-summons and also the

τούτου γυναῖκα καὶ θυγατέρα μετὰ τιμῆς ἐξ Ἐπιδαύρου,
his wife and daughter with honor from Epidauros
ἐξαποστείλας τῶν βασιλικῶν εὐνούχων τε ἕνα καὶ ἄρχοντα
having-sent-out of-the royal eunuchs both one and official
μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἐς παραπομπὴν μετὰ τοῦ Ἀσάνεω, πᾶσί
with army for escort with — Asanes in-all
τε ἄλλοις τρόποις σφόδρα τιμᾷ τοῦτον καὶ θεραπεύει.
both other ways exceedingly honors him and tends(-him)

21.1 Τέσσαρας δὲ ἡμέρας αὐτοῦ διαγαγὼν καὶ τήν τε πόλιν
four and days there having-spent and the both city
καὶ τὴν ἄκραν ἐπισκευάσας καλῶς καὶ ἀσφαλισάμενος,
and the citadel having-equipped well and having-secured(-them)
φρουράρχην τε ἐγκαταλιπὼν καὶ φρουροὺς ἄνδρας
fortress-commander both having-left and guards men
τετρακοσίους τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς, τά τε
four-hundred of-the(-ones) from the own court the both
ἄλλα πάντα ἐνταῦθα κατὰ νοῦν πράξας τε καὶ
other(-things) all there according-to mind having-done both and
καταστησάμενος, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν, ξυνεπαγόμενος ἅμα
having-settled having-set-out thence bringing-along at-once
οἱ καὶ τὸν δεσπότην Δημήτριον, ἀφικνεῖται ἔς τι
with-him also the despot Demetrios arrives at a
πολίχνιον ἐρυμνότατον πάντη, τὸ παρὰ τὴν ὑπώρειαν
small-town strongest wholly the(-one) along the foothill
τοῦ μεγάλου ὄρους τῆς Σπάρτης κείμενον, οὐ πόρρω τοῦ
of-the great mountain — of-Sparta lying not far from-the
ἄστεος, Καστρίον ὀνομαζόμενον, καὶ στρατοπεδευσάμενος
town Kastrion named and having-encamped
αὐτοῦ, πρῶτον προσφέρει λόγους τοῖς ἐν αὐτῷ περί
there first brings words to-the(-ones) in it about
τε ἐνδόσεως ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ τοῦ πολίσματος· οἱ δὲ
both surrender of-themselves both and of-the town they and

πιστεύοντες ἑαυτοῖς τε καὶ τῇ ἐχυρότητι τοῦ φρουρίου
trusting themselves both and the strength of-the fortress
(ἦν γὰρ ὅλως ἀπότομόν τε καὶ ἀπόκρημνον τὸ χωρίον,
was for wholly sheer both and precipitous the place
καὶ τραχὺ καὶ ἄναντες πάντη καὶ μίαν μόνην πάροδον
and rough and uphill wholly and one only approach
ἔχον καὶ ταύτην τριπλῷ τείχει πεφραγμένην τε καὶ
having and this with-triple wall fenced both and
κατησφαλισμένην, καὶ αὐτοὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἄνδρες λογάδες ὡσεὶ
secured and themselves too were men picked about
τετρακόσιοι), οὐ παρεδέξαντο τοὺς λόγους τοῦ βασιλέως,
four-hundred not accepted the words of-the emperor
ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας ἐκαρτέρουν. Βασιλεὺς δ'
but having-shut the gates held-out emperor and
αὐτίκα παρακελευσάμενος τῇ στρατιᾷ προσέβαλεν ἰσχυρῶς
at-once having-urged the army attacked strongly
τῷ πολίσματι. Οἱ δὲ ἠμύνοντο μάλα εὐρώστως, καὶ οἱ
the town they and warded-off very stoutly and the
ὁπλῖται γενναίως ἀγωνιζόμενοι καὶ προσφιλονεικοῦντες τὴν
hoplites nobly contending and vying-for the
ἔσοδον καὶ τὴν ἄνοδον βιαζόμενοι, οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν
entrance and the ascent forcing the(-ones) indeed of-them
ἰσχυρῶς ξυνωθούμενοι παρὰ τῶν ἄνω τοῖς κοντοῖς
strongly pushed by the(-ones) above with-the poles
κατεκρημνίζοντο καὶ ἀπώλλυντο, οἱ δὲ παμμεγέθεσι
were-hurled-down and perished the(-ones) and with-huge
λίθοις ἄνωθεν ἀφ' ὑψηλοῦ βαλλόμενοι τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ
stones from-above from high being-hit on-the heads and
ξυνθλώμενοι ἀπέθνησκον, καὶ τέλος ἀποκρούονται ἰσχυρῶς·
crushed died and finally are-repelled strongly
ἔπεσον δὲ αὐτοῦ που οὐκ ὀλίγοι τῶν ἀγαθῶν καὶ
fell and there somewhere not few of-the good and

γενναίων ἀνδρῶν, ὅπερ οὐ μικρῶς ἠνίασε τὸν βασιλέα·
noble men which not slightly grieved the emperor
ὅμως ἀναχώρησιν σημάνας τότε μὲν ἔπαυσε τοῦ
nevertheless withdrawal having-signaled then indeed he-stopped(-them) from-the
πολεμεῖν· τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκτάξας καὶ ὁπλίσας
to-make-war on-the and next day having-drawn-up and having-armed
καλῶς πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ λόγοις προτρεπτικοῖς τε καὶ
well all the army and with-words exhortative both and
παρακλητικοῖς παροξύνας αὐτοὺς ἅμα καὶ παραθαρρύνας
encouraging having-urged-on them at-once and having-heartened(-them)
ἐς τὸ πολεμεῖν, καὶ ἄθλα προθεὶς κάλλιστα τοῖς
for the to-make-war and prizes having-set-forth fairest for-the(-ones)
καλῶς ἀγωνιουμένοις διαρπαγήν τε τοῦ φρουρίου σημάνας
well going-to-contend plunder both of-the fortress having-signaled
ἐκέλευσε προσβάλλειν. Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν
ordered to-attack the and soldiers great and fearful
ἀλαλάξαντες βοῇ καὶ δρόμῳ προσβάλλουσιν ἰσχυρῶς
having-raised-the-war-cry with-shout and running attack strongly
τῷ πολίσματι· καὶ γίνεται ὠθισμὸς ἐνταῦθα πολὺς καὶ μάχη
the town and comes-about pushing there much and battle
καρτερὰ ξυσταδὸν περὶ τὸ τεῖχος μετὰ θυμοῦ καὶ ὀργῆς
fierce hand-to-hand around the wall with spirit and anger
καὶ κραυγῆς, καὶ φόνος οὐκ ὀλίγος τῶν προμαχομένων,
and shouting and slaughter not small of-the front-fighters
ἀμφοτέρων ἀγωνιζομένων ἀτάκτως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ
both contending in-disorder both and with no
κόσμῳ καὶ κατακαινόντων ἀλλήλους ἀνοικτὶ, τῶν μὲν
order and killing one-another pitilessly the(-ones) indeed
βιαζομένων πᾶσι τρόποις ἔσω τοῦ τειχίσματος παρελθεῖν,
forcing in-all ways inside the fortification to-pass
τῶν δὲ ἀμυνομένων ἐρρωμένως καὶ οὐκ ἐώντων. Τέλος
the(-ones) and warding-off mightily and not allowing finally

ὑπερισχύσαντες οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως κτείνουσί τε πολλοὺς
having-prevailed the(-men) of-the emperor kill both many
αὐτῶν καὶ βιασάμενοι ἔσω τοῦ πρώτου καὶ δευτέρου
of-them and having-forced inside the first and second
γίνονται τείχους, καὶ μαχόμενοι ἰσχυρῶς καταδιώκουσί τε
they-come wall and fighting strongly pursue both
αὐτοὺς καὶ ξυνωθοῦσιν ἐς τὴν ἄκραν· οἱ δὲ ἐς στενὸν
them and push(-them) into the citadel they and into narrow(-space)
κομιδῇ ξυνελαθέντες καὶ μὴ ἔχοντες ὅ τι καὶ δράσαιεν
quite driven-together and not having what thing also they-might-do
ὕδατος ἀπορίᾳ καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπογνόντες τοῖς
of-water by-lack and of-the necessities but having-despaired of-the
ὅλοις παραδιδόασι σφᾶς αὐτοὺς βασιλεῖ χρήσασθαι ὅ
whole hand-over them selves to-emperor to-use(-them) what
τι καὶ βούλοιτο. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τοὺς μὲν ἄνδρας ἐκέλευσεν
thing also he-might-wish emperor and the indeed men ordered
ἀποσφαγῆναι πάντας εὐθὺς ὅσοι περιελείφθησαν τῷ
to-be-slaughtered all at-once as-many-as were-left from-the
πολέμῳ, τριακοσίους ὄντας, παῖδας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας
war three-hundred being children and and women
ἠνδραποδίσατο, τὴν δὲ πολίχνην κατέσκαψε.
he-enslaved the and small-town he-razed
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐφ᾽ ἕτερον προσελαύνει φρούριον Γαρδίκιον 22.1
after and this against another rides fortress Gardiki
καλούμενον, ἀνάλωτον πάντη καὶ ὀχυρώτατον· ἄκρα γὰρ
called uncapturable wholly and strongest height for
ἦν ἠλίβατος παρὰ τὴν ἔσοδον τοῦ μεγάλου ὄρους τῆς
was steep by the entrance of-the great mountain —
Σπάρτης, ὃ δὴ Ζυγὸς λέγεται, ἄκρως ἀνέχουσα καὶ
of-Sparta which indeed Zygos is-called extremely rising and
ὑπερκειμένη κρημνῷ τε μεγίστῳ καὶ φάραγγι βαθείᾳ, ἐν
lying-above with-precipice both greatest and ravine deep in

κύκλῳ πάντοθεν περιειργομένη καὶ κατησφαλισμένη, μιᾷ
circle on-all-sides shut-in and secured by-one
δὲ μόνῃ παρόδῳ καὶ ταύτῃ βραχείᾳ τὴν ἔσοδον ἔχουσα·
and only approach and this short the entrance having
παρ' ὃ καὶ πολύ τι πλῆθος τῶν ἀστυγειτόνων ἀνδρῶν
by which also great some multitude of-the neighboring men
τε καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ παίδων ἐνταῦθα ξυγκαταπεφευγὸς
both and women and children there having-fled-together
ἦν διὰ τὸ ἀσφαλὲς τοῦ χωρίου· τοῦτο δ' ἦν αὐτοῖς
was because-of the safety of-the place this and was for-them
ὄλεθρος προφανής. Βασιλεὺς γὰρ ἐλάσας ταύτῃ καὶ
destruction manifest emperor for having-driven there and
στρατόπεδον θέμενος τὰ μὲν πρῶτα λόγοις ἐπειρᾶτο
camp having-set the(-times) indeed first by-words tried
τούτους ὑπαγαγέσθαι, σῶς εἶναι βουλόμενος καὶ κακῶν
them to-win-over safe to-be wishing(-them) and of-evils
ἀπαθεῖς, ὡς δ' οὐκ ἔπειθε, κύκλῳ περισχὼν αὐτοὺς
unharmed when but not he-persuaded in-circle having-surrounded them
τῷ στρατῷ καὶ κατακλείσας ἰσχυρῶς ἐφύλαττε, λιμῷ
with-the army and having-shut(-them)-in strongly guarded(-them) by-hunger
καὶ δίψει τούτους ἐκπολιορκῆσαι βουλόμενος, καὶ μὴ ἐς
and thirst them to-reduce wishing and not into
χωρία ἀπόκρημνα καὶ ἀνάντη εἰκῇ καὶ μάτην ἀπολλύναι
places precipitous and uphill at-random and in-vain to-lose
τοὺς στρατιώτας. Οἱ δὲ μίαν δὴ καὶ μόνην ἡμέραν
the soldiers they and one indeed and only day
κατακλεισθέντες αὐτοῦ, οὐκέτι ἀντέχειν ἠδύναντο, ἀλλὰ
shut-in there no-longer to-hold-out were-able but
λιμῷ καὶ δίψει καὶ πνίγει καύματος θέρους ὥρᾳ καὶ
by-hunger and thirst and by-stifling of-heat of-summer in-season and
τῇ ἄλλῃ κακοπαθείᾳ πιεζόμενοι, ἅτε πλῆθος ὄντες πολὺ
the other suffering pressed as multitude being great

ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ παιδίων, καὶ ἐς βραχυτάτην
of-men both and women and little-children and into very-short
ἄκραν ξυνελαθέντες, ὕδατος ἀπορίᾳ καὶ σπάνει τῶν
height driven-together of-water by-lack and scarcity of-the
ἀναγκαίων καὶ μηδεμίαν ἐπικουρίαν ποθὲν ἢ ἔχοντες
necessities and no help from-anywhere either having
ἢ ὅλως ἔξειν ἐλπίζοντες, καὶ ἄκοντες προσχωροῦσι τῷ
or at-all going-to-have hoping also unwilling surrender to-the
βασιλεῖ, καὶ παραδιδόασι σφᾶς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄνευ ὁμολογίας.
emperor and hand-over them selves even without agreement
Βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ τούτους πάντας ἀπέκτεινε, παῖδας δὲ
emperor and also these all killed children and
καὶ γυναῖκας ἠνδραποδίσατο, τὸ δὲ φρούριον κατέσκαψε.
and women he-enslaved the and fortress razed
Τοῦτο δ' ἐποίησεν ἐν τοῖς φρουρίοις τοῖσδε ὀργὴν ἔχων
this and he-did in the fortresses these anger having
καὶ μῆνιν δικαίαν, τοῖς μὲν ὅτι προκαλουμένου
and wrath just at-the(-ones) indeed because calling
σφᾶς ἐπὶ ξυμβάσεις αὐτοῦ, ὥστε μηδένα κίνδυνον ἐν
them to agreements himself so-that no danger in
τῷ πολέμῳ τοῖς στρατιώταις γενέσθαι, οὐχ ὑπήκουσαν,
the war for-the soldiers to-be not they-obeyed
ἀλλ' εἵλοντο μᾶλλον τὸν πόλεμον, ἐν ᾧ πολλοὺς καὶ
but chose rather the war in which many and
ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπεβεβλήκει, τοῖς δὲ, Ἰλλυριοῖς οὖσι
good men he-had-lost at-the(-ones) and Illyrians being
τοῖς πλείοσι, διά τε τὰς δυστροπίας αὐτῶν καὶ τὰς
the most because-of both the perversities their and the
ξυνεχεῖς ἐπαναστάσεις τε καὶ κλοπὰς καὶ ληστείας, καὶ
continuous uprisings both and thefts and brigandages and
ἅμα θροῆσαι πάντας καὶ καταπλῆξαι βουλόμενος καὶ ἐς
at-once to-alarm all and to-terrify wishing and into

φόβον ὅτι πλεῖστον καὶ ἀγωνίαν ἐμβαλεῖν, ὥστε μηκέτι
fear as most and anguish to-throw so-as no-longer
ἀντιβαίνειν ἐθέλειν, μηδὲ τολμᾶν ὅλως ἀπαυθαδίζεσθαι
to-oppose to-wish nor to-dare at-all to-be-obstinate
τοῦ λοιποῦ, ἀλλὰ προσχωρεῖν ἑτοίμως αὐτῷ, θηρωμένους
for-the future but to-go-over readily to-him hunting
τὴν σωτηρίαν· ὃ δῆτα καὶ γέγονεν.
the safety which indeed also happened
Ὁρμηθεὶς γὰρ ἐκεῖθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ προσελαύνων ἐπὶ
having-set-out for thence the emperor and riding to
τὰ πρόσω τῆς χώρας, οὐκέτι ἀντιβαῖνον εἶχεν οὐδὲν
the forward(-parts) of-the land no-longer opposing(-thing) he-had nothing
οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλὰ πάντα οἱ προσεχώρει ἑτοίμως, τὰ πλείω
nowhere but all to-him went-over readily the most
σχεδὸν καὶ ἄνευ ὁμολογίας, προλαμβάνοντα τὰ πολλὰ
nearly even without agreement anticipating the(-times) many
καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἔφοδον, καὶ πόλεις καὶ φρούρια καὶ πᾶσα
also the his approach and cities and fortresses and all
ἡ ἐν ποσὶν εἶκε καὶ ὑπεχώρει πρὸς τὸν τούτου δρόμον
the at feet yielded and gave-way to the his course
καὶ τὴν ὁρμήν· οὕτως ἅπαντα κατεπτήχει καὶ προσεχώρει,
and the impulse so all had-cowered and went-over
πλὴν εἰ μή πού τινες κουφότητι γνώμης ἀντέβησαν, οἱ καὶ
except if not perhaps some by-lightness of-judgment opposed who also
παρὰ πόδας τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐσωφρονίσθησαν. Καὶ μέντοι καὶ ὁ
at feet by-the arms were-chastened and indeed also the
βασιλεὺς τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε πᾶσι προσεφέρετο καλῶς τοῖς γε
emperor the from this(-point) to-all behaved well to-the at-least
τοιούτοις, καὶ πάντας ἐφύλαττε σῶς ἐν τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι
such and all kept safe in the possessions all
καὶ ἀσινεῖς ὅλως τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ τοῦ πολέμου
and unharmed wholly from-the from the army and the war

κακῶν. Περιὼν δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν Πέλοπος καὶ χειρούμενος,
evils going-around and all the of-Pelops(-land) and subduing
ὅσα μὲν ἐδόκει οἱ τῶν τε φρουρίων καὶ πολισμάτων
whatever indeed seemed to-him of-the both fortresses and towns
ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι καὶ ἀσφαλῆ καὶ πρὸς φυλακὴν ἱκανῶς
suitable to-be and secure and for guard sufficiently
ἔχειν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεσκεύαζε φρουροῖς καὶ φρουράρχαις
to-be of-the land he-equipped with-guards and fortress-commanders
καὶ σιτήσει καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ἐξήρτυε, ὅσα
and provisions and arms and all others fitted-out whatever
δὲ μὴ ἐδόκει, κατέσκαπτε, τοὺς δ' οἰκήτορας εἴα μένειν
and not seemed(-so) he-razed the and inhabitants allowed to-remain
ἐν τοῖς αὐτῶν καὶ οἰκεῖν ὥσπερ κατὰ κώμας, ἐνίους
in the their(-places) and to-dwell as by villages some
δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποικίσας ἤγαγεν ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου.
and of-them also having-transplanted he-brought to the of-Constantine(-city)
Καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτοῦ [τοῦ] βασιλέως οὕτως εἶχε, 23.1
and the(-things) indeed very of-the emperor so were
δεσπότης δὲ Θωμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐπύθετο τὴν ἐς
despot and Thomas when the beginning he-learned the into
Πελοπόννησον ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως, ἐπισκευάσας τέ τινα
Peloponnese approach of-the emperor having-equipped both some
τῶν αὐτοῦ φρουρίων καλῶς, καὶ φύλακας ἐγκαταστήσας
of-the his fortresses well and guards having-established
αὐτοῖς, αὐτὸς ἐς Μαντίνειαν ἀπελθὼν, πολίχνην παράλιον,
in-them himself to Mantineia having-gone small-town coastal
μετά τε τῆς γυναικὸς καὶ τῶν παίδων καὶ τῶν ἀρχόντων
with both the wife and the children and the officials
ἐνίων, καὶ κατακλείσας ἑαυτὸν ἐκεῖ περιέμενεν ἀποσκοπῶν
some and having-shut himself there waited watching
τοῦ πολέμου τὸ πέρας. Ἤλπισε γὰρ μὴ οὕτω ῥαδίως
of-the war the end he-hoped for not so easily

ἐνδώσειν πᾶσαν τὴν Πέλοπος, χώραν τε οὖσαν
to-be-going-to-surrender all the of-Pelops(-land) land both being
ἐχυρωτάτην φύσει καὶ πόλεις ἔχουσαν ὀχυρὰς καὶ φρούρια
strongest by-nature and cities having strong and fortresses
ἐρυμνὰ καὶ δυσάλωτα, ἀλλὰ καί τινα τῶν φρουρίων ἢ τῶν
strong and hard-to-take but also some of-the fortresses or of-the
πολισμάτων περιλειφθήσεσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ περιγενόμενα,
towns to-be-going-to-be-left from-the war having-survived
καὶ οὕτω πάλιν ἕξειν αὐτὸν ἐλπίδα τινὰ καὶ καταφυγὴν
and so again to-have him hope some and refuge
ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε πάντα χειρούμενα καὶ
in Peloponnese when but he-saw all being-subdued and
πόλεις καὶ φρούρια, τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ
cities and fortresses the(-ones) indeed by onslaught by-force
τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὰ δὲ ἑκόντα παραχωροῦντα καὶ
with-the arms the(-ones) and willing going-over and
χωρὶς ἀνάγκης ἡστινοσοῦν, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Πέλοπος,
without necessity any and all the of-Pelops(-land)
ἄνευ μέντοι γε δυοῖν ἢ τριῶν πόλεων Ἐνετικῶν,
without however at-least two or three cities Venetian
σχεδὸν ἤδη κατειλημμένην καὶ κατεχομένην, τότ' ἤδη,
nearly already seized and held then already
πάντων ἀπογνοὺς τῶν αὐτοῦ πραγμάτων, ἐμβὰς
of-all having-despaired the his affairs having-embarked
ἐς πεντηκοντόρους δύο ξύναμα γυναικὶ καὶ τέκνοις καί
into fifty-oars two together-with wife and children and
τισι τῶν ἀρχόντων ᾤχετο ἐς Κέρκυραν ἀποπλεύσας.
some of-the officials went-off to Corfu having-sailed-away
Ὅσοι δὲ τῶν ἀρχόντων ἦσαν ἐν φρουρίοις καὶ πόλεσιν
as-many-as and of-the officials were in fortresses and cities
ἁρμοσταὶ, καταλιπόντες ταῦτα, ὑπεξέφυγον ἐς τὰς τῶν
governors having-abandoned these escaped to the of-the

Ἐνετῶν πόλεις Κορώνειαν καὶ Μεθώνην καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς
Venetians cities Koroni and Methoni and the rest
καὶ διεσώθησαν ἐκεῖ. Καὶ οὕτω πᾶσαν τὴν τοῦ Πέλοπος
and came-safe there and so all the — of-Pelops
χώραν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐχειρώσατο, ἔργον μέγα δράσας καὶ
land the emperor subdued work great having-done and
θαυμαστὸν ἐν οὕτω βραχυτάτῳ καιρῷ· οὔπω γὰρ ἐξήκει
marvelous in so very-short time not-yet for had-ended
τὸ θέρος ὅλον καὶ πᾶσα εἴχετο, πόλεις τε ὀχυραὶ καὶ
the summer whole and all was-held cities both strong and
φρούρια ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πολίχνια ἐγγύς που διακόσια καὶ
fortresses strong and small-towns near somewhere two-hundred and
πεντήκοντα, χώρα τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἄνωθεν καὶ ἐνδόξων,
fifty land of-the renowned from-of-old and glorious
καὶ πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἔργα καὶ μέγιστα δὴ ἐν τοῖς
and very-many and finest works and greatest indeed in the
κατ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐπιδειξαμένη καιροῖς, καὶ τρόπαια λαμπρὰ ἀπὸ
in it having-displayed times and trophies brilliant from
βαρβάρων τε καὶ Ἑλλήνων ἀναστήσασα, καὶ ἀποικίας
barbarians both and Hellenes having-set-up and colonies
πολλὰς ἀποικίσασα, ἄρξασά τε πολλῶν καὶ πόλεων καὶ
many having-sent-out having-ruled both many both cities and
γενῶν ἔν τε Ἀσίᾳ καὶ Εὐρώπῃ καὶ δὴ καὶ Λιβύῃ καὶ
races in both Asia and Europe and indeed also Libya and
νήσων τῶν μεγίστων, ἄνδρας τε ἀποδείξασα πᾶσιν ἐπί τε
islands the greatest men both having-shown to-all in both
φρονήσει καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ στρατηγίᾳ καὶ τῇ λοιπῇ ἀρετῇ
prudence and courage and generalship and the rest virtue
καὶ δὴ καὶ εὐεξίᾳ καὶ ῥώμῃ σωμάτων κρατίστους
and indeed also good-condition and strength of-bodies strongest
τε καὶ τελεωτάτους δι᾽ ἁπάντων, καὶ οἵους οὐκ ἄλλη
both and most-perfect through all and such-as not other

τῶν ἁπασῶν οὐδεμία πλήν γε δὴ τῆς Ῥωμαίων,
of-the all none except at-least indeed the(-land) of-Romans
θέσεώς τε λαχοῦσα ἀρίστης τε καὶ ἐπικαιροτάτης ἐν
position both having-obtained best both and most-strategic in
πᾶσι γῆς τε καὶ θαλάσσης, ὅ τι κράτιστον.
all of-land both and of-sea what thing strongest

24.1 Τὰ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην τε καὶ περιώνυμον
the(-things) indeed indeed concerning the great both and far-famed
χώραν τοῦ Πέλοπος ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίοις τε οὖσαν ἄνωθεν καὶ
land — of-Pelops under Romans both being from-of-old and
ἐς δεῦρο καλῶς ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἀρχθεῖσαν τὴν πᾶσαν, ἐλπίδας
to here well by them ruled the whole hopes
τε οὐ μικρὰς ὑποτείνουσαν ἀεὶ καὶ Ῥωμαίοις καὶ Ἰταλοῖς
both not small holding-out always both to-Romans and Italians
ὀψέ ποτε ἐν καιροῖς τοῖς προσήκουσιν ὠφελείας καὶ
late at-some-time in times the fitting of-benefit and
βοηθείας, δίς τε τειχισθεῖσαν τὸν ἰσθμὸν ἐν τοῖς ἡμετέροις
help twice both walled at-the isthmus in the our
καιροῖς, καὶ πάλιν παρὰ πόδας καταρριφθεῖσαν πολέμῳ
times and again at feet hurled-down by-war
ὑπὸ Μωράτεως τοῦ βασιλέως πατρὸς, οὕτως ἐτελεύτησε.
by Murad the emperor's father so ended
Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ πάντα καλῶς τε καὶ ὡς
emperor and the(-things) in it all well both and as
ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν πράξας, ἔς τε φυλακήν, φημι, καὶ
was to-him according-to mind having-done for both guard I-mean and
τὴν ἄλλην ἀσφάλειαν, σατράπην τε πάσης τὸν Ἀμάρην
the other safety satrap both of-all — Omar
καταλιπὼν, καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἐλάσας τε αὐτὸς
having-left and booty as most having-driven both himself
καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς, ἔξεισι τοῦ ἰσθμοῦ, ἔχων μεθ'
and to-the army having-distributed goes-out of-the isthmus having with

ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὸν δεσπότην Δημήτριον ξύναμα γυναικί τε
himself also the despot Demetrios together-with wife both
καὶ θυγατρὶ καὶ τοῖς κατακολουθήσασι τῶν ἀρχόντων.
and daughter and the(-ones) having-followed of-the officials
Γενόμενος δ' ἐν Λεβαδείᾳ τὸν μὲν δεσπότην ξὺν τοῖς
having-come and in Livadeia the indeed despot with the(-ones)
αὐτοῦ παραδοὺς ἄρχουσί τε καὶ στρατιώταις ἔς τε
his having-handed-over to-officials both and soldiers for both
ὑπουργίαν καὶ φυλακὴν, ἐκέλευσε σχολῇ καὶ βάδην ἰέναι,
service and guard he-ordered slowly and at-a-walk to-go
καθ' ὁδὸν ἀναπαυομένους διά τε τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ
on road resting because-of both the women and
τὰ παιδία καὶ τὴν ἄλλην τούτων ἀποσκευήν τε καὶ
the little-children and the other of-these baggage both and
θεραπείαν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν ξὺν τῇ ἰδίᾳ αὐλῇ (τὴν
attendance himself and having-set-out thence with the own court the
γὰρ στρατιὰν διαφῆκε πᾶσαν) ἐπορεύετο, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται
for army he-dismissed all marched and arrives
ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, φθινοπώρου μεσοῦντος ἤδη, κἀκεῖ
at the of-Hadrian(-city) autumn mid already and-there
περιμένει. Μετ' οὐ πολλὰς δὲ ἡμέρας παραγίνεται καὶ ὁ
waits after not many and days arrives also the
δεσπότης Δημήτριος. Βασιλεὺς δὲ προὔργου τοι ποιούμενος
despot Demetrios emperor and advantageous surely making
τὴν τούτου θεραπείαν τε καὶ διόρθωσιν, εὐθὺς μετακαλεῖται
the of-him care both and settlement at-once summons
Μαχουμούτεα καὶ Ἰσάακον, καὶ κοινῇ ξυνδιασκεψάμενος
Mahmud and Isaac and in-common having-considered-together
δίδωσι σατραπείαν τῷ δεσπότῃ ἔς τε ἀρχὴν ἅμα
gives satrapy to-the despot for both rule at-once
καὶ πρόσοδον τάς τε ἐν Αἰγαίῳ νήσους Ἴμβρον καὶ
and revenue the both in Aegean islands Imbros and

Λῆμνον καὶ τὰ καταλειφθέντα Θάσου καὶ Σαμοθράκης
Lemnos and the(-parts) left of-Thasos and Samothrace
(προαπῳκίσθη γὰρ τὸ πλέον τούτων ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον)·
had-been-transplanted-before for the most of-these to — Byzantium
ἦν δὲ τῶν νήσων τούτων ξύμπας ὁ ἐτήσιος φόρος
was and of-the islands these whole the yearly tribute
ἀργυρίου κέρμα νενομισμένον βασιλικὸν μυριάδες τριάκοντα.
of-silver coin current royal myriads thirty
Ὁμοίως δίδωσι καὶ τὴν Αἶνον αὐτῷ, πόλιν λόγου ἀξίαν
likewise he-gives also — Ainos to-him city of-account worthy
καὶ πολλοῖς εὐθηνουμένην καλοῖς, ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τε τῆς
and with-many abounding goods on the coast both —
Θράκης κειμένην αὐτοῦ που περὶ τὰς ἐκβολὰς τοῦ Εὔρου
of-Thrace lying there somewhere around the mouths — of-Hebros
ποταμοῦ, καὶ κοινὸν ἐμπόριον οὖσαν τῆς περιοικίδος
river and common market being of-the surrounding(-land)
ἁπάσης τε καὶ πλησιοχώρου διά τε τοὺς λιμένας καὶ
all both and neighboring because-of both the harbors and
τὴν ἄλλην αὐτῆς ἐπιτηδειότητα, ἥπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἔφαμεν.
the other its suitability as also before we-said
Δίδωσι δὲ ξύν τε τῇ τάξει πάσῃ καὶ ταῖς προσόδοις
he-gives and with both the rank all and the revenues
ἃς ἀπεφέρετο ὁ ταύτης πρόσθεν ἐπάρχων Παλαμήδης
which carried-off the of-it before governor Palamedes
ὁ Γατελιούζεω. Ἦσαν δὲ καὶ αὗται τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλικοῦ
the of-Gattilusio were and also these of-the same royal
κέρματος ἕτεραι τριάκοντα μυριάδες. Ἀπέταξε δὲ αὐτῷ
coin other thirty myriads he-assigned and to-him
καὶ τρεῖς* τοῦ ἔτους λαμβάνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ
also three of-the year to-take from the of-the of-Hadrian(-city)
ἀργυροκοπείου ἑτέρας μυριάδας δέκα, ὥστε ξυμπάσας
mint other myriads ten so-that all-together

εἶναι τὰς διδομένας αὐτῷ ἐτησίως παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
to-be the(-sums) given to-him yearly by the emperor
ἐς πρόσοδον ἀργυρίου κέρμα μυριάδας ἑβδομήκοντα.
for revenue of-silver coin myriads seventy
Ταῦτα δὲ οὖν πάντα δοὺς αὐτῷ καὶ ἕτερα πλεῖστα
these(-things) and then all having-given to-him and others very-many
ἐπιδαψιλευσάμενός τε καὶ δωρησάμενος, αὐτοῦ καταλείπει,
having-lavished both and having-bestowed there leaves(-him)
αὐτὸς δὲ, φθινοπώρου λήγοντος ἤδη, ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ
himself and autumn ending already arrives at —
Βυζάντιον παραχειμάσων αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ὄγδοον δὴ καὶ
Byzantium going-to-winter there and eighth indeed and
ἑξηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἑξακισχιλίοις τε καὶ ἐννακοσίοις
sixtieth year besides the six-thousand both and nine-hundred
τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο, δέκατον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
in-the total was-being-completed tenth and of-the rule for-the emperor

IV · SINOPE, TREBIZOND, AND LESBOS

Mehmed takes Sinope from Ismail by agreement, crosses the Tauros and brings Hasan to terms, and receives Trebizond and its emperor. Dracula of the Getai revolts and impales Mehmed's envoys; Mehmed drives him out and sets up his brother Radu. He takes Mytilene and all Lesbos from Niccolò Gattilusio, fortifies the Hellespont, and conquers Bosnia.

Περιέχει ἥδε προσχώρησιν Σινώπης πόλεως καὶ πάσης
it-contains this(-book) surrender of-Sinope city and of-all
ἀρχῆς τοῦ Ἰσμαήλου καὶ προσχώρησιν Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ
rule — of-Ismail and surrender of-Trebizond and
πάσης τῆς ἐν αὐτῇ ἀρχῆς καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτῆς,
of-all the in it rule and of-the emperor its

ἔτι δὲ τὴν Γετῶν ἐπανάστασιν καὶ δουλείαν τήν τε
further and the of-Getai uprising and slavery the both
τῆς Λέσβου ἅλωσιν πάσης καὶ πρώτην ἐσβολὴν τοῦ
— of-Lesbos capture whole and first invasion of-the
βασιλέως κατὰ τῆς Βόστρων καὶ καταστροφὴν καὶ
emperor against the of-Bosnians(-land) and subjugation and
ἅλωσιν πάσης. Χρόνου πλῆθος ἔτη τρία.
capture whole of-time length years three

1.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ γενόμενος ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει καὶ μικρὸν
emperor and having-come in Constantinople and a-little
ἀνεθεὶς, στρατιὰν αὖθις ἤγειρε πλείστην καὶ στόλον μέγαν
relaxed army again gathered very-large and fleet great
ἐξήρτυε κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν καὶ ὅπλα καὶ μηχανὰς
fitted-out by land both and sea and arms and engines
κατεσκεύαζε καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην ἐξεπλήρου χρείαν πολεμικήν.
built and all other filled-up need warlike
Ἦν δέ οἱ ἡ παρασκευὴ αὕτη καὶ ὁ σκοπὸς τῆς
was and for-him the preparation this and the aim of-the
ἐκστρατείας ἐς Τραπεζοῦντά τε καὶ Σινώπην. Ἡ γὰρ
campaign to Trebizond both and Sinope — for
Τραπεζοῦς ἦν μὲν τὸ παλαιὸν πόλις μεγίστη τε καὶ
Trebizond was indeed the of-old city greatest both and
καλλίστη, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ πρεσβυτάτη τῶν Ἑλληνίδων,
finest but indeed also most-ancient of-the Hellenic(-cities)
Ἰώνων ἄποικος οὖσα καὶ Ἀθηναίων, κειμένη δ' ἐν καλῷ
of-Ionians colony being and of-Athenians lying and in fine(-part)
τῆς Ἀσίας ἐν τῷ πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα μυχῷ τοῦ Εὐξείνου
— of-Asia in the toward sun rising recess — of-Euxine
πόντου παράλιος· νέμεται χώραν ἀρίστην τε καὶ πλείστην
sea coastal occupies land best both and largest
καὶ πάμφορον καὶ πολλῆς ἐπάρχει τῆς περιοικίδος·
and all-bearing and much rules the surrounding(-land)

καταστᾶσα δέ γε τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς κοινὸν ἐμπόριον τῆς ἄνω
having-become and at-least the from beginning common market of-the upper
Ἀσίας, λέγω δὴ Ἀρμενίας τε καὶ Ἀσσυρίας καὶ τῆς ἄλλης
Asia I-mean indeed of-Armenia both and Assyria and the other
πλησιοχώρου, ἤκμασεν ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις, καὶ πλοῦτον
neighboring(-land) it-flourished in the upper times and wealth
ἔσχε πολὺν καὶ δύναμιν πλείστην καὶ δόξαν περιεβέβλητο,
had much and power very-much and glory had-put-on
καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἦν οὐ τοῖς ἐγγὺς μόνον, ἀλλὰ δὴ
and of-the renowned was not to-the(-ones) near only but indeed
καὶ τοῖς πόρρω. Τοῦ χρόνου δὲ προϊόντος κατὰ μικρὸν
also to-the(-ones) far of-the time and advancing by little
καὶ τῶν ἐν Ἀσίᾳ πραγμάτων ἄλλοτε ἄλλως ἐχόντων
and of-the in Asia affairs at-one-time otherwise being
τε καὶ μεταβαλλομένων, καὶ βασιλείων τῶν μὲν
both and changing and kingdoms the(-ones) indeed
καταλυομένων τε καὶ ἀνηρημένων, τῶν δ' ἀνισταμένων
being-dissolved both and destroyed the(-ones) and rising
ἤδη, καὶ πόλεων καὶ χωρῶν τῶν μὲν κατεστραμμένων
already and of-cities and lands the(-ones) indeed subdued
τε καὶ ἠφανισμένων τελείως, τῶν δ' ἐπιγινομένων τε καὶ
both and blotted-out completely the(-ones) and arising both and
οἰκιζομένων αὖθις, ἥψατο καὶ ταύτης μεταβολὴ πρὸς καιρὸν,
being-settled again touched also it change for a-time
καὶ πάλιν ἀνακτησαμένη τε ἑαυτὴν ὅτι τάχιστα καὶ ἐς
and again having-recovered both itself as quickly and to
τὴν προτέραν εὐδαιμονίαν τε καὶ κατάστασιν ἐπανελθοῦσα
the former prosperity both and state having-returned
διαγέγονε τὸ ἐξ ἐκείνου ἀσινὴς πάντη καὶ μηδενὶ
has-continued the from that(-time) unharmed wholly and with-no
προσκόψασα δυσχερεῖ. Ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὑστέροις καὶ πρὸ ἡμῶν
having-stumbled hardship in and the later and before us

ὀλίγον καιροῖς καὶ βασίλειον κατέστη ἑνὸς τῶν ἐκ τοῦ
a-little times also royal-seat became of-one of-the(-ones) from the
βασιλείου γένους Ῥωμαίων τῶν Κομνηνῶν, ἐκ Βυζαντίου
royal race of-Romans of-the Komnenoi from Byzantium
ἐκπεσόντος αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔργα πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἐν
having-been-expelled himself and works very-many and finest in
αὐτῇ ἐπιδειξαμένου καὶ πολλῶν τῶν πέριξ γενῶν καὶ
it having-displayed and many of-the around races and
πόλεων ἄρξαντος· καὶ κατήχθη ἡ τούτων διαδοχή τε
cities having-ruled and was-brought-down the of-these succession both
καὶ βασιλεία ἐς δεῦρο εἰρηνικὴ πάντη καὶ ἀστασίαστος,
and kingship to here peaceful wholly and free-of-faction
τῶν τε βασιλέων εἰρηνευόντων τε καὶ ὁμονοούντων,
the both emperors being-at-peace both and being-of-one-mind
τῶν τε ἔνδον ἡρεμούντων, τῶν τε ἔξω γενῶν τῶν
the(-ones) both within being-quiet the both outside races the(-ones)
μὲν ὑπακουόντων, τῶν δὲ ἐνσπόνδων ὄντων αὐτοῖς.
indeed obeying the(-ones) and treaty-bound being to-them
Μετὰ ταῦτά γε μὴν στάσεσι καὶ ἐμφυλίοις χρησαμένων
after these(-things) at-least indeed factions and civil(-wars) having-used
αὐτῶν, καὶ κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων τῶν ἐκ τοῦ γένους μανέντων,
they and against one-another the(-ones) from the race having-raged
ἐνόσησε καὶ αὕτη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ τελευτῶσα
was-sick also this with the others and ending
τοῖς ὅλοις κακῶς ἀπήλλαξε, τῶν βασιλέων καὶ τῶν
in-the whole badly fared the emperors and the(-ones)
ἔνδον, ᾗπερ ἔφην, στασιαζόντων τε καὶ μαχομένων καὶ
within as I-said quarreling both and fighting and
διατιθέντων ἀλλήλους κακῶς, τῶν τε πλησιοχώρων ἐθνῶν
treating one-another badly the both neighboring nations
διὰ τὰς ξυνεχεῖς στάσεις ἐπανισταμένων τε αὐτῇ καὶ
because-of the continuous factions rising-against both it and

κατατρεχόντων πολλάκις καὶ ληιζομένων καὶ βλαπτόντων
overrunning often and plundering and harming
τὰ μέγιστα. Τοίνυν, ἕως μὲν τὰ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
the greatest(-things) therefore while indeed the(-things) of-the of-Constantine(-city)
καλῶς ἐφέρετο, καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι ταύτην ἔχοντες τοῦ πορθμοῦ
well went and Romans it holding of-the strait
κύριοι ἦσαν, καὶ ὁ Βόσπορος ἦν οὐ διαβατὸς, καὶ ὁ
lords were and — Bosporus was not crossable and —
Εὔξεινος πόντος ὅλως ἄπλωτος ἦν τῷ μεγάλῳ στόλῳ
Euxine sea wholly unsailable was for-the great fleet
τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀντεῖχε καὶ αὕτη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ
of-the emperor held-out also this with the others and
ἀνέφερε τὰς αὑτῆς ἀκαιρίας, φυλάττουσα τὴν ἐλευθερίαν
bore the its misfortunes guarding the freedom
ὡς δυνατὸν καὶ μηδὲν τοσοῦτον παραβλαπτομένη τοῖς
as possible and nothing so-much harmed by-the
ἐμφυλίοις κακοῖς. Ἐπεὶ δέ γε τὰ πράγματα μετέπεσε, καὶ
civil evils when but at-least the affairs changed and
ἡ Κωνσταντίνου χειρὶ πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει ἐκπολιορκηθεῖσα
the of-Constantine(-city) with-hand much and power reduced
ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἑάλω, καὶ ὁ πορθμὸς γέγονεν
by the great emperor was-taken and the strait became
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ, καὶ ἡ πρὸς τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον καὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε
under him and the to — Euxine sea and the there
πόλεις ὁδὸς ἠνοίγη λαμπρῶς κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν,
cities road was-opened brilliantly by land both and sea
τηνικαῦτα δὴ καὶ αὕτη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἔκλινε καὶ
then indeed also this with the others leaned and
κατακούειν ἤρξατο, καὶ οἱ ἐν αὐτῇ βασιλεῖς ὑποκύψαντες
to-obey began and the in it emperors having-bowed
τῷ μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ γεγόνασι φόρου ὑποτελεῖς. Ἕως μὲν
to-the great emperor became of-tribute subject while indeed

οὖν εἰρηνεύοντές τε ἦσαν αὐτοί τε ἐς ἀλλήλους καὶ τὸν
then being-at-peace both were themselves both toward one-another and the
δασμὸν ἀπεδίδουν καὶ νεωτέρων πραγμάτων οὐχ ἥπτοντο,
tribute paid and new affairs not touched
ἐτύγχανον καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰρηνικοῦ· ἐπεὶ δὲ
they-obtained also themselves the emperor peaceable when but
αὐτοί τε ἐν ἀλλήλοις διεστασίασαν καὶ τὸν δασμὸν
themselves both among one-another quarreled and the tribute
οὐ πάνυ ῥαδίως παρεῖχον, πρός τε τοὺς πλησιοχώρους
not very readily provided with both the neighboring
αὐτοῖς βασιλεῖς τῶν τε Τιγρανοκέρτων καὶ Ἀρμενίων
to-them kings — both of-Tigranokerta and Armenians
καὶ Μήδων Χασάνεα τὸν Τομήριος καὶ δὴ καὶ Ἰβήρων
and Medes Hasan the of-Timur and indeed also Iberians
ἐπιγαμίαν ἔχοντες, ἐδόκουν καινότερά τινα πράττειν
intermarriage having they-seemed newer some(-things) to-do
καὶ νεοχμοῦν ἐς τὰς μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως σπονδὰς (οὐ
and to-innovate against the with the emperor truces not
γὰρ ἐλάνθανον ταῦτα ποιοῦντες), τηνικαῦτα δὴ καὶ
for escaped-notice these(-things) doing then indeed also
ὁ βασιλεὺς ὀργῇ ληφθεὶς τὴν ἐκστρατείαν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
the emperor by-anger seized the campaign against them
ἐποιεῖτο, προκαταλαβεῖν τε καὶ προκατασχεῖν τούτους
made to-seize-first both and to-occupy-first them
βουλόμενος πρίν τι καὶ νεώτερον πρᾶξαι.
wishing before something also newer to-do

2.1 Παρασκευασάμενος οὖν χειμῶνος καλῶς, ἐπειδὴ ἔαρ
having-prepared then in-winter well when spring
ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, πρῶτα μὲν τὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν στόλον
was-showing already first indeed the by sea fleet
ἐξήρτυεν ἐς ἀναγωγήν· ἦσαν δὲ τριακόσιαι μάλιστά που
he-fitted-out for putting-out there-were and three-hundred most about

τῶν νεῶν στρατιώτιδες καὶ μάχιμοι τριήρεις τε μακραὶ
of-the ships of-war and fighting triremes both long
καὶ πεντηκόντοροι καὶ πλοῖα κατάφρακτα παρὲκ τῶν
and fifty-oars and boats decked besides the
σκευαγωγῶν καὶ τῶν φερόντων τὰς μηχανὰς τῶν τε
baggage-carriers and the(-ones) carrying the engines the(-ones) both
κατ᾽ ἐμπορείαν ἢ χρείαν ἄλλην ἀφικνουμένων. Ἐνέθηκε δ᾽
for trade or need other arriving he-put-in and
αὐταῖς ὅπλα παντοῖα καὶ πλεῖστα, ἀσπίδας τε καὶ θυρεοὺς
them arms all-kinds and very-many shields both and door-shields
καὶ κράνη καὶ δόρατα, ἔτι δὲ θώρακάς τε καὶ ἀκόντια
and helmets and spears further and breastplates both and javelins
καὶ βελῶν διαφόρων πολύ τι χρῆμα τῶν τε ἀπὸ τόξων
and of-missiles various great some quantity of-the both from bows
ἀφιεμένων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων μηχανῶν καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀφετήρια
let-fly and the other engines and indeed also launchers
πλεῖστα καὶ πολλὰ ἄλλα τῶν ἐς τειχομαχίαν ἐπιτηδείων.
very-many and many others of-the(-things) for wall-fighting suitable
Ἐνεβίβαζε δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους εὐρωστοτάτους
he-put-aboard and also men as most stoutest
τε καὶ εὐοπλωτάτους καὶ τὰ πρὸς πόλεμον ἱκανῶς
both and best-armed and the(-things) for war sufficiently
παρεσκευασμένους καὶ ἐμπειροτάτους, ἐπιστήσας αὐτοῖς καὶ
prepared and most-experienced having-set-over them also
ἡγεμόνας τοῦ στόλου παντὸς καὶ στρατηγοὺς αὐτοκράτορας
leaders of-the fleet whole and generals with-full-power
Κασίμην τε τὸν σατράπην Καλλιουπόλεως καὶ Ἰαγούπην,
Kasım both the satrap of-Kallipolis and Yakub
ἄνδρα τά τε ναυτικὰ ἐμπειρότατον καὶ τῶν κατὰ
man in-the both naval(-things) most-experienced and of-the(-ones) by
θάλασσαν στρατηγὸν ἄριστον. Ἐξαρτύσας οὖν καὶ ὁπλίσας
sea general best having-fitted-out then and having-armed

πάντα τὸν στόλον καλῶς, ἐξέπεμπεν· ὁ δ' ἀνήγετο διὰ
all the fleet well he-sent-out it and put-out through
τοῦ Βοσπόρου ἐπὶ τὸν Εὔξεινον, τάχει τε πολλῷ καὶ βίᾳ
— Bosporus to — Euxine with-speed both much and force
καὶ ῥύμῃ φερόμενος, βοῇ τε ξυμμιγεῖ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ καὶ
and rush borne with-shout both mingled and war-cry and
εἰρεσίᾳ καὶ ἀντιφιλοτιμήσει ἐς ἀλλήλους χρωμένων τῶν
rowing and rivalry toward one-another using the
ἐπιβατῶν, καὶ φόβον πολὺν καὶ ἀγωνίαν παρέχων καθ'
marines and fear much and anguish providing among
οὓς ἂν γένοιτο, καὶ πάντας ἐκπλήττων τῷ παραλόγῳ
whom — it-might-come and all astonishing with-the unexpectedness
τῆς θέας. Καὶ ὁ μὲν κατὰ θάλασσαν στόλος οὕτως.
of-the sight and the indeed by sea fleet thus

3.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὰς Εὐρωπαίας δυνάμεις ξυνεκρότει τε καὶ
emperor and the European forces drilled both and
διεβίβαζεν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν ἱππικάς τε καὶ πεζικὰς, ἔτι δὲ
took-across to — Asia cavalry both and infantry further and
ἵππων τε καὶ ὑποζυγίων καὶ ἡμιόνων ἀχθοφόρων καὶ
of-horses both and of-beasts-of-burden and mules burden-bearing and
καμήλων πολύ τι χρῆμα καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην τοῦ πολέμου
camels great some quantity and all other of-the war
χρείαν τε καὶ ἀποσκευήν. Ὡς δὲ ἅλις εἶχε τῆς τούτων
need both and baggage when and enough he-had of-the of-these
διαβάσεως, τότ' ἤδη καὶ αὐτὸς διαβαίνει, καὶ προελαύνων
crossing then already also himself crosses and riding-forward
διὰ τῆς Βιθυνίας ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὴν Προυσίου, οὗ δὴ
through — Bithynia arrives at the of-Prousias(-city) where indeed
καὶ τὰς τῆς Ἀσίας δυνάμεις εὗρε πάσας ξυνηθροισμένας.
also the — of-Asia forces he-found all gathered-together
Διαγαγὼν δὲ οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας αὐτοῦ, καί τινα τῶν
having-spent and not many days there and some of-the(-things)

ἐν χρείᾳ καταστησάμενος καὶ τὸν στρατὸν ἐξαρτύσας
in need having-settled and the army having-fitted-out
ἅπαντα, σπείσας τε τῷ τάφῳ τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ
all having-poured-libations both at-the tomb of-the father and
τὰ νενομισμένα τελέσας αὐτῷ μεγαλοπρεπῶς, καὶ
the customary(-rites) having-performed for-him magnificently and
δώροις ὅτι γε πλείστοις καὶ ἀναθήμασι κοσμήσας καὶ
with-gifts as at-least very-many and offerings having-adorned and
στεφανώσας αὐτὸν, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν ἦει διὰ τῆς
having-crowned it having-set-out thence went through the(-land)
Γαλατῶν τε καὶ Παφλαγόνων. Ἦν δέ οἱ ἡ στρατιὰ,
of-Galatians both and of-Paphlagonians was and for-him the army
ὡς ἐλέγετο, ἵππος μὲν ἑξακισμυρία, πεζὸς δὲ οὐκ ἐλάσσων
as was-said horse indeed sixty-thousand foot and not less
ὀκτακισμυρίων ἄνευ μέντοι γε τῶν σκευοφόρων καὶ
than-eighty-thousand without however at-least the baggage-carriers and
τῶν ἄλλως ἑπομένων τῇ στρατιᾷ. Διελάσας δὲ
the(-ones) otherwise following the army having-driven-through and
ταύτας τε καὶ τὴν Καππαδοκῶν καὶ διαβὰς τὸν Ἅλυν
these both and the(-land) of-Cappadocians and having-crossed — Halys
γίνεται κατὰ Σινώπην, πόλιν παράλιον καλλίστην τε καὶ
comes at Sinope city coastal finest both and
πλουσιωτάτην τῶν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ, καὶ πλείστης
richest of-the(-cities) on — Euxine sea and very-large
δὴ καὶ ἀρίστης χώρας ἐπάρχουσαν, ἣ δὴ κοινὸν
indeed and best land ruling which indeed common
ἐμπόριον οὖσα τῆς περιοικίδος ἁπάσης καὶ δὴ καὶ μέρους
market being of-the surrounding(-land) all and indeed also of-part
οὐκ ὀλίγου τῆς κάτω Ἀσίας, καὶ πολλοῖς εὐθηνουμένη
not small of-the lower Asia and with-many abounding
τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς, ὅσα φέρουσιν ὧραι καὶ γῆ καὶ θάλασσα
the goods whatever bear seasons and land and sea

(τὸ μέγιστον ὁ χαλκός ἐστιν, ὃς ἄφθονος ἀνορυττόμενος
the greatest the copper is which abundant being-dug-up
αὐτοῦ γεωργεῖται, καὶ διαδιδόμενος πανταχοῦ τῆς Ἀσίας τε
there is-worked and distributed everywhere — of-Asia both
καὶ Εὐρώπης καὶ διατιθέμενος), προσόδους μεγάλας χρυσοῦ
and of-Europe and disposed revenues great of-gold
καὶ ἀργύρου παρέχει τοῖς ἐν αὐτῇ. Εἶχε δὲ αὐτῆς τὴν
and silver provides to-the(-ones) in it had and its the
ἀρχὴν πρὸ χρόνων πολλῶν Ἰσμαῆλος, ἀνὴρ δυνατός τε
rule before years many Ismail man powerful both
καὶ τῶν εὖ γενονότων παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς, πατρικὴν ἄνωθεν
and of-the(-ones) well born among them paternal from-of-old
κεκτημένος ἐς αὐτὸν κατιοῦσαν ἐκ διαδοχῆς. Ἐπὶ ταύτην
having-acquired(-it) to him coming-down by succession against this
οὖν ἐλάσας ὁ βασιλεὺς στρατόπεδον τίθησιν· εὑρίσκει
then having-driven the emperor camp sets finds
δὲ καὶ τὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν στόλον αὐτοῦ ἐφορμοῦντα
and also the by sea fleet his lying-at-anchor
τοῖς λιμέσιν αὐτῆς· προλαβόντες γὰρ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκ
at-the harbors of-it having-arrived-first for the generals by
ξυνθήματος κατῆραν, καὶ κρατήσαντες τῶν τε λιμένων
signal put-in and having-mastered the both harbors
καὶ τοῦ ἰσθμοῦ, πᾶσαν ἐν κύκλῳ περιέσχον ταῖς ναυσὶ
and the isthmus all in circle surrounded with-the ships
τήν τε πόλιν καὶ τὴν νησῖδα· χερρόνησος γὰρ ἦν.
the both city and the islet peninsula for it-was
Ἰσμαῆλος δὲ τὴν ἀθρόαν ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως ἰδὼν
Ismail and the sudden approach of-the emperor having-seen
τήν τε κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν στρατιὰν περιστοιχίσασαν
the both by land and sea army having-encircled
τήν τε πόλιν καὶ ἑαυτὸν, ἐξεπλάγη τε τῷ γινομένῳ, καὶ
the both city and himself was-astonished both at-the happening and

τί δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐς τὸ παρὸν ἐσκόπει. Ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτῷ
what it-is-needed to-do for the present considered it-seemed then to-him
σκοπουμένῳ βέλτιον εἶναι αὐτὸν ἐξελθόντα τῷ βασιλεῖ
considering better to-be himself having-gone-out to-the emperor
ξυντυχεῖν καὶ τὰς αἰτίας τῆς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐφόδου μαθεῖν τε
to-meet and the causes of-the against him approach to-learn both
καὶ διαλύσασθαι, εἴ γε δύναιτο. Καὶ δὴ δῶρα πλεῖστά τε
and to-settle(-them) if at-least he-could and indeed gifts very-many both
καὶ πλείστου ἄξια ἑτοιμασάμενος ἔξεισιν ἐς βασιλέα. Ὁ δὲ
and of-very-much worth having-prepared goes-out to emperor he and
δέχεται τοῦτον ἡμέρως καὶ φιλανθρώπως καὶ προσαγορεύει
receives him mildly and humanely and addresses(-him)
φιλίως, καὶ δεξιοῦται καὶ τιμᾷ ταῖς πρεπούσαις
in-friendly-way and greets and honors(-him) with-the fitting
τιμαῖς. Ἐς λόγους δὲ καταστάντες τοὺς περί τε τῆς ἀρχῆς
honors into words and having-come the(-ones) about both the rule
καὶ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ πολλὰ εἰπόντες καὶ κοινολογησάμενοι
and the city and much having-said and having-conferred
μετ᾽ ἀλλήλων ἑκάτεροι ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δίκαια τῷ τε καιρῷ
with one-another each-side necessary(-things) and just to-the both time
καὶ ἑαυτοῖς λυσιτελῆ τε καὶ πρόσφορα, τέλος ξυμβαίνουσιν
and to-themselves profitable both and fitting finally they-agree
ἐπὶ τοῖσδε, καὶ διαλύονται εἰρηνικῶς καὶ φιλίως. Καὶ
on these(-terms) and part peaceably and in-friendly-way and
ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς λαμβάνει τήν τε πόλιν Σινώπην καὶ τὴν
the indeed emperor takes the both city Sinope and the
ταύτῃ πᾶσαν τοῦ Ἰσμαήλου ἀρχήν, ἀντιδίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ
there all — of-Ismail rule gives-in-return and to-him
σατραπίαν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ τὴν τῶν Σκοπίων καλουμένην,
satrapy in — Europe the(-one) — of-Skopje called
ὅμορον οὖσαν τῇ Τριβαλλῶν, χώραν ἀρίστην τε καὶ
bordering being on-the(-land) of-Triballians land best both and

παμφορωτάτην καὶ κατ᾽ οὐδὲν ἀποδέουσαν τῆς αὐτοῦ καὶ
most-fruitful and in nothing falling-short of-the his(-own) both
προσόδων ἕνεκα καὶ ἀρχῆς καὶ τῆς ἄλλης διαίτης καὶ
of-revenues for-the-sake and rule and the other living and
ἀναπαύσεως. Ὁ γάρ τοι βασιλεὺς αἰτίαν μὲν οὐδεμίαν
rest the for surely emperor cause indeed none
ἐπιφέρειν εἶχε τῷ Ἰσμαήλῳ, πάνυ δὲ προὔργου τήν τε
to-bring-against could — against-Ismail very but advantageous — both
Σινώπην καὶ τὴν ταύτης κατάσχεσιν ἐποιεῖτο, πόλιν τε
Sinope and the of-it holding he-made city both
οὖσαν λόγου ἀξίαν ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τε κειμένην τῆς ἐν τῷ
being of-account worthy in vantage both lying of-the on —
Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ Ἀσιανῆς παραλίας, καὶ λιμένας ἔχουσαν
Euxine sea Asian coast and harbors having
ἀσφαλεῖς καὶ παραπέμπειν δυναμένους καλῶς τόν τε
safe and to-convey able well the both
στόλον καὶ τὰ πλοῖα τοῦ βασιλέως ἐς Τραπεζοῦντά τε
fleet and the boats of-the emperor to Trebizond both
καὶ τὴν ἄνω πᾶσαν παραλίαν τοῦ Πόντου καὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε
and the upper all coast — of-Pontus and the there
πόλεις, ἄλλως τε δὴ καὶ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ χώρᾳ τοῦ βασιλέως
cities otherwise both indeed also in middle the land of-the emperor
κειμένην οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι κατὰ πολλὰ
lying not it-seemed to-him safe to-be in many(-ways)
ὑφ᾽ ἑτέροις ἡγεμόσι τελεῖν καὶ μὴ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῷ· οὐ μόνον
under other leaders to-be-placed and not under himself not only
δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐδεδίει Χασάνεα τὸν βασιλέα Τιγρανοκέρτων
and but also he-feared Hasan the king of-Tigranokerta
καὶ Μήδων, μὴ λάθῃ ταύτην προκατασχὼν ἢ
and Medes lest he-should-escape-notice it seizing-first either
ξυμβάσει ἢ πολέμῳ, γειτονοῦσαν τε τῇ αὐτοῦ καὶ
by-agreement or by-war bordering both on-the his(-land) and

πάντα τρόπον ἐπιβουλεύοντα καὶ χειρώσασθαι ταύτην
in-every way plotting and to-subdue it
βουλόμενον εἰδὼς ἐκ πολλοῦ. Διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν
wishing knowing(-it) from long because-of these(-things) therefore
ἀναγκαία γέγονε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἡ τῆς Σινώπης κατάσχεσις.
necessary became for-the emperor the — of-Sinope holding
Καὶ Ἰσμαῆλος μὲν ξὺν τοῖς αὐτοῦ πᾶσιν εὐθὺς ᾤχετο 4.1
and Ismail indeed with the his all at-once went-off
ἐς τὴν αὐτοῦ σατραπείαν ἀπιὼν, βασιλεὺς δὲ παραλαβὼν
to the his satrapy departing emperor and having-taken-over
τήν τε Σινώπην καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἰσμαήλου ἀρχὴν, καὶ
— both Sinope and all the of-Ismail rule and
τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ καταστησάμενος πάντα, Κασίμην μὲν
the(-things) in it having-settled all Kasım indeed
καὶ Ἰαγούπην εὐθὺς κελεύει μετὰ τοῦ στόλου παντὸς
and Yakub at-once orders with the fleet whole
ἀναχθέντας πλεῖν εὐθὺ Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ προσσχόντας
having-put-out to-sail straight to-Trebizond and having-put-in
τοῖς λιμέσι κατακλεῖσαι ταύτην κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν
at-the harbors to-shut-in it by land both and sea
καὶ φυλάσσειν ἀσφαλῶς· αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν παντὶ
and to-guard(-it) securely himself and having-set-out thence with-all
τῷ στρατῷ ἤει διὰ τῆς μεσογείας, καὶ καταλαβὼν τὸν
the army went through the inland and having-reached —
Ταῦρον, στρατοπεδεύεται πρὸς ταῖς ὑπωρείαις αὐτοῦ. Ἔστι
Tauros encamps by the foothills of-it is
δὲ ὁ Ταῦρος ὄρος μέγιστον τῶν ἐν Ἀσίᾳ, διορίζων
and — Tauros mountain greatest of-the(-ones) in Asia dividing
τὴν κάτω Ἀσίαν ἀπὸ τῆς ἄνω, ἀρχόμενος μὲν ἀπὸ
the lower Asia from the upper beginning indeed from
Μυκάλης τοῦ ὄρους καὶ τῆς ταύτῃ θαλάσσης, ἐκεῖθεν δὲ
Mykale the mountain and the there sea thence and

παρήκων καὶ τέμνων τὴν Ἀσίαν τελευτᾷ ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον
extending and cutting — Asia ends at — Euxine
πόντον κατὰ Σινώπην, κἀκεῖθεν αὖ διερχόμενος ἑνοῦται
sea at Sinope and-thence again passing-through is-joined
τοῖς Ἀρμενίων καὶ Μήδων ὄρεσι, καὶ δι' αὐτῶν τῷ
to-the of-Armenians and Medes mountains and through them —
Καυχάσῳ. Τοῦτόν φασι διαβῆναι ξὺν ὅπλοις πρῶτον
to-Caucasus this they-say to-have-crossed with arms first
Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Μακεδόνα μεθ' Ἡρακλέα γε καὶ Διόνυσον,
Alexander the Macedonian after Herakles at-least and Dionysos
στρατεύσαντα κατὰ Δαρείου τοῦ Περσῶν βασιλέως καὶ τῆς
having-campaigned against Darius the of-Persians king and the
ὅλης Ἀσίας, καὶ μετ' ἐκεῖνον αὖθις μετὰ Ῥωμαίων Μάγνον
whole Asia and after him again with Romans Magnus
Πομπήιον. Διέβη δὲ κἀν τοῖς ἡμετέροις χρόνοις (καὶ)
Pompey crossed and also-in the our times also
Τόμιρις ὁ Μασσαγετῶν τε καὶ Σκυθῶν βασιλεὺς, ἡνίκα
Timur the of-Massagetai both and Scythians king when
κατὰ Παϊαζήτεω τοῦ προγόνου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐστράτευσε
against Bayezid the forefather of-the emperor he-campaigned
ξὺν ὅπλοις μέν γε καὶ στρατιᾷ, ἀλλὰ τῶν παρόδων
with arms indeed at-least and army but of-the passes
αὐτὸς κρατῶν ἐκ πολλοῦ, καὶ διὰ φιλίας τῆς
himself being-master from long(-before) and through friendly(-land) the
αὐτοῦ πορευόμενος. Διαβαίνει τοῦτον καὶ νῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς
his marching crosses it also now the emperor
Μεχεμέτης, ἀλλὰ ξὺν ὅπλοις καὶ πολέμῳ, τρίτος ἀπ'
Mehmed but with arms and war third from
Ἀλεξάνδρου, μετὰ Ῥωμαίους τε καὶ Πομπήιον. Χασάνης
Alexander after Romans both and Pompey Hasan
γὰρ, ᾗ πρόσθεν ἔφην, ἐπιγαμίαν ἔχων τῷ βασιλεῖ
for as before I-said marriage-alliance having with-the emperor

Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ ξυμμαχεῖν βουλόμενος τούτῳ, ἄλλως δὲ
of-Trebizond and to-fight-as-ally wishing with-him otherwise and
καὶ Τραπεζοῦντα μᾶλλον αὐτὸς ὑπαγαγέσθαι βουλόμενος
also Trebizond rather himself to-win-over wishing
καὶ ἐλπίζων, ἐπειδὴ τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῆς ἔφοδον ἔγνω τοῦ
and hoping when the against it approach he-learned of-the
βασιλέως, δύναμιν ἀθροίσας ἦκεν ἐς τὰς παρόδους, εἶρξαι
emperor force having-gathered came to the passes to-bar
βουλόμενος τὸν βασιλέα τῆς διαβάσεως. Βασιλεὺς δὲ
wishing the emperor from-the crossing emperor and
τοῦτο μαθὼν, ἐκεῖνον μὲν αὐτοῦ μετὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς
this having-learned that(-one) indeed there with the army
αὐτοῦ χαίρειν εἴασεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἀτριβῆ καὶ
his to-fare-well allowed himself and other road untrodden and
τραχεῖαν καὶ πάντη δύσπορον καὶ ἀνάντη εὐθὺ φέρουσαν
rough and wholly hard-to-pass and uphill straight leading
Τιγρανοκέρτων τῶν βασιλείων Χασάνεω ἔτεμε· καὶ πρῶτον
to-Tigranokerta the palaces of-Hasan cut and first
μὲν στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν ἐκπέμψας εὐζώνων τε καὶ κούφως
indeed army sufficient having-sent-out of-light-armed both and lightly
ὡπλισμένων ἀνδρῶν τοξοτῶν τε καὶ πελταστῶν μετὰ
armed men archers both and peltasts with
Μαχουμούτεω τοῦ πασία προκατέσχε τοὺς ἐπικαιροτάτους
Mahmud the pasha seized-beforehand the most-strategic
τῶν λόφων τά τε στενὰ καὶ δυσδιεξίτητα τῶν
of-the hills the both narrows and hard-to-pass-through(-parts) of-the
παρόδων καὶ τὰς δυσχωρίας ἁπάσας.
passes and the rough-grounds all
Μετὰ δὲ καὶ ψιλοὺς ἄνδρας ὅτι γε πλείστους ἐκπέμπει
after and also light-armed men as at-least most he-sends-out
ὑλοτομοῦντάς τε καὶ ἐξομαλίζοντας τά τε σκληρὰ καὶ
cutting-wood both and leveling the both rough(-parts) and

δυσάντη τά τε δασέα καὶ λάσια τῶν χωρίων καὶ
steep the both dense and shaggy(-parts) of-the places and
δρυμῶνας καὶ λόχμας, δι' ὧν ἔμελλε ποιεῖσθαι τὴν
thickets and coverts through which he-was-going to-make the
πάροδον, εὐρυτέραν τε αὐτῷ καὶ λειοτέραν κατασκευάζοντας
passage wider both for-him and smoother preparing
τὴν διάβασιν. Τὸ γὰρ ὄρος τοῦτο ὁ Ταῦρος εἷς μὲν
the crossing the for mountain this — Tauros one indeed
λέγεται εἶναι, ἔχει δὲ ὄρη πολλὰ ἐν ἑαυτῷ δυσδιάβατά
is-said to-be it-has but mountains many in itself hard-to-cross
τε καὶ δυσδιεξίτητα καὶ κορυφὰς ὑπερνεφεῖς τε καὶ
both and hard-to-pass-through and summits above-the-clouds both and
ἠλιβάτους καὶ πάγους ὑπερυψήλους καὶ ἀποτόμους καὶ
steep and crags very-high and sheer and
φάραγγας βαθείας τε καὶ κρημνώδε καὶ σκοπέλους καὶ
ravines deep both and precipitous and crags and
δυσχωρίας καὶ λόχμας καὶ βάραθρα ἀνάντη τε καὶ
rough-grounds and coverts and chasms uphill both and
κατάντη, δυσάντη τε καὶ προσάντη πολλὰ, ἃ πάντα
downhill steep both and uphill many which all
δυσκολωτάτην τε καὶ δυσχερεστάτην καὶ λίαν ἐπίπονόν τε
most-difficult both and most-troublesome and very toilsome both
καὶ κινδυνώδη ποιεῖται τὴν διάβασιν· τὸ δὲ δὴ μεῖζον ὅτι
and dangerous make the crossing the and indeed greater that
καὶ πολλῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸς ἡ διὰ τῶν τοιούτων τε καὶ
also of-many days road the(-one) through the such both and
τοσούτων δυσχερειῶν τε καὶ ἀνοδιῶν φέρουσα, ἣν μόλις
so-many difficulties both and pathless(-ways) leading which scarcely
ἄνδρες κούφως ὡπλισμένοι καὶ εὐσταλεῖς καὶ οὗτοί γε
men lightly armed and well-equipped and these at-least
δὴ ξὺν πόνῳ πολλῷ διαβαῖεν ἂν ἐν ὀκτὼ καὶ δέκα ταῖς
indeed with toil much would-cross — in eight and ten the

ὅλαις ἡμέραις, μὴ ὅτι γε στρατιὰ τοσαύτη ἱππική τε
whole days not that at-least army so-great cavalry both
καὶ πεζικὴ μεθ᾽ ὅπλων τε βάρους καὶ ἀποσκευῆς ὅσης
and infantry with arms both weight and baggage as-much-as
οὐδ᾽ ἂν εἴποι τις, ἔτι δὲ ἵππων τε καὶ ὑποζυγίων
not-even — would-say anyone further and of-horses both and beasts-of-burden
καὶ καμήλων καὶ ἡμιόνων πάντων ἀχθοφορούντων πολύ
and camels and mules all burden-bearing great
τι χρῆμα· ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως ταῦτα πάντα παρ᾽ οὐδὲν
some quantity but nevertheless these(-things) all at nothing
θέμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς διαβαίνειν ἐπειρᾶτο. Ἐκτάξας οὖν
having-set the emperor to-cross tried having-drawn-up then
καλῶς καὶ ὁπλίσας πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιὰν διέβαινε, τὸ
well and having-armed all the army he-crossed the
μὲν πεζὸν ἔμπροσθεν ἐπὶ κέρως ἔχων ἀεὶ πορευόμενον,
indeed infantry in-front in column having always marching
τὰ σκευοφόρα δ᾽ ἐν τῷ μέσῳ, τὴν δὲ ἵππον ὄπισθεν
the baggage-trains and in the middle the and cavalry behind
τάξας ξὺν οὐραγοῖς τε καὶ ὀπισθοφύλαξιν· αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ
having-posted with rear-guards both and rear-watchers himself and the
μέσον ἐπέχων τοῦ πεζοῦ ξὺν ὀλίγοις ἱππόταις, ὅταν μὲν
middle holding of-the infantry with few horsemen when indeed
ἐν στενοπόροις διέβαινεν, ἐς ὀξὺ τὸ κέρας ξυνέστελλεν·
in narrow-passes he-crossed into sharp the column he-contracted
ἔστι δ᾽ ὅτε καὶ μετωπηδὸν ἐπὶ κέρως προήει· ὅτε δ᾽
it-is and when also frontwise in column he-advanced when and
εὐρυτέρας ἐτύγχανε τῆς διόδου, κατὰ μικρὸν ἀνέπτυσσε τὸ
wider he-met the passage by little he-unfolded the
κέρας ἐς φάλαγγα καὶ κατὰ μέτωπον ἦγεν ἐν πλαισίῳ,
column into phalanx and by front led(-it) in square
ἔχων καὶ τοὺς ἐξ ἑκατέρου μέρους τῶν πλαγίων
having also the(-ones) from each part of-the flanks

ξυντάξει προϊόντας μετωπηδὸν, τοξότας τε καὶ ὁπλίτας,
in-formation advancing frontwise archers both and hoplites
τοὺς μὲν τὰ τόξα διὰ χειρὸς ἔχοντας ἐντεταμμένα
the(-ones) indeed the bows through hand having stretched
ταῖς νευραῖς ξὺν τοῖς βέλεσι, καὶ τούτους ἐναλλὰξ τοῖς
with-the strings with the missiles and these alternately in-the
μέρεσιν, τοὺς μὲν ἀριστερῶς βάλλοντας ἐπὶ τὰ δεξιὰ,
parts the(-ones) indeed left-handed shooting to the right
τοὺς δεξιῶς δ' ἐπὶ τὰ ἀριστερὰ, τοὺς δὲ ὁπλίτας τὰ
the(-ones) right-handed and to the left the and hoplites the
δόρατα φέροντας ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων καὶ περιάγοντας ἀεὶ
spears carrying on the shoulders and turning-around always
ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν καὶ πάλλοντας. Καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν οὕτω
here and-there and brandishing(-them) and by-day indeed so
ἐπορεύετο, νυκτὸς δὲ στρατοπεδευόμενος πυρά τε πολλὰ
he-marched by-night and encamping fires both many
ἔκαιε πρὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου μικρὸν ἀπωτέρω καὶ φυλακὰς
he-lit before the camp a-little farther and guards
εἶχεν ἰσχυρὰς ἐν κύκλῳ καὶ σκοποὺς συχνοὺς πανταχόθεν
had strong in circle and scouts many on-all-sides
καὶ προδρόμους, οὓς ἔταττεν ἡμέρας ἐν τοῖς ἐπικαιροτάτοις
and forerunners whom he-posted by-day in the most-strategic
τῶν χωρίων, πάντοθεν ἀσφαλιζόμενος τὸ στρατόπεδον.
of-the places on-all-sides securing the camp
5.1 Ἐν τούτοις δὲ καί τι ξυνέβη παράλογον, ὅπερ οὐ
in these(-things) and also something happened unexpected which not
μικρῶς ἠνίασε τόν τε βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς ἐν τέλει καὶ
slightly grieved the both emperor and the(-ones) in office and
πᾶσαν τὴν στρατιάν. Ἐχθρὸς γάρ τις ἀνὴρ καὶ δύσνους
all the army hostile for a-certain man and ill-disposed
καὶ βάσκανος, μηδενὸς ὅλως ἔχων αἰτιᾶσθαι, μᾶλλον μὲν
and envious nothing at-all having to-blame rather indeed

οὖν καὶ προσοφείλων χάριτας, ἰδίᾳ δὲ μόνον βασκανίᾳ καὶ
then also owing thanks by-own and only envy and
κακουργίᾳ κινούμενος ἐπεβούλευε Μαχουμούτει τῷ πασίᾳ.
villainy moved plotted-against Mahmud the pasha
Δραξάμενος οὖν ἐπιτηδείου πρὸς κακουργίαν καιροῦ, καὶ
having-grasped then suitable for villainy time and
θαρρήσας τῇ δυσχωρίᾳ καὶ ἐλπίσας διαλαθεῖν, λάθρα τε
having-trusted in-the rough-ground and having-hoped to-escape-notice secretly both
καὶ μηδενὸς εἰδότος ἢ ὑφορωμένου τὸ ξύνολον, ἐντείνας
and no-one knowing or suspecting the whole having-drawn
τὸ τόξον βέλος ἀφίησι κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ τυγχάνει μὲν αὐτοῦ
the bow arrow lets-fly at him and hits indeed him
κατὰ τοῦ μετώπου, οὐ μήν γε καιρίαν ἔσχε πλῆξαι,
on the forehead not indeed at-least mortally he-could strike
ξυγχυθείς τε τὸν λογισμὸν τῷ παραλόγῳ τοῦ ἔργου καὶ
confused both in-the reckoning by-the unexpectedness of-the deed and
τὰς χεῖρας ἐκλυθεὶς τῇ ξυγχύσει· ἄλλως δὲ πρὸς θάνατον
in-the hands undone by-the confusion otherwise and to death
ἂν ἦν ἡ πληγή. Θορύβου δὲ καταστάντος ἐπὶ
— would-have-been the blow uproar and having-arisen at
τούτῳ μεγίστου, καὶ τοῦ τε βασιλέως καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει
this greatest and the both emperor and the(-ones) in office
καὶ δὴ καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἁπάσης ξυγχυθέντων οὐ μικρῶς
and indeed also the army all confused not slightly
τῷ παραλόγῳ τοῦ γεγονότος, καὶ ὥσπερ ἂν εἰ ἐπίασιν οἱ
by-the unexpectedness of-the happening and as — if were-attacking the
πολέμιοι αἴφνης, ξυλλαμβάνεται μὲν εὐθὺς ὁ κάκιστος καὶ
enemies suddenly is-seized indeed at-once the most-wicked and
δύστροπος ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ, καὶ πρὶν ἢ λόγου καὶ ἀπολογίας
perverse that man and before than of-speech and defense
τυχεῖν δίδωσι δίκην τῆς τόλμης τὴν ἀξίαν, κατακοπεὶς
to-obtain pays penalty of-the daring the worthy cut-down

ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀνοικτὶ μεληδὸν, μόνον οὐ πάντων
by the army pitilessly limb-by-limb only not all
ἀπογευσαμένων τῶν αὐτοῦ σαρκῶν καὶ τοῦ αἵματος.
having-tasted of-the his flesh and the blood
Βασιλεὺς δὲ ξυσχεθεὶς ἀμέτρῳ λύπῃ καὶ ἀγωνίᾳ καὶ
emperor and seized by-measureless grief and anguish and
φόβῳ τῷ περὶ αὐτὸν, εἰ ζημιωθήσεται ἄνδρα τηλικοῦτον
fear the for him whether he-will-be-deprived-of man so-great
καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τοιούτῳ τῆς ἀνάγκης καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων
and most in such of-the need and of-the affairs
καιρῷ καὶ τόπῳ, καλεῖ μὲν παραυτίκα Ἰαγούπην τὸν
time and place calls indeed at-once Yakub the
αὐτοῦ ἰατρὸν, ἄνδρα σοφὸν καὶ τὰ πρῶτα τῆς τέχνης
his physician man wise and the first(-place) of-the art
φέροντα, ὅση περί τε τὸ πρακτικὸν καὶ φαινόμενον
carrying as-much-as about both the practical and apparent
ἔχει, καὶ ὅση περὶ τὸ θεωρητικὸν καὶ δογματικὸν, καὶ
has and as-much-as about the theoretical and doctrinal and
δὴ καὶ μέγα δυνάμενον παρ' αὐτῷ, καὶ πυνθάνεται περὶ
indeed also greatly powerful with him and inquires about
τοῦ τραύματος. Μαθὼν δ' ἐπιπόλαιον εἶναι καὶ μὴ πρὸς
the wound having-learned and superficial to-be and not to
κίνδυνον φέρον, ἀνέπνευσέ τε καὶ τῆς λύπης ὑφεῖχε,
danger tending breathed-again both and from-the grief relaxed
καὶ πλεῖστα τούτῳ δωρησάμενος ἐκέλευσεν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι
and very-much to-him having-given ordered to-care
πάσῃ σπουδῇ. Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐπιμελείας τῆς προσηκούσης
with-all zeal and he indeed care the fitting
τυχὼν ταχέως τοῦ τραύματος ἀπαλλάττεται.
having-obtained quickly from-the wound is-freed

Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ πρὸς ταῖς δέκα προελαύνων 6.1
emperor and days seven besides the ten riding-forward
ἀεὶ, καὶ φάραγγας βαθείας καὶ κρημνοὺς ἀποτόμους καὶ
always and ravines deep and precipices sheer and
δυσχωρίας μεγίστας καὶ τόπους δυσβάτους καὶ ἀποκρότους
rough-grounds greatest and places impassable and rocky
καὶ πολλὰ τοιαῦτα προσάντη καὶ δυσχερῆ μόλις που
and many such uphill and difficult(-ways) scarcely somehow
καὶ ξὺν πόνῳ πολλῷ διελθὼν, καὶ μεγίστας ὑπομείνας
and with toil much having-passed-through and greatest having-endured
ταλαιπωρίας ἐν ὅπλοις αὐτός τε καὶ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ
hardships in arms himself both and all the army
διαβαίνει τὸν Ταῦρον, καὶ καταβὰς ἐς τὸ πεδίον
crosses — Tauros and having-gone-down into the plain
στρατοπεδεύεται οὐ πόρρω Τιγρανοκέρτων. Χασάνης δὲ τὴν
encamps not far from-Tigranokerta Hasan and the
ἀθρόαν ἔφοδον τοῦ βασιλέως μαθὼν, καὶ ὡς δυσχωρίαν
sudden approach of-the emperor having-learned and how rough-ground
τοσαύτην καὶ ὁδὸν ἀτριβῆ καὶ πλείστην καὶ τὸ ὅλον ἄβατον
so-great and road untrodden and very-long and the whole impassable
ἐς δεῦρο οὕτως εὐκόλως διέβη καὶ μετὰ τοσαύτης στρατιᾶς
to here so easily he-crossed and with so-great army
τε καὶ ὅπλων (καὶ) ἀποσκευῆς, καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῖς ἤλασε
both and arms and baggage and against themselves drove
τοῖς βασιλείοις αὐτοῦ, ἐξεπλάγη τε τῷ παραλόγῳ τοῦ
the palaces his was-astonished both at-the unexpectedness of-the
γεγονότος, καὶ οἷόν τινι βέλει τῶν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ πληγεὶς
happening and as by-some dart of-the(-ones) from heaven struck
ἐς ἀμηχανίαν δεινὴν καὶ φόβον ἐνέπεσε, μὴ ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ
into helplessness terrible and fear fell not having what thing also
δράσειε· καὶ τέλος ἐς ἀνάγκην μεγίστην καταστὰς ἐκπέμπει
he-might-do and finally into necessity greatest having-come sends-out

τὴν αὐτοῦ μητέρα πρέσβιν ὡς βασιλέα μετὰ δώρων ὅτι
the his mother as-envoy to emperor with gifts as
πολλῶν, ἀπολογούμενός τε ὑπὲρ ὧν ἔδοξε δρᾶσαι, καὶ
many apologizing both for what he-seemed to-have-done and
ξυγγνώμην αἰτῶν, καὶ ἅμα δεόμενος ξύμμαχος εἶναι καὶ
pardon asking and at-once begging ally to-be and
φίλος τοῦ βασιλέως. Ὁ δὲ δέχεται ταύτην φιλίως καὶ
friend of-the emperor he and receives her in-friendly-way and
τιμᾷ ταῖς πρεπούσαις τιμαῖς, καὶ λαλήσας εἰρηνικὰ
honors(-her) with-the fitting honors and having-spoken peaceable(-things)
μετ᾽ αὐτῆς σπένδεται καὶ δέχεται φίλον καὶ ξύμμαχον
with her makes-truce and accepts friend and ally
εἶναι Χασάνεα· οὐ μὴν ἀπέπεμψέ γε ταύτην εὐθὺς, ἀλλ᾽
to-be Hasan not indeed sent-away at-least her at-once but
ἔχων μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἐπορεύετο. Καὶ ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς οὕτως.
having(-her) with himself marched and the indeed emperor thus
7.1 Οἱ δὲ τοῦ στόλου ἡγεμόνες καταπλεύσαντες ἐς Τραπεζοῦντα
the and of-the fleet leaders having-sailed-down to Trebizond
προσέσχον τοῖς λιμέσιν αὐτῆς, καὶ ἀποβάντες ξυνάπτουσι
put-in at-the harbors of-it and having-disembarked join
πόλεμον Τραπεζουντίοις ἐπεξελθοῦσι πρὸ τῆς πόλεως· καὶ
battle with-Trebizondians having-sallied before the city and
τρεψάμενοι τούτους ξυνωθοῦσι βίᾳ καὶ κατακλείουσιν
having-routed them push(-them) by-force and shut-in
ἐντὸς τοῦ ἄστεος. Κρατήσαντες δὲ τῆς ἔξω χώρας ἁπάσης
within the town having-mastered and the outer land all
καὶ τῆς παρόδου τῆς πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ κύκλῳ
and the approach the(-one) to the city and in-circle
περισχόντες αὐτοὺς τῷ στρατῷ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
having-surrounded them with-the army by land and by
θάλασσαν ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐπολιόρκουν, παραφυλάττοντες
sea with-the ships they-besieged(-them) guarding

ἰσχυρῶς τοῦ μή τι τῶν ἔνδον ἐξαγαγεῖν ἢ
strongly from-the not anything of-the(-things) within to-bring-out or
τῶν ἔξωθεν ἐσκομίσασθαι. Ἡμέραι μὲν οὖν παρῆλθον
of-the(-things) from-outside to-bring-in days indeed then passed
ἑξῆς ὀκτὼ πρὸς ταῖς εἴκοσι πολιορκουμένοις, ἐν αἷς
in-succession eight besides the twenty for-them-being-besieged in which
ἐκδρομαί τινες ἐγίνοντο τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως πρὸς
sallies some happened of-the(-ones) from the city against
τοὺς ἔξω, κἀν ταύταις οὐδὲν ἔλαττον εἶχον οὗτοι τῶν
the(-ones) outside also-in these nothing less had these than-the
πολεμίων, ὅμως γε μὴν ξυνελαυνόμενοι βίᾳ ὀλίγοι
enemies nevertheless at-least indeed driven-together by-force few
ὑπὸ πολλῶν αὖθις ἐσωθοῦντο καὶ κατεκλείοντο ἐς τὸ
by many again were-thrust-in and shut-in into the
ἄστυ. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα παραγίνεται Μαχουμούτης ὁ
town after and these(-things) arrives Mahmud the
πασίας ξὺν τῇ κατὰ γῆν στρατιᾷ, προλαβὼν ἡμέρᾳ μιᾷ
pasha with the by land army having-preceded by-day one
τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ στρατοπεδευσάμενος οὐ πόρρω τοῦ
the emperor and having-encamped not far from-the
ἄστεος, πέμψας ἄγγελον Θωμᾶν τὸν Καταβοληνοῦ, λόγους
town having-sent messenger Thomas the of-Katabolenos words
προσφέρει τοῖς ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ βασιλεῖ τούτων
brings to-the(-ones) in the city and emperor of-these
ξυμβατηρίους περὶ ἐνδόσεως ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ τῆς πόλεως,
conciliatory about surrender of-themselves both and of-the city
βέλτιον εἶναι λέγων αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν κατὰ πολὺ
better to-be saying for-them and of-the(-things) by much
ξυμφερόντων καταπιστεῦσαι ἑαυτούς τε καὶ τὴν πόλιν τῷ
advantageous to-entrust themselves both and the city to-the
μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ μετά γε ξυμβάσεων καὶ ὅρκων βεβαίων
great emperor with at-least agreements and oaths firm

καὶ πίστεως· τοῦτο γὰρ ἔσται πρὸς καλοῦ καὶ ἐπωφελοῦς
and faith this for will-be for good and profitable
αὐτοῖς τε κοινῇ τῷ τε βασιλεῖ ἰδίᾳ καὶ παισὶ τοῖς
for-them both in-common to-the both emperor privately and children the
αὐτοῦ καὶ τοῖς γε περὶ αὐτὸν πᾶσι, τῷ μὲν,
his and to-the at-least about him all for-the(-one) indeed
τυχόντι προνοίας παρὰ τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως, χώρας τε
obtaining provision from the great emperor of-land both
πολλῆς καὶ προσόδων ἱκανῶν ἔς τε διατροφὴν αὐτοῖς καὶ
much and revenues sufficient for both nourishment for-them and
ἀνάπαυσιν καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην χρείαν τε καὶ αὐτάρκειαν,
rest and all other need both and sufficiency
τοῖς δὲ, καθῆσθαι ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις ἀπαθέσιν
for-the(-ones) and to-sit with wives and children unharmed
ὅλως κακῶν, ἔχουσι τήν τε πατρίδα καὶ τὰ ὑπάρχοντα. Εἰ
wholly by-evils having the both fatherland and the possessions if
δὲ προκαλουμένου νῦν ἐπὶ ξυμβάσεις τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως
and calling now to agreements the great emperor
παρακούσειαν, οὐκέτι ἕξουσι τοῦ λοιποῦ πρὸς αὐτὸν
they-should-disregard(-him) no-longer they-will-have for-the future toward him
ξυμβάσεών τε καὶ ξυνθηκῶν ὅλως μνησθῆναι, ἅπαξ ὀργῇ
of-agreements both and treaties at-all to-be-mindful once in-anger
καὶ θυμῷ καταστάντος ἐς τὸ πολεμεῖν, ἀλλὰ κριθήσονται
and fury having-set-himself to the to-make-war but will-be-judged
τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς ὅπλοις μᾶλλόν τε καὶ σιδήρῳ, καὶ
the(-things) concerning them by-arms rather both and by-iron and
ἁλόντες πολέμῳ ὑποστήσονται φόνον τε καὶ διαρπαγὴν
having-been-taken by-war they-will-undergo slaughter both and plunder
καὶ δουλείαν καὶ ὅσα πολέμου καὶ ἁλώσεως πάθη.
and slavery and whatever of-war and of-capture sufferings

Καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτως. Οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ βασιλεὺς
and he indeed thus the(-ones) and in the city and emperor
αὐτῶν ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς λόγους
their having-heard these(-things) accepted both the words
ἡσύχως, καὶ τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἔφασαν παραγενομένου
quietly and the great emperor they-said having-arrived
ξυμβήσεσθαι. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ παραγίνεται καὶ οὗτος, καὶ
to-come-to-terms on-the and next(-day) arrives also he and
στρατοπεδεύεται πρὸ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ κήρυκα πέμψας τὸν
encamps before the city and herald having-sent —
Θωμᾶν, προκαλεῖται καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπὶ ξυμβάσεις αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ
Thomas calls also himself to agreements them on
τοῖς αὐτοῖς καὶ ὁμοίοις, ἐφ' οἷσπερ καὶ Μαχουμούτης. Οἱ δὲ
the same and like(-terms) on which also Mahmud they and
τοῦ κήρυκος ἀκούσαντες, δῶρά τε πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα
the herald having-heard gifts both very-many and finest
ἑτοιμάσαντες εὐθὺς, καὶ ἄνδρας τοὺς ἀρίστους σφῶν
having-prepared at-once and men the best of-them
ἀπολεξάμενοι καὶ πίστεις δόντες αὐτοῖς ἐκπέμπουσιν. Οἱ
having-chosen and pledges having-given to-them send-out they
δὲ ἀφικόμενοι προσκυνοῦσί τε τὸν βασιλέα καὶ ξυνθήκας
and having-arrived do-obeisance both to-the emperor and agreements
ποιοῦνται, καὶ ὅρκους δόντες καὶ λαβόντες παραδιδόασι
make and oaths having-given and having-received hand-over
τήν τε πόλιν καὶ ἑαυτοὺς βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἀνοίξαντες τὰς
the both city and themselves to-emperor and having-opened the
πύλας δέχονται Μαχουμούτεα μετὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
gates receive Mahmud with the army and
παραλαμβάνει Μαχουμούτης τὴν πόλιν. Ἔξεισι δὲ καὶ
takes-over Mahmud the city goes-out and also
βασιλεὺς Τραπεζοῦντος ξύν γε παισὶ καὶ τοῖς περὶ
emperor of-Trebizond with at-least children and the(-ones) about

αὐτὸν ἅπασιν ἐς προσκύνησιν τοῦ βασιλέως. Ὁ δὲ δέχεται
him all for obeisance of-the emperor he and receives
τοῦτον ἡμέρως καὶ φιλανθρώπως, καὶ δεξιωσάμενος καὶ
him mildly and humanely and having-greeted and
τιμήσας τὰ εἰκότα, δωρεῖται πολυτρόπως αὐτόν
having-honored(-him) the fitting(-things) rewards in-many-ways him
τε καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ πάντας.
both and the children and the(-ones) with him all

8.1 Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐσέρχεται ἐς τὴν πόλιν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ
and after this enters into the city the emperor and
περιερχόμενος κατεθεᾶτο τήν τε θέσιν αὐτῆς καὶ ἀσφάλειαν
going-around viewed the both position of-it and safety
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἐπιτηδειότητα τῆς τε χώρας καὶ αὐτῆς, ἔτι
and the other suitability of-the both land and of-itself further
δὲ τήν τε οἴκησιν καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ. Ἄνεισι
and the both habitation and the multitude of-the(-ones) in it goes-up
δὲ ἔς τε τὴν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ εἶδε καὶ
and to both the acropolis and the palaces and saw and
ἐθαύμασε τήν τε ἐχυρότητα τῆς ἄκρας καὶ τὰς οἰκοδομὰς
marveled-at the both strength of-the citadel and the buildings
τῶν βασιλείων καὶ τὴν λαμπρότητα, καὶ λόγου ἀξίαν
of-the palaces and the brilliance and of-account worthy
διὰ πάντων τὴν πόλιν ἀπέφαινε. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κελεύει
through all the city declared after and this he-orders
τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν ἅπαντας καὶ δὴ καί
the emperor and the(-ones) about him all and indeed also
τινας τῶν ἐν δυνάμει ὄντων τῆς πόλεως καὶ πλοῦτον
some of-the(-ones) in power being of-the city and wealth
κεκτημένων ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ παισὶ καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι
having-acquired with wives and children and the possessions
πᾶσιν ἐξελθόντας ἐμβῆναι ἐς τὰς τριήρεις. Ἐκλέγεται δὲ
all having-gone-out to-embark into the triremes he-chooses and

καὶ παῖδας τῶν ἐφήβων ἀπό τε τῆς πόλεως καὶ τῆς ἔξω
also children of-the youths from both the city and the outer
χώρας ἁπάσης περὶ πεντακοσίους που μάλιστα καὶ χιλίους,
land all about five-hundred about most and thousand
καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐμβιβάζει ἐς τὰς τριήρεις. Καὶ δωρησάμενος
and them puts-aboard into the triremes and having-rewarded
πολλὰ τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τῶν νεῶν, τριηράρχαις τέ φημι καὶ
much the leaders of-the ships trierarchs both I-mean and
ναυάρχαις, ἔτι δὲ κυβερνήταις καὶ κελευσταῖς καὶ τοῖς
admirals further and helmsmen and boatswains and the
ἄλλοις, ἐκέλευσεν ἀποπλεῖν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀνήγοντο, αὐτὸς
others ordered to-sail-away and they indeed put-out himself
δὲ παρακατασχὼν τὸν ἕνα τῶν ἡγεμόνων τοῦ στόλου,
and having-kept-back the one of-the leaders of-the fleet
Κασίμην τὸν σατράπην Καλλιουπόλεως, δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
Kasım the satrap of-Kallipolis gives to-him
τὴν σατραπείαν Τραπεζοῦντος, δίδωσι δὲ καὶ τῶν
the satrapy of-Trebizond gives and also of-the(-ones)
ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς ἄνδρας ἐπιλέκτους τετρακοσίους
from the own court men picked four-hundred
ἐς φυλακήν. Διαγαγὼν δὲ οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας αὐτοῦ καὶ
for guard having-spent and not many days there and
τὰ ἐν τῇ πόλει καταστησάμενος πάντα, ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ
the(-things) in the city having-settled all as was to-him
κατὰ νοῦν, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν ἦλθε τὴν αὐτὴν αὖθις
according-to mind having-set-out thence went the same(-road) again
ἐπ᾽ οἶκου. Γενόμενος δὲ κατὰ τὴν Χασάνεω χώραν,
to home having-come and at the of-Hasan land
ἀποπέμπει τὴν μητέρα αὐτοῦ, πολλὰ δωρησάμενος καὶ
sends-away the mother his much having-rewarded and
τιμήσας, ἐκπέμπει δὲ καὶ πρέσβεις ξὺν αὐτῇ ἐς
having-honored(-her) sends-out and also envoys with her to

Χασάνεα τὸν υἱὸν, σπονδάς τε ἀνανεῶν καὶ φίλον καὶ
Hasan the son truces both renewing and friend and
ξύμμαχον, ᾗ πρόσθεν ἔφην, ἔχειν βουλόμενος. Ὁ δὲ καὶ
ally as before I-said to-have wishing he and also
αὐτὸς ἀντιπέμπει πρέσβεις ἐς βασιλέα δῶρά τε φέροντας
himself sends-in-return envoys to emperor gifts both bringing
καὶ ξυγχαίροντας αὐτῷ τῶν κατορθωμάτων καὶ χάριν
and rejoicing-with him in-the successes and thanks
ὁμολογοῦντας τῆς ἐς τὴν μητέρα τιμῆς, καὶ φιλίαν καὶ
acknowledging for-the toward the mother honor and friendship and
ξυμμαχίαν βεβαιοῦντας. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἐκεῖθεν ὁρμηθεὶς καὶ
alliance confirming emperor and thence having-set-out and
ἀεὶ σπουδῇ ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω, διαβαίνει τε τὸν
always with-zeal driving to the(-places) forward crosses both —
Ταῦρον ἀσφαλῶς καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν μεταξὺ διελθὼν
Tauros safely and all the between(-land) having-passed-through
ἐν ὀκτὼ καὶ εἴκοσι ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὴν
in eight and twenty the whole days arrives at the
Προυσίου, καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν διαφεὶς διαναπαύει αὐτόν
of-Prousias(-city) and the army having-dismissed rests himself
τε καὶ τοὺς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐνταῦθα ἡμέρας οὐ συχνὰς,
both and the(-ones) with him there days not many
καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο, φθινοπώρου λήγοντος ἤδη, παραγίνεται
and after this autumn ending already arrives
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον. Καὶ ἔννατον καὶ ἑξηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς
at — Byzantium and ninth and sixtieth year besides
τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
the nine-hundred and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
ἑνδέκατον δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
eleventh and of-the rule for-the emperor

Τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ Σινώπην καὶ Τραπεζοῦντα, πόλεις 9.1
the(-things) indeed then concerning Sinope and Trebizond cities
λόγου ἀξίας καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἐν τοῖς νῦν καιροῖς, τοῦτον
of-account worthy and of-the renowned in the present times this
ἔσχε τὸν τρόπον. Βασιλεὺς δὲ Μεχεμέτης τὴν Κωνσταντίνου
had the way emperor and Mehmed the of-Constantine(-city)
καταλαβών, πρῶτα μὲν προὔργου τι ποιεῖται τὴν
having-reached first indeed advantageous something makes the
θεραπείαν τοῦ βασιλέως Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
care of-the emperor of-Trebizond and gives to-him
καὶ τοῖς ξὺν αὐτῷ χώραν ἱκανὴν ἐς διατροφὴν περί
and to-the(-ones) with him land sufficient for nourishment around
που τὸν Στρύμονα ποταμὸν, ὥστε ἀποφέρεσθαι δασμὸν
somewhere — Strymon river so-as to-carry-off tribute
ἐκεῖθεν ἐτήσιον ἀργύρου κέρμα νενομισμένον μυριάδας
thence yearly of-silver coin current myriads
τριάκοντα. Ἦν δὲ καί τις ἀνὴρ τῶν μετὰ
thirty there-was and also a-certain man of-the(-ones) with
βασιλέως Γεώργιος Ἀμηρούχης τοὔνομα, φιλοσοφίαν ἄκρος,
emperor George Amiroutzes by-name in-philosophy supreme
ὅση περί τε τὸ φυσικὸν ἔχει καὶ δογματικὸν τό τε
as-much-as about both the physical has and doctrinal the and
μαθηματικόν τε καὶ γεωμετρικὸν καὶ τὰς ἀναλογίας τῶν
mathematical both and geometrical and the proportions of-the
ἀριθμῶν, καὶ ὅση τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ Περιπάτου καὶ τῆς
numbers and as-much-as of-the(-ones) from the Peripatos and the
Στοᾶς, προσέτι δὲ καὶ πλήρης πάσης ἐγκυκλίου παιδείας,
Stoa besides and also full of-all encyclical learning
ῥητορικῆς τέ φημι καὶ ποιητικῆς. Περὶ τούτου μαθὼν
rhetorical both I-mean and poetic about this having-learned
ὁ βασιλεὺς μετακαλεῖται τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ πεῖραν ἱκανὴν ἔκ
the emperor summons the man and trial sufficient from

τε τῆς ξυντυχίας καὶ ὁμιλίας λαβὼν τῆς τε παιδείας καὶ
both the meeting and converse having-taken of-the both learning and
σοφίας αὐτοῦ, θαυμάζει τε τοῦτον διαφερόντως καὶ χώρας
wisdom his marvels-at both him exceedingly and of-place
τῆς προσηκούσης ἀξιοῖ παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ συχναῖς ὡς
the fitting deems-worthy(-him) with him and with-frequent to
αὐτὸν εἰσόδοις καὶ ὁμιλίαις τιμᾷ, δόγματα τῶν παλαιῶν
him entrances and converses honors(-him) doctrines of-the ancients
αὐτῷ προτιθεὶς καὶ φιλοσόφους ἀπορίας καὶ συζητήσεις
to-him setting-before and philosophical problems and joint-inquiries
καὶ λύσεις· ἔστι γὰρ τῶν ἄκρως φιλοσόφων ὁ βασιλεύς.
and solutions is for of-the supremely philosophical the emperor
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῶν κατὰ τὴν πόλιν αὖθις φροντίδων
after and this of-the concerning the city again of-cares
γίνεται, τοῦ τε ξυνοικισμοῦ αὐτῆς ἄγαν ἐπιμελόμενος,
he-becomes of-the both resettlement of-it exceedingly taking-care
τοῦ τε κόσμου ξύμπαντος καὶ τῆς ἄλλης καλλονῆς καὶ
of-the both adornment whole and of-the other beauty and
κατασκευῆς, νεώς τε ἀνεγείρων καὶ νεώρια οἰκοδομῶν καὶ
equipment temples both raising and dockyards building and
θέατρα καὶ ἀγορὰς καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα, προσέτι δὲ καὶ
theaters and markets and whatever such besides and also
πάσας τέχνας καὶ ἐπιστήμας ἐσάγων αὐτῇ, πανταχόθεν
all crafts and sciences bringing-in to-it from-all-sides
ἀγείρων τε καὶ μετακομίζων τοὺς τούτων ἐπιστήμονας
gathering both and transferring the of-these knowers
καὶ τεχνίτας καὶ κατοικίζων αὐτῇ, μηδεμιᾶς δαπάνης ἢ
and craftsmen and settling(-them) in-it no expense or
ἀναλωμάτων πρὸς τοῦτο φειδόμενος. Ἐσπούδαστο γὰρ
outlays for this sparing it-had-been-pursued for
αὐτῷ διὰ τέλους αὐτάρκη τοῖς ὅλοις ἀποδεῖξαι τὴν πόλιν,
by-him to the-end self-sufficient in-the whole to-show the city

μηδαμοῦ προσδεομένην ἑτέρου τινὸς τῶν ἔξωθεν ἔς
nowhere needing other anything of-the(-things) from-outside for
τε φιλοτιμίαν καὶ χρείαν καὶ κόσμον ὁμοῦ καὶ λαμπρότητα.
both lavishness and use and adornment together and brilliance
Ἐν τούτοις τοίνυν ὄντι τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀγγέλλεται Δράκουλιν, 10.1
in these(-things) therefore being for-the emperor it-is-reported Dracula
τὸν ἡγεμόνα Γετῶν, νεωτέρων ἐπιθυμήσαντα νεοχμῶσαι,
the leader of-Getai new(-things) having-desired to-innovate
καὶ στρατιὰν ξυλλεξάμενον ἱκανὴν καὶ ἵππους καὶ ὅπλα
and army having-collected sufficient and horses and arms
ἀντᾶραι τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὃς ἦν αὐτῷ πρώην ταύτην
to-raise-against the emperor who was for-him formerly this
παρασχὼν τὴν ἀρχήν. Ἀπελαθέντας γὰρ αὐτόν τε καὶ τὸν
having-provided the rule driven-out for him both and the
ἀδελφὸν ὑπὸ τοῦ τῶν Παιόνων τε καὶ Δακῶν ἡγεμόνος
brother by the of-the Paionians both and Dacians leader
Ἰωάννου τοῦ Γέτου μετὰ δυνάμεως ἐπελθόντος καὶ τὸν
John the Getan with force having-come and the
σφῶν ἀποκτείναντος πατέρα, καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν παραδόντος
their having-killed father and the rule having-handed-over
ἑτέρῳ, ἐδέξατο τούτους φυγάδας ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως πατὴρ
to-another received them as-fugitives the of-the emperor father
ἐς αὐτὸν καταφυγόντας, καὶ ἔτρεφεν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις
to him having-fled and nourished(-them) in the palaces
ἄγαν φιλοτίμως παῖδας ὄντας ἔτι, καὶ τελευτῶν
exceedingly lavishly children being still and dying
κατέλιπεν αὐτοὺς τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ υἱεῖ· καὶ ὃς εἶχε καὶ
left them to-the emperor and son and he had and
ἔτρεφεν αὐτοὺς ἐν πολλῇ θεραπείᾳ τε καὶ τιμῇ παρ᾽
nourished them in much attendance both and honor with
ἑαυτῷ καὶ προνοίᾳ βασιλικῇ. Νεωτέρων δὲ ξυμβάντων
himself and provision royal new(-things) and having-happened

περὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν Γετῶν, καὶ τοῦ ταύτην ἔχοντος
about the rule the of-Getai and the(-one) it holding
ἀπελαθέντος κακῶς, κατήγαγε τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς χειρὶ
having-been-driven-out badly restored him the emperor with-hand
πολλῇ καὶ δαπάνῃ, παραδοὺς αὐτῷ πᾶσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν
much and expense having-handed-over to-him all the rule
τὴν Γετῶν, καὶ ξυνθήκαις καὶ ὅρκοις ξυνδήσας αὐτὸν ἢ
the of-Getai and with-agreements and oaths having-bound him truly
μὴν φυλάξειν ἄδολον καὶ καθαρὰν τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
indeed to-keep guileless and pure the toward the emperor
στοργὴν καὶ εὔνοιαν καὶ τὰς γενομένας πίστεις τε καὶ
affection and goodwill and the made pledges both and
ξυνθήκας. Ὁ δὲ βραχὺν χρόνον ἐμμείνας τούτοις, ἔπειτα
agreements he and short time having-abided-by these then
πάντων ἀμνηστίαν λαβὼν καὶ κακὸς φανεὶς περὶ
of-all forgetfulness having-taken and bad having-appeared toward
τὸν πιστεύσαντα, ἐπανέστη κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως. Καὶ
the(-one) having-trusted(-him) rose-up against the emperor and
πρῶτα μὲν λάθρα διαβὰς τὸν Ἴστρον ξὺν δυνάμει καὶ
first indeed secretly having-crossed — Istros with power and
στρατιᾷ οὐκ ὀλίγῃ κατατρέχει πᾶσαν τὴν ὅμορον αὐτῷ
army not small overruns all the bordering him
χώραν τοῦ βασιλέως, λέγω δὴ τὰ περὶ Νικόπολιν
land of-the emperor I-mean indeed the(-places) around Nikopolis
καὶ Βιδήνην, καὶ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι πολλὴν καὶ φόνον
and Vidin and booty having-driven as much and slaughter
ἐργασάμενος οὐκ ὀλίγον πάλιν διαβὰς ἐπανῆκεν ἐς τὴν
having-worked not small again having-crossed returned into the
αὑτοῦ. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο πρέσβεις ὡς αὐτὸν ἀποστείλαντος
his(-land) after and this envoys to him having-sent
τοῦ βασιλέως σπονδῶν τε ἀναμνήσοντας καὶ λαλήσοντας
the emperor of-truces both going-to-remind and going-to-speak

εἰρηνικὰ καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν πευσομένους τῆς ἀποστάσεως,
peaceable(-things) and the cause going-to-learn of-the revolt
ὅδε πρὶν ἢ μαθεῖν ἐφ᾽ ἃ ἦκον, ξυλλαβὼν τούτους
this-man before than to-learn for what they-came having-seized them
ἀνεσκολόπισε, πολλὰ καὶ βλάσφημα ἀπειλήσας ἐς
impaled(-them) much and blasphemous having-threatened against
βασιλέα. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν ὕβριν ταύτην βαρέως ἐνεγκὼν
emperor emperor and the outrage this heavily having-borne
θυμῷ δικαίῳ ληφθεὶς στρατιὰν ὅτι πλείστην εὐθὺς ἀγείρει,
by-anger just seized army as most at-once gathers
καὶ καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος χειμῶνος, ἅμα ἦρι
and well having-prepared in-winter at-once with-spring
διαβαίνει τὸν Ἴστρον καὶ διαβὰς κατατρέχει μὲν ἐν
crosses — Istros and having-crossed overruns indeed in
οὐ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις πᾶσαν σχεδὸν τὴν Γετῶν, πορθῶν
not many days all nearly the of-Getai(-land) sacking
καὶ δηῶν αὐτὴν, καὶ χειμάρρου δίκην ἐπερχόμενός τε καὶ
and ravaging it and of-torrent like coming-on both and
παρασύρων πάντα τὰ ἐν ποσὶ καὶ φρούρια χειρούμενος
sweeping-away all the(-things) at feet and fortresses subduing
καὶ χώμας διαρπάζων καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἀπάγων.
and villages plundering and booty as most leading-away
Ὁ δὲ θρασὺς ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἀλαζὼν τὴν ἀθρόαν ἔφοδον τοῦ
he and bold that(-one) and boaster the sudden approach of-the
βασιλέως μὴ ἐνεγκὼν, φυγὰς εὐθὺς ᾤχετο, καὶ καταλαβὼν
emperor not having-borne as-fugitive at-once went-off and having-reached
τὰ ἐρυμνότατα τῆς χώρας καὶ τῶν βουνῶν διῆγε τὸ
the strongest(-parts) of-the land and of-the hills stayed the
τέλος ἀποσκοπῶν τῶν γινομένων. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ἦγε
end watching of-the(-things) happening emperor and led
καὶ ἔφερε τὴν αὐτοῦ, καὶ τέλος ἡγεμόνα Γετῶν τὸν αὐτοῦ
and carried the his(-land) and finally leader of-Getai the his

ἀδελφὸν ἀποδείκνυσι Ῥάδον· εἶχε γὰρ τοῦτον μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ.
brother appoints Radu he-had for him with himself
Δράκουλις δὲ ἤδη τῶν αὐτοῦ πραγμάτων ὅλως ἀπογνοὺς
Dracula and already of-the his affairs wholly having-despaired
καὶ μηδεμίαν ἔχων ἐλπίδα τοῦ λοιποῦ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἔγνω
and no having hope for-the rest of-the rule resolved
θανατῶν δράσας τι τοὺς ἐχθροὺς κακῶς καὶ παθεῖν
longing-for-death having-done something the enemies badly also to-suffer
αὐτός· καὶ δὴ τοῦτο δόξαν ἀνοήτως αὐτῷ, νυκτὸς
himself and indeed this having-seemed-good foolishly to-him by-night
ἐπιθέσθαι βούλεται τῷ στρατοπέδῳ· καὶ περὶ μέσας νύκτας
to-attack wishes the camp and about middle nights
ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς αὑτοῦ, ἄκρᾳ τινὶ προσβάλλει τοῦ
having-taken the his(-men) on-extremity some attacks of-the
στρατοπέδου ἀτάκτως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ, καὶ φόνον
camp in-disorder both and with no order and slaughter
ἐργάζεται ζώων πολὺν, καμήλων τε καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἡμιόνων·
works of-animals much of-camels both and horses and mules
οὐ γὰρ ἐνέτυχεν ἀνδράσι. Βασιλεὺς γὰρ εὐθὺς ὡς ἔγνω
not for he-met men emperor for at-once when he-learned
τὴν προσβολὴν, ἐξεπίτηδες κελεύει μικρὸν ἀναχωρῆσαι
the attack on-purpose orders a-little to-withdraw
τοὺς στρατιώτας, ἵν' ἐπὶ μᾶλλον προέλθῃ, ὡς
the soldiers so-that to more he-might-come-forward so-that
ἂν εὐχείρωτος γένηται. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῇ στρατιᾷ
— easy-to-subdue he-might-become after and this to-the army
ξύνθημα δοὺς κελεύει πανταχόθεν αὐτῷ προσβάλλειν.
signal having-given orders from-all-sides him to-attack
Οἱ δ' ὁρμήσαντες ξὺν ἀλαλαγῇ καὶ ῥύμῃ καὶ προθυμίᾳ
they and having-rushed with war-cry and rush and eagerness
πολλῇ πάντας αὐτοῦ κατακόπτουσι, πλὴν ὅσους ζῶντας
much all there cut-down except as-many-as alive

ἐζώγρησαν, εὐαριθμήτους πάνυ. Δράκουλις δὲ διαλαθὼν
they-took easy-to-count very Dracula and having-escaped-notice
αὐτοῦ που καὶ διαδρὰς φυγὰς ᾤχετο ἐς Παίονας, οἱ
there somewhere and having-run-away as-fugitive went-off to Paionians they
δὲ ξυλλαβόντες αὐτὸν καθεῖρξαν ἐν φυλακῇ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ,
and having-seized him shut(-him)-in in guard emperor and
ᾗπερ ἔφην, ἄρχοντα καὶ ἡγεμόνα Γετῶν ἀποδείκνυσι Ῥάδον,
as I-said governor and leader of-Getai appoints Radu
παραδοὺς αὐτῷ πᾶν τὸ σφῶν κράτος καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν, τὰ
having-handed-over to-him all the their power and the rule the
πιστὰ λαβὼν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ, αὐτὸς δὲ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι
pledges having-received from him himself and booty having-driven as
πολλὴν ἀνδραπόδων τε καὶ βοσκημάτων καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ
much of-captives both and of-cattle and to-the army
διαδοὺς, πάλιν διαβαίνει τὸν Ἴστρον, καὶ καταλαβὼν τὴν
having-distributed again crosses — Istros and having-reached the
Ἀδριανοῦ θέρους, μικρὸν διαναπαύει τὴν στρατιὰν αὐτοῦ,
of-Hadrian(-city) in-summer a-little rests the army there
καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο μετακαλεσάμενος τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τοῦ στόλου,
and after this having-summoned the leaders of-the fleet
κελεύει διακοσίων νεῶν στόλον ἐξαρτίσαι τῇ Λέσβῳ.
orders of-two-hundred ships fleet to-fit-out — against-Lesbos
Νικορέζος γὰρ ὁ τοῦ Δωριέως υἱὸς, κληρονόμος καὶ αὐτὸς 11.1
Niccolò for the — of-Dorino son heir also himself
μετὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ Δομινίκου καταλειφθεὶς τῆς πατρῴας
with the brother Domenico left of-the paternal
ἀρχῆς, τελευτήσαντος αὐτοῖς τοῦ πατρὸς, καὶ σπονδὰς ἔχων
rule having-died for-them the father and truces having
μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ φάρου ὑποτελὴς ὤν, πρῶτα μὲν
with the emperor and of-tribute subject being first indeed
κακῶς βουλευσάμενας καὶ ἀνόσια δρῶν ξυλλαμβάνει τὸν
badly having-planned and unholy(-things) doing seizes the

ἀδελφὸν καὶ ἐς εἰρκτὴν ἐμβαλὼν ἀναιρεῖ δόλῳ· ἔπειτα οὔτε
brother and into prison having-thrown kills(-him) by-guile then neither
τὸν φόρον ἀπεδίδου προθύμως τῷ βασιλεῖ, οὔτε μένειν
the tribute paid eagerly to-the emperor nor to-remain
ἀδόλως ἤθελεν ἐπὶ τῶν σπονδῶν, ἀλλὰ κοινολογούμενος
guilelessly wished on the truces but conferring
κρύφα τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς καὶ ξυνθήκας ποιῶν μετ' αὐτῶν, ὡς
secretly with-the Italians and agreements making with them as
καὶ πρότερόν μοι εἴρηται, παρεσπόνδει τὸν βασιλέα ἐν
also before by-me has-been-said broke-truce-with the emperor in
ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰς κατάρσεις δεχόμενος
other both many(-things) and indeed also the landings receiving
τῶν πειρατικῶν νεῶν καὶ αὐτὸς ἑτέρας ἀντιπληρῶν καὶ
of-the pirate ships and himself others manning-in-turn and
ἡγεμόνας τῶν χωρῶν καὶ λιμένων καὶ τόπων παρέχων
guides of-the lands and harbors and places providing
αὐτοῖς ἐκάκου λάθρα πᾶσαν τὴν προσεχῆ τῇ Λέσβῳ
to-them he-harmed secretly all the adjacent — to-Lesbos
παραλίαν τοῦ βασιλέως, οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ Χερρόνησον
coast of-the emperor not only and but also Chersonese
αὐτὴν καὶ τὴν ἀντιπέρας Θράκης τε καὶ Μακεδονίας. Ἃ
itself and the opposite of-Thrace both and Macedonia which
πυνθανόμενος πολλάκις ὁ βασιλεὺς πέμπων ἐκέλευε μὴ
learning often the emperor sending ordered not
τοιαῦτα δρᾶν ἐν σπονδαῖς καὶ εἰρήνῃ (οὐ γὰρ λανθάνει
such(-things) to-do in truces and peace not for escapes-notice
κακουργῶν τὰ τοιαῦτα), ἀλλὰ ἐμμένειν ἀδόλως ταῖς
working-mischief the such(-things) but to-abide guilelessly by-the
σπονδαῖς καὶ τὸν φόρον ἀποδιδόναι προθύμως ἢ πόλεμον
truces and the tribute to-pay eagerly or war
ποιήσειν αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ τὰ μὲν ἀρνούμενός τε καὶ
he-would-make on-him he and the(-things) indeed denying both and

λανθάνειν νομίζων, τὰ δὲ καὶ ματαίας ἐλπίδας ἔχων
to-escape-notice thinking the(-things) and also vain hopes having
ἐν Ἰταλοῖς, βραχὺ τῶν βασιλέως ἐφρόντιζεν. Ὁ δὲ
in Italians little of-the(-things) of-emperor cared he and
πολλάκις ἀπειλήσας αὐτῷ καὶ δὴ καὶ στόλον ἐκπέμψας,
often having-threatened him and indeed also fleet having-sent-out
ᾗ πρόσθεν ἔφθην εἰπὼν, καὶ μέρος τι τῆς Λέσβου
as before I-said-before saying and part some — of-Lesbos
καταδραμὼν, ὥστε σωφρονίσαι αὐτόν· ὁ δ᾽ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
having-overrun so-as to-chasten him he and nothing more
ἠφίει, ἀλλὰ πρὸς καιρὸν μὲν ἐδόκει ποιεῖν φόβῳ τοῦτο
let-go but for a-time indeed seemed to-do from-fear this
καὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἀπέχεσθαι, οὐδὲν δὲ ἧττον αὖθις ἔμενεν
and from-the such(-things) to-abstain nothing and less again remained
ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν. Ὀργισθεὶς οὖν ἐπὶ τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς
on the same(-things) angered then at these(-things) the emperor
τὴν ἐκστρατείαν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐποιεῖτο. Παρασκευασάμενος
the campaign against him made having-prepared
οὖν ὅτι τάχος τὸν στόλον καὶ ὁπλίσας καλῶς, καὶ
then as quickly the fleet and having-armed(-it) well and
ὁπλίτας πολλοὺς καὶ ὅπλα παντοῖα ἐπιβιβάσας ταῖς ναυσὶ
hoplites many and arms all-kinds having-put-aboard on-the ships
καὶ μηχανὰς πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια, καὶ στρατηγὸν
and engines stone-throwing and launchers and general
αὐτοκράτορα καὶ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου παντὸς ἑλόμενος
with-full-power and leader of-the fleet whole having-chosen
Μαχουμούτεα τὸν πασίαν ἐκπέμπει, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τῇ κατὰ
Mahmud the pasha sends(-it)-out himself and with the by
γῆν στρατιᾷ διαβὰς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐπορεύετο διὰ
land army having-crossed — Hellespont marched through
τῆς κάτω Φρυγίας. Καὶ ἀφικόμενος ἐς τὸ Ἴλιον κατεθεᾶτο
the lower Phrygia and having-arrived at — Ilion viewed

τά τε ἐρείπια τούτου καὶ τὰ ἴχνη τῆς παλαιᾶς πόλεως
the both ruins of-it and the traces of-the ancient city
Τροίας καὶ τὸ μέγεθος καὶ τὴν θέσιν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην τῆς
Troy and the size and the position and the other of-the
χώρας ἐπιτηδειότητα, καὶ ὡς ἔκειτο γῆς καὶ θαλάσσης
land suitability and how it-lay of-land and of-sea
ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ, προσέτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἡρώων τοὺς τάφους
in vantage besides and also of-the heroes the tombs
ἱστορεῖ, Ἀχιλλέως τέ φημι καὶ Αἴαντος καὶ τῶν ἄλλων,
he-inquires-into of-Achilles both I-mean and Ajax and the others
καὶ ἐπήνεσε καὶ ἐμακάρισε τούτους τῆς τε μνήμης καὶ
and praised and called-blessed them for-the both memory and
τῶν ἔργων καὶ ὅτι ἔτυχον ἐπαινέτου Ὁμήρου τοῦ ποιητοῦ·
the deeds and that they-obtained a-praiser Homer the poet
ὅτε λέγεται, καὶ μικρὸν ξυγκινήσας τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰπεῖν·
when it-is-said also a-little having-shaken the head to-have-said
“ Ἐμὲ τῆς πόλεως ταύτης καὶ τῶν αὐτῆς οἰκητόρων
me of-the city this and of-the its inhabitants
ἐν τοσαύταις περιόδοις ἐτῶν ἐκδικητὴν ἐταμιεύετο ὁ
in so-many cycles of-years as-avenger was-reserving —
θεός· ἐχειρωσάμην γὰρ τοὺς τούτων ἐχθροὺς, καὶ τὰς
God I-subdued for the of-these enemies and the
πόλεις αὐτῶν ἐπόρθησα, καὶ Μυσῶν λείαν τὰ τούτων
cities their I-sacked and of-Mysians booty the(-things) of-these
πεποίημαι. Ἕλληνες γὰρ ἦσαν καὶ Μακεδόνιοι καὶ Θετταλοὶ
I-have-made Hellenes for were and Macedonians and Thessalians
καὶ Πελοποννήσιοι οἱ ταύτην πάλαι πορθήσαντες, ὧν
and Peloponnesians the(-ones) it of-old having-sacked whose
οἱ ἀπόγονοι τοσαύταις ἐς ὕστερον περιόδοις ἐνιαυτῶν νῦν
the descendants so-many in later cycles of-years now

ἐμοὶ τὴν δίκην ἀπέτισαν, διά τε τὴν τότε ἐς τοὺς
to-me the penalty paid because-of both the then against the
Ἀσιανοὺς ἡμᾶς καὶ πολλάκις ὕστερον ὕβριν αὐτῶν."
Asians us and often later outrage their
Ὁρμηθεὶς οὖν ἐκεῖθεν ἀφίκετο ἐπὶ Λεκτὸν, κἀκεῖθεν 12.1
having-set-out then thence he-came to Lekton and-thence
ἄρας στρατοπεδεύεται ἐπὶ τῆς ἀντιπέραν ἠπείρου τῆς
having-set-out encamps on the opposite mainland —
Λέσβου, καταντικρὺ Μιτυλήνης. Μαχουμούτης δὲ ἀναχθεὶς
of-Lesbos opposite Mytilene Mahmud and having-put-out
ἐκ Καλλιουπόλεως παντὶ τῷ στόλῳ, ναυσὶ διακοσίαις,
from Kallipolis with-all the fleet with-ships two-hundred
τριταῖος καταίρει ἐς Μιτυλήνην καὶ ἀποβιβάσας τὴν
on-the-third-day lands at Mytilene and having-disembarked the
στρατιὰν, στρατόπεδον τίθησιν οὐ πόρρω τῆς πόλεως.
army camp sets not far from-the city
Μιτυληναῖοι δὲ τότε πρῶτον ἐπεκδρομὴν ποιησάμενοι καὶ
Mytilenaeans and then first sally having-made and
μηδὲν δράσαντες πάλιν ξυνελαθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν
nothing having-done again driven-together by the hoplites
βίᾳ ἐς τὴν πόλιν, κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας ἔμενον.
by-force into the city having-shut the gates remained
Μαχουμούτης δὲ λόγους προσφέρει πρῶτον αὐτοῖς καὶ τῷ
Mahmud and words brings first to-them and to-the
σφῶν ἡγεμόνι, εἰ βούλοιντο παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τὴν
their leader if they-would-wish having-handed-over themselves and the
πόλιν ξυμβῆναι τῷ βασιλεῖ· ὡς δ' οὐκ ἔπειθε, πρῶτα
city to-come-to-terms with-the emperor when but not he-persuaded first
μὲν ἔκειρε τὰ ἔξω τῆς χώρας καὶ ἐδῄωσε πάντα,
indeed he-ravaged the(-parts) outside of-the land and laid-waste(-them) all
ἔπειτα περισταυρώσας τὴν πόλιν καὶ κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν
then having-palisaded the city and in-circle having-surrounded(-it)

τῷ στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει, καὶ
with-the army and engines having-set-up besieged(-it) and
τοῦ μὲν τείχους ἐν ἓξ ἢ ἑπτὰ ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις
of-the indeed wall in six or seven the whole days
κατέσεισε καὶ κατέρριψεν οὐκ ὀλίγον ταῖς μηχαναῖς.
shook-down and hurled-down not little with-the engines
Οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει ὡς εἶδον τὸ τεῖχος κατερριμμένον,
the(-ones) and in the city when they-saw the wall hurled-down
κεραίας μεγάλας ἐπαγαγόντες καὶ περισταυρώσαντες αὐτὸ
beams great bringing-up and having-palisaded it
ἔσωθέν τε καὶ ἔξωθεν, καὶ γῆν καὶ ὕλην ἄλλην ἔνδον
from-within both and from-without and earth and material other within
ἐπιφορήσαντες ἐμάχοντο ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῦ. Βασιλεὺς δὲ, πέραν ἀπὸ
having-brought-up fought on it emperor and across from
τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὰ δρώμενα σκοπῶν, οὐκέτι μέλλειν
the camp the(-things) being-done watching no-longer to-delay
ᾤετο δεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς τάχιστα παρασκευαστέα οἱ
thought to-be-needful but as quickly-as-possible must-prepare for-him
εἶναι παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ καὶ πάσῃ δυνάμει προσβαλεῖν τῇ
to-be with-all the army and with-all power to-attack the
πόλει, ὡς αὐτοβοεὶ ταύτην αἱρήσων· καὶ αὐτίκα κελεύει
city so-as at-the-first-shout it going-to-take and at-once orders
διαβιβάζειν ἐς τὴν νῆσον τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν
to-take-across to the island the army and the hoplite(-force)
ἅπαν ὅτι τάχιστα. Καὶ οἱ μὲν διέβαινον. Βασιλεὺς δ᾽
all as quickly-as-possible and they indeed crossed emperor and
ἐμβὰς ἐς τριήρη περαιοῦται καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς τὴν νῆσον,
having-embarked into trireme crosses also himself to the island
καὶ ξυγγενόμενος Μαχουμούτει πυνθάνεται περὶ πάντων·
and having-met-with Mahmud inquires about all
ἔπειτα παριππεύων κατεσκόπει τὴν πόλιν, τά τε
then riding-alongside surveyed the city the(-parts) both

ἐπίμαχα καὶ ἀπόμαχα ταύτης κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν,
assailable and unassailable of-it by land both and sea
καὶ κελεύει τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκτάττεσθαι πᾶσαν καὶ τὰς
and orders the army to-be-drawn-up all and the
τριήρεις ὁπλίζεσθαι, ὡς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης προσβαλούσας ἐκ
triremes to-be-armed as from sea going-to-attack from
τοῦ λιμένος. Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ ὁ τούτων
the harbor in this and the(-ones) in the city and the of-these
ἡγεμὼν, ὡς εἶδον τόν τε βασιλέα περαιωθέντα καὶ τὴν
leader when they-saw the both emperor having-crossed and the
στρατιὰν παρασκευαζομένην κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν
army preparing by land both and sea
αὐτοῖς προσβαλεῖν, δείσαντες μὴ εὐθὺς ἀνάρπαστοι
them to-attack having-feared lest at-once carried-off
γένωνται βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις ἁλόντες (τό τε γὰρ τεῖχος
they-become by-force with-the arms taken the both for wall
ἑώρων κατερριμμένον ταῖς μηχαναῖς, τοῦ τε στρατοῦ τὸ
they-saw hurled-down by-the engines of-the both army the
πλῆθος ἄπειρόν τε καὶ ῥωμαλέον καὶ κατάφρακτον ἅπαν
multitude boundless both and mighty and armored all
τήν τε τοῦ βασιλέως ὁρμὴν ἀνένδοτον οὖσαν, ὡς οὐδ᾽
the both of-the emperor impulse unyielding being as not-even
ἂν, εἴ τι καὶ γένοιτο, τῆς νήσου ἀποστῆναι, εἰ
— if anything also should-happen from-the island to-withdraw if
μὴ ταύτην αἱρήσει τελείως), πέμπουσι κήρυκα, ἐνδιδόντες
not it he-will-take completely they-send herald surrendering
ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τὴν πόλιν τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἅμα δεόμενοι
themselves and the city to-the emperor and at-once begging
ξυγγνώμης τυχεῖν, ὅτι μὴ εὐθὺς προσεχώρησαν καλούμενοι.
pardon to-obtain that not at-once they-surrendered being-called

Καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται τούτους καὶ δίδωσι αὐτοῖς
and the emperor accepts them and gives to-them
τὰ πιστά· οἱ δὲ Μιτυληναῖοι ἐξίασι τῆς πόλεως μετὰ
the pledges the and Mytilenaeans go-out of-the city with
τοῦ σφῶν ἡγεμόνος καὶ προσκυνήσαντες τὸν βασιλέα
the their leader and having-done-obeisance-to the emperor
παραδιδόασι ταύτην αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως
hand-over it to-him he and receives them mildly
καὶ δωρεῖται φιλοτίμως· ἔπειτα ἐσελθὼν ἐς τὴν πόλιν
and rewards(-them) lavishly then having-entered into the city
ἐθεάσατο πᾶσαν καλῶς, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἀρίστη τε ἅμα
viewed all(-of-it) well and it-seemed to-him best both at-once
καὶ καλλίστη. Ἦκουσι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων
and finest come and also the(-ones) from the other
φρουρίων καὶ πολισμάτων, ἐνδιδόντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τὰ
fortresses and towns surrendering themselves and the
φρούρια. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τέσσαρας ὅλας ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ
fortresses emperor and four whole days in the island
διαγαγὼν καὶ θεασάμενος αὐτὴν καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ
having-spent and having-viewed it and the(-things) in it
πάντα, καὶ θαυμάσας τό τε μέγεθος καὶ κάλλος αὐτῆς
all and having-marveled-at the both size and beauty of-it
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην τῆς γῆς ἀρετὴν καὶ κατασκευὴν, αὖθις
and the other of-the land excellence and equipment again
ἐμβὰς ἐς τριήρη περαιοῦται ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον,
having-embarked into trireme crosses to the camp
καταλιπὼν Μαχουμούτεα διαθέσθαι τὰ κατὰ τὴν
having-left Mahmud to-arrange the(-things) concerning the
πόλιν καὶ τὴν νῆσον, ὡς προσετάχθη. Ὁ δὲ πάντας τοὺς
city and the island as was-commanded he and all the(-ones)
ἐν τῇ πόλει ξυναγαγὼν, ἄνδρας τέ φημι καὶ γυναῖκας
in the city having-gathered men both I-mean and women

καὶ παῖδας, διεῖλεν ἐς μοίρας τρεῖς, καὶ τὴν μὲν
and children divided(-them) into parts three and the indeed
πρώτην εἴασε μένειν ἐπὶ τῆς πόλεως καὶ κατοικεῖν αὐτὴν,
first allowed to-remain in the city and to-inhabit it
ἔχοντας καὶ νεμομένους τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ τὸν εἰθισμένον
having and occupying the(-things) of-themselves and the customary
ἐτησίως καταβάλλοντας φόρον, τὴν δὲ δευτέραν ἀπήγαγεν
yearly paying tribute the and second led-away
ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει καὶ κατῴκισε, τὴν δὲ τρίτην
to Constantinople and settled(-them) the and third
ἀνδραποδίσας διέδωκε τοῖς στρατιώταις· ὅσους δὲ εὗρε
having-enslaved distributed to-the soldiers as-many-as and he-found
μισθοφόρους τῶν Ἰταλῶν ἐν αὐτῇ, πάντας ἀπέκτεινε. Τὰ
mercenaries of-the Italians in it all he-killed the
δὲ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἄλλα φρούρια καὶ πολίσματα τότε μὲν
and in the island other fortresses and towns then indeed
εἴασε μένειν ὡς εἶχε πρὸς καιρόν· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
he-allowed to-remain as they-were for a-time after and these(-things)
καί τινα τούτων ἐξεῖλε καὶ κατέσκαψε καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας
also some of-these took-out and razed and the men
καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας ἀπῴκισεν ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει.
and children and women transplanted to Constantinople
Οὕτω δὲ διαθεὶς τὰ κατὰ τὴν Μιτυλήνην καὶ
so and having-arranged the(-things) concerning — Mytilene and
τὴν Λέσβον ἅπασαν ὁ Μαχουμούτης, καὶ φρουρὰν ἱκανὴν
— Lesbos all — Mahmud and garrison sufficient
ἐγκαταστήσας τῇ τε πόλει καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φρουρίοις,
having-established in-the both city and the other fortresses
καὶ σατράπην ταύτῃ καταλιπὼν ἄνδρα τῶν ὀνομαστῶν
and satrap for-it having-left man of-the renowned
παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς καὶ πάνυ γνωρίμων ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ στρατηγίᾳ
among them and very well-known for courage and generalship

καὶ τῇ λοιπῇ ἀρετῇ Σάμιον Ἀλὴν τοὔνομα, περαιοῦται
and the rest virtue Samian Ali by-name crosses
καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς βασιλέα. Οἱ δὲ τοῦ στόλου ἡγεμόνες
also himself to emperor the and of-the fleet leaders
παραλαβόντες μεθ' ἑαυτῶν τόν τε Λεσβίων ἄρχοντα καὶ
having-taken with themselves the both of-Lesbians ruler and
πάντας τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ τούς τε ἄνδρας καὶ παῖδας καὶ
all the(-ones) with him the both men and children and
γυναῖκας σφῶν, τοὺς ἐπὶ ξυνοικισμῷ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
women of-them the(-ones) for resettlement of-the city and
λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἄλλην ἐνθέμενοι ταῖς ναυσὶν, ἀπέπλευσαν
booty as most other having-put on-the ships sailed-away
ἐπ' οἶκου ἔς τε Καλλιούπολιν καὶ Βυζάντιον, καὶ διέλυσαν
to home to both Kallipolis and Byzantium and dissolved
τὸν στόλον. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν διαφείς, αὐτὸς
the fleet emperor and the army having-dismissed himself
ξὺν τῇ ἰδίᾳ αὐλῇ, φθινοπώρου φθίνοντος ἤδη, ἀφικνεῖται
with the own court autumn waning already arrives
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον. Καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς
at — Byzantium and seventieth year besides the
ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
δεύτερον δὲ καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
second and and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor

13.1 Λέσβος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἑάλω καὶ Μιτυλήνη,
Lesbos indeed then thus by emperor was-taken and Mytilene
χρόνους ἤδη πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἡμᾶς τοῖσδε
years already fifty and hundred in the by us these
καιροῖς ἐνευδαιμονήσασά τε καὶ ἐπὶ μέγα δόξης ἀρθεῖσα
times having-prospered both and to great of-glory having-been-raised
καὶ δυναστείας καὶ πλούτου, ἐξ ὅτου δὴ τὸ πρῶτον
and of-power and of-wealth from when indeed the first

ἔσχε ταύτην παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ἐς ἰδίαν ἀρχὴν
had it from the emperor of-Romans for own rule
Νικορέζος ἐκεῖνος ὁ πρῶτος Γατελιούζων, ἀνὴρ Ἰταλὸς καὶ
Niccolò that the first of-Gattilusi man Italian and
τῶν εὖ γεγονότων· ὃς ἄγαν ξυνετὸς ὢν καὶ πεπαιδευμένος
of-the well born who exceedingly intelligent being and educated
καὶ ψυχῆς ἀνδρείαν πλουτῶν τοῖς τε ἄλλοις κατὰ σῶμα
and of-soul courage being-rich-in in-the both other in body
προτερήμασι κομῶν καὶ καλῶς εἰδὼς ἄριστα καὶ κάλλιστα
advantages priding-himself and well knowing best and finest
διέπειν ἀρχὴν, ἐς τοσοῦτον αὐτὴν ἐπῆρε καὶ τοῖς ὅλοις
to-administer rule to so-much it raised and in-the whole
ἀπέφηνε κρείττω ταῖς παρ' ἑαυτοῦ κατὰ μικρὸν ἐπιδόσεσι καὶ
showed better by-the from himself by little additions and
προσθήκαις, ὡς ἁμιλληθῆναι σχεδὸν ἐν πᾶσι τῇ παλαιᾷ
increments as to-vie nearly in all with-the ancient
ταύτης εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Οὐ μόνον γὰρ τὰ ξύνεγγυς καὶ περὶ
of-it prosperity not only for the(-places) nearby and around
αὐτὴν ἔσχε κατήκοα, ἀλλὰ καὶ Συρία πᾶσα καὶ Αἴγυπτος
it it-had subject but also Syria all and Egypt
αὐτὴν ἐδεδίει καὶ φόρον ἐτήσιον κατέβαλε, μισθοῦ τὴν εἰρήνην
it feared and tribute yearly paid as-pay the peace
ὠνουμένη παρὰ τοῦ ταύτης κρατοῦντος· ναυτικόν τε γὰρ εἶχε
buying from the of-it ruler navy both for it-had
καὶ ἔτρεφε λόγου ἄξιον, καὶ τριήρεις ἐκέκτητο πλείστας,
and maintained of-account worthy and triremes had-acquired very-many
τὰς μὲν πλοίμους, τὰς δὲ καὶ ἐν νεωρίοις, δι' ὧν
the(-ones) indeed seaworthy the(-ones) and also in dockyards through which
οὐ μόνον τὴν κατ' αὐτὴν θάλασσαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν κατ'
not only the by it sea but also the(-sea) by
Αἴγυπτον καὶ Συρίαν καὶ δὴ καὶ Λιβύην εἶχε δουλωσαμένη·
Egypt and Syria and indeed also Libya had having-enslaved

πᾶσαν γὰρ αὐτὴν ἐληίζετο καὶ ἐπόρθει λῃστείαις, ἕως, ἐς
all for it plundered and sacked with-brigandage until to
τοὺς ἐξ ἐκείνου τῆς ἀρχῆς μεταπεσούσης κατὰ διαδοχὴν
the(-ones) from that(-one) of-the rule having-passed by succession
καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ἐλασσουμένης τῷ χρόνῳ, τῶν τέ τοῦ
and by little diminishing in-the time of-the both of-the
βασιλέως προγόνων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως,
emperor forefathers but indeed also very of-the emperor
τὸ κράτος ἤδη τῆς καθ' αὑτοὺς θαλάσσης σχόντων καὶ
the power already of-the by them sea having-got and
πάντα τὰ ταύτῃ δουλωσαμένων, κατέστη καὶ αὕτη
all the(-places) there having-enslaved became also this
μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων κατήκοος βασιλεῖ καὶ φόρου ὑποτελὴς
with the others subject to-emperor and of-tribute subject
καὶ νῦν ἐδουλώθη τελείως. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
and now was-enslaved completely and these(-things) indeed thus

14.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου καταλαβὼν Μιτυληναίους
emperor and the of-Constantine(-city) having-reached Mytilenaeans
μὲν ἐν ἑνὶ χώρῳ καθίζει τῆς πόλεως, δοὺς αὐτῶν
indeed in one place settles of-the city having-given of-them
τοῖς μὲν οἰκίας, τοῖς δὲ χῶρον κατ' οἰκοδομὴν
to-the(-ones) indeed houses to-the(-ones) and place for building
οἴκων, τοῖς δὲ ἄλλο τι ὧν ἔχρῃζον· Νικορέζον
of-houses to-the(-ones) and other something of-what they-needed Niccolò
δὲ τὸν τούτων ἡγεμόνα τότε μὲν καθεῖρξε ἐν φυλακῇ,
and the of-these leader then indeed shut-in in guard
μικρὸν δὲ ὕστερον ἀπέκτεινε δι' αἰτίας. Αὐτὸς δὲ κελεύει
a-little and later killed for causes himself and orders
τὸ τάχος πρὸς ταῖς οὔσαις ναυσὶ καὶ ἑτέρας οὐκ ὀλίγας
the speed besides the existing ships also others not few
ναυπηγεῖσθαι, καὶ ναυτικὸν ἐκλέγειν ὅτι πολὺ πρὸς ταύτην
to-be-built and navy to-choose as large for this

καὶ μόνην τὴν ὑπηρεσίαν ἐκτεταγμένον ἐκ πάσης τῆς
and only the service assigned from all the
αὐτοῦ. Τῆς γὰρ θαλάσσης τὸ κράτος μέγα ὁρῶν, καὶ τὸ
his(-land) of-the for sea the power great seeing and the
τῶν Ἰταλῶν ναυτικὸν πολὺ ὂν καὶ ταύτης ἐπικρατοῦν,
of-the Italians navy large being and over-it prevailing
τῶν τε ἐν Αἰγαίῳ νήσων ἁπασῶν ἄρχον καὶ βλάπτον τὴν
of-the both in Aegean islands all ruling and harming the
αὑτοῦ παραλίαν οὐ μικρῶς, Ἀσιανήν τε καὶ Εὐρωπαίαν,
his coast not slightly Asian both and European
καὶ μάλιστα δὴ τὸ τῶν Ἐνετῶν, ἐβούλετο τοῦτο
and most indeed the(-navy) of-the Venetians he-wished this
κωλῦσαι τρόπῳ παντὶ, καὶ ξυμπάσης μὲν, εἴ γε δύναιτο,
to-hinder by-way every and of-all indeed if at-least he-could
τῆς θαλάσσης ἐγκρατῶς ἄρξαι, εἰ δ' οὐ, ἐκείνους κωλῦσαι
the sea mightily to-rule if but not them to-hinder
κακουργεῖν τὴν αὑτοῦ. Διά τοι τοῦτο ναυτικόν τε ἔσπευδε
to-harm the his(-land) because-of surely this navy both he-hastened
ξυστήσασθαι μέγα καὶ τῆς θαλάσσης τὸ κράτος σχεῖν.
to-assemble great and of-the sea the power to-have
Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ σκοπουμένῳ κράτιστον εἶναι
after and this it-seemed to-him considering strongest to-be
καὶ τῶν σφόδρα ἀναγκαίων· τόν τε τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου
and of-the(-things) very necessary the both — of-Hellespont
καὶ Χερρονήσου πορθμὸν φρουρίοις ἐρυμνοτάτοις διαλαβεῖν
and Chersonese strait with-fortresses strongest to-cut-off
ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ τὰς ἠπείρους ἀμφοτέρας ξυνάψαι, Ἀσίαν
on-either-side and the continents both to-join Asia
τε καὶ Εὐρώπην, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν ἄνω θάλασσαν τοῦ τε
both and Europe and all the upper sea — both
Εὐξείνου πόντου καὶ Ἑλλησπόντου, φημὶ, ἔσω ποιήσασθαι
of-Euxine sea and Hellespont I-mean within to-make

καὶ ἀσφαλίσασθαι ταύτην καλῶς, κλείσαντι τὸν πορθμὸν,
and to-secure it well for-one-having-shut the strait
ἵνα μὴ ἡ ταύτης παραλία τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπερχομένοις
so-that not the of-it coast by-the enemies coming-upon
λῃστεύηται, ὥσπερ δῆτα καὶ πρώην κἀν τῷ Βοσπόρῳ
be-plundered as indeed also formerly also-in — Bosporus
πεποίηκεν. Οὕτω δὴ διανοηθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς εὐθὺς πέμπει
he-has-done so indeed having-resolved the emperor at-once sends
τοὺς κατασκεψομένους τὸν χῶρον καὶ ἀναμετρήσοντας τὰ
the(-ones) going-to-survey the place and going-to-measure the
στενότατα τοῦ πορθμοῦ καὶ ῥοώδη. Οἱ δὲ παραγενόμενοι
narrowest(-parts) of-the strait and rushing they and having-arrived
καὶ ἀναμετρήσαντες εὗρον ὅτι στενώτατόν τε καὶ
and having-measured found that narrowest both and
ῥοωδέστατον τοῦ πορθμοῦ [τὸ κατὰ] τὴν μεταξὺ
most-rushing of-the strait the(-part) at the between
Μαδύτου καὶ Ἐλεοῦντος ἄκραν πρὸς τὴν ἀντιπέρας
Madytos and Eleous headland toward the opposite
ἤπειρον τῆς Ἀσίας, ἣ Δαρδανία καλεῖται, στάδιά που
mainland — of-Asia which Dardania is-called stades about
μάλιστα ὀκτὼ, ἐν ᾗ καί τι καὶ πύργου παλαιοῦ ἐρείπιον
most eight in which also some also of-tower ancient ruin
ἐτύγχανεν ὄν, ἀλύσει βουληθέντος τινὸς τῶν πρότερον
happened being with-chain having-wished someone of-the earlier
βασιλέων, ὡς λέγεται, κλεῖσαι τὸν πορθμὸν, καὶ μὴ
emperors as is-said to-shut the strait and not
δυνηθέντος, τῇ βίᾳ τοῦ πολλοῦ ῥοῦ ξυνελισσομένης τε
having-been-able by-the force of-the great current being-twisted both
καὶ ξυστρεφομένης καὶ ξυγκλωμένης ῥᾳδίως τῆς ἀλύσεως.
and turned and broken easily the chain
Ἐπανελθόντες οὖν ἀνήγγειλαν τοῦτο τῷ βασιλεῖ. Ὁ δὲ
having-returned then they-reported this to-the emperor he and

μετακαλεσάμενος ὅτι τάχιστα Ἰαγούπην τὸν σατράπην
having-summoned as quickly-as-possible Yakub the satrap
Καλλιουπόλεώς τε καὶ Χερρονήσου καὶ ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στόλου
of-Kallipolis both and of-Chersonese and leader of-the fleet
παντὸς καὶ τῆς παραλίας ἁπάσης, ἀνατίθησιν αὐτῷ τὸν
whole and of-the coast all entrusts to-him the
τειχισμὸν τῶν φρουρίων ὅτι τάχος ποιεῖν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην
walling of-the fortresses as quickly to-do and the other
τούτων πᾶσαν φροντίδα καὶ ἐπιμέλειαν, μηδὲν σπουδῆς
of-these all thought and care nothing of-zeal
ἀνιέντι. Καὶ ὃς οὐδὲν μελλήσας εὐθὺς ἐτείχιζε, χειρὶ
slackening and he nothing having-delayed at-once walled(-them) with-hand
πολλῇ καὶ προθυμίᾳ καὶ δαπάνῃ χρώμενος ἐς τὸ ἔργον.
much and eagerness and expense using for the work
Βασιλεὺς δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος τούτου παρεσκευάζετο ὡς 15.1
emperor and the winter this prepared as
ἅμα ἦρι στρατιὰν ἐλάσων κατὰ Παιόνων τῶν
at-once with-spring army going-to-drive against Paionians the(-ones)
ἐντὸς Σάου ποταμοῦ, οὓς καὶ Δαλμάτας καλοῦσιν, οἱ
within Saos river whom also Dalmatians call the(-ones)
δὲ νεώτεροι Βόστρους, ἔθνος μέγα τε καὶ πολὺ καὶ
and newer Bosnians nation great both and numerous and
μεγάλην ἔχον ἀρχὴν καὶ χώραν ὅτι πλείστην νεμόμενόν
great having rule and land as largest occupying
τε καὶ καρπούμενον ἀγαθὴν δυσχωρίαις τε μεγίσταις
both and enjoying good with-rough-grounds both greatest
κατωχυρωμένην καὶ ὄρεσι δυσβάτοις καὶ ἀποκρότοις
fortified and with-mountains impassable and rocky
καὶ τόποις τραχέσι καὶ ἀποκρήμνοις, προσέτι δὲ φρούριά
and places rough and precipitous besides and fortresses
τε ἔχουσαν ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πολίσματα ἰσχυρὰ καὶ δυσάλωτα
both having strong and towns strong and hard-to-take

καὶ ἡγεμόνας τῶν εὐδαιμόνων καὶ δυνατῶν. Ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ
and leaders of-the prosperous and powerful they-have and also
φιλίαν ἀεὶ καὶ ξυμμαχίαν μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Παιόνων
friendship always and alliance with the king of-Paionians
καὶ ὁμαιχμίαν τε καὶ πίστεις ἰσχυρὰς, ἦ μὴν, ἤν τις
and comradeship-in-arms both and pledges strong truly indeed if anyone
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπίῃ, ἀλλήλοις βοηθεῖν· οἷς πᾶσι θαρροῦντες
against them attack one-another to-help in-which all trusting
οὔτε σπονδὰς ἔχειν ἤθελόν ποτε μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, οὔτε
neither truces to-have wished ever with the emperor nor
δασμὸν αὐτῷ καταβάλλειν ἐτήσιον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅμοροι
tribute to-him to-pay yearly as the other neighboring
Ἰλλυριοί τε καὶ Τριβαλλοὶ, οὐδ᾽ ὅλως κατακούειν αὐτοῦ,
Illyrians both and Triballians nor at-all to-obey him
ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλάκις ἐς σπονδὰς σφᾶς προκαλουμένου
but also often to truces them calling
βασιλέως, ἀπηξίουν αὐτοὶ καὶ οὐ κατεδέχοντο σπένδεσθαι,
emperor refused themselves and not consented to-make-truce
αὐτόνομοί τε καὶ ἐλεύθεροι καὶ ἔκσπονδοι πάντη εἶναι
self-governing both and free and out-of-truce wholly to-be
βουλόμενοι. Διά τοι τοῦτο καὶ πολλάκις στρατιὰν
wishing because-of surely this also often army
πέμπων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐληίζετο τὴν αὐτῶν, κατατρέχων τε
sending the emperor plundered the their(-land) overrunning both
καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἀπάγων ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ παίδων καὶ
and booty as most leading-away of-men both and children and
γυναικῶν καὶ βοσκημάτων. Οἱ δὲ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον τῆς ἐξ
women and cattle they and nothing more from-the from
ἀρχῆς γνώμης ὑφεῖντο, ἀλλὰ τοῖς ἅπαξ δεδογμένοις
beginning judgment relaxed but by-the(-things) once resolved
ἐνέμενον, ἐπὶ τῷ σφετέρῳ μέντοι κακῷ. Ἐπὶ τούτοις οὖν
abided to the their-own however evil at these(-things) then

ὀργισθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν ἐκστρατείαν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐποιεῖτο,
angered the emperor the campaign against them made
καὶ δὴ καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος καὶ ὅπλα πολλὰ καὶ
and indeed well having-prepared and arms many and
μηχανὰς παντοίας καὶ στρατιὰν ὅτι πλείστην ξυναγαγὼν
engines of-all-kinds and army as most having-gathered
ἱππικήν τε καὶ πεζικὴν, ἔαρος ἐπιλάμποντος ἤδη, ἔξεισι
cavalry both and infantry spring shining already goes-out
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν χειρὶ πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει. Ἄρας οὖν ἐκ
against them with-hand much and power having-set-out then from
τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ
the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the army cavalry both and infantry
καὶ ἀεὶ σπουδῇ ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω, διαβαίνει τε
and always with-zeal driving to the(-places) forward crosses both
τὴν αὐτοῦ ταχέως καὶ γενόμενος ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις τῶν
the his(-land) quickly and having-come in the borders of-the
Βόστρων, στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ μικρὸν, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο
Bosnians encamps there a-little and after this
προσβάλλει τῇ χώρᾳ τούτων ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ κατατρέχει
attacks the land of-these strongly and overruns
ταύτην, σκηπτοῦ δίκην ἐμπίπτων καὶ ἐμπιπρῶν πάντα
it of-thunderbolt like falling-upon(-it) and burning all
καὶ διαφθείρων καὶ ἀφανίζων καὶ φρούρια ἐξαιρῶν, ἐς
and destroying and blotting-out and fortresses taking-out into
ἃ δὲ καὶ φρουρὰς ἐσάγων καὶ λείαν ἀπάγων καὶ πᾶσαν
which and also garrisons bringing-in and booty leading-away and all
ἤδη τὴν ἐν ποσὶ χειρούμενος, μηδενὸς ὅλως ἀνθισταμένου.
already the at feet subduing no-one at-all resisting
Διελάσας δὲ τὸ πλεῖστον τῆς χώρας ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς
having-driven-through and the most of-the land in not many
ἡμέραις τε καὶ καταδραμὼν, καὶ φρούρια πολλὰ καὶ
days both and having-overrun and fortresses many and

πολίσματα, ᾗπερ ἔφην, τὰ μὲν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς βίᾳ τοῖς
towns as I-said the(-ones) indeed by onslaught by-force with-the
ὅπλοις, τὰ δὲ καὶ προσχωρήσει ἑλὼν, γίνεται πρὸς
arms the(-ones) and also by-surrender having-taken he-comes to
τὸ ἄστυ, ἐν ᾧ ἦν καταφυγὼν ὁ τούτων ἡγεμών. Ἦν
the town in which was having-fled the of-these leader was
γὰρ ἐρυμνότατον τοῦτο Ἰάϊτζα καλούμενον τῇ ἐπιχώρῳ
for strongest this Jajce called in-the native
φωνῇ· καὶ κατακλείει τοῦτον ἐντὸς, καὶ προσφέρει λόγους
tongue and shuts-in him within and brings words
τοῖς ἐν αὐτῷ περὶ (τε) ἐνδόσεως ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ τοῦ
to-the(-ones) in it about both surrender of-themselves both and of-the
ἄστεος· ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἔπειθε πανταχόθεν περισταυρώσας τὸ
town when but not he-persuaded on-all-sides having-palisaded the
ἄστυ καὶ κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῷ στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς
town and in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the army and engines
ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει, καὶ τοῦ μὲν τείχους ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς
having-set-up besieged(-it) and of-the indeed wall in not many
ἡμέραις πολύ τι μέρος κατέσεισε ταῖς μηχαναῖς καὶ
days much some part he-shook-down with-the engines and
κατέβαλεν, ἔπειτα παρεσκευάζετο πάσῃ δυνάμει προσβαλεῖν
threw-down then prepared with-all power to-attack
αὐτῷ. Οἱ δὲ ἐντὸς τοῦ ἄστεος ὁρῶντες τό τε πολὺ
it the(-ones) and within the town seeing the both most
τοῦ τείχους κατερριμμένον καὶ τὸν βασιλέα ὅσον οὐκ ἤδη
of-the wall hurled-down and the emperor all but already
προσβαλοῦντα αὐτοῖς ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ δείσαντες μὴ βίᾳ
going-to-attack them strongly and having-feared lest by-force
ληφθέντες τοῖς ὅπλοις ἀπόλωνται, ἐπικηρυκεύονται κρύφα
taken by-the arms they-perish send-heralds secretly
τοῦ σφῶν ἡγεμόνος τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐνδιδόντες ἑαυτοὺς καὶ
from-the their leader to-the emperor surrendering themselves and

τὸ ἄστυ. Ὁ δὲ τούτων ἡγεμὼν αἰσθόμενος τοῦτο, νυκτὸς
the town the and of-these leader having-perceived this by-night
λαθὼν ἐξέρχεται τοῦ ἄστεος, λάθρα φυγάς. Οἱ δὲ
escaping-notice goes-out of-the town secretly as-fugitive the(-ones) and
τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν φυλακὴν ἔχοντες, γνόντες τοῦτον
of-the camp the guard having having-recognized him
καταδιώκουσιν ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ καταλαβόντες ζωγροῦσι καὶ
pursue strongly and having-overtaken(-him) take(-him)-alive and
ἀπάγουσιν ὡς βασιλέα. Ὁ δὲ τοῦτον εὐθὺς ἀπέκτεινεν.
lead(-him)-away to emperor he and him at-once killed
Οἱ δὲ τοῦ ἄστεος ἐξελθόντες παραδιδόασιν ἑαυτούς τε
the(-ones) and of-the town having-gone-out hand-over themselves both
καὶ τὸ ἄστυ τῷ βασιλεῖ· καὶ ὃς δέχεται τούτους ἡμέρως,
and the town to-the emperor and he receives them mildly
καὶ δωρησάμενος πολυτρόπως δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς κατοικεῖν
and having-rewarded(-them) in-many-ways gives to-them to-inhabit
τὸ ἄστυ ξὺν γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι
the town with wives and children and the possessions all
σῶς καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθεῖς, τὸν ξυνήθη μέντοι γε καὶ μόνον
safe and of-evils unharmed the customary however at-least and only
δασμὸν ἀποφέροντας ἐτησίως. Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐσέρχεται καὶ
tribute paying yearly after this enters also
αὐτὸς ἐς τὸ ἄστυ καὶ θεᾶται τοῦτο καλῶς, καὶ ἔδοξεν
himself into the town and views it well and it-seemed
αὐτῷ πάνυ ἰσχυρὸν, καὶ ἀναγκαία ἡ τούτου κατάσχεσίς τε
to-him very strong and necessary the of-it holding both
καὶ φυλακὴ, καὶ πρὸς τὸν προκείμενόν οἱ σκοπὸν σφόδρα
and guarding and for the proposed his aim exceedingly
χρήσιμος· κεῖται γὰρ ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τῆς χώρας, ὅμορον ὂν
useful it-lies for in vantage of-the land bordering being
τῇ Παιόνων, καὶ δύναται στρατιὰν δεχόμενον ἱκανὴν
on-the of-Paionians(-land) and is-able army receiving sufficient

μεγάλα βλάπτειν αὐτήν. Διὰ τοῦτο καὶ προὔργου τὴν
greatly to-harm it because-of this also advantageous the
τούτου κατάσχεσιν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐποιεῖτο· φρουρὰν οὖν
of-it holding the emperor made garrison then
ἱκανὴν ἐγκαταστήσας αὐτῷ καὶ φρούραρχον ἕνα τῶν
sufficient having-established in-it and fortress-commander one of-the
οἰκείων καταλιπών, τὴν στρατιὰν ἀναλαβὼν αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τὰ
household having-left the army having-taken himself to the
λοιπὰ τῆς χώρας ἐτράπετο, καὶ πρὶν τὸ θέρος ὅλον ἐξήκειν,
rest of-the land turned and before the summer whole to-end
καταστρέφεται πᾶσαν τὴν Βόστρων καὶ Δαλματῶν καὶ
subdues all the of-Bosnians(-land) and of-Dalmatians and
ληίζεται καὶ χειροῦται φρούρια ὀλίγῳ ἐλάσσω τριακοσίων,
plunders and subdues fortresses by-little fewer than-three-hundred
ξυλλαμβάνει δὲ καὶ τέσσαρας τῶν αὐτῆς ἡγεμόνων.
seizes and also four of-the its leaders

16.1 Τοῦ δ' αὐτοῦ θέρους καὶ Ἐνετοὶ λύσαντες τὰς μετὰ
of-the and same summer also Venetians having-broken the with
βασιλέως σπονδὰς, πόλεμον ἐξήνεγκαν αὐτῷ, ἔχοντες
emperor truces war brought against-him having
ἐγκλήματα δι' αἰτίας τοιάσδε. Ἀμάρης γὰρ ὁ Πελοποννήσου
charges for causes such Omar for the of-Peloponnese
καὶ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος σατράπης, ἐκ πάνυ μικρῶν
and of-the other Hellas satrap from very small
αἰτιῶν ὁρμηθεὶς, μᾶλλον δὲ οὐδὲ τούτων, ἀλλ' ὀργὴν
causes having-set-out rather and not-even these but anger
ἔχων τοῖς Ἐνετοῖς, ὅτι γε οὐ προσεῖχον αὐτῷ φιλικῶς,
having at-the Venetians that at-least not they-attended to-him in-friendly-way
οὐδὲ χάριτας παρεῖχον ὡς σατράπῃ καὶ γειτονοῦντι καὶ
nor favors provided as to-satrap and neighbor and
δυναμένῳ βλάπτειν αὐτοὺς, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ὑπερορᾶσθαι
being-able to-harm them but thinking to-be-disregarded

καὶ βουλόμενος ἀμύνασθαι τούτους, καιρὸν φυλάξας
and wishing to-avenge-himself-on them time having-watched-for
ἀπροσδοκήτοις ἐπέρχεται τοῖς ἐν τῇ Ναυπάκτῳ καὶ
on-unexpecting(-men) comes the(-ones) in — Naupaktos and
κατατρέχει Ναύπακτόν τε καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν καὶ
overruns Naupaktos both and the(-places) around it and
λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἀπάγει ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ βοσκημάτων
booty as most leads-away of-men both and cattle
καὶ παίδων καὶ γυναικῶν· ἅτε γὰρ αἴφνης ἐπεσπεσὼν καὶ
and children and women as for suddenly having-fallen-upon and
μηδέν τι τοιοῦτον προσδεχομένοις μηδὲ προσδοκοῦσιν ὅλως
nothing any such expecting nor anticipating at-all
αὐτοῖς ἐν εἰρήνῃ τε καὶ σπονδαῖς, μεγάλα ἔβλαψε, μᾶλλον
them in peace both and truces greatly he-harmed rather
δὲ ὀλίγου ἐδέησε καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἄστυ λαβεῖν· οὐ μόνον δὲ,
and by-little he-fell-short also very the town to-take not only and
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ πόλεις αὐτῶν Κορώνειαν καὶ
but also the in Peloponnese cities their Koroni and
Μεθώνην καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς κακῶς ἐποίει, προφάσεις ἐπάγων
Methoni and the rest badly treated pretexts bringing
ἀεὶ καὶ αἰτίας κενάς. Ἔδοξεν οὖν βαρὺ τοῦτο λίαν τοῖς
always and causes empty it-seemed then heavy this very to-the
Ἐνετοῖς καὶ μεγίστη πρόφασις ἐς τὸ πολεμεῖν καὶ ἄλλως
Venetians and greatest pretext for the to-make-war and otherwise
ὠδίνουσι τὸν πρὸς βασιλέα πόλεμον, ἐξ ὅτου δὴ τὴν
being-in-labor-with the against emperor war from when indeed —
Πελοπόννησον ἐχειρώσατο· ἀεὶ γάρ ποτε προσεδόκων ἕξειν
Peloponnese he-subdued always for ever expected to-have
αὐτὴν οὗτοι, καὶ νομίζοντες ἰδίαν οὖσαν ἀποβαλεῖν, καιρὸν
it these and thinking own being to-have-lost(-it) time
ἐζήτουν καὶ προφάσεις τινὰς πόλεμον ἐξενεγκεῖν βασιλεῖ καὶ
they-sought and pretexts some war to-bring-against emperor and

στρατεῦσαι ἐπ᾽ αὐτήν. Δραξάμενοι οὖν τῶν αἰτιῶν τούτων,
to-campaign against it having-grasped then the causes these
εὐθὺς καὶ ἄνευ πρεσβείας ἡστινοσοῦν καὶ τοῦ λόγοις
at-once and without embassy any and the by-words
μᾶλλον ἐθελῆσαι τὰ διάφορα λῦσαι, στρατιὰν μεγάλην καὶ
rather to-wish the differences to-settle army great and
στόλον διαπόντιον ἐξαρτύουσι τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ τριήρεων
fleet overseas fit-out — against-Peloponnese of-triremes
ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ὁλκάδων μεγάλων. Πληρώσαντες οὖν
seventy and merchantmen great having-manned then
αὐτὰς ἐπιβατῶν, καὶ ὁπλίτας ἐπιβιβάσαντες ὅτι πολλοὺς καὶ
them with-marines and hoplites having-put-aboard as many and
στρατιώτας καταφράκτους τε καὶ μαχίμους ἐκ τῶν ἰδίων
soldiers armored both and warlike from the own
καταλόγων καὶ τάξεων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ξένους μισθοφόρους
registers and ranks but indeed also foreign mercenaries
ὡς πλείστους καὶ ὅπλα παντοῖα ἐνθέμενοι καὶ μηχανὰς
as most and arms all-kinds having-put-in and engines
πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια, ἔτι δὲ καὶ σίδηρον πολὺν
stone-throwing and launchers further and also iron much
καὶ ξύλα καὶ ἄσβεστον καὶ τεχνίτας καὶ οἰκοδόμους καὶ
and timbers and lime and craftsmen and builders and
ἐργαλεῖα τὰ ἐς οἰκοδομὴν ἐπιτήδεια καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα
tools the(-ones) for building suitable and whatever such
ἐπιφορτίσαντες καὶ καλῶς ἐξαρτύσαντες διὰ πάντων, καὶ
having-loaded and well having-fitted-out through all and
στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἑλόντες ἄνδρα τὸν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς
general with-full-power having-chosen man the among them
δοκιμώτατον καὶ τῶν ὀνομαστῶν ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ στρατηγικῇ
most-approved and of-the renowned for courage and generalship
ἀρετῇ κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν, ἐκπέμπουσι τὸν στόλον.
virtue by land both and sea they-send-out the fleet

Ἄραντες οὖν ἐκ τῆς αὐτῶν δυνάμει τε πολλῇ καὶ
having-set-out then from the their(-land) with-force both much and
παρασκευῇ τῇ πάσῃ καὶ περιφανεῖ στρατιᾷ καὶ λαμπραῖς
preparation the whole and conspicuous army and brilliant
ἐλπίσιν, ἔπλεον τὸν Ἀδρίαν τε καὶ Ἰόνιον, παραπλεύσαντες
hopes they-sailed — Adriatic both and Ionian having-sailed-past
δὲ Κέρκυράν τε καὶ Λευκάδα διὰ τῶν ἐπικειμένων
and Corfu both and Leukas through the lying-off
νήσων Ἰθάκης τε καὶ Κεφαλληνίας, προσίσχουσι τῇ Ἤλιδι
islands Ithaca both and Kephallenia they-put-in — at-Elis
ἄκρᾳ τῆς Πελοποννήσου, κἀκεῖθεν γίνονται κατὰ τὸ Ῥίον
headland — of-Peloponnese and-thence they-come at — Rhion
τὸ Ἀχαϊκὸν, καὶ διαβαλόντες τὸν Κρισαῖον καταίρουσι
the Achaean and having-crossed the Krisaian(-gulf) they-land
ἐς τὴν Κορινθίαν ἐν τῷ Ἰσθμῷ, καὶ ἀποβάντες τῶν
at — Corinthia at — Isthmus and having-disembarked from-the
νεῶν στρατοπεδεύονται αὐτοῦ· τοῦτον γὰρ ἐβούλοντο
ships encamp there this for they-wished
πρῶτον τειχίσαι καὶ προκαταλαβεῖν, ἔπειτα τῇ ὅλῃ
first to-wall and to-seize-first then the whole
Πελοποννήσῳ ἐπιχειρῆσαι. Ἐκφορήσαντες οὖν πᾶσαν
Peloponnese to-attempt having-carried-out then all
ἀποσκευήν τε καὶ χρείαν καὶ διαλαβόντες τὸν ἰσθμὸν
baggage both and need and having-cut-off the isthmus
ἀπ᾽ ἄκρου ἐς ἄκρον πάσῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἐτείχιζον χειρὶ
from headland to headland with-all the army they-walled(-it) with-hand
πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει, ἔτι δὲ καὶ σπουδῇ καὶ προθυμίᾳ
much and power further and also zeal and eagerness
τῇ πάσῃ χρώμενοι. Ἀπέστησαν δὲ τότε εὐθὺς καί τινα
the whole using revolted and then at-once also some
τῶν φρουρίων καὶ πολισμάτων τοῦ βασιλέως ἔν τε τῇ
of-the fortresses and towns of-the emperor in both the

μεσογείᾳ καὶ παραλίᾳ, καὶ προσέθεντο αὐτοῖς, ἐν οἷς
inland and coast and joined them in which
καὶ φρουροὺς ἐγκατέστησαν· οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ
also guards they-established not only and but also the
ἄλλη πᾶσα Πελοπόννησος μετέωρος ἦν, ἀποσκοποῦσα
other all Peloponnese in-suspense was watching
τὸ μέλλον, ὥστε καὶ αὐτὴ ἀποστῆναι τοῦ βασιλέως.
the future so-as also itself to-revolt from-the emperor
Ἀμάρης δὲ ξυναγαγὼν πάντας τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν καί
Omar and having-gathered all the(-ones) under him and
τινας τῶν ἐκ Πελοποννήσου Ἰλλυριῶν προσλαβόμενος
some of-the from Peloponnese Illyrians having-taken-in-addition
καὶ στρατιὰν οὐ πολλὴν ἀθροίσας, ἐκάθητο ἐν Κορίνθῳ,
and army not large having-collected sat in Corinth
φυλάσσων τε αὐτὴν, καὶ στρατιὰν ἐκδεχόμενος παρὰ
guarding both it and army awaiting from
βασιλέως· ἤδη γὰρ ἦν πέμψας ἄγγελον ὡς αὐτὸν, εὐθὺς
emperor already for he-had sent messenger to him at-once
καταχθέντος τοῦ στόλου, ἀγγελοῦντα τὴν ἔφοδον τούτου,
having-put-in the fleet going-to-report the approach of-it
καὶ ἅμα καιρὸν ἐπιτήδειον παραφυλάττων ἐπιθέσθαι
and at-once time suitable watching-for to-attack
αὐτοῖς. Καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτως. Βασιλεὺς δὲ πυθόμενος τὴν
them and he indeed thus emperor and having-learned the
ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἐκστρατείαν τῶν Ἐνετῶν καὶ τὸν τοῦ
into Peloponnese campaign of-the Venetians and the of-the
ἰσθμοῦ τειχισμὸν, οὐκέτι ἐν ἀναβολαῖς τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐτίθει,
isthmus walling no-longer in postponements the affair he-set
ἀλλ' εὐθὺς μετακαλεσάμενος Μαχουμούτεα τὸν πασίαν καὶ
but at-once having-summoned Mahmud the pasha and
στρατιὰν αὐτῷ δοὺς ἱκανὴν ὁπλιτῶν τε καὶ τοξοτῶν
army to-him having-given sufficient of-hoplites both and archers

καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους
and of-the(-ones) from the own court the most-warlike
τε καὶ εὐοπλωτάτους, ἐκπέμπει ἐς Πελοπόννησον. Αὐτὸς
both and best-armed sends(-him)-out to Peloponnese himself
δὲ καταστησάμενος πάντα τὰ ἐν τοῖς Βόστροις
and having-settled all the(-things) among the Bosnians
καλῶς τε καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν, φρουρούς τε
well both and as was to-him according-to mind guards both
καὶ φρουράρχας τῇ τε Ἰαΐτζῃ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τῶν
and fortress-commanders — both for-Jajce and the other of-the
φρουρίων ἐγκαταστήσας ὅσα μὴ κατέσκαψε, σατράπην
fortresses having-established as-many-as not he-razed satrap
τε ξὺν στρατιᾷ ἱκανῇ τῇ χώρᾳ καταλιπὼν ἄνδρα τῶν
both with army sufficient for-the land having-left man of-the
ὀνομαστῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ στρατηγίᾳ, καὶ λείαν
renowned with him for courage and generalship and booty
ἐλάσας ὅτι πολλὴν αὐτός τε καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς,
having-driven as much himself both and to-the army having-distributed
ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, φθινοπώρου λήγοντος ἤδη.
returns to the of-Hadrian(-city) autumn ending already
Καὶ ἓν δὴ καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις
and one indeed and seventieth year besides the nine-hundred
τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο, τρίτον δὲ
both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed third and
καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor

Mahmud routs the Venetians at the Isthmus and takes Argos, while the king of the Paionians retakes Jajce and Mehmed fails to win it back; the Venetians besiege Mytilene in vain. Mehmed rests his army, has George Amiroutzes map Ptolemy's world in Arabic, and twice campaigns against the Illyrians, founding a fortress to blockade Krujë. Plague sweeps Thrace and the capital, and he spends the autumn beyond the Haimos.

Περιέχει ἥδε τόν τε πόλεμον Ἐνετῶν καὶ τὴν ἐς
it-contains this(-book) the both war of-Venetians and the into
Βόστρους δευτέραν προσβολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
Bosnians second attack of-the emperor further and also
τὴν ἐς Ἰλλυριοὺς πρώτην καὶ δευτέραν ἐκστρατείαν τοῦ
the into Illyrians first and second campaign of-the
βασιλέως καὶ ὡς ὑπηγάγετο ταύτην καὶ πόλιν ἐτείχισεν
emperor and how he-won-over it and city walled
ἐν αὐτῇ. Χρόνου πλῆθος ἔτη τέσσαρα.
in it of-time length years four

1.1 Μαχουμούτης δὲ ἀφικόμενος ἐς Πελοπόννησον
Mahmud and having-arrived at Peloponnese
στρατοπεδεύεται ἐκτὸς τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ πρὸς τῇ ὑπωρείᾳ τοῦ
encamps outside — Isthmus by the foothill —
Κιθαιρῶνος, καὶ πέμψας ἄγγελον κρύφα κοινολογεῖται
of-Kithairon and having-sent messenger secretly confers
Ἀμάρῃ, δηλῶν τε τὴν αὐτοῦ ἄφιξιν καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ
with-Omar signifying both the his arrival and of-the army and
πυνθανόμενος τὰ ἐν τῷ Ἰσθμῷ πάντα καὶ τὰ τῶν
learning the(-things) in — Isthmus all and the(-things) of-the
πολεμίων ὡς ἔχει. Καὶ ξυνθέμενοι τὴν ἐπίθεσιν ἐς ἡμέραν
enemies how they-stand and having-agreed-on the attack for day
ῥητὴν μετά γε ξυνθήματος ἡσύχαζον. Ἐνετοὶ δὲ σπουδῇ τε
stated with at-least signal they-kept-quiet Venetians and with-zeal both

πολλῇ καὶ προθυμίᾳ καὶ πολυχειρίᾳ χρώμενοι ἐς τὸ ἔργον,
much and eagerness and numbers using for the work
ἐπετέλουν αὐτὸ ταχέως· καὶ γὰρ ἅπαν τὸ τεῖχος ἐξήνυσαν,
completed it quickly and for all the wall they-finished
πλὴν τριῶν ἢ τεττάρων σταδίων, οὐ μέντοι γε ἐς ὕψος
except three or four stades not however at-least to height
ἱκανὸν ἦραν αὐτὸ, ἀλλ' ὅσον ἐκ τούτου ἀπομάχεσθαι
sufficient they-raised it but as-much-as from it to-fight-back
ἀσφαλῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀμάρης καιρὸν φυλάξας
safely in this and Omar time having-watched-for
ἐς ἐπίθεσιν, σημαίνει τῷ Μαχουμούτει, καὶ ἀπὸ ἑνὸς
for attack signals — to-Mahmud and from one
ξυνθήματος ὁρμηθέντες ἄμφω προσβάλλουσι τῷ στρατοπέδῳ
signal having-set-out both attack the camp
τῶν πολεμίων, ὁ μὲν ἐντὸς, ὁ δὲ ἐκτὸς ἐπιθέμενοι,
of-the enemies the(-one) indeed within the(-one) and outside having-attacked
βοῇ τε πολλῇ καὶ κραυγῇ καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ χρωμένων
with-shout both much and crying and war-cry using
τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ γίνεται ἀγὼν ἐνταῦθα μέγας καὶ
the soldiers and comes-about contest there great and
ὠθισμὸς καὶ μάχη καρτερὰ ξυσταδὸν καὶ φόνος πολύς· ἐν
pushing and battle fierce hand-to-hand and slaughter much in
ᾗ μικρὸν μὲν χρόνον ἀντέσχον οἱ Ἐνετοὶ δεξάμενοι τοὺς
which little indeed time held-out the Venetians having-received the
ὁπλίτας, ἔπειτα τραπέντες ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος ἀτάκτως τε
hoplites then routed fled with all-speed in-disorder both
καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ, οἱ δὲ ὁπλῖται ἐπέκειντο κτείνοντες
and with no order the and hoplites pressed killing
ἀφειδῶς καὶ ζωγροῦντες σφᾶς, ἕως ἀφίκοντο ἐς τὴν
unsparingly and taking-alive them until they-came to the
θάλασσάν τε καὶ τὰς ναῦς. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ βίᾳ τε πολλῇ
sea both and the ships there indeed with-force both much

καὶ μόγις ἐσβάντες ἐς τὰς τριήρεις οἱ Ἐνετοὶ ἀνήχθησαν
and scarcely having-embarked into the triremes the Venetians put-out
ἐπὶ μετεώρου μικρὸν ἀνακωχεύσαντες, ὅσον ἐκτὸς βέλους
to open-sea a-little having-held-back as-much-as outside missile
εἶναι, καὶ ἐδέχοντο τοὺς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης νηχομένους·
to-be and received the(-ones) from sea swimming
πολλοὶ γὰρ βιαζόμενοι ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ῥίπτοντες τὰ
many for forced by the enemies throwing-down the
ὅπλα ἔπιπτον ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ξὺν ὅπλοις,
arms fell into the sea the(-ones) and even with arms
καὶ ἀπενήχοντο οἱ μὲν ἐς τὰς ναῦς, οἱ δὲ καὶ
also swam-away the(-ones) indeed to the ships the(-ones) and also
ἀπεπνίγοντο βάρει τῶν ὅπλων. Ἀπέθανον δὲ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
were-drowned by-weight of-the arms died and in the battle
πλῆθος πολὺ τῶν πολεμίων, ἀστῶν τε καὶ ξένων, καὶ
multitude much of-the enemies citizens both and foreigners and
αὐτὸς ὁ στρατηγὸς, ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς γενόμενος, ἐλήφθησαν
himself the general man good having-become were-taken
δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ὀλίγῳ ἐλάσσους τριακοσίων. Οἱ δὲ δὴ
and also alive by-little fewer than-three-hundred the and indeed
στρατιῶται διαρπάζουσι τὸ στρατόπεδον ὅλον. Εὑρέθη δὲ
soldiers plunder the camp whole was-found and
ἐν αὐτῷ χρήματά τε πολλὰ καὶ ἔπιπλα καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ
in it money both much and furnishings and drinking-cups and
ἄλλη τις οὐκ ὀλίγη ἀποσκευή τε καὶ χρεία, ἐλήφθη δὲ καὶ
other some not small baggage both and need were-taken and also
ὅπλα πολλὰ, τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ σκύλων τῶν νεκρῶν, τὰ
arms many the(-ones) indeed from spoils of-the dead the(-ones)
δὲ καὶ ἀποκείμενα, καὶ μηχαναὶ παντοῖαι καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα.
and also stored and engines of-all-kinds and whatever such

Μαχαμούτης δὲ μετὰ τοῦτο ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν ἔσεισιν 2.1
Mahmud and after this having-taken the army enters
ἐς τὴν μεσόγειαν Πελοποννήσου μετὰ τοῦ Ἀμάρεος ἐπὶ τὰ
into the inland of-Peloponnese with — Omar against the
ἀποστάντα τῶν φρουρίων καὶ τοὺς ἄλλως νεωτερήσαντας
revolted(-ones) of-the fortresses and the(-ones) otherwise having-rebelled
Πελοποννησίων καὶ ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις χειροῦται τά
of-Peloponnesians and in not many days subdues the
τε φρούρια καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πάντα, τὰ μὲν βίᾳ
both fortresses and the other(-things) all the(-ones) indeed by-force
τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὰ δὲ καὶ πειθοῖ προσαγόμενος. Μετὰ
with-the arms the(-ones) and also by-persuasion winning-over after
δὲ τοῦτο ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Ἄργος, πόλιν τῶν Ἐνετῶν, καὶ
and this arrives at Argos city of-the Venetians and
στρατοπεδεύεται πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος, καὶ προσφέρει λόγους
encamps before the town and brings words
τοῖς ἐν αὐτῷ περὶ ἐνδόσεως ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ τοῦ
to-the(-ones) in it about surrender of-themselves both and of-the
ἄστεος. Οἱ δὲ Ἀργεῖοι ὁρῶντες τό τε πλῆθος τῆς στρατιᾶς
town the and Argives seeing the both multitude of-the army
περιστοιχίσαν τὴν πόλιν κύκλῳ, τό τε σφῶν τεῖχος ἀσθενὲς
having-encircled the city in-circle the both their wall weak
καὶ ἐπίμαχον ὅλον, ἐπικουρίαν τε μηδεμίαν ποθὲν ἢ
and assailable whole help both no from-anywhere either
ἔχοντες ἢ ὅλως ἕξειν ἐλπίζοντες, μὴ ἐκ προσβολῆς
having or at-all going-to-have hoping lest by assault
βίᾳ ληφθῶσι τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ ἀπόλωνται, παραδιδόασιν
by-force they-be-taken with-the arms and perish hand-over
ἀμαχὶ ἑαυτούς τε καὶ τὴν πόλιν Μαχουμούτει, τὰ πιστὰ
without-fighting themselves both and the city to-Mahmud the pledges
λαβόντες. Ὁ δὲ πάντας αὐτοὺς ἀποικίζει ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον ξὺν
having-received he and all them transplants to — Byzantium with

γυναιξὶ καὶ τέκνοις καὶ τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι πᾶσι σῶς καὶ κακῶν
wives and children and the possessions all safe and of-evils
ἀπαθεῖς, τὴν δὲ πόλιν κατέσκαψε. Διαθέμενος δὲ τὰ
unharmed the and city he-razed having-arranged and the(-things)
ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ πάντα καλῶς τε καὶ ὡς ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ
in Peloponnese all well both and as was to-him according-to
νοῦν καὶ φρουροὺς τοῖς φρουρίοις πᾶσι ἐγκαταστήσας ἄνδρας
mind and guards in-the fortresses all having-established men
τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλικῆς αὐλῆς τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους,
of-the(-ones) from the royal court the most-warlike
τά τε ἄλλως νεωτερήσαντα διορθωσάμενός τε καὶ
the(-things) both otherwise having-rebelled having-set-right both and
παραδοὺς Ἀμάρει πάντα, αὐτὸς λαβὼν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τούς
having-handed-over to-Omar all himself having-taken with himself the
τε ζωγρηθέντας ἄνδρας ἐν τῷ Ἰσθμῷ καὶ οὓς εὗρεν ἐν τοῖς
both taken-alive men in — Isthmus and whom he-found in the
φρουρίοις τῶν Ἐνετῶν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τοὺς νεωτερήσαντας
fortresses of-the Venetians but indeed also the having-rebelled
Πελοποννησίων καὶ λείαν τινὰ οὐ πολλὴν, ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν
of-Peloponnesians and booty some not much returns to the
Κωνσταντίνου, χειμῶνος μεσοῦντος ἤδη. Βασιλεὺς δὲ τοὺς
of-Constantine(-city) winter mid already emperor and the
μὲν Ἀργείους πάντας κατοικίζει ἐν τῇ μονῇ τῇ Περιβλέπτῳ
indeed Argives all settles in the monastery — Peribleptos
καλουμένῃ, δοὺς αὐτοῖς καὶ οἰκίας καὶ ἀμπέλους καὶ
called having-given to-them both houses and vineyards and
ἀγροὺς, τοὺς δὲ ληφθέντας ἄνδρας οὓς ἔφην τῶν
fields the and taken men whom I-mentioned of-the
πολεμίων τούς τε ἐν τοῖς φρουρίοις ἁλόντας τούς τε
enemies the(-ones) both in the fortresses captured the(-ones) both
νεωτερήσαντας Πελοποννησίων πάντας ἀπέκτεινεν.
having-rebelled of-Peloponnesians all he-killed

Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις καὶ Ἰαγούπης ὁ σατράπης 3.1
in and the same days also Yakub the satrap
Καλλιουπόλεως τὰ ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ φρούρια ἐξετέλεσε καὶ
of-Kallipolis the in Hellespont fortresses completed and
φρουρὰν ἐγκατέστησε τούτοις καὶ ὅπλα ἐσήνεγκε πλεῖστα
garrison established in-these and arms brought-in very-many
καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπέστησε πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια, δι᾽
and engines set-up stone-throwing and launchers through
ὧν ἔμελλε τὸν ἔσπλουν ἀεὶ καὶ ἔκπλουν κωλύειν τῶν
which he-was-going the sailing-in always and sailing-out to-hinder of-the
ἀναπλεόντων ἢ καταπλεόντων σκαφῶν, ὅτε καὶ ὧν
sailing-up or sailing-down vessels when also of-whom
βούλοιτο, τά τε ἄλλα πάντα πεποίηκε κατὰ τὴν
he-might-wish the both other(-things) all he-has-done according-to the
τοῦ βασιλέως ὑφήγησιν· καὶ ἀπετελέσθη ἔργον μέγα καὶ
of-the emperor guidance and was-completed work great and
πάντων ἐξῃρημένον καὶ λόγου πολλοῦ καὶ θαύματος ἄξιον,
from-all set-apart and of-account much and of-wonder worthy
ὅπερ οὔτε τῶν παλαιῶν Ἑλλήνων τις οὔτε τῶν πάλαι
which neither of-the ancient Hellenes anyone nor of-the of-old
μεγάλων βασιλέων καὶ στρατηγῶν, Ῥωμαίων τέ φημι καὶ
great kings and generals of-Romans both I-mean and
Περσῶν, ἐπὶ νοῦν ἐβάλλετό ποτε, οὔτε ἐδυνήθη βαλὼν,
of-Persians into mind put ever nor was-able having-put
διαστῆσαί τε τὴν ἄνω θάλασσαν τῆς κάτω θαλάσσης
to-separate both the upper sea from-the lower sea
καὶ τελείως ἀπεῖρξαι καὶ ὅλως ἄβατόν τε καὶ ἄπλωτον
and completely to-bar and wholly impassable both and unsailable
καταστῆσαι τοῖς ἀναπλεῖν ἢ καταπλεῖν βουλομένοις
to-make for-the(-ones) to-sail-up or to-sail-down wishing
πᾶσι, πλὴν οἷς βούλοιτο, ὥσπερ πύλας ἑκατέρωθεν τὰ
all except for-whom he-might-wish as gates on-either-side the

φρούρια ἐπιθεὶς, καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας πετροβόλους, δι᾽
fortresses having-set and engines having-set-up stone-throwing through
ὧν πόρρωθεν ἀνασοβοῦνται καὶ τριήρεις καὶ ὁλκάδες
which from-afar are-scared-off both triremes and merchantmen
αἱ μέγισται καὶ ἄλλο πᾶν καὶ μικρὸν καὶ μέγα ἀκάτιον,
the greatest and other every both small and great skiff
εὐθὺς δὴ καὶ μόνον πλησιάσαντα καταγνύμενά τε καὶ
at-once indeed also only having-approached shattered both and
ἀπολλύμενα τοῖς ἐκ τῶν μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένοις παμμεγέθεσι
destroyed by-the from the engines let-fly huge
λίθοις, ὥσπερ τῇ Σκύλλῃ ξυμπλακέντα καὶ τῇ Χαρύβδει.
stones as — with-Scylla entangled and — Charybdis
Ξέρξης μὲν γὰρ ἔζευξε πάλαι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον τοῦτον,
Xerxes indeed for yoked of-old — Hellespont this
ἀλλὰ σχεδίᾳ καὶ γεφύρᾳ ξυλίνῃ, ἥτις οὔτε πρός τε
but with-raft and bridge wooden which neither against both
τὰς τῶν ἀνέμων καὶ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐμβολὰς ἐπὶ πολὺ
the of-the winds and of-the sea assaults for long
ἂν ἀντίσχειν ἐδυνήθη, καὶ μέντοι γε οὐδὲ ἀντέσχε,
— to-hold-out was-able and indeed at-least not-even held-out
καὶ ἐχθρῶν ἐπελθοῦσα δύναμις ῥᾳδίως ἂν αὐτὴν βίᾳ
and of-enemies having-come force easily — it by-force
διέλυσεν· ἐνταῦθα δὲ οὐδέν τι τοιοῦτον ὅλως οὔτε
would-have-broken-up here but nothing any such at-all neither
ἔστιν οὔτε γενέσθαι δύναται· οὔτε γὰρ θαλάσσης τε καὶ
is nor to-happen can neither for of-sea both and
ἀνέμων ἐμβολαὶ καὶ ἐπίρροιαι οὔτε ἐχθρῶν καὶ πολεμίων
of-winds assaults and inflows nor of-enemies and foes
ἐπελθοῦσα δύναμις δύνανται ταύτην παραβλάψαι τὸ
having-come force can it to-harm the

ξύνολον ἢ καὶ ὁπωσοῦν βιάσασθαι· οὕτως ἀνάλωτός τε
whole or also in-any-way to-force so uncapturable both
καὶ ἰσχυρὸς ὁ δεσμὸς οὗτος ἐγεγόνει καὶ ἡ σχεδία αὕτη.
and strong the bond this had-become and the raft this
Τοῦ δ' αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος καὶ βασιλεὺς ὁ Παιόνων τε καὶ 4.1
of-the and same winter also king the of-Paionians both and
Δακῶν ἐστράτευσεν ἐπὶ τὴν Δαλματῶν καὶ Βόστρων
Dacians campaigned against the of-Dalmatians and Bosnians
χώραν, ἣν πρώην ἐχειρώσατο βασιλεὺς, ὅπως, εἰ δύναιτο,
land which formerly subdued emperor so-that if he-could
κατάσχῃ ταύτην καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ φρούρια ἐξέλῃ καὶ μάλιστα
he-might-seize it and the in it fortresses take-out and most
δὴ τὴν Ἰάϊτζαν, ἐξελάσας τοὺς βασιλέως φρουρούς·
indeed — Jajce having-driven-out the emperor's guards
δεινότατον γάρ οἱ πάντων ἐδόκει εἶναι καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ
most-terrible for to-him of-all seemed to-be also of-the his
χώρας τε καὶ ἀρχῆς βλάβη τε μεγίστη καὶ κατάλυσις
land both and rule harm both greatest and dissolution
προφανὴς ἡ τῆς χώρας ταύτης καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ φρουρίων
manifest the of-the land this and of-the in it fortresses
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κατάσχεσις, ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τε τῆς αὐτοῦ
by the emperor holding in vantage both of-the his(-land)
κειμένης καὶ πάντοθεν ὁμόρου τῇ Παιόνων οὔσης καὶ
lying and on-all-sides bordering on-the of-Paionians(-land) being and
πρὸς καταδρομὴν ταύτης ἐπιτηδείας. Προσβαλὼν οὖν αὐτῇ
for overrunning of-it suitable having-attacked then it
μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἱκανῆς καὶ παρασκευῆς, ἀφιστᾷ μὲν εὐθὺς τὰ
with army sufficient and preparation detaches indeed at-once the
πλείω τῶν φρουρίων ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως, τὰ μὲν πειθοῖ
most of-the fortresses from the emperor the(-ones) indeed by-persuasion
καὶ λόγοις προσαγόμενος, τὰ δὲ φόβῳ καὶ ἀπειλαῖς,
and words winning-over the(-ones) and by-fear and threats

ἔστιν ἃ δὲ καὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐς δὲ
it-is which and also with-the arms having-subdued into and
τὴν Ἰάϊτζαν ἐλθὼν, αἱρεῖ καὶ ταύτην ἀπόνως, τῶν ἔνδον
— Jajce having-come takes also it without-toil the(-ones) within
στασιασάντων τε καὶ σφαγὰς ἐργασαμένων ἀλλήλων καὶ
having-quarreled both and slaughters having-worked on-one-another and
προσχωρησάντων ἑκουσίως αὐτῷ. Διαγαγὼν δὲ οὐ πολλὰς
having-gone-over willingly to-him having-spent and not many
ἡμέρας αὐτοῦ καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενος ἰσχυρὰς ἐν αὐτῇ
days there and guards having-established strong in it
τε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τῶν φρουρίων ἄνδρας καταφράκτους
both and the other of-the fortresses men armored
τε καὶ μαχίμους καὶ ὅπλα καὶ σῖτον ὅτι πλεῖστον
both and warlike and arms and grain as most
ἐσαγαγὼν ἀνεχώρησεν ἐπ᾽ οἴκου. Καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτως.
having-brought-in withdrew to home and he indeed thus
5.1 Βασιλεὺς δὲ τοῦτο πυθόμενος καὶ βαρέως διατεθεὶς πρὸς
emperor and this having-learned and heavily disposed at
τὴν ἀκοὴν, παρεσκευάζετο εὐθὺς ἐκστρατεῦσαι χειρὶ
the hearing prepared at-once to-campaign with-hand
πολλῇ καὶ δυνάμει, οὐ μόνον κατὰ τῆς Βόστρων καὶ
much and power not only against the of-Bosnians(-land) and
τῶν ἀποστάντων φρουρίων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐς αὐτὴν
the revolted fortresses but indeed also into very
τὴν Παιόνων ἐσβάλλειν. Στρατιὰν τοίνυν ὅτι πλείστην
the of-Paionians(-land) to-invade army therefore as most
ἀγείρας ἱππικήν τε καὶ πεζικὴν καὶ ὅπλα πολλὰ καὶ
having-gathered cavalry both and infantry and arms many and
μηχανὰς πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια ξυναγαγὼν καὶ
engines stone-throwing and launchers having-brought-together and
καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος πᾶσι τοῖς ὑπάρχουσι χειμῶνος,
well having-prepared with-all the possessions in-winter

εὐθὺς ἦρος ἀρχομένου ἔξεισι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν. Ἄρας οὖν ἐκ
at-once spring beginning goes-out against them having-set-out then from
τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἱππικῷ τε καὶ πεζικῷ,
the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the army cavalry both and infantry
ξυνεπαγόμενος ἅμα οἱ καὶ τὰς μηχανὰς καὶ χαλκὸν καὶ
bringing-along at-once with-him also the engines and bronze and
σίδηρον ὅτι πολὺν, γίνεται κατὰ τὴν χώραν τῶν Βόστρων.
iron as much he-comes at the land of-the Bosnians
Καὶ γενόμενος ἐν αὐτῇ πρῶτα μὲν ἔγνω δεῖν ἐς
and having-come in it first indeed he-resolved to-be-needful to
Ἰάϊτζαν ἐλθεῖν καὶ ἐπιχειρῆσαι ταύτῃ, εἴ γε δύναιτο
Jajce to-go and to-attempt it if at-least he-could
παραστήσασθαι ἢ ὁμολογίᾳ ἢ τοῖς ὅπλοις βίᾳ, ἔπειτα
to-bring-to-terms either by-agreement or with-the arms by-force then
καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα χωρῆσαι. Προσελάσας οὖν αὐτῇ καὶ
also to the other(-things) to-go having-ridden-up then to-it and
στρατόπεδον βαλλόμενος πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος, λόγους προσφέρει
camp pitching before the town words brings
πρῶτον τοῖς ἐν αὐτῇ περί (τε) ἐνδόσεως ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ
first to-the(-ones) in it about both surrender of-themselves both and
τοῦ ἄστεος τὰ πιστὰ λαβοῦσιν· ὡς δ᾽ οὐκ ἔπειθε,
of-the town the pledges for-those-having-received when but not he-persuaded
πρῶτα μὲν τὰ ἔξω τῆς χώρας ἐδῄωσε καὶ ἐνέπρησε
first indeed the(-parts) outside of-the land he-laid-waste and burned
πάντα, ἔπειτα χάρακα πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος βαλλόμενος καὶ
all then palisade before the town pitching and
κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν τῷ στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας
in-circle having-surrounded(-it) with-the army and engines having-set-up
ἐπολιόρκει, καὶ ἡμέρας μέν τινας οὐ πολλὰς κατέσειε τὸ
besieged(-it) and days indeed some not many shook the
τεῖχος καὶ κατερρίπτει ταῖς μηχαναῖς· ὡς δ᾽ ἱκανὸν ἐδόκει
wall and hurled-down with-the engines when but sufficient seemed

αὐτῷ τὸ καταρριφθὲν, παρεσκευάζετο προσβάλλειν τῷ
to-him the(-part) hurled-down he-prepared to-attack the
τείχει πάσῃ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει. Καλῶς οὖν ἐκτάξας τε
wall with-all hand and power well then having-drawn-up both
καὶ ὁπλίσας τὴν στρατιὰν προσέβαλλε πανταχόθεν, ἐπὶ
and having-armed the army he-attacked from-all-sides at
δὲ τὸ κατερριμμένον τοῦ τείχους ἔταξεν ἑαυτὸν ξὺν τῇ
and the hurled-down(-part) of-the wall posted himself with the
ἰδίᾳ αὐλῇ καὶ τῷ ἀκραιφνεῖ τοῦ στρατοῦ, ὁπλίταις τέ
own court and the unimpaired(-part) of-the army hoplites both
φημι καὶ τοξόταις καὶ σφενδονήταις καὶ τουφακοφόροις τὰ
I-mean and archers and slingers and musketeers the
μάλιστα. Εὐθὺς οὖν λαβόντες οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ξύνθημα,
most at-once then having-received the soldiers the signal
μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν ἀλαλάξαντες ὁρμῇ πολλῇ καὶ
great and fearful having-raised-the-war-cry with-impulse much and
σπουδῇ ἐχώρουν δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τὸ κατερριμμένον τοῦ τείχους,
zeal went running to the hurled-down(-part) of-the wall
καὶ ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειρῶντο βίᾳ. Οἱ δὲ δὴ Παίονες
and to-climb tried by-force the and indeed Paionians
ἀντεπίασι καὶ αὐτοὶ μάλα θρασέως τε καὶ εὐρώστως
counter-attack also themselves very boldly both and stoutly
μετὰ κραυγῆς ἀσήμου καὶ βοῆς· καὶ ξυνίσταται δὴ μάχη
with shouting inarticulate and cry and arises indeed battle
καρτερὰ ξυσταδὸν καὶ μέγας ἀγὼν ἐνταῦθα καὶ ὠθισμὸς
fierce hand-to-hand and great contest there and pushing
πολὺς καὶ βοὴ ξυμμιγὴς παρ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων καὶ βλασφημία
much and shout mingled from both and abuse
καὶ φόνος οὐκ ὀλίγος, καὶ ἀμφοτέρων ἀνδρῶν ἀγαθῶν
and slaughter not small and both men good
γινομένων, τῶν μὲν βιαζομένων ἐσελθεῖν καὶ λαβεῖν τὸ
becoming the(-ones) indeed forcing to-enter and to-take the

ἄστυ, τῶν δὲ ἀπεώσασθαι τούτους καὶ φυλάξαι τὰ
town the(-ones) and to-thrust-back them and to-guard the(-things)
ὄντα, παῖδάς τέ φημι καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ τιμιώτατα.
existing children both I-mean and wives and the most-precious(-things)
Καὶ ποτὲ μὲν βιαζόμενοι οἱ ὁπλῖται τοὺς Παίονας
and sometimes indeed forcing the hoplites the Paionians
ἐπεκράτουν καὶ ἐπέβαινον τοῦ τείχους, ποτὲ δὲ πάλιν
prevailed and mounted the wall sometimes and again
ὠθούμενοι ὑπὸ τῶν Παιόνων ἐξηλαύνοντο βίᾳ, καὶ
pushed by the Paionians were-driven-out by-force and
ἀπέθνησκον αὐτοῦ οὐκ ὀλίγοι μαχόμενοί τε καὶ πίπτοντες.
died there not few fighting both and falling
Καὶ τοῦτο ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν χρόνον ἐγίνετο, μαχομένων
and this for sufficient time went-on fighting
ἀμφοτέρων γενναίως· ἔπειτα ἐπεκράτουν πολλῷ οἱ Παίονες
both nobly then prevailed by-much the Paionians
καὶ οἱ ὁπλῖται πιεζόμενοι σφόδρα ἐκακοπάθουν, πίπτοντες
and the hoplites pressed exceedingly suffered falling
αὐτοῦ πολλοὶ γενναῖοι καὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες. Βασιλεὺς δὲ
there many noble and good men emperor and
ὁρῶν οὕτω κακοπαθοῦντας καὶ ἀπολλυμένους τοὺς ἄνδρας
seeing so suffering and perishing the men
βαρέως ἔφερε σφόδρα, καὶ τότε μὲν ἀναχώρησιν σημήνας
heavily bore(-it) exceedingly and then indeed withdrawal having-signaled
ἐκέλευσεν ἔξω γενέσθαι βελῶν· καὶ ἀνεχώρουν· μετὰ δὲ
ordered outside to-come of-missiles and they-withdrew after and
ταῦτα πάλιν, ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις, διαναπαύσας τε τὴν
these(-things) again in not many days having-rested both the
στρατιὰν καὶ ὁπλίσας καὶ ἐκτάξας καλῶς, προσέβαλλεν
army and having-armed and having-drawn-up well he-attacked
ἰσχυρῶς τῷ πολίσματι, καὶ ἦγεῖτο πρῶτος αὐτὸς, ἆθλά

τε προκηρύξας, τὰ δὲ καὶ προθεὶς πλεῖστα καὶ
both having-proclaimed the(-ones) and also having-set-forth very-many and
μέγιστα καὶ τιμὰς καὶ χάριτας οὐκ ὀλίγας τοῖς πρώτοις
greatest and honors and favors not few for-the first
ἐπιβᾶσι τοῦ τείχους, προσέτι δὲ καὶ διαρπαγὴν καὶ
having-mounted the wall besides and also plunder and
σκυλμὸν προσημήνας πάντων τῶν ἐν τῷ ἄστει. Καὶ οἱ
spoiling having-announced of-all the(-things) in the town and the
στρατιῶται μέγα καὶ φοβερὸν ἀλαλάξαντες εὐθὺς οἷά
soldiers great and fearful having-raised-the-war-cry at-once like
τινες πτηνοὶ ὁρμῇ πολλῇ καὶ δρόμῳ ἀτάκτως τε
some winged(-creatures) with-impulse much and running in-disorder both
καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ καὶ λογισμῷ χωροῦσιν ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος
and with no order and reckoning go to the wall
καὶ ἐπιβαίνειν ἐπειρῶντο αὐτοῦ, οἱ μὲν κλίμακας
and to-climb tried it the(-ones) indeed ladders
ἐπιτιθέντες, οἱ δὲ σχοίνους ἐξαρτῶντες, οἱ δὲ
placing the(-ones) and ropes hanging the(-ones) and
πασσάλους ἐγκαταπηγνύντες τῷ τείχει, οἱ δὲ ἄλλῳ τῳ
stakes fixing-in the wall the(-ones) and by-other any
τρόπῳ δυνατῷ βιαζόμενοι ἐσελθεῖν, ἅτε γὰρ τοῦ βασιλέως
way possible forcing to-enter as for the emperor
παρόντος καὶ θεωμένου τὰ δρώμενα καὶ τὴν ἑκάστου
being-present and watching the(-things) being-done and the of-each
καὶ ὁρμὴν καὶ σπουδὴν καὶ ῥώμην καὶ ἀνδρίαν καὶ τάξιν,
both impulse and zeal and strength and courage and rank
καὶ ἆθλα μέγιστα προσδοκῶντες ἐκ τούτου λήψεσθαι οὐ
and prizes greatest expecting from this to-take not
μικρὰ ἐφρόνουν, ἀλλ᾽ ἕκαστος πρῶτος αὐτός τε εἶναι
small(-things) they-thought but each first himself both to-be
ἐβούλετο καὶ ὁ τοῦ τείχους ἐπιβὰς καὶ ὁ

Παίονα κτείνας καὶ ὁ τὴν σημαίαν τῷ τείχει καὶ τῇ
Paionian having-killed and the(-one) the standard to-the wall and the
ἐπάλξει προσαγαγών. Οἱ δὲ δὴ Παίονες εὐρώστως μάλα
battlement having-brought the and indeed Paionians stoutly very
καὶ μετὰ θράσους ὅτι πολλοῦ καὶ ὁρμῆς καὶ τάχους ξὺν
and with boldness as much and impulse and speed with
βοῇ ἀσήμῳ ἀπήντων τε καὶ ἐδέχοντο τούτους γενναίως
shout inarticulate met both and received them nobly
καὶ ἰσχυρῶς· καὶ ξυνίσταται μάχη τις ἐνταῦθα καρτερὰ
and strongly and arises battle some there fierce
καὶ φρικώδης, καὶ οἵαν οὐδεὶς οὔτ' εἶδεν οὔτ' ἤκουσεν ἐπὶ
and dreadful and such-as no-one neither saw nor heard in
τειχομαχίᾳ γεγενημένην ποτὲ, καὶ μάλιστα δὴ περὶ τὸ
wall-fighting having-happened ever and most indeed around the
κατερριμμένον τοῦ τείχους· μεθυσθέντες γὰρ τῷ πολέμῳ
hurled-down(-part) of-the wall made-drunk for by-the war
καὶ ὅλους δι' ὅλων ἑαυτοὺς ἐκδόντες ὀργῇ καὶ θυμῷ,
and wholly through whole themselves having-given-over to-anger and fury
καὶ σχεδὸν τὴν φύσιν ἠγνοηκότες, κατέκαινον ἀλλήλους καὶ
and nearly the nature having-forgotten they-killed one-another and
κατέκοπτον ἀνοικτὶ, βάλλοντες, βαλλόμενοι, τιτρώσκοντες,
cut-down pitilessly shooting being-shot wounding
τιτρωσκόμενοι, φονεύοντες, φονευόμενοι, βοῶντες, ὑβρίζοντες,
being-wounded slaughtering being-slaughtered shouting insulting
βλασφημοῦντες, μηδενὸς ἐπαισθανόμενοι τῶν παρόντων
blaspheming nothing perceiving of-the present(-things)
ὅλως ἢ τῶν δρωμένων, ὥσπερ οἱ μαινόμενοι.
at-all or of-the(-things) being-done as the(-ones) raging
Ἔπιπτον οὖν πολλοὶ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες μαχόμενοι τῶν τε
fell then many and good men fighting of-the both
ὁπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλικῆς αὐλῆς μάλιστα,
hoplites and of-the(-ones) from the royal court most

ἀφειδοῦντές τε ἑαυτῶν καὶ αἰσχυνόμενοι τῷ πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν
unsparing both of-themselves and ashamed by-the before eyes
ὁρᾶν τὸν βασιλέα· ξὺν αὐτοῖς γὰρ ἦν ἀγωνιζόμενος.
to-see the emperor with them for he-was contending
Οἱ δὲ Παίονες ἐπεκράτουν πολλῷ πανταχοῦ, ἄνωθέν
the and Paionians prevailed by-much everywhere from-above
τε μαχόμενοι καὶ ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων βάλλοντες καὶ μάλα
both fighting and from above shooting and very
εὐρώστως ἀγωνιζόμενοι· ἦσαν γὰρ ἅπαντες ἀγαθοὶ καὶ
stoutly contending they-were for all good and
μάχιμοι ἄνδρες, ἀριστίνδην ἐξειλεγμένοι. Βασιλεὺς δὲ ὁρῶν
warlike men by-merit chosen emperor and seeing
τοὺς ἄνδρας φθειρομένους παρὰ πολὺ, τό τε ἔργον οὐδαμοῦ
the men being-destroyed by much the both work nowhere
προχωροῦν ἔτι, ἀλλ' ἐς ἀδύνατα σχεδὸν καθιστάμενον
advancing any-longer but to impossibilities nearly coming
τὸ πολέμῳ καὶ ὅπλοις ἐκ προσβολῆς βίᾳ τὸ ἄστυ ἑλεῖν,
the by-war and arms by assault by-force the town to-take
λιμῷ δὲ μόνον καὶ πολιορκίᾳ μακρᾷ, ἀναχώρησιν ἐσήμηνε
by-hunger but only and siege long withdrawal signaled
τῇ στρατιᾷ· καὶ ἐγένοντο ἔξω βελῶν. Ἀναχωρήσας οὖν
to-the army and they-came outside missiles having-withdrawn then
ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ὁ βασιλεὺς παρεσκευάζετο ἐς μὲν
to the camp the emperor prepared to indeed
τὸ ἄστυ στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν ἀπολιπεῖν πολιορκοῦσάν τε καὶ
the town army sufficient to-leave besieging both and
φυλάσσουσαν τοῦ μή τι τῶν ἔνδον ἐξαγαγεῖν ἢ
guarding from-the not anything of-the(-things) within to-bring-out or
τῶν ἔξωθεν ἐσκομίσασθαι, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τῇ λοιπῇ
of-the(-things) from-outside to-bring-in himself and with the rest

στρατιᾷ ἔς τε τὴν ἄλλην χώραν ἐσβαλεῖν ἐπὶ τὰ
army into both the other land to-invade against the
ἀποστάντα τῶν φρουρίων, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐς τὴν Παιόνων.
revolted(-ones) of-the fortresses but indeed also into the of-Paionians(-land)
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἦκεν ἀγγελία φράζουσα τὸν βασιλέα 6.1
in this and came report telling the king
Παιόνων στρατιὰν ὅτι πλείστην ἀγείραντα ὅσον οὐκ ἤδη
of-Paionians army as most having-gathered all but already
ἐπιέναι αὐτῷ. Οὗτος γὰρ εὐθὺς ὡς ἔγνω τὴν ἐς τὴν
to-attack him this-one for at-once when he-learned the into the
Βόστρων ἐσβολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἄστεος
of-Bosnians invasion of-the emperor and the of-the town
Ἰαΐτζης πολιορκίαν, στρατιὰν μεγάλην ἀθροίσας καὶ πᾶσιν
Jajce siege army great having-collected and with-all
οἷς εἶχεν ἱκανῶς παρασκευασάμενος ἐξῄει ἐναντία τῷ
which he-had sufficiently having-prepared went-out against the
βασιλεῖ, νομίσας οὕτως ἢ λύσειν τὴν πολιορκίαν τοῦ
emperor having-thought so either to-break the siege of-the
ἄστεος, τρέψαντα ἐς ἑαυτὸν τόν τε βασιλέα καὶ τὴν
town having-turned toward himself the both emperor and the
στρατιὰν, ἢ δίχα διαιρεθείσης τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔς τε πόλεμον
army or in-two divided the army into both war
καὶ πολιορκίαν, ἀσθενεστέρῳ χρήσεσθαι προσπολεμῆσαι τῷ
and siege weaker(-one) to-have to-fight-against the
βασιλεῖ· ἀλλ' ἐσφάλη τῆς γνώμης. Βασιλεὺς γὰρ τοῦτο
emperor but he-was-deceived in-the judgment emperor for this
μαθὼν, αὐτὸς μὲν ἐς Ἰάϊτζαν μένειν ἐγνώκει δεῖν
having-learned himself indeed at Jajce to-remain resolved to-be-needful
πολιορκῶν καὶ μηδαμοῦ ταύτης ἀπαναστῆναι, Μαχουμούτεα
besieging and nowhere from-it to-rise-up Mahmud
δὲ, δοὺς αὐτῷ στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν ἱππικήν τε καὶ πεζικὴν
and having-given to-him army sufficient cavalry both and infantry

καὶ μέρος οὐκ ὀλίγον τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς, ἐξέπεμψεν ἐναντία
and part not small of-the own court sent-out against
τῷ βασιλεῖ Παιόνων· οὐ γὰρ αὐτός γε ἠξίου διὰ μάχης
the king of-Paionians not for himself at-least deemed-fit through battle
τούτῳ ἰέναι. Μαχουμούτης δὲ τὴν στρατιὰν ἀναλαβὼν
with-this-one to-go Mahmud and the army having-taken
ἤλαυνε κατὰ σπουδήν· καὶ γενόμενος ἔγγιστά που τῶν
drove with haste and having-come nearest somewhere to-the
πολεμίων στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ. Ἦν δὲ τὸ μεταξὺ τοῖν
enemies encamps there was and the between the
στρατοπέδοιν στάδιά που μάλιστα πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, ὥστε
two-camps stades about most five and twenty so-as
ἀλλήλους ὁρᾶν· διείργε δὲ αὐτοὺς μέσος ἀπ' ἀλλήλων
one-another to-see separated and them in-the-middle from one-another
Ἐρυγὼν ποταμὸς, ὃς τῇ ἐπιχωρίῳ φωνῇ νῦν Βρῦνος
Erygon river which in-the native tongue now Vrbas
καλεῖται· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ ἦν ἐστρατοπεδευκὼς πέραν τοῦ
is-called there for was having-encamped across the
ποταμοῦ ὁ τῶν Παιόνων βασιλεύς. Μαχουμούτης μὲν
river the of-the Paionians king Mahmud indeed
οὖν ἐβούλετο διαβὰς τὸν ποταμὸν ξυμμίξαι τοῖς Παίοσι,
then wished having-crossed the river to-engage the Paionians
βασιλεὺς δὲ πέμπων διεκώλυεν αὐτὸν, μηδεμίαν ἀνάγκην
emperor and sending prevented him no necessity
εἶναι λέγων, τό γε νῦν ἔχον, τῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διαβάσεως,
to-be saying the at-least now being of-the of-the river crossing
ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖν μένοντα αὐτόθι ἐφεδρεύειν τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων
but to-suffice remaining there to-lie-in-wait for-the of-the enemies
πράγμασι. Μαχουμούτης μὲν οὖν ἔμενεν ἡσυχάζων καὶ
affairs Mahmud indeed then remained keeping-quiet and
τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἀποσκοπῶν. Ὁ δὲ τῶν Παιόνων
the(-things) of-the enemies watching the and of-the Paionians

ἡγεμὼν, ὡς ἔγνω τόν τε βασιλέα πολιορκοῦντα τὸ ἄστυ
leader when he-learned the both emperor besieging the town
καὶ μηδαμοῦ τούτου ἀπανιστάμενον, καὶ τὸν Μαχουμούτεα
and nowhere from-it rising-up and — Mahmud
μετὰ στρατιᾶς ὅτι πλείστης ἐφεδρεύοντα αὐτῷ, ἀπογνοὺς
with army as greatest lying-in-wait for-him having-despaired
ὅλως τοῦ φανερῶς δύνασθαι βοηθῆσαι τῷ ἄστει, πέμψας
wholly of-the openly to-be-able to-help the town having-sent
ἄγγελον κρύφα διειλέχθη τοῖς ἐν αὐτῷ ἀντέχειν τε καὶ
messenger secretly conversed with-the(-ones) in it to-hold-out both and
μηδαμοῦ ἐνδιδόναι, ὡς ταχείας τε οὔσης τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως
nowhere to-surrender as quick both being the of-the emperor
ἀναχωρήσεως πάλιν, καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ οὐ περιιδεῖν, ἀλλὰ
withdrawal again and himself too not to-overlook but
καιροῦ καλοῦντος καὶ χρείας ἀναγκαίας κατεπειγούσης,
time calling and need necessary pressing
βοηθήσειν τὰ δυνατὰ, ἐγγὺς αὐτοῦ που τυγχάνων.
to-help-with the possible(-means) near there somewhere happening(-to-be)
Κἀκείνοις μὲν ταῦτα. Αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐμπρήσας
and-to-those indeed these(-things) himself and the camp having-burned
νυκτὸς ἀπάρας ᾤχετο ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Μαχουμούτης δ' ὡς
by-night having-set-out went-off with the army Mahmud and when
ἤσθετο, κατὰ τάχος διαβὰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἤλαυνε κατὰ
he-perceived with speed having-crossed the river drove with
σπουδὴν διώκων, καὶ καταλαβὼν αὐτοὺς, ξυμβάλλει τοῖς
haste pursuing and having-overtaken them engages the(-ones)
ὄπισθεν, μέρος οὖσι τῆς στρατιᾶς οὐκ ὀλίγον ἐς φυλακὴν
behind part being of-the army not small for guard
τῶν σκευοφόρων, καὶ τρεψάμενος ἐδίωκε μέχρι τῆς
of-the baggage-train and having-routed(-them) pursued as-far-as the
ἄλλης στρατιᾶς· οἱ δ' ἐπεσπεσόντες ἄφνω, διετάραξάν τε
other army they and having-fallen-upon suddenly confounded both

αὐτὴν καὶ τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ φυγὴ γίνεται καρτερὰ, πάντων
it and the king and flight comes-about violent all
ὁμοῦ φευγόντων ἀτάκτως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ καὶ
together fleeing in-disorder both and with no order and
λογισμῷ. Μαχουμούτης δὲ εἵπετο κτείνων τε καὶ φονεύων
reckoning Mahmud and followed killing both and slaughtering
σφᾶς ἀνοικτὶ, διώξας δὲ μέχρι πολλοῦ καὶ φόνον πολὺν
them pitilessly having-pursued and until far and slaughter much
ἐργασάμενος καὶ πολλοὺς ζωγρήσας ἀνεχώρησε καὶ ἦκεν
having-worked and many having-taken-alive withdrew and came
ἐς βασιλέα, λαβὼν πᾶσαν αὐτῶν τὴν ἀποσκευὴν καὶ
to emperor having-taken all their the baggage and
τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ ὅπλα καὶ ἵππους καὶ τοὺς σκευοφόρους
the wagons and arms and horses and the baggage-carriers
αὐτούς. Ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν πολεμίων πλεῖστοι, ἐλήφθησαν
themselves died and of-the enemies very-many were-taken
δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ὀλίγῳ ἐλάσσους διακοσίων, οὓς ὕστερον
and also alive by-little fewer than-two-hundred whom later
ἀγαγὼν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ πάντας ἀπέκτεινεν ὁ βασιλεύς.
having-brought to Byzantium all killed the emperor
Αὐτὸς δὲ ἡμέρας οὐ πολλὰς ἐπιμείνας τῇ πολιορκίᾳ καὶ
himself and days not many having-remained at-the siege and
πολυτρόπως πειράσας τοῦ ἄστεος, ὡς οὐδὲν ἤνυεν,
in-many-ways having-tried the town when nothing he-accomplished
ἀπογνοὺς τὴν αἵρεσιν τούτου, ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν
having-despaired-of the taking of-it having-taken the army
τρέπεται πρὸς τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν φρουρίων, καὶ παραστησάμενος
turns to the rest of-the fortresses and having-brought-to-terms
ταῦτα ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις, τοῖς μὲν, ὅσα γε
these in not many days in-the(-ones) indeed as-many-as at-least
ἐδόκει αὐτῷ, φρουρὰς ἐγκαθίστησιν ἰσχυρὰς, ἔστιν ἃ
seemed(-good) to-him garrisons establishes strong it-is which

δὲ καὶ κατέσκαψε· τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἀπέκτεινε, παῖδας δὲ
and also he-razed the and men killed children and
καὶ γυναῖκας ἠνδραποδίσατο. Καταδραμὼν δὲ καὶ τῆς
and women enslaved having-overrun and also of-the
ἄλλης χώρας τὸ πλεῖστον, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῆς Παιόνων
other land the most but indeed also of-the of-Paionians(-land)
οὐκ ὀλίγον, καὶ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι πολλὴν αὐτὸς καὶ τῇ
not little and booty having-driven as much himself and to-the
στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς καὶ σατράπην τῇ χώρᾳ καταλιπὼν,
army having-distributed and satrap for-the land having-left
θέρους λήγοντος ἤδη ἐπάνεισιν ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου,
summer ending already returns to the of-Constantine(-city)
καὶ διέλυσε τὴν στρατιάν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς οὕτως.
and dissolved the army and the indeed emperor thus
Ἐνετοὶ δὲ τοῦ αὐτοῦ θέρους ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ Λέσβον καὶ 7.1
Venetians and of-the same summer campaigned against Lesbos and
Μιτυλήνην τριήρεσι ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ὁλκάσι μεγάλαις καὶ
Mytilene with-triremes seventy and merchantmen great and
τρισχιλίοις ὁπλίταις, οὓς εἶχον ἐπὶ τῶν καταστρωμάτων,
three-thousand hoplites whom they-had on the decks
ἔφερον δὲ καὶ ὅπλα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς ὁλκάσι καὶ μηχανὰς
they-carried and also arms many in the merchantmen and engines
πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια καὶ κλίμακας καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην
stone-throwing and launchers and ladders and all other
κατασκευὴν τῶν ἐς τειχομαχίαν ἐπιτηδείαν. Καὶ
equipment of-the(-things) for wall-fighting suitable and
ἀφικόμενοι ἐς Λέσβον κατῆραν ἐς τὸν λιμένα Μιτυλήνης,
having-arrived at Lesbos put-in into the harbor of-Mytilene
καὶ ἀποβάντες στρατόπεδον τιθέασι πρὸ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
and having-disembarked camp set before the city and
προσφέρουσι λόγους τοῖς ἐν τῇ πόλει περὶ ἐνδόσεως
bring words to-the(-ones) in the city about surrender

ἑαυτῶν τε καὶ τῆς πόλεως. Οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο·
of-themselves both and of-the city they and not accepted
ἦσαν γὰρ ἐν αὐτῇ φρουροὶ ἄνδρες λογάδες κατάφρακτοι
there-were for in it guards men picked armored
τετρακόσιοι τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλικῆς αὐλῆς. Οἱ δὲ
four-hundred of-the(-ones) from the royal court they and
πρῶτον μὲν ἔκειραν μέρος τι τῆς γῆς· οὐ γὰρ ἐβούλοντο
first indeed ravaged part some of-the land not for they-wished
πᾶσαν δῃῶσαι, προσδοκῶντες αὐτὴν λήψεσθαι· μετὰ δὲ
all to-lay-waste expecting it to-be-going-to-take after and
τοῦτο περισχόντες ἐν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν τῷ στρατῷ
this having-surrounded in circle all the city with-the army
κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν ταῖς ναυσὶ, καὶ μηχανὰς
by land both and by sea with-the ships and engines
ἐπιστήσαντες ἐπολιόρκουν. Καὶ τοῦ μὲν τείχους αὐτοὶ
having-set-up besieged(-it) and of-the indeed wall they
μὲν κατέσειον ἡμέρας τι μέρος μικρὸν ταῖς μηχαναῖς
indeed shook by-day some part small with-the engines
καὶ κατερρίπτουν· οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει πάλιν ἀνώρθουν
and hurled-down the(-ones) and in the city again set-upright
αὐτὸ νυκτὸς, λίθους τε καὶ ξύλα καὶ χοῦν ἐπιφοροῦντες,
it by-night stones both and timbers and soil bringing-on
προσέτι δὲ καὶ κεραίας μεγάλας ἐπάγοντες περιεσταύρουν
besides and also beams great bringing-up palisaded
τὸ τεῖχος, τὰς δὲ καὶ ἐξαρτῶντες ἁλύσεσιν, ἐξεκαύλιζον
the wall the(-beams) and also hanging-out by-chains cut-short
τὴν φορὰν τῶν λίθων, καὶ οὐδὲν τοσοῦτον ἐβλάπτοντο.
the motion of-the stones and nothing so-much were-harmed
Ἐγίνοντο δὲ καὶ καθ' ἡμέραν ἀκροβολισμοί τινες καὶ
happened and also by day skirmishes some and
ἐπεκδρομαὶ ἐπεξιόντων τῶν βασιλείων τοῖς Ἐνετοῖς·
sallies sallying the emperor's(-men) against-the Venetians

οὐ μὴν καὶ ἀπέθνησκόν τινες, ἀλλ' ἐτιτρώσκοντο μόνον
not indeed also died any but were-wounded only
πολλοί. Ὑπώρυττον δὲ καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἔστιν οὗ, ὑπονόμους
many they-undermined and also the wall it-is where tunnels
πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ποιοῦντες, καὶ κλίμακας ἐπήγνυσαν, καὶ
toward the city making and ladders fixed and
μηχανὰς παντοίας ἐξήρτυον. Προσεχώρησαν δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ
engines of-all-kinds fitted-out went-over and to-them also
τῶν ἄλλων πολισμάτων δύο, καὶ ἦσαν ἐν ἐλπίσιν ἤδη
of-the other towns two and they-were in hopes already
μεγίσταις καὶ Μιτυλήνην ἑλεῖν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πᾶσαν
greatest both Mytilene to-take and the other all
Λέσβον κατασχεῖν καὶ χειρώσασθαι. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐν τούτοις
Lesbos to-seize and to-subdue and they indeed in these(-things)
ἦσαν. Βασιλεὺς δὲ μαθὼν τὴν ἐς Μιτυλήνην ἔφοδον τοῦ
were emperor and having-learned the to Mytilene approach of-the
στόλου τῶν Ἐνετῶν καὶ τὴν πολιορκίαν αὐτῆς, καὶ ὡς
fleet of-the Venetians and the siege of-it and how
κινδυνεύει παρ' αὐτῶν ἁλῶναι, εἰ μὴ τάχιστα τύχοι
it-is-in-danger by them to-be-taken if not most-quickly it-should-obtain
βοηθείας, εὐθὺς θᾶττον ἢ λόγος πληρώσας τριήρεις δέκα
help at-once quicker than word having-manned triremes ten
καὶ ἑκατὸν, καὶ ὁπλίτας ἐπιβιβάσας ὅτι πολλοὺς καὶ ὅπλα
and hundred and hoplites having-put-aboard as many and arms
παντοῖα καὶ ἀφετήρια, καὶ πᾶσιν οἷς εἶχεν ἐξαρτύσας τε
all-kinds and launchers and with-all which he-had having-fitted-out both
καὶ ὁπλίσας καλῶς, παραδίδωσι Μαχουμούτει τῷ πασίᾳ
and having-armed well hands-over to-Mahmud the pasha
τὸν στόλον, κελεύσας πλεῖν τὴν ταχίστην καὶ ξυμβαλεῖν
the fleet having-ordered to-sail the quickest and to-engage
ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων ναυσὶν, ὅπου ἂν τύχωσιν οὖσαι.
with-the of-the enemies ships where — they-might-happen being

Ὁ δὲ ἀναχθεὶς ἀπὸ τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἔπλεε τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον
he and having-put-out from — Byzantium sailed — Hellespont
καὶ καταίρει δευτεραῖος ἐς Καλλιούπολιν, κἀκεῖ μαθὼν
and lands on-the-second-day at Kallipolis and-there having-learned
τέσσαρας τριήρεις τῶν πολεμίων προσκόπους ἐφορμούσας
four triremes of-the enemies scouts lying-at-anchor
τῷ λιμένι Τενέδου, αἳ δὴ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ στόματος τοῦ
at-the harbor of-Tenedos which indeed also as-far-as the mouth of-the
πορθμοῦ διαπλέουσαι ἐς κατασκοπὴν πάλιν ὑπέστρεφον,
strait sailing-through for reconnaissance again returned
μηδὲν μελλήσας εὐθὺς νυκτὸς ἀναχθεὶς ἀπὸ Καλλιουπόλεως
nothing having-delayed at-once by-night having-put-out from Kallipolis
παντὶ τῷ στόλῳ, ἵνα μὴ ἔκπυστος γένηται θεαθείς,
with-all the fleet so-that not discovered he-might-become being-seen
καὶ πνεύμασιν αἰσίοις χρησάμενος, ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ κατήχθη ἐς
and winds favorable having-met at-once with-day put-in at
Τένεδον. Καὶ καταλαμβάνει δὴ τὰς τριήρεις ἐν τῷ λιμένι
Tenedos and overtakes indeed the triremes in the harbor
ὁρμούσας, καὶ τὰς μὲν δύο αὐτάνδρους λαμβάνει πρὸς τῷ
anchored and the indeed two with-their-crews takes at the
στόματι τοῦ λιμένος· οὐ γὰρ ἔφθησαν προεκπεπλευκυῖαι·
mouth of-the harbor not for they-were-first having-sailed-out
αἱ δὲ ἕτεραι δύο προαναχθεῖσαι μόγις διέφυγον·
the(-ones) and other two having-put-out-first scarcely escaped
ἦσαν δὲ τῶν ἄριστα πλεουσῶν, καὶ σπεύσασαι τάχιστα
they-were and of-the best sailing(-ones) and having-hastened most-quickly
ἀφικνοῦνται ἐς Μιτυλήνην καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
arrive at Mytilene and report to-the generals
τὸν ἐπίπλουν τοῦ στόλου τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τὴν ἅλωσιν
the sailing-against of-the fleet of-the emperor and the capture
τῶν δύο νεῶν. Οἱ δ' εὐθὺς ἀκούσαντες ὥσπερ σκηπτῷ
of-the two ships they and at-once having-heard as by-thunderbolt

τινι βληθέντες τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ, πάντα καταλιπόντες αὐτοῦ καὶ
some struck by-the news all having-abandoned there both
μηχανὰς καὶ ὅπλα καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην ἀποσκευὴν, ἐσβάντες
engines and arms and all other baggage having-embarked
ἐς τὰς τριήρεις ἀτάκτως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ καὶ
into the triremes in-disorder both and with no order and
λογισμῷ, λαβόντες τε μεθ' ἑαυτῶν καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ
reckoning having-taken both with themselves also the men and
γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας τῶν προσχωρησάντων φρουρίων αὐτοῖς,
women and children of-the having-gone-over fortresses to-them
ἀνήχθησαν πρὸ τοῦ τὸν στόλον τοῦ βασιλέως καταῖραι
put-out before the the fleet of-the emperor to-land
ἐς Μιτυλήνην, διάστημα ὡσεὶ ὡρῶν ὀκτὼ, ὡς λέγεται·
at Mytilene interval about of-hours eight as is-said
Μαχουμούτης δὲ ἀφικόμενος ἐς Μιτυλήνην καὶ μαθὼν
Mahmud and having-arrived at Mytilene and having-learned
προαναχθέντας πρὸ ὀλίγου αὐτοὺς, ἐδίωκε κατὰ σπουδὴν,
having-put-out-first before little them pursued with haste
καὶ γενόμενος ἐπὶ μετεώρου πελάγιος, μόλις καθορᾷ αὐτὰς
and having-come to open-sea on-the-high-sea scarcely sees them
προσισχούσας τῇ Λήμνῳ. Ἀπογνοὺς οὖν τὴν τούτων δίωξιν
putting-in — at-Lemnos having-despaired then the of-these pursuit
ἐπάνεισιν ἐς Μιτυλήνην, καὶ διαγαγὼν ἐνταῦθα ἡμέρας
returns to Mytilene and having-spent there days
τέσσαρας καὶ καταστησάμενος τὰ αὐτοῦ πάντα καλῶς,
four and having-settled the(-things) there all well
καὶ φρουρὰν ἱκανὴν καὶ ὅπλα καὶ σῖτον πολὺν καὶ ἄλλα
and garrison sufficient and arms and grain much and other
ἄττα τὰ πρὸς χρείαν τῇ πόλει καταλιπὼν, ἐπάνεισιν
some the(-things) for need for-the city having-left returns
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον, φθινοπώρου φθίνοντος ἤδη, καὶ διέλυσε τὸν
to — Byzantium autumn waning already and dissolved the

στόλον. Καὶ δεύτερον δὴ καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς
fleet and second indeed and seventieth year besides the
ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
τέταρτον δὲ καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
fourth and and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor
8.1 Ὤφθη δὲ κατὰ τὰς αὐτὰς ἡμέρας καὶ τέρας τι ἐξαίσιον.
was-seen and in the same days also portent some extraordinary
Ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος, μεσημβρίας οὔσης σταθερᾶς, λάμπων τε
the for sun midday being steady shining both
καθαρὸς καὶ νέφους ἐκτὸς, αἴφνης μεταβαλὼν ἐσκοτίσθη
clear and of-cloud outside suddenly having-changed was-darkened
καὶ ἠμαυρώθη, καὶ τὸ εἶδος αὑτοῦ ἤμειψεν ὡς ἐς
and was-dimmed and the appearance of-itself exchanged as into
χαλκοῦ μέλανος χροιὰν, καὶ γέγονε ζοφώδης ὅλος καὶ
of-bronze black color and became gloomy whole and
μέλας, οὐ κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς ἐκλείψεσιν· οὐ
black not according-to the custom as in the eclipses not
γὰρ ἦν ἔκλειψις τότε· ἀλλ᾽ ἄλλον τινὰ τρόπον καινότατον,
for was eclipse then but other some way newest
ὥσπερ ὁμίχλης τινὸς ἢ νέφους ἀχλυώδους καὶ σκοτεινοῦ
as of-mist some or of-cloud murky and dark
ὑποτρέχοντος αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπηλυγάζοντος, καὶ διαγέγονεν ἐν
running-under it and overshadowing and it-continued in
τρισὶ ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις καὶ νυξὶ ἴσαις τοιοῦτος καὶ ὢν
three the whole days and nights equal such both being
καὶ πᾶσι φαινόμενος. Τοῦτο τέρας τι μέγα καὶ θεοσημεία
and to-all appearing this portent some great and divine-sign
τις ἄντικρυς ἔδοξε πᾶσιν ἐς τὸ μέλλον μεγάλα κακὰ
some openly it-seemed to-all for the future great evils

προφοιβάζουσα· ἃ δὴ καὶ μετ᾽ ὀλίγον ἐπηκολούθησε.
foretelling which indeed also after a-little followed
Καὶ τοῦτο μέντοι τοιοῦτον.
and this indeed such
Βασιλεὺς δὲ παραχειμάζων ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν τε ἄλλων 9.1
emperor and wintering in Byzantium of-the both other(-things)
ἐπεμέλετο, φημὶ δὴ τῶν ἐς ξυνοίκησίν τε καὶ
took-care I-mean indeed of-the(-things) for settlement both and
κατασκευὴν καὶ κόσμον τῆς ὅλης πόλεως, καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰ
equipment and adornment of-the whole city and indeed also the
βασίλεια ἐξετέλεσε, χρῆμά τι κάλλιστον καὶ τῶν ἐς
palaces he-completed thing some finest and of-the(-things) for
θέαν καὶ τέρψιν ὁμοῦ καὶ κατασκευὴν καὶ κάλλος οὐδενὸς
sight and delight together and equipment and beauty in-nothing
λειπόμενα τῶν ὀνομαστῶν καὶ λαμπρῶν καὶ δὴ καὶ
falling-short of-the renowned and brilliant and indeed also
παλαιῶν οἰκοδομημάτων καὶ θεαμάτων· πύργοι τε γὰρ ἐν
ancient buildings and sights towers both for in
αὐτοῖς ᾠκοδόμηντο ἐς ὕψος τε ἠρμένοι καὶ ἐς κάλλος καὶ
them had-been-built to height both raised and for beauty and
μέγεθος ἠσκημένοι, καὶ ἀνδρεῶνες καὶ γυναικωνῖται καὶ
size adorned and men's-halls and women's-quarters and
θάλαμοι τρίκλινοί τε καὶ κοιτῶνες καὶ δωμάτια πλεῖστα καὶ
chambers three-couched both and bedrooms and rooms very-many and
κάλλιστα καὶ οἰκίσκοι διάφοροι, ἔτι δὲ πρόδομοί τε καὶ
finest and small-houses various further and vestibules both and
αὐλαὶ καὶ προαύλια καὶ πυλῶνες καὶ πρόθυρα καὶ ὀπτανεῖα
courts and forecourts and gateways and porches and kitchens
καὶ λουτρὰ λόγου ἄξια, καὶ περίβολος μέγιστος ὁ
and baths of-account worthy and enclosure greatest the(-one)
περιέχων αὐτά· ἃ πάντα, ᾗπερ ἔφην, ἔς τε ποικιλίαν
surrounding them which all as I-said for both variety

ὁμοῦ καὶ κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος καὶ πολυτέλειαν ἤσκητο,
together and beauty and size and costliness had-been-adorned
χρυσῷ τε πολλῷ καὶ ἀργύρῳ περιλαμπόμενά τε καὶ
with-gold both much and silver shining-around both and
καταστραπτόμενα πάντοθεν, ἔσωθέν τε καὶ ἔξωθεν, καὶ
flashing on-all-sides from-within both and from-without and
λίθων διαφανῶν καὶ μαρμάρων διαφόροις ἀγλαΐαις τε
of-stones translucent and marbles with-various splendors both
καὶ χροιαῖς καὶ ποικιλίαις κεκοσμημένα, στιλπνότητι καὶ
and colors and varieties adorned in-brightness and
λειότητι καὶ διαυγείᾳ νικώντων, καὶ τέχνῃ τῇ πρώτῃ τε
smoothness and transparency surpassing and with-art the first both
καὶ καλλίστῃ διὰ πάντων φιλοτίμως ἐξειργασμένα, ὅση
and finest through all lavishly worked-out as-much-as
τε γλυφικὴ καὶ πλαστικὴ καὶ ὅση γραφικὴ νενίκηκεν
both carving and modeling and as-much-as painting has-won
εἶναι ἀρίστη καὶ καλλίστη τῶν ἁπασῶν, ἔτι δὲ μολύβδῳ
to-be best and finest of-the all further and with-lead
τε πολλῷ καὶ βαθεῖ ὅλα δι᾽ ὅλων πεπυκασμένα τε καὶ
both much and deep wholly through whole covered both and
ξυνηρεφῆ καὶ κατάστεγα, καὶ μυρίαις ἄλλαις λαμπρότησί
roofed and covered-over and with-countless other splendors
τε καὶ χάρισι καλλυνόμενα καὶ κοσμούμενα· οὐ μόνον
both and graces beautified and adorned not only
δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ παράδεισοι περὶ αὐτὰ κατακέχυνται κύκλῳ
and but also gardens around them are-spread in-circle
μέγιστοί τε καὶ κάλλιστοι, διαφόροις τε καὶ παντοίοις
greatest both and finest with-various both and all-kinds
φυτῶν εἴδεσι βρύοντες, καὶ καρποῖς ὡραίοις βρίθοντες καὶ
of-plants kinds teeming and with-fruits seasonable laden and
ὑδάτων ἀφθονίᾳ περιρρεόμενοι πάντοθεν ψυχρῶν τε καὶ
of-waters with-abundance flowed-around on-all-sides cold both and

ποτίμων καὶ διειδῶν, καὶ ἄλσεσι καὶ λειμῶσι καλλίστοις
drinkable and clear and with-groves and meadows finest
ἐμπρέποντες, ἔτι δὲ ὀρνίθων ἀγέλαις ἐδωδίμων καὶ
conspicuous further and of-birds with-flocks edible and
ᾠδικῶν καταβοώμενοί τε καὶ περιλαλούμενοι πάντοθεν,
singing resounding both and chattered-around on-all-sides
καὶ ζῴων ἡμέρων τε καὶ ἀγρίων γένη τρέφοντες,
and of-animals tame both and wild kinds nourishing
καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ διαφόροις ὡραϊζόμενοί τε καὶ
and with-many other and various made-beautiful both and
κομῶντες καλοῖς, ὅσα κόσμον οἶδε φέρειν καὶ τέρψιν
luxuriant goods whatever ornament know to-bring and delight
ὁμοῦ καὶ ἡδονὴν καὶ ἀπόλαυσιν· οὕτω φιλοτίμως τε καὶ
together and pleasure and enjoyment so lavishly both and
πολυτελῶς ἐξείργαστο ταῦτα τῷ βασιλεῖ.
costly had-been-worked-out these(-things) for-the emperor
Παραχειμάσας οὖν ἐν τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπειδὴ 10.1
having-wintered then in these(-things) the emperor when
ἔαρ ὑπέφαινεν ἤδη, ὥρμησε μὲν ἐς ἐκστρατείαν, καὶ
spring was-showing already set-out indeed for campaign and
παρεσκευάζετο ἐπὶ τοῦτο. Αἰσθόμενος δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτας
prepared for this having-perceived but the soldiers
ἀγανακτοῦντας καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν αὐλὴν, κεκακωμένους τε
vexed and the own court harmed both
καὶ τεταλαιπωρημένους τὰ μάλιστα ταῖς συχναῖς τε
and worn-out the most by-the frequent both
καὶ μακραῖς ὁδοιπορίαις καὶ ἐκστρατείαις, καὶ ἀεὶ ἐν
and long marches and campaigns and always in
ἀποδημίαις ὄντας ὑπερορίοις καὶ πόνοις, καὶ πάντα
journeys being beyond-the-borders and toils and all
τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἀπολλύντας καὶ σώματα καὶ χρήματα καὶ
the(-things) of-themselves losing both bodies and money and

ἵππους καὶ ὑποζύγια, καὶ πάντα τρόπον φθειρομένους τε
horses and beasts-of-burden and in-every way being-destroyed both
καὶ κακοπαθοῦντας, ἀνέσχε τῆς ὁρμῆς· καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ
and suffering he-held-back from-the impulse and himself the
βασιλεὺς κεκοπωμένος τε καὶ κατατετριμμένος ὅλος καὶ τὸ
emperor wearied both and worn-down wholly both in-the
σῶμα καὶ τὴν γνώμην ὑπό τε τῶν ξυνεχῶν καὶ ἀνενδότων
body and the judgment by both the continuous and unrelenting
λογισμῶν τε καὶ φροντίδων καὶ τῶν ἀτρύτων πόνων
reckonings both and cares and the unwearying toils
καὶ κινδύνων καὶ πειρασμῶν, ἀναπαύλης γοῦν ἐδεῖτο
and dangers and trials of-rest at-any-rate needed
προσκαίρου καὶ θεραπείας. Διὰ τοῦτο μένειν ἐγνώκει
temporary and of-care because-of this to-remain he-resolved
δεῖν καὶ διαναπαῦσαι ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν τοῦ
to-be-needful and to-rest himself both and the army for-the
ἐνεστῶτος θέρους, ὡς ἂν ἔτι γε τοῦ λοιποῦ νεαρωτέροις
present summer so-that — still at-least for-the future fresher
τε καὶ προθυμοτέροις ἔχοι κεχρῆσθαι πρὸς τὰ λοιπὰ
both and more-eager he-might-be-able to-use(-them) for the rest
τῶν ἔργων. Καὶ δὴ δόξαν οὕτω, τὴν μὲν ἄλλην
of-the works and indeed it-having-seemed-good so the indeed other
στρατιὰν πολυτρόπως δωρησάμενος ἀπέλυσε, τοῖς μὲν
army in-many-ways having-rewarded he-released to-the(-ones) indeed
ἵππους, τοῖς δὲ ἐσθῆτας, τοῖς δὲ χρήματα, τοῖς
horses to-the(-ones) and clothes to-the(-ones) and money to-the(-ones)
δὲ ἄλλο τι διαδιδοὺς, τοὺς δ' ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς, οὓς
and other something distributing the(-ones) and from the own court whom
ἠπίστατο φιλοπόνους τε καὶ φιλοκινδύνους καὶ σπουδαίους
he-knew toil-loving both and danger-loving and earnest
καὶ χρησίμους τοῖς ὅλοις καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ τιμαῖς
and useful in-the whole and good men both with-honors

ταῖς πρεπούσαις ἐτίμησε, καὶ ἀρχαῖς καὶ δώροις λαμπροῖς
the fitting honored and with-offices and gifts brilliant
καὶ πολλοῖς ἄλλοις καλοῖς, προάγων καὶ προβιβάζων
and many other goods promoting and advancing
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω δι' ἀρετήν. Καὶ τούτους μὲν οὕτω
them to the forward(-places) for virtue and these indeed thus
τιμήσας τε καὶ δωρησάμενος πολυτρόπως, ἥπερ ἔφην,
having-honored both and having-rewarded in-many-ways as I-said
ἀπέλυσεν· αὐτὸς δὲ διάγων ἐν Βυζαντίῳ θέρους, τῶν
released himself and spending-time in Byzantium in-summer the
μὲν ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως φροντίδων οὐκ ἠμέλει, ξυνήθως τοῦ
indeed for the city cares not neglected customarily of-the
τε ξυνοικισμοῦ αὐτῆς, φημὶ, καὶ τῆς ἄλλης κατασκευῆς
both resettlement of-it I-mean and of-the other equipment
τε καὶ βελτιώσεως ἄγαν ἐπιμελόμενος. Ἐσχόλαζε δὲ καὶ
both and improvement exceedingly taking-care he-had-leisure and also
φιλοσοφίᾳ, ὅση τε Ἀράβων καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Ἑλλήνων
for-philosophy as-much-as both of-Arabs and of-Persians and of-Hellenes
μάλιστα ἐς τὴν Ἀράβων μετενεχθεῖσα, ξυνὼν τε
most into the of-Arabs(-tongue) transferred being-with both
ὁσημέραι τοῖς τούτων ἡγεμόσι καὶ διδασκάλοις (εἶχε δὲ οὐκ
daily the of-these leaders and teachers he-had and not
ὀλίγους περὶ αὑτόν) καὶ ξυζητῶν ἅμα καὶ ξυμφιλοσοφῶν
few about himself and inquiring-with at-once and philosophizing-with
αὐτοῖς καὶ τοῖς τῆς φιλοσοφίας δόγμασι προσανέχων καὶ
them and to-the of-the philosophy doctrines attending and
μάλιστα τοῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ Περιπάτου καὶ τῆς Στοᾶς.
most to-the(-ones) from the Peripatos and the Stoa
Ἐντυχὼν δέ που καὶ τοῖς τοῦ Πτολεμαίου
having-come-upon and somewhere also the — of-Ptolemy
διαγράμμασιν, ἐν οἷς ἐκεῖνος ἐπιστημονικῶς τε καὶ
diagrams in which that(-one) scientifically both and

φιλοσόφως τὴν τοῦ κόσμου περιήγησιν καὶ περίοδον πᾶσαν
philosophically the of-the world description and circuit all
ἐκτίθεται, πρῶτον μὲν ἠβουλήθη κατακεκερματισμένην
sets-out first indeed he-wished cut-up
οὖσαν αὐτὴν ἐν τῇ δέλτῳ καὶ δυσδιάγνωστον, μιᾷ
being it in the tablet and hard-to-discern in-one
ὑφῇ παραδοῦναι ξυνημμένως ἐν ἑνὶ πέπλῳ καὶ πίνακι,
weave to-hand-down joined in one cloth and table
σαφεστέραν τε οὖσαν οὕτω καὶ εὐληπτοτέραν ξυμπεριλαβεῖν
clearer both being so and easier-to-grasp to-comprehend
τε ἅμα τῇ διανοίᾳ καὶ κατασχεῖν καὶ γνῶναι καλῶς·
both at-once with-the mind and to-hold and to-know well
καὶ γὰρ ἀναγκαῖον εἶναί οἱ ἔδοξέ που τὸ μάθημα τοῦτο
and for necessary to-be to-him it-seemed somehow the study this
καὶ σπουδαιότατον. Μετακαλεσάμενος οὖν Γεώργιον τὸν
and most-earnest having-summoned then George the
φιλόσοφον ἀνατίθησιν αὐτῷ τὸν τοῦ πράγματος πόνον ξὺν
philosopher he-entrusts to-him the of-the affair toil with
ἀξιώσει καὶ φιλοτιμίᾳ βασιλικῇ. Καὶ ὃς ἀναδέχεται τοῦτον
dignity and munificence royal and he accepts it
ἀσμένως, ὑπουργῶν προθύμως τῷ βασιλέως σκοπῷ καὶ
gladly serving eagerly the of-emperor aim and
κελεύσματι, καὶ δὴ μετὰ χεῖρας τὸ βιβλίον λαβὼν καὶ τὸ
command and indeed into hands the book having-taken and the
θέρος ὅλον ἐνδιατρίψας τε καὶ σχολάσας αὐτῷ καὶ ἱκανῶς
summer whole having-spent both and having-had-leisure for-it and sufficiently
ἐκμελετήσας τε καὶ τὴν τούτου γνῶσιν ἀναλεξάμενος,
having-studied both and the of-it knowledge having-gathered
διέγραψεν ἄριστα καὶ ἐπιστημονικώτατα πᾶσαν τὴν τῆς
drew best and most-scientifically all the of-the
οἰκουμένης περίοδον ἐν ἑνὶ πέπλῳ καὶ πίνακι γῆς καὶ
inhabited-world circuit in one cloth and table of-land and

θαλάσσης ὁμοῦ, ποταμούς τέ φημι καὶ λίμνας καὶ νήσους
sea together rivers both I-mean and lakes and islands
καὶ ὄρη καὶ πόλεις καὶ πάντα ἁπλῶς παραδοὺς ἐν
and mountains and cities and all simply having-handed-down in
τούτῳ καὶ κανόνας καὶ μέτρα καὶ ἀποστάσεις καὶ τἆλλα
this and rules and measures and distances and the-rest
πάντα εἰδέναι καλῶς, καὶ παραδίδωσι βασιλεῖ σπούδασμά τε
all to-know well and hands(-it)-over to-emperor study both
καὶ μάθημα πάνυ ἀναγκαῖον καὶ χρήσιμον τοῖς σπουδαίοις
and learning very necessary and useful for-the earnest
τε ἅμα καὶ φιλοπόνοις καὶ φιλοκάλοις. Ἐκτίθεται δὲ καὶ
both at-once and toil-loving and beauty-loving he-sets-out and also
τὰ ὀνόματα τῶν χωρῶν καὶ τόπων καὶ πόλεων ἀραβικῶς
the names of-the lands and places and cities in-Arabic
ἐν τῷ πίνακι, χρησάμενος ἑρμηνεῖ τῷ σφετέρῳ υἱεῖ, καλῶς
in the table having-used as-interpreter the own son well
ἠσκημένῳ τὴν Ἀράβων τε καὶ Ἑλλήνων. Ἡσθεὶς οὖν
trained-in the of-Arabs both and of-Hellenes(-tongue) pleased then
πάνυ τῷ ἔργῳ τούτῳ ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ τὴν σοφίαν τε καὶ
very with-the work this the emperor and the wisdom both and
περίνοιαν τοῦ Πτολεμαίου θαυμάσας, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τοῦ
ingenuity — of-Ptolemy having-admired but indeed also of-the(-one)
ἐκθεμένου τοῦτο καλῶς, δωρεῖται τοῦτον πολυτρόπως καὶ
having-set-out this well rewards him in-many-ways and
φιλοτίμως, κελεύει δὲ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν βίβλον ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν
lavishly orders and also all the book by them
ἀραβικῶς ἐκδοθῆναι, μισθοὺς μεγάλους ὑπὲρ τούτου καὶ δῶρα
in-Arabic to-be-published pays great for this and gifts
ἐπαγγειλάμενος. Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως. Ἐν τούτοις γε
having-promised and these(-things) indeed thus in these(-things) at-least
μὴν καὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀσχολουμένῳ τε καὶ διατρίβοντι τῷ
indeed and the such(-things) being-occupied both and spending-time for-the

βασιλεῖ διαγέγονε τὸ θέρος ὅλον καὶ τὸ φθινόπωρον· καὶ
emperor passed the summer whole and the autumn and
τούτων παρῳχηκότων τρίτον καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς
these having-passed third and seventieth year besides
τοῖς ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
the nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
πέμπτον δὲ καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
fifth and and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor

11.1 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ παρῳχηκὸς ἔτος ὅλον διανεπαύσατο καλῶς
when and the past year whole had-rested well
ὅ τε βασιλεὺς καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ, παρεσκευάζετο χειμῶνος
the both emperor and the army be-prepared in-winter
ἅμα ἦρι ἐς τὴν Ἰλλυριῶν ἐσβαλεῖν. Ἰλλυριοὶ γὰρ,
at-once with-spring into the of-Illyrians(-land) to-invade Illyrians for
ἧπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἔφαμεν, πρόσοικοι ὄντες τῷ Ἰονίῳ καὶ
as also before we-said dwellers-by being — to-Ionian and
ὄρη μεγάλα ἐκ παλαιοῦ οἰκοῦντες καὶ ὑπερύψηλα, καὶ
mountains great from old inhabiting and very-high and
φρούρια ἔχοντες ἐρυμνὰ καὶ δυσάλωτα ἔν τε τῇ μεσογείᾳ
fortresses having strong and hard-to-take in both the inland
καὶ παραλίᾳ καὶ τόπους δυσβάτους καὶ ἀποκρήμνους καὶ
and coast and places impassable and precipitous and
πανταχόθεν ὠχυρωμένοι τε καὶ ἠσφαλισμένοι, καὶ τούτοις
on-all-sides fortified both and secured and in-these
θαρροῦντες, αὐτόνομοί τε εἶναι ἐβούλοντο καὶ ἐλεύθεροι
trusting self-governing both to-be wished and free
πάντη, καὶ οὔτε δασμὸν ἐτήσιον καταβαλεῖν ἤθελον καὶ
wholly and neither tribute yearly to-pay wished also
αὐτοὶ, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅμοροι, οὔτε στρατιώτας ἐν ταῖς
themselves as the other neighbors nor soldiers in the
ἐκστρατείαις παρέχειν οὔτε τῷ πατρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως οὔτ'
campaigns to-provide neither to-the father of-the emperor nor

αὐτῷ τῷ βασιλεῖ, οὐθ' ὅλως κατακούειν αὐτοῦ· καὶ οὐ
very to-the emperor nor at-all to-obey him and not
τοῦτο μόνον, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ πολλάκις ἐκθέοντες τῆς αὐτῶν
this only but that also often running-out from-the their(-land)
μετὰ τοῦ σφῶν ἡγεμόνος ἀνέδην οὕτω κατέτρεχον
with the their leader without-restraint so overran
τὴν ὅμορόν σφισι τοῦ βασιλέως χώραν καὶ ἐληίζοντο.
the bordering on-them of-the emperor land and plundered(-it)
Ἐστράτευσαν μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ τούτους καὶ πρόσθεν ὅ τε
campaigned indeed then against these also before the both
βασιλεὺς καὶ ὁ τούτου πατὴρ πρὸ αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατέδραμον
emperor and the his father before him and overran
τὴν αὐτῶν πᾶσαν καὶ ἐληίσαντο καὶ διέφθειραν, καὶ
the their(-land) all and plundered and destroyed and
φρούρια ἐξεῖλον καὶ βοσκήματα πολλὰ καὶ ἀνδράποδα καὶ
fortresses took-out and cattle many and captives and
λείαν ὅτι πλείστην ἀπήγαγον· οἱ δὲ τότε μὲν καὶ παρὰ
booty as most led-away they and then indeed also at
τὴν ἐσβολὴν αὐτὴν τὴν αὑτῶν δῃουμένην καὶ πορθουμένην
the invasion itself the their(-land) being-ravaged and sacked
ὁρῶντες εἶκόν τε καὶ ἐσπένδοντο πρὸς καιρὸν καὶ μετ'
seeing yielded both and made-truce for a-time and after
ὀλίγα πάλιν ἀναισχυντοῦντες ἐλῄστευον τὴν βασιλέως καὶ
a-little again being-shameless plundered the emperor's(-land) and
ἐκακούργουν, καὶ τοῦτο ἐποίουν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄρη καὶ τὸ
did-mischief and this they-did having the mountains and the
δυσπρόσοδον τῆς χώρας καταφυγὴν καὶ προκάλυμμα·
hard-to-approach(-nature) of-the land as-refuge and screen
μιᾶς γὰρ οὔσης ἢ δύο παρόδων διὰ τῶν ὀρῶν ἐς αὐτὴν,
one for being or two passes through the mountains into it
ἐφύλαττόν τε ταύτας φυλακαῖς ἰσχυραῖς, καὶ εἶχον τὴν
they-guarded both these with-guards strong and held the

αὐτῶν ἄβατον πάντη τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ κακῶν ἀπαθῆ, εἰ
their(-land) impassable wholly to-the enemies and of-evils unharmed if
μή που μεγάλη τις δύναμις ἐπελθοῦσα τῶν ὀρῶν τε καὶ
not perhaps great some force having-come the mountains both and
τῶν παρόδων κρατήσειε βίᾳ, καὶ θύραν ἀνοίξειε τῇ χώρᾳ
the passes should-master by-force and door should-open to-the land
τελείως· ὅπερ δὴ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐγνώκει ποιῆσαι, καὶ
completely which indeed also the emperor had-resolved to-do and
ἐπεποιήκει καλῶς. Παρασκευασάμενος οὖν χειμῶνος, ἧπερ
had-done well having-prepared then in-winter as
ἔφην, ὡς ἔδει, ἅμα τῷ ἦρι ἔξεισι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μεγάλῃ
I-said as was-needed at-once with-the spring goes-out against them with-great
δυνάμει καὶ στρατιᾷ ἱππικῇ τε καὶ πεζικῇ, ξυνεπαγόμενος
force and army cavalry both and infantry bringing-along
ἅμα οἱ καὶ μηχανὰς καὶ ὅπλα καὶ παρασκευὰς ἐς
at-once with-him also engines and arms and preparations for
οἰκοδομὴν καὶ οἰκοδόμους καὶ τέκτονας καὶ ἐργαλεῖα
building and builders and carpenters and tools
τεκτονικὰ καὶ οἰκοδομικὰ καὶ σίδηρον πολὺν καὶ χαλκὸν
carpentry and building and iron much and bronze
καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα ὡς ἐς τειχισμὸν καὶ οἰκοδομὴν φρουρίου.
and whatever such as for walling and building of-fortress
Ἄρας οὖν ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ ἱππικῷ
having-set-out then from the of-Hadrian(-city) with-all the army cavalry
τε καὶ πεζικῷ ἤει διὰ τῆς αὑτοῦ σπουδῇ· διελάσας δὲ
both and infantry went through the his(-land) with-zeal having-driven-through and
ταύτην ὅτι τάχιστα καὶ γενόμενος ἐν τοῖς ὁρίοις Ἰλλυριῶν,
it as quickly-as-possible and having-come in the borders of-Illyrians
στρατοπεδεύεται αὐτοῦ τῇ προτεραίᾳ, καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ
encamps there on-the former(-day) and on-the next(-day)
ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε ψιλοὺς καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας
having-taken the both light-armed and archers and slingers

καὶ λογχοφόρους καὶ ὑπασπιστὰς, προσβάλλει ταῖς παρόδοις
and spear-bearers and shield-bearers attacks the passes
φυλασσομέναις ὑπὸ τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν ἰσχυρῶς· καὶ μάχης
guarded by the Illyrians strongly and battle
μεγάλης ξυσταδὸν γενομένης καὶ ὠθισμοῦ καὶ ἀγῶνος καὶ
great hand-to-hand having-arisen and pushing and contest and
βίας πολλῆς, εὐρώστως ἀπαντησάντων τε καὶ μαχομένων
force much stoutly having-met both and fighting
τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν, τρέπεται τούτους καὶ κρατεῖ τῶν παρόδων
the Illyrians routs them and masters the passes
βίᾳ, καὶ καταδιώξας φόνον πολὺν τούτων ἐργάζεται. Μετὰ
by-force and having-pursued slaughter much of-them works after
δὲ τοῦτο φυλακὰς ἐγκαταστήσας ἰσχυρὰς ταῖς παρόδοις,
and this guards having-established strong at-the passes
τοῦ μὴ βλάπτεσθαι τούς τε ἐσιόντας καὶ ἐξιόντας ὑπὸ
so-that not to-be-harmed the(-ones) both entering and going-out by
τῶν λῃστευόντων Ἰλλυριῶν, κελεύει τούς τε ὑλοτόμους καὶ
the plundering Illyrians orders the both woodcutters and
μέρος τοῦ πεζοῦ ἐσελθόντας ὑλοτομεῖν τε καὶ ἐκκαθαίρειν
part of-the infantry having-entered to-cut-wood both and to-clear
τά τε λοχμώδη καὶ λάσια καὶ δυσδιεξίτητα τῶν
the both thicket-covered and shaggy and hard-to-pass-through(-parts) of-the
χωρίων, καὶ τῶν ὁδῶν τὰς σκληρὰς καὶ τραχείας καὶ ὅλως
places and of-the roads the rough and harsh and wholly
ἀβάτους ἐξομαλίζειν τε καὶ καταλεαίνειν καὶ εὐρείας καὶ
impassable to-level both and to-smooth and broad and
λείας ποιεῖν τῇ τε στρατιᾷ πάσῃ ἱππικῇ τε καὶ πεζικῇ καὶ
smooth to-make for-the both army all cavalry both and infantry and
τοῖς ἀχθοφόροις τῶν ζώων καὶ ταῖς ἁμάξαις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
the burden-bearing of-the animals and the wagons and the other
σκευαγωγοῖς. Αὐτὸς δὲ πάσῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐσελάσας, πρῶτον
baggage-carriers himself and with-all the army having-driven-in first

μὲν τὴν κάτω χώραν αὐτῶν, τῶν πεδίων τε καὶ ὅση
indeed the lower land their of-the plains both and as-much-as
ἱππάσιμος ἦν, κατατρέχει καὶ ληίζεται πᾶσαν, μετὰ δὲ
fit-for-riding was overruns and plunders all after and
τοῦτο στρατοπεδευόμενος κατὰ σταθμοὺς καὶ προσκαθήμενος
this encamping by stages and sitting-before(-it)
ἐδήου ταύτην ἐμπιπρῶν τοὺς καρποὺς καὶ νεμόμενος καὶ
laid-waste it burning the crops and grazing and
διαφθείρων καὶ ἀφανίζων. Ἰλλυριοὶ δὲ ἀναγαγόντες τοὺς
destroying and blotting-out Illyrians and having-taken-up the
σφῶν παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ κτήνη καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην
their children and wives and beasts and all other
ἀποσκευὴν ἐπὶ τὰ ὑψηλὰ καὶ δυσάντη καὶ δυσπρόσοδα
baggage onto the high and steep and hard-to-approach(-parts)
τῶν ὀρῶν, καὶ καταλαβόντες αὐτοὶ ξὺν ὅπλοις τάς τε
of-the mountains and having-seized themselves with arms the both
δυσχωρίας καὶ τοὺς ἰσχυροὺς τῶν τόπων καὶ τὰς παρόδους,
rough-grounds and the strong of-the places and the passes
ἐκάθηντο, ἤν τις αὐτοῖς ἐπίῃ, ἀμυνούμενοι. Βασιλεὺς δὲ,
sat if anyone them attack going-to-defend-themselves emperor and
ἐπεὶ πᾶσαν τὴν κάτω χώραν αὐτῶν ἐδήωσε καὶ ἐπόρθησε,
when all the lower land their he-laid-waste and sacked
παρασκευασάμενός τε καὶ ἐκτάξας καλῶς πᾶσαν τὴν
having-prepared both and having-drawn-up well all the
στρατιὰν ἐχώρει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη καὶ τὰς δυσχωρίας καὶ
army went to the mountains and the rough-grounds and
τοὺς ἰσχυροὺς τῶν βουνῶν ἐπί τε Ἰλλυριοὺς καὶ παῖδας
the strong of-the hills against both Illyrians and children
καὶ γυναῖκας σφῶν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἀποσκευήν. Προέταξε
and wives their and the other baggage he-posted
δὲ, πρόσθεν μὲν, τούς τε τοξότας καὶ τουφακοφόρους
and in-front indeed the both archers and musketeers

καὶ σφενδονήτας βάλλειν τε καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ σφενδονᾶν
and slingers to-shoot both and to-draw-bows and to-sling
ἐς τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς καὶ ἀνείργειν αὐτοὺς πορρωτάτω καὶ
at the Illyrians and to-bar them farthest and
ἀναχαιτίζειν ἐς τὸ ἄνω βαλλομένους· μετὰ δὲ τούτους,
to-rein-back to the above being-shot after and these
τούς τε ψιλοὺς καὶ λογχοφόρους καὶ ὑπασπιστὰς ἔταξεν
the both light-armed and spear-bearers and shield-bearers he-posted
ἀνιέναι, ἑπομένως δὲ τούτοις τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν ἅπαν.
to-go-up following and these the hoplite(-force) all
Καὶ ἀνῄεσαν σχολῇ καὶ βάδην μέχρι τινὸς, ὠθοῦντες κατὰ
and went-up slowly and at-a-walk up-to a-point pushing by
μικρὸν τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς ἐς τὸ ἄνω· ἔπειτα ἀλαλάξαντες
little the Illyrians to the above then having-raised-the-war-cry
μέγα οἵ τε ψιλοὶ καὶ οἱ ὁπλῖται καὶ λογχοφόροι ἐχώρουν
greatly the both light-armed and the hoplites and spear-bearers went
δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς, καὶ τρεψάμενοι ἐδίωκον ἀνὰ
running against the Illyrians and having-routed(-them) pursued with
κράτος καὶ καταλαμβάνοντες ἔκτεινον, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ζῶντας
all-speed and overtaking killed the(-ones) and also alive
ἐζώγρουν· ἔνιοι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ βιαζόμενοι ὑπὸ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν
took some and of-them also forced by the hoplites
ἐρρίπτουν σφᾶς αὐτοὺς κατὰ τῶν κρημνῶν καὶ πετρῶν, καὶ
threw them selves down the precipices and rocks and
διεφθείροντο· οἱ δὲ ὁπλῖται καὶ ψιλοὶ καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα
were-destroyed the and hoplites and light-armed and the army all
χεθεῖσα ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ τὰς δυσχωρίας τὰς ἐκεῖσε καὶ
poured over the mountains and the rough-grounds the(-ones) there and
τὰς χαράδρας ἐζώγρουν καὶ ἠνδραποδίζοντο τούς τε παῖδας
the ravines took-alive and enslaved the both children
καὶ γυναῖκας τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν καὶ πάντα τὰ προσόντα
and wives of-the Illyrians and all the(-things) belonging

αὐτοῖς διήρπαζον· οὐ μόνον δὲ, ἀλλὰ καὶ βοσκημάτων καὶ
to-them plundered not only and but also of-cattle and
ζῴων ἀγέλας πολλὰς ἤλασαν, καταδραμόντες δὲ πάντα τὰ
of-animals herds many drove having-overrun and all the
ὄρη καλῶς καὶ διερευνησάμενοι καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην
mountains well and having-searched and booty as most
ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαγαγόντες ἀνδραπόδων τε καὶ βοσκημάτων καὶ
thence having-led-away of-captives both and cattle and
τῶν ἄλλων, κατήγαγον πάντα ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Ἀπέθανον
the others brought-down all to the camp died
δὲ πλῆθος πολὺ τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ,
and multitude much of-the Illyrians the(-ones) indeed in the war
οἱ δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ληφθέντες, κελεύσαντος βασιλέως·
the(-ones) and also alive taken having-ordered emperor
ἐλήφθησαν δὲ καὶ παῖδες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ ἄνδρες ἐν ἐκείνοις
were-taken and also children and wives and men in those
τοῖς ὄρεσι ὡσεὶ δισμύριοι. Οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν
the mountains about twenty-thousand the and rest of-the Illyrians
οἱ μὲν ἦσαν ἐν φρουρίοις ἐρυμνοῖς, οἱ δὲ ἐν ἄλλοις
the(-ones) indeed were in fortresses strong the(-ones) and in other
ὄρεσι πεφευγότες μετὰ τοῦ σφῶν ἡγεμόνος Ἀλεξάνδρου.
mountains having-fled with the their leader Alexander

12.1 Ἦν δέ τι καὶ φρούριον ἐκεῖσε τοῖς Ἰλλυριοῖς ἀπόμαχον
there-was and some also fortress there to-the Illyrians unassailable
πάντη καὶ ἰσχυρότατον Κροῦες ὀνομαζόμενον, ὅπερ δὴ
wholly and strongest Krujë named which indeed
καὶ ὡς ἀκρόπολίς τις ἦν τῆς ὅλης χώρας καὶ φυλακτήριον.
also as acropolis some was of-the whole land and guard-post
Τοῦτο πολυτρόπως πρώην πειρασας ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως
this in-many-ways formerly having-tried the of-the emperor
πατὴρ καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ μηχαναῖς πετροβόλοις καὶ πολιορκίᾳ
father both with-arms and engines stone-throwing and siege

μακρᾷ, οὐκ ἠδυνήθη (δ᾽ οὖν) ὅμως ἑλεῖν· οὕτως ἀπόμαχον
long not was-able but then nevertheless to-take so unassailable
ἦν. Ἐν τούτῳ τοίνυν παραγενόμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ
it-was in this therefore having-arrived the emperor and
θεασάμενος αὐτοῦ τό τε ἐρυμνὸν καὶ δυσάλωτον καὶ
having-viewed its the both strength and hard-to-take(-nature) and
σφόδρα ἀπόμαχον, οὐκ ἐγνώκει δεῖν ὅλως ἐπιχειρεῖν
exceedingly unassailable not resolved to-be-needful at-all to-attempt
τῷ τοιούτῳ καὶ πονεῖν ἀνήνυτα, οὐδὲ προσταλαιπωρεῖν καὶ
the such(-place) and to-toil endless(-things) nor to-suffer-further and
κατατρίβειν τὴν στρατιὰν περικαθήμενον καὶ πολιορκοῦντα
to-wear-out the army sitting-around and besieging
χρονίαν πολιορκίαν, καὶ σώματα καὶ χρήματα ἀπολλύναι
long siege and bodies and money to-lose
μάτην, ἐνὸν ἄλλῳ τῳ τρόπῳ τοῦ τε ἄστεος καὶ τῆς
in-vain it-being-possible by-other some way of-the both town and the
χώρας ἀπόνως τε καὶ ἀκινδύνως κρατεῖν. Διὰ τοῦτο
land without-toil both and without-danger to-master because-of this
ἐπιτειχισμὸν αὐτοῖς ἐγνώκει δεῖν κατασκευάσαι, καὶ
fortification-against them be-resolved to-be-needful to-build and
φρούριον ἐχυρὸν ἐνταῦθα τειχίσαι ἐν μέσῃ τῇ χώρᾳ, καὶ
fortress strong there to-wall in middle the land and
στρατιὰν ἱκανὴν ἐν αὐτῷ καταλιπεῖν, ἀεὶ κατατρέχουσαν
army sufficient in it to-leave always overrunning
καὶ ληιζομένην καὶ μηδαμοῦ ἐῶσαν τοὺς Ἰλλυριοὺς
and plundering and nowhere allowing the Illyrians
ἐξερχομένους τοῦ ἄστεος ἢ τῶν ὀρῶν κατερχομένους
going-out of-the town or from-the mountains coming-down
ἐργάζεσθαι ἢ ποιμαίνειν ἢ νέμειν ἢ ἄλλο τι ποιεῖν, ἀλλ᾽
to-work or to-herd or to-graze or other anything to-do but
ἀεὶ κατακεκλεισμένους τε καὶ κακοπαθοῦντας ἀναγκασθῆναί
always shut-in both and suffering to-be-compelled

ποτε καὶ ξυμβῆναι τῷ βασιλεῖ. Διερχόμενος οὖν τὴν
sometime also to-come-to-terms with-the emperor going-through then the
χώραν ἐπιζητήσει χωρίου ἐπικαίρου ἐς τειχισμὸν, εὗρε
land in-search of-place strategic for walling he-found
παλαιᾶς πόλεως ἴχνη καὶ θεμελίους ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ τε τῆς
of-ancient city traces and foundations in vantage both of-the
χώρας κειμένης καὶ ἀρίστης τε καὶ καλλίστης φαινομένης
land lying and best both and finest appearing
εἶναι τὸ παλαιόν· ταύτην ἔγνω τειχίζειν· καὶ ἀρξάμενος
to-be the of-old this he-resolved to-wall and having-begun
ἀρχομένου θέρους χειρὶ πολλῇ καὶ σπουδῇ καὶ δαπάνῃ
beginning summer with-hand much and zeal and expense
φιλοτιμίᾳ τε καὶ ἐπιστασίᾳ βασιλικῇ (καὶ γὰρ παρῆν τε
lavishness both and oversight royal and for was-present both
αὐτὸς πανταχοῦ τῷ ἔργῳ ἕκαστα ἐξηγούμενός τε καὶ
himself everywhere at-the work each(-thing) explaining both and
ἐπισπέρχων πάντας, τοὺς μὲν λόγοις, τοὺς δὲ καὶ
urging-on all the(-ones) indeed by-words the(-ones) and also
χρήμασι (καὶ) προθυμοτέρους ἐς τοῦτο ποιῶν), πρὶν τὸ
by-money and more-eager for this making before the
θέρος ὅλον ἐξήκειν τειχίζει τὸ φρούριον, ἔργον λόγου καὶ
summer whole to-end walls the fortress work of-account and
θαύματος ἄξιον, καὶ ξυνοικίζει τοῦτο καλῶς, οἰκήτορας
wonder worthy and settles it well inhabitants
ξυναγαγὼν πλείστους ὅσους ἀπὸ τῶν πέριξ αὐτοῦ χωρῶν
having-gathered most as-many-as from the around it lands
καὶ τόπων καὶ πόλεων. Ἐσάγει δὲ καὶ πολλὴν ἀφθονίαν
and places and cities he-brings-in and also much abundance
τῶν ἀναγκαίων καὶ ἐς τροφὴν ἐπιτηδείων καὶ θεραπείαν
of-the necessities and for nourishment suitable(-things) and care
αὐτῶν καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην αὐτάρκειάν τε καὶ χρείαν δαψιλῶς
of-them and all other sufficiency both and need lavishly

ἑτοιμασάμενος· ἔτι δὲ καὶ ὅπλα πολλὰ ἐντίθησι καὶ
having-prepared further and also arms many puts-in and
μηχανὰς πετροβόλους καὶ ἀφετήρια καὶ πλείστην ἄλλην
engines stone-throwing and launchers and very-much other
οἰκονομίαν τε καὶ παρασκευὴν τῶν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον,
management both and preparation of-the(-things) for the war
καὶ ἐπισκευάζει τοῦτο διὰ πάντων καλῶς τε καὶ ὥσπερ
and equips it through all well both and as
ἂν εἰ οὐ τότε πρῶτον, ἀλλὰ πολλοῖς ἔτεσι πρότερον
— if not then first but many years before
οἰκούμενον ἦν, καὶ πάντων τῶν ἐν χρείᾳ καὶ ἀναγκαίων
inhabited it-were and of-all the(-things) in need and necessary
ηὐμοιρήκει πλουσίως. Καταλείπει δὲ καὶ φρουρὰν ἐς αὐτὸ
it-had-had-a-share richly he-leaves and also garrison in it
ἱκανὴν ἄνδρας τετρακοσίους τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας αὐλῆς
sufficient men four-hundred of-the(-ones) from the own court
τοὺς μαχιμωτάτους τε καὶ εὐρωστοτάτους, σαπράπην τε
the most-warlike both and stoutest satrap both
τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ στρατηγὸν μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἱκανῆς ἄνδρα
for-the land and general with army sufficient man
τὸν ἄριστον τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ πάνυ στρατηγικὸν,
the best of-the(-ones) with him and very skilled-in-generalship
ἵνα κατατρέχῃ καὶ πορθῇ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἰλλυριῶν ξυνεχῶς
so-that he-might-overrun and sack all the of-Illyrians(-land) continuously
τε καὶ ἀδιακόπως, καὶ τὸ ἄστυ τοῦ Κροῦες πολιορκῇ.
both and unceasingly and the town — of-Krujë might-besiege
Πράξας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ λείαν ἐλάσας ὅτι
having-done and these(-things) the emperor and booty having-driven as
πολλὴν αὐτὸς ἀνδραπόδων τε καὶ βοσκημάτων, καὶ τῇ
much himself of-captives both and cattle and to-the
στρατιᾷ διαδοὺς, ἐπάνεισι φθινοπώρου ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον
army having-distributed returns in-autumn to — Byzantium

καὶ τέταρτον δὴ καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς τοῖς
and fourth indeed and seventieth year besides the
ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
ἕκτον δὲ καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
sixth and and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor

13.1 Τοῦ αὐτοῦ φθινοπώρου ἀρχομένου ἤδη καὶ Ἐνετοὶ
of-the same autumn beginning already also Venetians
ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ Πάτρας τῆς Ἀχαΐας ναυσί τε
campaigned against Patras — of-Achaea with-ships both
τεσσαράκοντα καὶ δισχιλίοις ὁπλίταις, καὶ ἀποβάντες
forty and two-thousand hoplites and having-disembarked
ἐπολιόρκουν τὴν πόλιν, κύκλῳ περιλαβόντες αὐτὴν τῷ
besieged the city in-circle having-surrounded it with-the
στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσαντες πετροβόλους. Εἶχον δὲ
army and engines having-set-up stone-throwing they-had and
καί τινας τῶν Πελοποννησίων ξυμμαχοῦντας, οἵτινες πρὸ
also some of-the Peloponnesians fighting-as-allies who before
μικροῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποστάντες προσέθεντο αὐτοῖς.
little from-the emperor having-revolted joined them
Ἐπολιόρκουν οὖν ἐπὶ πολλαῖς ἡμέραις περικαθήμενοι αὐτὴν
they-besieged then for many days sitting-around it
καὶ τὸ τεῖχος καταρριπτοῦντες ταῖς μηχαναῖς. Ἀμάρης δὲ
and the wall hurling-down with-the engines Omar and
ὁ Πελοποννήσου σατράπης στρατιὰν οὐ πολλὴν ἔχων μεθ'
the of-Peloponnese satrap army not large having with
ἑαυτοῦ, παρετήρει αὐτοὺς ἔξωθεν λοχῶν τε καὶ ἐνεδρεύων,
himself watched them from-outside lying-in-wait both and ambushing
εἴ πως καιροῦ λαβόμενος ἀπροσδοκήτοις ἐπίθηται
if somehow time having-seized on-unexpecting(-men) he-might-attack
αὐτοῖς. Εἶχε δὲ καὶ σκοποὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ Βοὸς ὄρους πάντα
them he-had and also scouts from the Ox mountain all

καταθεωμένους τὰ δρώμενα ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ
viewing the(-things) being-done in the camp and
ἀγγέλλοντας αὐτῷ. Φυλάξας οὖν καιρὸν αἴφνης ἐπιτίθεται
reporting to-him having-watched-for then time suddenly attacks
αὐτοῖς, καὶ καταπλήξας τῷ ἀθρόῳ τῆς ἐπιθέσεως
them and having-terrified(-them) by-the suddenness of-the attack
τρέπεται καὶ καταδιώκει μέχρι θαλάσσης σφᾶς, κτείνων τε
routs and pursues as-far-as sea them killing both
καὶ ζωγρῶν ἀνοικτὶ, ἕως ἐς τὰς ναῦς καὶ τὴν θάλασσαν
and taking-alive pitilessly until into the ships and the sea
αὐτὴν ἀτάκτως τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ ἐλαυνομένους, ἐπὶ
itself in-disorder both and with no order driven on
κεφαλὴν ὠσθέντας, ἐνέβαλεν. Ἀπέθανον δὲ, ὡς ἐλέγετο, περὶ
head pushed he-threw died and as was-said about
ἑξακοσίους που μάλιστα, ἐλήφθησαν δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ὀλίγῳ
six-hundred about most were-taken and also alive by-little
πλείους τῶν ἑκατὸν, οὐκ ὀλίγοι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀπεπνίγησαν·
more than-the hundred not few and of-them also were-drowned
βιαζόμενοι γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν καὶ ἐλαυνόμενοι πανταχόθεν
forced for by the hoplites and driven from-all-sides
ξὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐπέβαινον τῇ θαλάσσῃ, ὡς ἐς τὰς ναῦς
with the arms they-stepped-into the sea as to the ships
διανηξόμενοι, καὶ βαρυνόμενοι τοῖς ὅπλοις κατεποντίζοντο.
going-to-swim-across and weighed-down by-the arms were-sunk
Ἀμάρης δὲ σκυλεύσας τούς τε νεκροὺς καὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον
Omar and having-stripped the both dead and the camp
ἅπαν, χρήματά τε πολλὰ ἔλαβεν αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ,
all money both much took himself and the army
καὶ ὅπλα καὶ ἔπιπλα καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην ἀποσκευήν.
and arms and furnishings and all other baggage
Ἐπισκευάσας δὲ τὴν πόλιν οἷς εἶχε καλῶς καὶ τοὺς
having-equipped and the city with-what he-had well and the

ζωγρηθέντας ἄνδρας καὶ τὴν λείαν λαβὼν ἀνεχώρησεν
taken-alive men and the booty having-taken withdrew
ἐς Κόρινθον· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἔχων τήν τε λείαν καὶ τοὺς
to Corinth and after this having the both booty and the
αἰχμαλώτους, ἦκεν ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον ὡς βασιλέα. Ὁ δὲ
captives came to — Byzantium to emperor he and
τὸν μὲν φιλοφρόνως τε ἐδέξατο καὶ ἐδωρήσατο μεγάλως
the(-one) indeed kindly both received and rewarded greatly
καὶ ἐτίμησε τὰ εἰκότα, τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἀπέκτεινεν.
and honored(-him) the fitting(-things) the and men killed

14.1 Ἐν δὲ ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις καὶ σέλας ὤφθη ἐν οὐρανῷ,
in and the same days also blaze was-seen in heaven
θαυμαστόν τι καὶ καινότατον θέαμα· περὶ γὰρ πρώτην
marvelous some and newest sight about for first
ὥραν που τῆς νυκτὸς, ἀσελήνου ταύτης γε οὔσης,
hour somewhere of-the night moonless this at-least being
αἴφνης ἔλαμψεν ἀπό τε βορρᾶ καὶ τῶν προσαρκτικῶν
suddenly shone from both north and the northern
μερῶν φῶς μέγα καὶ πυραυγὲς, ὡς ἀπὸ ἀστέρος τινὸς
parts light great and fire-bright as from star some
λαβὸν τὴν ἀρχὴν, καὶ τὸ πᾶν περιήστραψε καὶ κατεφώτισε
having-taken the beginning and the all flashed-around and lit-up
δίκην ἡλίου· εἶτα ἐκεῖθεν χυθὲν ὥρμησεν ὡς πρὸς
like sun then thence having-poured rushed as toward
μεσημβρίαν δρόμον ἐγκάρσιον, οἷά τις στῦλος πυρώδης,
south course transverse like some pillar fiery
ὅλον δι' ὅλου μένον τε καὶ φαινόμενον ἀμείωτον,
wholly through whole remaining both and appearing undiminished
μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ πλέον οἰδούμενον καὶ αὐξόμενον, ἔπειτα
rather and also to more swelling and growing then
στὰν τῆς κινήσεως ἐμοίγε φαῖνον διάστημα ὡς
having-stopped from-the motion to-me-at-least shining interval as

ὥρας ὅλης μιᾶς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο κατακερματισθέν τε καὶ
of-hour whole one and after this having-broken-up both and
κατὰ μικρὸν ὑπορρέον ἠφανίσθη. Τοῦτο τὸ τέρας ὤφθη
by little flowing-away disappeared this the portent was-seen
ἐν οὐρανῷ, εἴτε κομήτης τις ἦν ἀστὴρ, εἴτε λαμπαδίας,
in heaven whether comet some was star or torch-meteor
εἴτε ἄλλο τι τῶν ὑπεκκαυμάτων, οὐκ οἶδα, πλὴν ὄλεθρον
or other some of-the fiery-exhalations not I-know except destruction
σημαῖνον καὶ φθορὰν μεγίστην ἀνθρώπων καὶ ἀπώλειαν,
signifying and corruption greatest of-men and ruin
ἣ καὶ μετὰ μικρὸν ἠκολούθησεν, ὡς ἐν τοῖς ἑξῆς
which also after a-little followed as in the following(-parts)
γενήσεται δῆλον. Καὶ τοῦτο μὲν τοιοῦτον.
will-become clear and this indeed such

Βασιλεὺς δὲ παρεχείμαζεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ διαναπαύων τε 15.1
emperor and wintered in Byzantium resting both
ἑαυτὸν τῶν μακρῶν πόνων καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν πόλιν
himself from-the long toils and the(-things) concerning the city
διατιθεὶς, ὡς εἴωθε, πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον, τόν τε ἐγειρόμενόν
arranging as he-was-wont toward the better the both being-raised
οἱ νεὼν ἐπιμελείας ὅτι πολλῆς ἀξιῶν, τούς τε
for-him temple of-care as much deeming-worthy the both
ἐργαζομένους ἐς τὸ ἔργον ἐπισπέρχων καὶ πάντα τὰ
working for the work urging-on and all the(-things)
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν φιλοτίμως τε καὶ πολυτελῶς γίνεσθαι
concerning it lavishly both and costly to-be-done
προστάσσων τοῖς τεχνίταις καὶ ἐπιστήμοσιν, ὡς αὐτοῦ γε
commanding to-the craftsmen and experts as himself at-least
μηδεμιᾶς δαπάνης ἢ ἀναλωμάτων ἐς τοῦτο φειδομένου ἢ
no expense or outlays for this sparing or
φιλοτιμίας ἐλλείποντος· καὶ μέντοι γε καὶ ἠσκεῖτο καθ᾽
of-lavishness falling-short and indeed at-least also it-was-adorned as

ὅσον οἷόν τε ἦν ἔς τε κάλλος καὶ σχῆμα καὶ θέσιν καὶ
far-as possible — was for both beauty and shape and position and
ποικιλίαν καὶ μέγεθος. Τοῦ δ᾽ αὐτοῦ χειμῶνος ἀφικνεῖται
variety and size of-the and same winter arrives
καὶ πρεσβεία παρὰ τῶν Ἐνετῶν, ἀξιοῦσα λύσιν τε
also embassy from the Venetians asking settlement both
γενέσθαι τῶν διαφορῶν καὶ σπείσεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς ἴσοις
to-come-about of-the differences and to-make-truce on the equal
καὶ ὁμοίοις, ἐχόντων ἑκατέρων ἃ ἔχουσι. Βασιλεὺς δὲ
and like(-terms) holding each-side what they-have emperor and
οὐκ ἐδέξατο ἐπὶ τούτοις, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπέπεμψεν ἐπειπών· "ἄπιτε
not accepted on these(-terms) but sent(-them)-away having-added go-away
κάλλιον βουλευσόμενοι, εἴ γε τυχεῖν εἰρήνης βούλοισθε καὶ
better going-to-deliberate if at-least to-obtain peace you-wish and
σπονδῶν παρ᾽ ἐμοῦ·" ᾔτει γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἃς ἔλαβον νήσους
truces from me he-asked for them which they-took islands
Ἴμβρον καὶ Λῆμνον, καὶ φόρον ἐτήσιον καταβαλεῖν αὐτῷ.
Imbros and Lemnos and tribute yearly to-pay to-him
16.1 Ἐν τούτοις ὄντι τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀγγέλλεται τὸν ἡγεμόνα
in these(-things) being for-the emperor it-is-reported the leader
Ἰλλυριῶν Ἀλέξανδρον ξυμμαχίαν τινὰ παρὰ Παιόνων
of-Illyrians Alexander alliance some from Paionians
αἰτήσαντα καὶ λαβόντα καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἀγείραντα,
having-asked and having-received and the kinsmen having-gathered
ἐπιθέσθαι λάθρα λοχήσαντα καὶ μηδὲν ὅλως προειδομένῳ
to-have-attacked secretly having-ambushed and nothing at-all foreseeing
τῷ καταλειφθέντι σατράπῃ τοῦ βασιλέως Παλαπάνῳ
the left satrap of-the emperor Balaban
τοὔνομα, περικαθημένῳ τε καὶ πολιορκοῦντι τὸ ἄστυ τοῦ
by-name sitting-around both and besieging the town —
Κροῦες, καὶ καταπλήξαντα τῷ ἀθρόῳ τῆς ἐπιθέσεως καὶ
of-Krujë and having-terrified(-him) by-the suddenness of-the attack and

τρεψάμενον διῶξαί τε καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι πολλοὺς τῶν
having-routed(-him) to-have-pursued both and to-have-killed many of-the(-ones)
ξὺν αὐτῷ καὶ αὐτὸν δὴ τὸν σατράπην ἀγωνιζόμενον καλῶς,
with him and himself indeed the satrap contending well
καὶ νῦν σῖτόν τε ὅτι πολὺν καὶ ὅπλα καὶ πᾶσαν ἄλλην
and now grain both as much and arms and all other
αὐτάρκειάν τε καὶ χρείαν τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐσενεγκάμενον ἐς
sufficiency both and need of-the necessities having-brought-in into
τὸ ἄστυ, καὶ δὴ καὶ φυλακὴν καλλίονα, ὡς ἐς πολιορκίαν
the town and indeed also garrison better as for siege
μακρὰν, ἀναχωρῆσαι καὶ τῆς ἔξω πάσης χώρας κρατεῖν, τοῦ
long to-have-withdrawn and of-the outer all land to-be-master the
νέου ἄστεος κατακεκλεισμένου καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ στρατιωτῶν.
new town being-shut-in and the in it soldiers
Τούτων οὕτως ἀγγελθέντων, ἐς ὀργὴν μεγίστην ἐξήχθη
these(-things) so having-been-reported into anger greatest was-carried
ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ μηδὲν μελλήσας εὐθὺς στρατιὰν ὅτι
the emperor and nothing having-delayed at-once army as
πολλὴν ἱππικήν τε καὶ πεζικὴν καλῶς παρασκευασάμενος
much cavalry both and infantry well having-prepared
(ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἐτελεύτα), ἅμα τῷ ἦρι
already for also the winter was-ending at-once with-the spring
ἀρχομένῳ ἐστράτευσεν ἐπ' αὐτόν. Καὶ γενόμενος κατὰ τὴν
beginning campaigned against him and having-come at the
Ἰλλυριῶν, πᾶσάν τε εὐθὺς κατατρέχει καὶ τὰ ἀποστάντα
of-Illyrians(-land) all both at-once overruns and the revolted(-parts)
ταύτης χειροῦται καὶ φόνον πολὺν τῶν ἀφεστηκότων
of-it subdues and slaughter much of-the revolted(-ones)
ἐργάζεται καὶ τὰ ἐν ποσὶ πάντα καταστρέφεται καὶ
works and the(-things) at feet all subdues and
ληίζεται, ἐμπιπρῶν καὶ δηῶν καὶ διαφθείρων καὶ ἀφανίζων·
plunders burning and ravaging and destroying and blotting-out

καταδιώκει δὲ καὶ τὸν τούτων ἡγεμόνα Ἀλέξανδρον. Ὁ δὲ
pursues and also the of-these leader Alexander he but
καταφεύγει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐχυρὰ καὶ ἀπότομα τῶν ὀρῶν
flees again to the strong and sheer(-parts) of-the mountains
καὶ τὰς εἰθισμένας αὐτῷ καταφυγὰς καὶ διατριβὰς τῶν
and the accustomed for-him refuges and haunts of-the
βουνῶν, οὐδὲ θέαν ὅλως ὑπομείνας ὥσπερ Γοργόνος τῆς
hills not-even sight at-all having-endured as of-Gorgon of-the
στρατιᾶς. Βασιλεὺς δὲ διαρπαγήν τε καὶ σκυλμὸν πάντων
army emperor and plunder both and spoiling of-all
ἀνδραπόδων κηρύξας τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐπαφίησι τοῖς
captives having-proclaimed to-the soldiers lets-loose on-the
ὄρεσι τὸ πλεῖστον καὶ μαχιμώτατον τῆς στρατιᾶς μετὰ
mountains the greatest and most-warlike(-part) of-the army with
τοῦ Μαχουμούτεω, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τῇ λοιπῇ στρατιᾷ
— Mahmud himself and with the rest army
προσκαθήμενος ἐδῄου τὰ λοιπὰ τῆς χώρας, κατὰ σταθμοὺς
sitting-before(-it) laid-waste the rest of-the land by stages
ἐπιπορευόμενος καὶ στρατοπεδεύων. Οἱ δὲ δὴ στρατιῶται,
advancing and encamping the and indeed soldiers
ὁπλῖται, φημὶ, καὶ τοξόται καὶ σφενδονῆται καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ,
hoplites I-mean and archers and slingers and javelin-men
λαβόντες παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τὸ ξύνθημα, εὐθὺς ὁρμήσαντες
having-received from the emperor the signal at-once having-rushed
ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰ ὑπερύψηλα καὶ σκληρὰ καὶ ἀπότομα τῶν
went-up onto the very-high and rough and sheer(-parts) of-the
ὀρῶν, οἷά τινες πτηνοὶ, ξὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, καὶ πάντα
mountains like some winged(-creatures) with the arms and all
κατέτρεχον ὥσπερ τινὰ πεδία ἱππάσιμα, οὐδενὸς ἐμποδὼν
overran as some plains fit-for-riding no-one in-the-way
ἱσταμένου, καὶ διηρευνήσαντο πάντα ἀκριβῶς καὶ πλέον ἢ
standing and searched all exactly and more than

Δᾶτις (φασὶ) τὴν Ἐρετρικὴν, ὄρη, κρημνοὺς, φάραγγας,
Datis they-say the Eretrian(-land) mountains precipices ravines
καταδύσεις, ἄντρα, χαράδρας, τρώγλας, χηραμοὺς, πάντας
recesses caves gullies holes burrows all
μυχοὺς γῆς, καὶ οὐδὲν ὅ τι τούτους διέλαθεν ἢ διέφυγε
recesses of-earth and nothing what thing them escaped-notice or escaped
καὶ τῶν σφόδρα ἀποτόμων καὶ ἀποκρότων καὶ ἀνημέρων
even of-the very sheer and rocky and wild
καὶ ἀβάτων ὅλως χωρίων, ὅτι μὴ μόνον τὰ φρούρια
and impassable wholly places that not only the fortresses
καὶ οἱ ἐν τούτοις καταπεφευγότες, ἀλλὰ πάντα
and the(-ones) in these having-fled but all
ἁπλῶς κατέδραμον καὶ ἐχειρώσαντο καὶ ἠνδραπόδισαν καὶ
simply they-overran and subdued and enslaved and
διέφθειραν ἐν πέντε καὶ δέκα ταῖς ὅλαις ἡμέραις, καὶ λείαν
destroyed in five and ten the whole days and booty
ἐξήλασαν ὅτι πλείστην ἀνδραπόδων, ἀνδρῶν, γυναικῶν,
drove-out as most of-captives men women
παίδων, βοσκημάτων παντοίων, ἐπίπλων, πάντων ἁπλῶς,
children cattle of-all-kinds furnishings all simply
καὶ κατήγαγον ἀπὸ τῶν ὀρῶν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. Ὁ δὲ
and brought-down from the mountains into the camp the and
τῶν Ἰλλυριῶν ἡγεμὼν Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς ἔγνω τὴν ἀρχὴν
of-the Illyrians leader Alexander when he-learned the beginning
κατειλημμένα τὰ ὄρη τῇ στρατιᾷ, φυγὰς εὐθὺς ᾤχετο,
seized the mountains by-the army as-fugitive at-once went-off
οὐδ' ὅποι γῆς εἴη ἐξακουόμενος. Βασιλεὺς δὲ δηώσας
not-even where of-earth he-was being-heard emperor and having-ravaged
πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν καὶ διαφθείρας, ἐπὶ τὸ Κροῦες
all the land and having-destroyed(-it) toward — Krujë
ὥρμησε, καὶ γενόμενος ἐν αὐτῷ, στρατοπεδεύεται πρὸ
rushed and having-come at it encamps before

αὐτοῦ, καὶ χάρακα βαλόμενος καὶ κύκλῳ περιλαβὼν
it and palisade having-pitched and in-circle having-surrounded(-it)
τῷ στρατῷ καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσας ἐπολιόρκει.
with-the army and engines having-set-up besieged(-it)

17.1 Ἐν ταύταις δὲ ταῖς ἡμέραις, θέρους μεσοῦντος ἤδη,
in these and the days summer mid already
καὶ ἡ λοιμώδης νόσος παντὶ τῷ θέματι Θρᾴκης τε καὶ
also the pestilential disease all the theme of-Thrace both and
Μακεδονίας ἐνέσκηψεν, ἀρξαμένη μὲν ἀπὸ Θετταλίας καὶ
Macedonia struck having-begun indeed from Thessaly and
τῶν ταύτῃ προσχώρων (οὐκ οἶδ' ὅθεν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἀρχὴν
the there neighboring(-lands) not I-know whence there the beginning
ἐπελθοῦσα), ἐπινεμησαμένη δὲ καὶ διαφθείρασα πάσας τὰς
having-come having-spread and and having-destroyed all the
ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ καὶ παραλίᾳ τούτων πόλεις καὶ χώρας,
in the inland and coast of-these cities and lands
διαβᾶσα δὲ καὶ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν, πᾶσαν τὴν παραλίαν
having-crossed and also into — Asia all the coast
Ἑλλησπόντου τε καὶ Προποντίδος διέφθειρε καὶ ἠρήμωσεν,
of-Hellespont both and Propontis destroyed and desolated
καὶ ἐς τὴν μεσόγειαν ἀναβᾶσα τήν τε τοῦ Προυσίου καὶ
and into the inland having-gone-up the both — of-Prousias(-city) and
τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν ἅπαντα καὶ μέχρι Γαλατίας καὶ δὴ
the(-places) around it all and as-far-as Galatia and indeed
καὶ Γαλατίαν αὐτὴν ἐλυμήνατο καὶ ἠφάνισεν· ἐς δὲ τὴν
also Galatia itself ravaged and blotted-out into and the
μεγάλην ἐσκωμάσασα πόλιν, τὴν Κωνσταντίνου φημὶ, τί
great having-reveled city the of-Constantine(-city) I-mean what
χρὴ καὶ λέγειν ὡς ἄπιστόν τι πάθος ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ ἀκοαῖς
must-one even say as incredible some suffering in it and to-hearings
ὅλως ἄβατον καὶ ἀφόρητον κατειργάσατο; Ἐξεκομίζοντο
wholly impassable and unbearable it-worked were-carried-out

μὲν καθ᾽ ἡμέραν τῶν ἀπολωλότων πλῆθος ἀριθμοῦ
indeed by day of-the(-ones) having-perished multitude than-number
κρεῖττον, οἱ δὲ θάπτοντες οὐκ ἤρκουν ἐς τὰς ταφάς·
greater the(-ones) and burying not sufficed for the burials
οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ δεδιότες τὸν φθόρον ἔφευγον
not for they-were the(-ones) indeed for fearing the destruction fled
ἀμεταστρεπτὶ, οὐδὲ τῶν μάλιστα οἰκείων ποιούμενοι
without-turning not-even of-the most kin making
πρόνοιαν ἢ ὅλως ἐπιστρεφόμενοι, καίτοι πολλάκις μετ᾽
provision or at-all turning-back although often with
οἰμωγῆς καὶ θρήνων ἀνακαλουμένων αὐτοὺς, ἀλλὰ
wailing and laments calling-back them but
καταλιμπάνοντες νοσοῦντας ἀτημελήτους, καὶ τεθνεῶτας
leaving sick untended and dead
ἀτάφους· οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν ἀναπεπλησμένοι
unburied the(-ones) and also themselves were filled
τῆς λύμης καὶ ὅλως δυσθανατοῦντες καὶ οὐδὲ ἑαυτοῖς
of-the plague and wholly dying-hard and not-even themselves
δυνάμενοι βοηθεῖν. Εἰσὶ δὲ οἳ καὶ κατακλείσαντες ἑαυτοὺς
being-able to-help there-are and who also having-shut themselves
ἐν τοῖς δωματίοις ἔμενον ἀπρόϊτοι, καὶ πολλοὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν
in the rooms remained not-going-out and many of them
αὐτοῦ θνήσκοντες ἔκειντο ἄταφοι ἐπὶ δυσὶ καὶ τρισὶν
there dying lay unburied for two and three
ἡμέραις ἀγνοούμενοι πολλάκις, ἐθάπτοντο δὲ καὶ ξύνδυο
days unknown often were-buried and also two-together
καὶ ξύντρεις καὶ κατὰ πλείους πολλάκις μιᾷ παραδιδόμενοι
and three-together and by more often to-one being-handed-over
θήκῃ, καὶ ὁ θάπτων σήμερον ἕτερον αὔριον ὑπ᾽ ἄλλου
tomb and the(-one) burying today another tomorrow by another
ἐθάπτετο, πρεσβῦται δὲ καὶ θῦται καὶ ἱερεῖς οὐκ ἤρκουν
was-buried elders and and sacrificers and priests not sufficed

ἐς τὰς ἐκφορὰς καὶ ἐξόδους καὶ τὰς ἐπιταφίους ᾠδὰς καὶ
for the carryings-out and processions and the funeral songs and
εὐχὰς, οὐδὲ τῇ γῇ κρύπτειν τοὺς ἀπογινομένους, ἀλλ᾽
prayers nor in-the earth to-hide the(-ones) departing but
ἐξέκαμον· πανημέριοι γὰρ διακαρτεροῦντες ἄβρωτοι καὶ
grew-exhausted all-day for persevering without-food and
ἄσιτοι θέρους ἀντέχειν ὅλως οὐκ εἶχον, ἀπέθνησκον
without-bread in-summer to-hold-out at-all not they-could died
δὲ οἱ μὲν τριταῖοι, οἱ δὲ τεταρταῖοι, οἱ δὲ
and the(-ones) indeed on-the-third-day the(-ones) and on-the-fourth-day the(-ones) and
καὶ ἑβδομαῖοι. Καὶ τὸ δεινὸν καθ᾽ ἡμέραν ἐπεδίδου διὰ
also on-the-seventh-day and the terror by day increased through
πάσης ἡλικίας ἤδη χωροῦν, καὶ ἐπὶ μᾶλλον ἐξήπτετο, καὶ
every age already going and to more was-kindled and
ἡ πόλις ἐκενώθη τῶν οἰκητόρων, ἀστῶν τε καὶ ξένων,
the city was-emptied of-the inhabitants citizens both and foreigners
καὶ χωρίον ἔρημόν τι ὅλως ἀνθρώπων ἐδόκει εἶναι, τῶν
and place desolate some wholly of-men seemed to-be the(-ones)
μὲν ἀπολωλότων τε καὶ ἀπολλυμένων τῇ νόσῳ, τῶν
indeed having-perished both and perishing by-the disease the(-ones)
δὲ, ἥπερ ἔφην, ἐξοικιζομένων τε καὶ φευγόντων, τῶν
and as I-said emigrating both and fleeing the(-ones)
δὲ ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ὥσπερ καταδίκων ἀποκεκλεισμένων· καὶ
and in the houses as condemned shut-in and
ἡ ἀθυμία πολλὴ καὶ ἡ λύπη οὐ φορητὴ καὶ κοπετὸς καὶ
the despondency much and the grief not bearable and lamentation and
ὀλοφυρμὸς πανταχοῦ, καὶ ἡ ἀπόγνωσις καὶ δυσελπιστία
wailing everywhere and the despair and hopelessness
τὰς πάντων ἐκράτει ψυχὰς, καὶ ἡ τῆς προνοίας ὅλως
the of-all ruled souls and the of-the providence wholly
ἐξερρύηκε δόξα, καὶ πάντα εἰκῇ καὶ ὡς ἔτυχε ἐνομίζετο
had-flowed-out opinion and all at-random and as it-happened was-thought

φέρεσθαι, ὡς οὐδενὸς ἐπιστατοῦντος τῶν γινομένων.
to-be-carried as no-one presiding-over the(-things) happening
Οὕτω πάντας ἐξέπληξε ὁ τοῦ πάθους παράλογος.
so all astonished the of-the suffering unexpectedness
Λέξω δὲ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἶδος τῆς νόσου. Τὰ μὲν γὰρ 18.1
I-will-tell and also very the form of-the disease the(-times) indeed for
πρῶτα περὶ τοὺς βουβῶνας ἐστηρίζετο τὸ δεινὸν ὁποιδήποτε,
first about the groins was-fixed the terror in-whatever-way
καὶ τὸ σημεῖον ἐν τούτοις ἐδείκνυτο ἢ μεῖζον ἢ ἔλαττον·
and the sign in these was-shown either greater or less
ἔπειτα προσέβαλλε σφοδρῶς τῇ κεφαλῇ, καὶ θέρμας ἰσχυρὰς
then it-attacked violently the head and fevers strong
ἐνεποίει ταύτῃ καὶ φλεγμονὰς περί τε τὰς κοιλίας τοῦ
produced in-it and inflammations about both the cavities of-the
ἐγκεφάλου καὶ τοὺς ὑμένας καὶ μήνιγγας, καὶ φλογώσεις
brain and the membranes and meninges and burnings
καὶ ἐρυθήματα τοῦ προσώπου· κἀκ τούτου τισὶ μὲν
and reddenings of-the face and-from this in-some indeed
ἀναισθησίαν ἐνειργάζετο καὶ ὕπνον βαρὺν καὶ καταφοράν,
insensibility produced and sleep heavy and stupor
τισὶ δὲ καὶ τοὐναντίον φρενῖτιν καὶ παραπληξίαν καὶ
in-some and also the-opposite frenzy and derangement and
ἀγρυπνίαν ἐπέφερεν· εἶτα ἐστηρίζετο περὶ τὴν καρδίαν ὁ
sleeplessness brought then was-fixed about the heart the
πόνος ὅλος καὶ τὸ δεινὸν μετὰ πυρετοῦ λάβρου τε καὶ
pain whole and the terror with fever violent both and
διακαοῦς τά τε ἔνδον ξυμφλέγοντος καὶ ξυγκαίοντος καὶ
burning the both inner(-parts) inflaming and burning-up and
φλεγμονὰς ἐμποιοῦντος αὐτῇ σφοδροτάτας, καὶ ἐξόπτησιν
inflammations producing in-it most-violent and roasting
τοῦ ὅλου αἵματος καὶ φθορὰν καὶ ὀδύνας ἰσχυρὰς ἐκ τούτου
of-the whole blood and corruption and pains strong from this

καὶ ἀλγηδόνας δριμείας καὶ βοὰς τῶν ἀπολωλότων, καὶ
and agonies sharp and cries of-the(-ones) having-perished and
παλμοὺς ξυνεχεῖς καὶ ὀξεῖς καὶ ἆσθμα βαρὺ καὶ δυσῶδες
palpitations continuous and sharp and breathing heavy and foul
καὶ φρίκην δεινὴν καὶ ψύξιν καὶ νέκρωσιν τῶν ἄκρων καὶ
and shuddering terrible and chill and deadening of-the extremities and
τελευταῖον θάνατον. Τοιοῦτον δή τι καὶ τὸ εἶδος τῆς
last death such indeed something also the form of-the
νόσου, ὡς ἐμοί γε κατεφάνη εἶναι τὰ πλεῖστα παραλιπόντι.
disease as to-me at-least appeared to-be the most having-omitted

19.1 Βασιλεὺς δ' οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας τὸ Κρουῆες πολιορκῶν,
emperor and not many days — Krujë besieging
ἐπειδὴ ἔγνω ἀδύνατά οἱ ἂν οὕτ' ἐκ προσβολῆς
since he-recognized impossible for-him — neither by assault
τοῦτο βίᾳ τοῖς ὅπλοις ἑλεῖν (ἦν γὰρ ἐρυμνότατον τὸ
it by-force with-the arms to-take was for strongest the
ἄστυ καὶ πάντη ἀπόμαχον), οὔτε πειθοῖ προσάξεσθαι,
town and wholly unassailable nor by-persuasion to-win-over
στρατιὰν ἔγνω δεῖν ἱκανὴν αὐτόσε καταλιπόντα καὶ
army he-resolved to-be-needful sufficient there having-left and
στρατηγὸν, ὡς ἐς χρονίαν πολιορκίαν, αὐτὸν ἀναχωρῆσαι
general as for long siege himself to-withdraw
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον καὶ μὴ μάτην πονεῖν καὶ κόπτειν αὐτόν
to — Byzantium and not in-vain to-toil and to-weary himself
τε καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν, ἐνὸν λιμῷ τε καὶ πολιορκίᾳ
both and the army it-being-possible by-hunger both and siege
μακρᾷ περιγενέσθαι τοῦ ἄστεος. Καὶ δὴ δόξαν
long to-prevail-over the town and indeed it-having-seemed-good
οὕτω, καταλιπὼν στρατηγὸν αὐτοῦ μετὰ στρατιᾶς ἱκανῆς,
so having-left general there with army sufficient
ἀκραιφνοῦς καὶ νεήλυδος, ὥστε δύνασθαι πολιορκεῖν τὸ
fresh and newly-come so-as to-be-able to-besiege the

ἄστυ καὶ πάσης τῆς ἔξω χώρας κρατεῖν, αὐτὸς διαδοὺς
town and of-all the outer land to-be-master himself having-distributed
τήν τε λείαν ἅπασαν καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα πάσῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ,
the both booty all and the captives to-all the army
καὶ ἀπολύσας αὐτοὺς, ἤει ξὺν τῇ ἰδίᾳ αὐλῇ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ
and having-dismissed them went with the own court the(-road) to —
Βυζάντιον. Πυθόμενος δὲ καθ' ὁδὸν τήν τε χώραν ἅπασαν
Byzantium having-learned and on road the both land all
Θρᾴκης τε καὶ Μακεδονίας καὶ τὰς ἐν αὐτῇ πόλεις, δι'
of-Thrace both and Macedonia and the in it cities through
ὧν ἔμελλε ποεῖσθαι τὴν πάροδον, τῇ λοιμώδει νόσῳ
which he-was-going to-make the passage by-the pestilential disease
κατεχομένας τε καὶ διαφθειρομένας κακῶς, καὶ δὴ καὶ τὴν
held both and destroyed badly and indeed also the
μεγάλην πόλιν αὐτὴν ἀγομένην καὶ φερομένην ὑπό τε τῆς
great city itself being-led and carried by both the
λύμης καὶ τοῦ δεινοῦ, μεταβαλὼν εὐθὺς ἤει τὴν ἐπί τε
plague and the terror having-changed at-once went the(-road) to both
τὸν Αἷμονα καὶ τὴν ἄνω Μυσίαν· ταύτην τε γὰρ ἐπυνθάνετο
— Haimos and the upper Mysia this both for he-learned
καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ τὸν Αἷμονα πάντα καθαρεύειν τῆς νόσου.
and the(-parts) beyond — Haimos all to-be-clean of-the disease
Καταλαβὼν δὲ τά τε περὶ Νικόπολιν καὶ Βυδήνην χωρία,
having-reached and the both around Nikopolis and Vidin places
ὑγιεινά τε ὄντα καὶ κράσεως εὐκαίρου λαχόντα, διαγέγονε
healthy both being and climate temperate having-obtained he-passed
τὸ φθινόπωρον ὅλον αὐτοῦ διατρίβων. Μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ
the autumn whole there spending-time after a-little and
μαθὼν λωφῆσαν ἤδη τὸ πάθος, καὶ τοῦ λυποῦντος
having-learned having-abated already the suffering and from-the grieving(-thing)
καθαρεύειν τὴν πόλιν (εἶχε γὰρ ἀγγέλους συχνοὺς καθ'
to-be-clean the city he-had for messengers frequent by

ἡμέραν σχεδὸν ἐκ διαδοχῆς διαθέοντας καὶ ἀγγέλλοντας
day nearly in succession running-through and reporting
τὰ ἐκεῖ), χειμῶνος ἀρχομένου ἤδη, ἀφικνεῖται ἐς τὸ
the(-things) there winter beginning already arrives at —
Βυζάντιον. Καὶ πέμπτον δὴ καὶ ἑβδομηκοστὸν ἔτος πρὸς
Byzantium and fifth indeed and seventieth year besides
ἐννακοσίοις τε καὶ ἑξακισχιλίοις τοῖς ὅλοις ἠνύετο,
nine-hundred both and six-thousand in-the total was-being-completed
ἕβδομον δὲ καὶ δέκατον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ.
seventh and and tenth of-the rule for-the emperor